BYZANTINE GREEK SERIES · VOLUME 16

The Alexiad

Anna Komnene

ΑΛΕΞΙΑΣ

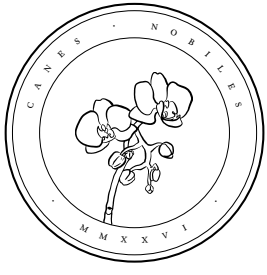
The Alexiad

Part Two: Books V–X

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

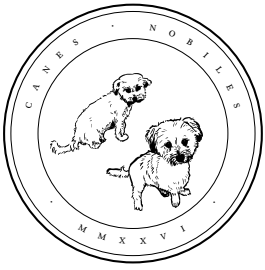


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is used under a Creative Commons
Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License
creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0



Volume 16 of the Canes Nobiles Byzantine Greek interlinear texts

The Byzantine Greek text follows August Reifferscheid's Teubner edition,
Annae Comnenae Porphyrogenitae Alexias (Leipzig, 1884), vol. I and vol. II

Set from the First Thousand Years of Greek, with corrections

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

CONTENTS

BOOK V

I · Alexios After the Defeat 9
II · The Church's Treasure 15
III · Robert Called Home 22
IV · The Wagons and the Caltrops 29
V · The Dream at Larissa 39
VI · The Feigned Flight 49
VII · Bohemond Turned Back 54
VIII · John Italos 59
IX · Italos Condemned 68

BOOK VI

X · Kastoria Recovered 75
XI · The Paulicians Seized 80
XII · The Emperor on Trial 84
XIII · Traulos at Beliatoba 89
XIV · Robert at Corfu 93
XV · The Death of Robert 103
XVI · Astrology and Robert's Portrait 107
XVII · Anna's Birth 114

BOOK VI

(continued)

XVIII · Siaous and the Turks 120
XIX · Apelchasem and the Fort 127
XX · The Bounds of the Empire 138
XXI · The Sultan's Proposal and the Assassins 143
XXII · Elchanes Won Over 152
XXIII · The Scythians Cross 157

BOOK VII

XXIV · Victory at Koules 166
XXV · The Eclipse 169
XXVI · Defeat at Dristra 179
XXVII · Palaiologos in the Mountains 194
XXVIII · Ozolimne 198
XXIX · Treaties Broken 202
XXX · The Archontopouloi 207
XXXI · Tzachas at Chios 211
XXXII · Neantzes Betrays 224
XXXIII · Victory at Rousion 233
XXXIV · The Wheels of Tzouroulos 238

BOOK VIII

XXXV · Choirobakchoi 246
XXXVI · The Disguised Army 252
XXXVII · Winter of Danger 258
XXXVIII · The Cumans Arrive 264
XXXIX · Lebounion 271
XL · Mercy and the Massacre 280
XLI · John Suspected 286

BOOK VIII

(continued)

XLII · The Brothers Reconciled 291
XLIII · Gabras and the Holy Nail 296

BOOK IX

XLIV · Tzachas at Mitylene 304
XLV · Crete and Cyprus 315
XLVI · The Death of Tzachas 320
XLVII · Bolkanos Breaks Faith 324
XLVIII · Diogenes' Attempt 330
XLIX · Nikephoros Diogenes 336
L · The Plot Uncovered 342
LI · Diogenes Confesses 349
LII · The Emperor's Assembly 354
LIII · Bolkanos Submits; Diogenes Blind 361

BOOK X

LIV · Neilos and the Blachernites 365
LV · The Pseudo-Diogenes 370
LVI · The Siege of Adrianople 380
LVII · Alakaseus' Ruse 388
LVIII · The Franks Set Out 401
LIX · Peter's Army Destroyed 412
LX · Hugh of Vermandois 417
LXI · The Priest at Sea 422
LXII · Godfrey on Holy Thursday 432
LXIII · The Count on the Throne 445
LXIV · Bohemond and Saint-Gilles 453

BOOK V

I · ALEXIOS AFTER THE DEFEAT

Robert, master of the booty and the imperial tent, holds the plain before Dyrrachion and weighs a spring siege against wintering at Glabinitza and Ioannina. The colonists from Amalfi and Venice, hearing of Alexios' defeat, hand the city over to Robert. Alexios, wounded and beaten, does not lose heart: at Achris and Diabolis he rallies the survivors and summons the rest to Thessalonike. With the treasuries emptied by Botaneiates, he resolves to send for allies and to ask his mother and brother for money.

Ὁ μέντοι Ῥομπέρτος ἀμεριμνήσας παντάπασι τὴν
— *however Robert having-ceased-to-worry entirely the*
λείαν πᾶσαν καὶ τὴν βασιλικὴν σκηνὴν ἀφελόμενος
booty all and the imperial tent having-taken-away
τροπαιοφόρος καὶ γαυριῶν τὴν πεδιάδα κατέλαβεν,
trophy-bearing and exulting the plain occupied
εἰς ἣν πρότερον ηὐλίζετο τὸ Δυρράχιον πολιορκῶν.
in which before was-camping — Dyrrachion besieging
καὶ μικρὸν διαναπαυσάμενος ἐβουλεύετο, εἰ χρὴ
and a-little having-rested-himself was-deliberating whether it-is-needful
αὖθις ἀποπειρᾶσθαι τῶν τούτου τειχῶν ἢ τὴν μὲν
again to-make-trial-of the of-it walls or the indeed
πολιορκίαν εἰς τὸ ἐπιὸν ἔαρ παραφυλάξασθαι, τὸ παρὸν
siege for the coming spring to-reserve the present
δὲ τὴν Γλαβινίτζαν καταλαβεῖν καὶ τὰ Ἰωαννίνα κἀκεῖσε
and — Glabinitza to-seize and — Ioannina and-there
παραχειμάσαι καταθέμενον τὸ ὁπλιτικὸν ἅπαν εἰς τὰ
to-winter having-laid-up the heavy-armed-force all in the
ὑπερκείμενα τέμπη τῆς πεδιάδος Δυρραχίου. οἱ δ'
overlying valleys of-the plain of-Dyrrachion those and

ἐντὸς Δυρραχίου, καθάπερ ὁ λόγος ἐδήλωσεν, ἐπεὶ οἱ
inside Dyrrachion just-as the account showed since the
πλείους ἀπὸ Μέλφης καὶ Βενετίας ἦσαν ἄποικοι, τὰ
most from Amalfi and Venice were colonists the(-things)
ξυμπεσόντα τῷ αὐτοκράτορι μεμαθηκότες καὶ τὴν τοσαύτην
having-befallen to-the autocrat having-learned and the so-great
ἀνδροκτασίαν καὶ τὴν τῶν τηλικούτων ἀνδρῶν σφαγὴν
slaughter and the of-the so-great men butchery
καὶ τοὺς στόλους ὑποκεχωρηκότας καὶ ὅτι ὁ Ῥομπέρτος
and the fleets having-withdrawn and that — Robert
εἰς τὸ ἐπιὸν ἔαρ τὴν πολιορκίαν ταμιεύεται, διεσκοπεῖτο
for the coming spring the siege is-reserving were-considering
ἕκαστος, ὅ τι πράττειν χρὴ καὶ σῴζεσθαι καὶ μὴ
each-one what — to-do it-is-needful and to-save-themselves and not
αὖθις ἐς τοσούτους ἐμπεπτωκέναι κινδύνους. συλλεξάμενοι
again into so-many to-have-fallen dangers having-gathered
οὖν ἑαυτοὺς τὸ ἀπόρρητον ἕκαστος εἰς τὸ ἐμφανὲς ἄγουσι
then themselves the secret each-one into the open bring
καὶ περὶ τῶν ὅλων γνωσιμαχήσαντες ὥσπερ ἐν ἀπόροις
and about the whole-matters having-changed-their-minds as-if in straits
πόρον εὑρηκέναι ᾠήθησαν πεισθῆναι τῷ Ῥομπέρτῳ καὶ
a-way to-have-found thought to-yield — to-Robert and
παραδοῦναί οἱ τὴν πόλιν. ἐρεθισθέντες δὲ καὶ παρά
to-hand-over to-him the city having-been-provoked and also by
του τῶν ἀποίκων Μέλφης καὶ ταῖς τούτου πεισθέντες
some-one of-the colonists of-Amalfi and by-the of-him having-been-persuaded
ὑποθημοσύναις τὰς εἰσόδους ἀναπετάσαντες πάροδον τῷ
suggestions the entrances having-thrown-open passage —
Ῥομπέρτῳ δεδώκασιν. ἐγκρατὴς δὲ τούτου γενόμενος
to-Robert have-given master and of-it having-become
τὰς δυνάμεις μετεκαλεῖτο φυλοκρινῶν ἅμα, εἴ που
the forces he-was-summoning sifting at-once whether perhaps

τέτρωταί τις καιρίαν ἢ ἐπὶ χρῶτα παραξέσαντος τυχὸν
has-been-wounded anyone mortally or on skin having-grazed perhaps
τοῦ ξίφους, καὶ διερευνώμενος ὁποῖοί τε καὶ ὁπόσοι
the sword and searching-out of-what-sort both and how-many
πολέμου παρανάλωμα γεγόνασιν ἐν ταῖς προηγησαμέναις
of-war a-casualty have-become in the preceding
μάχαις, σκοπῶν ἅμα, ἐπεὶ χειμὼν ἤδη παρῆν κατὰ τόδε
battles considering at-once since winter already was-present at this
καιροῦ, διὰ τούτου καὶ μισθοφορικὸν ἕτερον ἐπισυνάξαι
of-the-season through this both mercenary another to-collect
καὶ ξενικὰς ἐπισυλλέξαι δυνάμεις καὶ ἦρος ἐπιφανέντος
and foreign to-gather-together forces and spring having-appeared
τηνικαῦτα πανστρατὶ κατὰ τοῦ βασιλέως χωρῆσαι. ἀλλ'
then with-all-his-army against the emperor to-advance but
οὐκ αὐτὸς μὲν ὁ Ῥομπέρτος, καίτοι νικητὴν ἑαυτὸν
not he indeed — Robert although victor himself
καὶ τροπαιοῦχον ἀνευφημῶν, τοιαῦτα ἐλογίζετο, ὁ δ'
and trophy-bearer acclaiming such-things was-reckoning the and
ἡττηθεὶς βασιλεὺς καὶ τραυματίας γεγονὼς διὰ τὴν
defeated emperor and wounded having-become because-of the
ἀνύποιστον ἐκείνην ἥτταν καὶ τοσούτους καὶ τοιούτους
unbearable that defeat and so-many and such
ἀποβεβληκὼς μορμολυχθεὶς οἷον συνέσταλται· ἀλλὰ
having-lost having-been-frightened as-it-were has-shrunk but
μηδὲν σμικροπρεπὲς περὶ ἑαυτοῦ λογισάμενος μηδὲ
nothing mean-spirited about himself having-reckoned nor
χαλάσας ὅλως τὸν λογισμὸν σπεύδων ἦν ὅλῃ
having-slackened at-all the purpose hastening was with-whole
γνώμῃ τὴν ἥτταν ἦρος φανέντος ἀνακαλέσασθαι. ἦσαν
mind the defeat spring having-appeared to-retrieve they-were
γὰρ ἄμφω πάντα προϊδεῖν καὶ συνιδεῖν ἱκανοὶ καὶ
for both all-things to-foresee and to-perceive able and

πολεμικῶν τεχνασμάτων οὐδενὸς ἀδαεῖς, ἀλλὰ πάσαις μὲν
of-warlike stratagems of-none unskilled but in-all indeed
τειχομαχίαις, πάσαις δὲ λοχήσεσι καὶ ταῖς ἐκ παρατάξεως
sieges in-all and ambushes and in-the from pitched-battle
ἀγωνίαις ἐθάδες, τὰς δὲ διὰ χειρὸς πράξεις δραστικοὶ καὶ
contests practiced in-the and by hand deeds effective and
γενναῖοι καὶ ἐχθροὶ πάντων τῶν ὑπ᾽ οὐρανὸν ἡγεμόνων
noble and enemies of-all the under heaven leaders
γνώμῃ καὶ ἀνδρίᾳ κατάλληλοι. εἶχε δέ τι τοῦ
in-judgment and courage equal had and something —
Ῥομπέρτου πλέον ὁ βασιλεὺς Ἀλέξιος, ὅτι νεάζων τὴν
than-Robert more the emperor Alexios that being-young in-the
ἡλικίαν ἔτι κατ᾽ οὐδὲν ἐλάττων τοῦ ἤδη ἀκμάζοντος ἦν
age still in nothing inferior to-the already at-his-prime was
καὶ τὴν γῆν μικροῦ σαλεύειν ὅλας τε φάλαγγας ἐκ μόνου
and the earth almost to-shake whole and phalanxes by mere
ἐμβοήματος αὐχοῦντος συνταράττειν. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν
shout boasting to-confound but these(-things) indeed
ἐν ἑτέροις τηρείσθωσαν τόποις· μελήσει γὰρ πάντως
in other let-be-kept places it-will-concern for surely
τοῖς ἐγκωμιάζειν ἐθέλουσιν. ὁ δέ γε βασιλεὺς Ἀλέξιος
those to-praise wishing the and at-least emperor Alexios
ἐν Ἀχρίδι μικρὸν ἑαυτὸν ἀνακτησάμενος καὶ τὸ σῶμα
in Achris a-little himself having-recovered and the body
διαναπαύσας καταλαμβάνει τὴν Διάβολιν. καὶ τοὺς μὲν
having-rested reaches — Diabolis and those indeed
τοῦ πολέμου διασωθέντας τῆς ἐκ τοῦ μόθου κακοπαθείας
from-the war having-been-saved the from the turmoil hardship
ὡς ἐνὸν ἐπανελάμβανε, τοὺς δέ γε ἐπιλοίπους
as being-possible was-restoring those and at-least remaining
ἁπανταχόθεν ἀποστείλας διεκηρύκευε τὴν Θεσσαλονίκην
from-everywhere having-sent he-was-ordering-by-herald — Thessalonike

καταλαβεῖν. ἐπεὶ δὲ πεῖραν τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου καὶ τῆς
to-reach since and experience — of-Robert and of-the
τόλμης τοῦ τηλικούτου ἔσχε στρατεύματος καὶ πολλὴν
daring of-the so-great he-had army and much
ἀφέλειαν καὶ ἀνανδρίαν τῶν ὑπ' αὐτὸν κατεψηφίσατο
worthlessness and cowardice of-those under him he-condemned
(οὐ γὰρ ἂν προσθείην στρατιωτῶν, ὅτι καὶ οἱ τέως
not for — I-would-add of-soldiers that even those for-the-time
παρόντες ἀγύμναστοί τε τὸ παράπαν ἦσαν καὶ πάσης
present untrained both the at-all were and of-all
στρατιωτικῆς ἐμπειρίας ἀδαεῖς), διὰ τοῦτο γοῦν
military experience unskilled because-of this at-any-rate
ἐδεῖτο συμμάχων· τὸ δὲ ἄτερ χρημάτων οὐκ ἐνῆν·
he-needed allies this and without money not was-possible
τὰ δὲ οὐ παρῆν τῶν βασιλικῶν ταμιείων ἐπὶ μηδενὶ
the(-things) and not was-present the imperial treasuries for nothing
δέοντι κενωθέντων ὑπὸ τοῦ προβεβασιλευκότος Νικηφόρου
needful having-been-emptied by the predecessor-on-the-throne Nikephoros
τοῦ Βοτανειάτου τοσοῦτον, ὡς μηδὲ τῶν ταμιείων
the Botaneiates so-much so-that not-even of-the treasuries
κεκλεῖσθαι τὰς πύλας, ἀλλ' ἀνέτως πατεῖσθαι παντὶ τῷ
to-be-locked the gates but freely to-be-trodden by-every the
βουλομένῳ δι' αὐτῶν ὁδεύειν· προπέποτο γάρ. ἔνθεν
wishing through them to-go it-had-been-drunk-away for hence
τοι καὶ ἐν ἀμηχανίᾳ τὸ πᾶν καθίστατο ἀσθενείας καὶ
surely also in helplessness the whole was-set weakness and
πενίας ὁμοῦ συμπιεζούσης τὴν ὑπὸ Ῥωμαίους. τότε δὴ
poverty together pressing-hard the(-land) under Romans then indeed
τότε τί τὸν νέον βασιλέα καὶ ἄρτι τῶν τῆς βασιλείας
then what the young emperor and just of-the of-the empire
οἰάκων ἐπιβεβηκότα ἐχρῆν διαπράξασθαι; πάντως
helm having-mounted was-it-needful to-do surely

ἢ ἐξαπορούμενον τὸ πᾶν καταλιπόντα ἐκστῆναι τῆς
either being-at-a-loss the whole having-abandoned to-withdraw from-the
ἀρχῆς, ὡς μὴ ἀναίτιον ὄντα αἰτιῶτό τις αὐτὸν ὡς
rule so-that not blameless being should-blame anyone him as
ἀπειροπόλεμον καὶ ἀνεπιστήμονα ἀρχηγόν, ἢ ἐξ ἀνάγκης
inexperienced-in-war and unskilled leader or of necessity
ὡς ἐνὸν καὶ συμμάχους μετακαλέσασθαι καὶ τὰ τούτοις
as being-possible both allies to-summon and the for-them
ἐπαρκέσοντα χρήματα ὅθεν δήποτε συναγαγεῖν καὶ τοὺς
going-to-suffice money from-wherever ever to-collect and those
ἁπανταχῇ διασπαρέντας τοῦ στρατεύματος διὰ δωρεῶν
everywhere having-been-scattered of-the army by gifts
ἀνακαλεῖσθαι, ἵν' ἐντεῦθεν μείζους ἐλπίδας κτησάμενοι
to-recall that hence greater hopes having-acquired
αὐτοί τε μετ' αὐτοῦ ἐγκαρτερήσαιεν καὶ οἱ ἀπόντες
they both with him might-hold-out and those absent
πρὸς τὸ ἐπανέρχεσθαι προθυμότεροι γένοιντο καὶ οὕτως
toward the returning more-eager might-become and thus
γενναιότερον πρὸς τὰ Κελτικὰ πλήθη ἀντικαταστῆναι
more-nobly against the Celtic multitudes to-stand-against
δυνήσαιντο. ἀνάξιον μὲν οὖν καὶ ἀσύμφωνον τῆς αὐτοῦ
might-be-able unworthy indeed then and inconsistent with-the his
περὶ τὰ στρατιωτικὰ ἐπιστήμης ὁμοῦ καὶ τόλμης μηδὲν
about the military knowledge together and daring nothing
πεπραχέναι βουλόμενος πρὸς δύο ταῦτα ἀπέβλεψε,
to-have-done wishing to two these(-things) he-looked
συμμάχους τε ἁπανταχόθεν μεταπέμψασθαι ἐλπίσι πολλῶν
allies both from-everywhere to-send-for with-hopes of-many
δωρεῶν εὐμηχάνως τούτους ὑποσυρόμενος, τὴν δέ γε
gifts skillfully them drawing-over his and at-least

μητέρα καὶ τὸν ἀδελφὸν αἰτήσασθαι χρήματά οἱ
mother and the brother to-ask money to-him
ξυμπορισαμένους ὅθεν δήποτε ἐκπέμψαι.
having-provided-together from-wherever ever to-send

II · THE CHURCH'S TREASURE

Alexios and Isaac give what money they have, and first of all the empress, Anna's mother, gives her inheritance. When it is not enough, the emperors turn to the canons that let sacred objects be sold to ransom captives, and the sebastokrator Isaac asks the synod for the idle ornaments of the churches. Metaxas mocks him. Leo of Chalcedon protests against the stripping of the Chalkoprateia doors, rails at the emperor, and teaches unsoundly about the veneration of icons. He is deposed, condemned, and exiled to Sozopolis on the Pontus.

Οἱ δὲ πόρον πορισμοῦ μὴ ἐφευρίσκοντες ἕτερον πρότερον
they and a-way of-providing not finding other first
μὲν ἅπαντα τὰ αὐτῶν συναγαγόντες χρήματα, ὁπόσα ἐν
indeed all the their having-gathered money as-much-as in
χρυσῷ καὶ ἀργύρῳ, τῇ βασιλικῇ χωνείᾳ παραπεπόμφασι·
gold and silver to-the imperial melting have-sent
πρώτη δὲ πάντων ἡ βασιλὶς καὶ μήτηρ ἐμὴ ὁπόσα
first and of-all the empress and mother my as-much-as
ἔκ τε μητρῴου καὶ πατρῴου κλήρου ἐνυπῆρχον αὐτῇ,
from both maternal and paternal inheritance belonged to-her
κατεβάλετο καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ἐντεῦθεν πρὸς τοῦτο
put-down and the others thereby to this
ἐρεθίσαι οἰομένη· ἐδεδίει γὰρ ὑπὲρ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος
to-provoke thinking she-feared for on-behalf-of the autocrat
ἐν στενῷ κομιδῇ τὰ κατ᾽ αὐτὸν ὁρῶσα· εἶτα
in strait utterly the(-affairs) concerning him seeing then

δὴ καὶ ἐξ ἑτέρων, ὁπόσοι εὐνοϊκώτερον πρὸς τοὺς
indeed also from others as-many-as more-loyally toward the
βασιλεῖς τούτους διέκειντο, αὐθαιρέτως προτεθυμηκότων
emperors these were-disposed of-their-own-will having-been-eager
καταβαλέσθαι, ὁπόσον ἕκαστος εἶχε προθέσεως, χρυσίου
to-put-down as-much-as each had of-inclination of-gold
καὶ ἀργυρίου πορισάμενοι ἐξέπεμψαν τὸ μέν τι
and of-silver having-provided sent-out partly indeed somewhat
τοῖς συμμάχοις, τὸ δέ τι πρὸς τὸν αὐτοκράτορα.
to-the allies partly and somewhat to the autocrat
ἀλλὰ πρὸς τὴν ἐπικειμένην χρείαν μηδαμῶς ἐξαρκούντων,
but for the pressing need in-no-way sufficing
τῶν μὲν χάριτας αἰτούντων ὡς συναγωνισαμένων δῆθεν,
those indeed favors asking as having-fought-together supposedly
τῶν δέ, ὁπόσον μισθοφορικόν, δαψιλέστερον τὸν μισθὸν
those and as-much-as mercenary more-generously the pay
ἐξαιτουμένων, ἐνέκειτο αὖθις καὶ ἕτερα ἀνακαλούμενος
demanding pressed-on again and others summoning
διὰ τὸ ἀπεγνωκέναι τὴν Ῥωμαίων εὔνοιαν. οἱ δὲ ἐν
because-of the to-have-despaired-of the of-Romans goodwill they and in
ἀμηχανίᾳ γεγονότες καὶ πολλοὺς λογισμοὺς ἀνελίξαντες
helplessness having-become and many reckonings having-turned-over
ἰδίᾳ τε καὶ κοινῇ, ἐπεὶ καὶ τὸν Ῥομπέρτον αὖθις
in-private both and in-common since also — Robert again
ὁπλιζόμενον μεμαθήκεσαν, μὴ ἔχοντες ὅ τι καὶ δράσαιεν
arming-himself they-had-learned not having what — also they-might-do
εἰς τοὺς πάλαι κειμένους νόμους καὶ τοὺς κανόνας περὶ τῆς
to the long-ago laid-down laws and the canons about the
τῶν ἱερῶν ἐκποιήσεως ἀπέβλεψαν. καὶ μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων
of-the sacred-objects alienation looked and with the others
εὑρηκότες ὅτιπερ ἐπ᾽ ἀναρρύσει αἰχμαλώτων τὰ τῶν
having-found that for ransoming of-captives the of-the

ἁγίων τοῦ θεοῦ ἐκκλησιῶν ἱερὰ ἔξεστιν ἐκποιεῖσθαι
holy — of-God churches sacred-objects is-permitted to-alienate
(ἑώρων δὲ ὅτι καὶ τῶν Χριστιανῶν, ὅσοι περὶ τὴν
they-saw and that also of-the Christians as-many-as about —
Ἀσίαν ὑπὸ τὴν βαρβαρικὴν ἐτέλουν χεῖρα καὶ ὁπόσοι τὴν
Asia under the barbarian paid-tribute hand and as-many-as the
σφαγὴν ἐξέφυγον, ἐμιαίνοντο διὰ τὴν μετὰ τῶν ἀπίστων
slaughter escaped were-defiled because-of the with the unbelievers
συναναστροφήν), ὀλίγα τινὰ τῶν πάλαι ἠργηκότων ἱερῶν
association few some of-the long-ago idle sacred-objects
καὶ καταλελυμένων ὡς εἰς μηδεμίαν χρείαν συντελοῦντα,
and dissolved as for no use serving
ἀλλ' ἀφορμὴν μόνον ἱεροσυλίας καὶ ἀσεβείας ἅμα τοῖς
but occasion only of-sacrilege and of-impiety together to-the
πολλοῖς παρεχόμενα ὡς ὕλην χαράγματος εἰς μισθὸν
many providing as material of-coinage for pay
τοῖς στρατιώταις καὶ συμμάχοις τὰ τοιαῦτα χρηματίσαι
to-the soldiers and allies the such-things to-coin
ἐσκέψαντο. τούτου γοῦν συνδόξαντος ἀνέρχεται ὁ
considered this at-any-rate having-been-agreed goes-up the
σεβαστοκράτωρ Ἰσαάκιος εἰς τὸ τοῦ θεοῦ μέγα τέμενος
sebastokrator Isaac to the — of-God great precinct
τὴν σύνοδον ἐκκλησιάσας καὶ τὸ τῆς ἐκκλησίας ἅπαν
the synod having-assembled and the of-the church whole
πλήρωμα. θεασάμενοι δὲ τοῦτον οἱ τῆς ἱερᾶς συνόδου
body having-beheld and him those of-the sacred synod
ἐπ' ἐκκλησίας συνεδριάζοντες τῷ πατριάρχῃ ἔκθαμβοι
at church sitting-in-council with-the patriarch astounded
γεγονότες ἠρώτων, ὅτου χάριν παρεγένετο. ὁ δὲ "λέξων
having-become asked of-what for-the-sake he-had-come he and going-to-say
ἥκω τι πρὸς ὑμᾶς χρήσιμον τῇ βιαίᾳ τῶν πραγμάτων
I-come something to you useful in-the violent of-the affairs

παρεμπτώσει καὶ σωστικὸν τοῦ στρατοῦ.” ἅμα δὲ
onset and saving of-the army together and
καὶ τοὺς περὶ τῶν μὴ χρησιμευόντων ἱερῶν κανόνας
also the about the not serving sacred-objects canons
ἀπεστομάτιζε καὶ πολλὰ περὶ τούτων δημηγορήσας
he-recited and many-things about these having-harangued
“ἀναγκάζομαί” φησιν “ἀναγκάζειν, οὓς οὐ βούλομαι
I-am-compelled he-says to-compel whom not I-wish
ἀναγκάζειν.” καὶ γενναίους προτιθέμενος λογισμοὺς ἐδόκει
to-compel and noble setting-forth reasonings he-seemed
τάχα πείθειν τοὺς πλείονας. ὁ δέ γε Μεταξᾶς ἀντέτεινεν
perhaps to-persuade the more-part — and at-least Metaxas opposed
ἀνθυποφοράς τινας εὐλόγους εἰσαγαγών, ἀποσκώπτων
counter-objections some reasonable having-introduced mocking
ἅμα καὶ πρὸς αὐτὸν τὸν Ἰσαάκιον. ἀλλ’ ὅμως τὰ
together also at himself — Isaac but nevertheless the(-things)
δεδογμένα ἐκράτει. τοῦτο ὕλη μεγίστης κατηγορίας τοῖς
resolved prevailed this material of-greatest accusation for-the
βασιλεῦσιν ἐγένετο (οὐκ ὀκνῶ γὰρ καὶ τὸν Ἰσαάκιον
emperors became not I-hesitate for also — Isaac
ἀπόρφυρον βασιλέα κατονομάζειν) οὐ τότε μόνον, ἀλλὰ
without-the-purple emperor to-name not then only but
καὶ μέχρι καιροῦ διαρκέσασα. καὶ γὰρ ἀρχιερεύς τις
also until (a-long)-time having-lasted and for high-priest a-certain
τηνικαῦτα Χαλκηδόνος Λέων προὐκάθητο, οὐ τῶν πάνυ
then of-Chalcedon Leo presided not of-the very
σοφῶν καὶ λογίων, ἀρετῆς δὲ ἐπιμεμελημένος, τὸ δὲ
wise and learned of-virtue and having-taken-care the and
ἦθος αὐτῷ σκληρὸν καὶ ἀπόκροτον· οὗτος οὖν τῶν ἐν
character to-him harsh and rugged this-man then the in
τοῖς Χαλκοπρατίοις πυλῶν ἀφαιρουμένων τοῦ ἐπικειμένου
the Chalkoprateia gates being-stripped of-the lying-on

αὐταῖς ἀργυρίου ἢ καὶ χρυσίου εἰς τὸ μέσον εἰσδὺς
them silver or also gold into the middle having-entered
ἐπαρρησιάζετο μηδ᾽ ὅλως ἢ οἰκονομίας ἢ τῶν περὶ τῶν
spoke-boldly not-even at-all either of-dispensation or of-the about the
ἱερῶν κειμένων νόμων ἐπαισθανόμενος. ὑβριστικώτερον
sacred-objects laid-down laws perceiving more-insolently
δὲ καὶ οἷον εἰπεῖν ἀτακτότερον τῷ τηνικαῦτα κρατοῦντι
and also so to-speak more-disorderly toward-the then ruling
προσεφέρετο, ὁσάκις εἰς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν ἐπανήει τῇ
bore-himself as-often-as to the reigning(-city) he-returned the
ἀνεξικακίᾳ ἐκείνου καὶ τῇ φιλανθρωπίᾳ καταχρώμενος.
forbearance of-that-man and the humanity abusing
καὶ ὁπηνίκα μὲν τὰ πρῶτα κατὰ τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου ὁ
and when indeed the first-time against — Robert the
αὐτοκράτωρ τῆς βασιλίδος πόλεως ἐξῄει, Ἰσαακίου τοῦ
autocrat from-the imperial city went-out Isaac the
σεβαστοκράτορος καὶ αὐταδέλφου αὐτοῦ μετὰ τῆς κοινῆς
sebastokrator and own-brother his with the common
γνώμης ὅθεν δήποτε συμποριζομένου χρήματα μετὰ
judgment from-wherever ever providing money with
τῶν νόμων ἅμα καὶ τοῦ δικαίου, εἰς θυμὸν ἐκίνει τὸν
the laws together and the just to anger he-moved the
ῥηθέντα ἀδελφὸν τοῦ βασιλέως ἀναισχυντότερον αὐτῷ
said brother of-the emperor more-shamelessly toward-him
προσφερόμενος. ὡς δὲ καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς πολλάκις μὲν
bearing-himself as and also the emperor many-times indeed
ἡττηθεὶς καὶ μυριάκις αὖθις κατατολμήσας τῶν Κελτῶν
defeated and countless-times again having-dared the Celts
θεοῦ νεύσει νικηφόρος στεφανίτης ἐπανεληλύθει, ἐπεὶ καὶ
of-God by-the-nod victorious crowned had-returned since also
αὖθις ἄλλο νέφος ἐχθρῶν, τοὺς Σκύθας φημί, κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ
again another cloud of-enemies the Scythians I-mean against him

ἐξορμῶν ἤδη μεμαθήκοι, καὶ διὰ τοῦτο καὶ ἡ συλλογὴ
rushing-out already he-had-learned and because-of this also the collection
τῶν χρημάτων, καὶ τοῦ βασιλέως ἐν τῇ μεγαλοπόλει
of-the money and the emperor in the great-city
ἐνδημοῦντος, ἐφ' ὁμοίαις αἰτίαις ἐσπουδάζετο, ὁ ἀρχιερεὺς
residing on similar grounds was-pressed the high-priest
ἐκεῖνος ἀναιδέστερον προσέπεσε τῷ αὐτοκράτορι. καὶ
that more-shamelessly fell-upon the autocrat and
συζητήσεως πολλῆς ἐντεῦθεν περὶ τῶν ἱερῶν γινομένης,
of-disputation much thence about the sacred-objects arising
λατρευτικῶς, οὐ σχετικῶς δὲ προσκυνεῖσθαι τὰς ἁγίας
adoringly not relatively and to-be-venerated the holy
εἰκόνας παρ' ἡμῶν ἐδογμάτιζεν ἔν τισι μὲν εὐλόγως
icons by us he-taught-as-dogma in some indeed reasonably
ἅμα καὶ ἀρχιερατικῶς ἐνιστάμενος, ἔν τισι δὲ καὶ οὐκ
together and as-a-high-priest resisting in some and also not
ὀρθῶς δογματίζων οὐκ οἶδ' εἴτε δι' ἔριν καὶ τὴν
rightly dogmatizing not I-know whether because-of strife and the
πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα ἀπέχθειαν τοῦτο πεπονθὼς εἴτε δι'
toward the emperor hatred this having-suffered or because-of
ἄγνοιαν. ἐξακριβοῦν γὰρ ἀσφαλῶς τὸν λόγον οὐκ εἶχεν,
ignorance to-define-exactly for securely the reasoning not he-could
ὅτι λογικῆς μαθήσεως ἀμέτοχος ὑπῆρχε παντάπασιν.
because of-logical learning without-share he-was utterly
ὡς δ' ἐπὶ πλέον πρὸς τοὺς βασιλεῖς ἐθρασύνετο
as and on more toward the emperors he-grew-bold
χαιρεκάκοις ἀνδράσι πειθόμενος, ὁποῖοι πολλοὶ τότε
to-malicious men obeying of-which-sort many then
ὑπῆρχον τοῦ πολιτεύματος, εἰς τοῦτο παρανυττόμενος
were of-the citizen-body to this being-goaded
καὶ πρὸς ὕβρεις καὶ βλασφημίας ἀκαίρους ἐτράπετο, καὶ
and to insults and blasphemies untimely he-turned and

ταῦτα παρακαλοῦντος αὐτὸν τοῦ βασιλέως μεταβαλεῖν
this exhorting him the emperor to-change
τὴν περὶ τῶν εἰκόνων γνώμην, ἔτι δὲ καὶ τῆς πρὸς
the about the icons opinion yet and also from-the toward
αὐτὸν ἀποσχέσθαι ἀπεχθείας, ὑπισχνουμένου ἅμα καὶ τὰ
him to-abstain hatred promising together also the
ἱερὰ ταῖς ἁγίαις ἐκκλησίαις λαμπρότερα ἀποδοῦναι
sacred-objects to-the holy churches more-splendid to-restore
καὶ πᾶν ὅ τι δέοι ποιεῖν πρὸς διόρθωσιν, καὶ
and all whatever — it-might-be-needful to-do for restoration and
ἤδη καὶ διορθουμένου παρὰ τῶν ἑλλογιμωτέρων τότε
already also making-restitution by the more-learned then
τῆς συνόδου, οὓς οἱ τῷ τοῦ Χαλκηδόνος μέρει
of-the synod whom those to-the of-the(-man) of-Chalcedon side
προσκείμενοι κόλακας ἐκάλουν, καθαιρέσει κατεδικάζετο.
attached flatterers called with-deposition was-condemned
ὡς δὲ μηδὲν ὑποπτήσσων οὐδ᾽ ὅλως ἠρέμει, ἀλλὰ καὶ
as and nothing cowering not-even at-all was-quiet but also
αὖθις συνετάραττε τὴν ἐκκλησίαν οὐκ ἀγεννῆ φατρίαν
again was-confounding the church not ignoble faction
συνεπαγόμενος, ὡς ἄτεγκτος ἦν πάντη καὶ ἀδιόρθωτος,
bringing-along as unbending he-was wholly and incorrigible
μετὰ πολλῶν ἐνιαυτῶν παρέλευσιν πάντες ὁμοῦ τοῦ
after many years passing all together the
ἀνδρὸς κατεψηφίσαντο· κἀντεῦθεν ὑπερορίαν καταδικάζεται.
man condemned and-thence to-exile is-condemned
καὶ δέχεται τοῦτον ἡ περὶ τὸν Πόντον Σωζόπολις
and receives him the about the Pontus Sozopolis
παντοίας προνοίας καὶ θεραπείας βασιλικῆς ἀξιούμενον,
all-manner-of care and attendance imperial being-thought-worthy
κἂν οὐδαμῶς χρᾶσθαι ταύταις ἠβούλετο ὕστερον δι᾽
even-if in-no-way to-use them he-wished afterward because-of

ἣν πρὸς τὸν αὐτοκράτορα ἔτρεφε μῆνιν, ὡς ἔοικεν. ἀλλὰ
which toward the autocrat he-nursed wrath as it-seems but
ταῦτα μὲν ὧδέ πη περιγεγράφθω.
these(-things) indeed thus somehow let-be-circumscribed

III · ROBERT CALLED HOME

Alexios trains his recruits and urges the king of Alamania by letter to invade Lombardy, promising a marriage-alliance. The Manichaeans Xantas and Kouleon go home and will not return. When Robert hears that the king is coming, he gives Bohemond the command in Illyricum, charges him to keep making war on the emperor, and crosses to Salerno. The king, hearing of Alexios' defeat, turns home; Robert restores the pope to his throne and returns to Salerno.

Ὁ δέ γε αὐτοκράτωρ τοὺς νεήλυδας (συνέρρεον
the and at-least autocrat the newcomers were-flowing-together
γὰρ ἱκανοὶ περισωθέντα τοῦτον μεμαθηκότες) ἐπιμελῶς
for considerable having-survived this having-learned carefully
ἐξεπαίδευεν, ὅπως ἱππεύειν χρὴ εὐοχώτατα καὶ
was-training how to-ride it-is-needful most-steadily and
τοξεύειν εὐστοχώτατα, ὁπλιτεύειν τε καὶ ἐνεδρεύειν
to-shoot-the-bow most-accurately to-serve-in-arms both and to-lie-in-ambush
ἐπικαιρότατα. ἐπεπόμφει δὲ αὖθις καὶ πρὸς τὸν ῥῆγα
most-opportunely he-had-sent and again also to the king
Ἀλαμανίας πρέσβεις, ὧν προεξῆρχεν ὁ Μηθύμνης
of-Alamania envoys whom led the(-man) of-Methymna
καλούμενος, καὶ διὰ γραφῆς ἐπὶ πλέον ἐρεθίζει μὴ μέλλειν
called and through letter yet more he-provokes not to-delay
ἔτι, ἀλλὰ τὰς αὐτοῦ ἀναλαβόμενον δυνάμεις τάχιον
still but the his having-taken-up forces more-quickly
τὴν Λογγιβαρδίαν καταλαβεῖν κατὰ τὰς συγκειμένας
— Lombardy to-seize according-to the agreed

συνθήκας, ἐφ᾽ ᾧ ἀπασχολῆσαι τὸν Ῥομπέρτον, ἵν᾽ οὕτως
treaties for which to-occupy — Robert that thus
ἀδείας τυχὼν στρατεύματα αὖθις καὶ ξενικὰς δυνάμεις
security having-gained armies again and foreign forces
συλλέξηται καὶ οὕτω τοῦτον τοῦ Ἰλλυρικοῦ ἀπελάσῃ,
he-might-gather and so him — of-Illyricum he-might-drive-out
πολλὰς τῷ Ἀλαμανίας ῥηγὶ ὁμολογήσας τὰς χάριτας,
many to-the of-Alamania king having-promised the favors
εἰ οὕτω ποιήσειε, καὶ τὸ ὑποσχεθὲν αὐτῷ διὰ τῶν
if so he-should-do and the having-been-promised to-him through the
παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ σταλέντων πρέσβεων κῆδος ἐκπληρῶσαι
by him sent envoys marriage-alliance to-fulfill
διαβεβαιούμενος. ταῦτα οἰκονομήσας τὸν Πακουριανὸν
affirming these(-things) having-arranged — Pakourianos
μέγαν δομέστικον αὐτοῦ που καταλιπὼν αὐτὸς πρὸς τὴν
grand domestic there somewhere having-left he to the
βασιλεύουσαν ἐπανέρχεται, ἐφ᾽ ᾧ καὶ ξενικὰς ἁπανταχόθεν
reigning(-city) returns for which also foreign from-everywhere
συλλέξασθαι δυνάμεις καὶ ἄλλα τινὰ οἰκονομῆσαι τῷ
to-gather forces and other some to-arrange the
καιρῷ καὶ τοῖς ξυμπεσοῦσι πράγμασι συμβαλλόμενα. οἱ
occasion and the having-befallen affairs contributing the
δὲ Μανιχαῖοι, ὅ τε Ξαντᾶς καὶ ὁ Κουλέων, μετὰ
and Manichaeans — both Xantas and — Kouleon with
τῶν ὑπ᾽ αὐτοὺς ὡς εἰς δύο πρὸς τῇ ἡμισείᾳ χιλιάδας
those under them as to two with the half thousands
ποσουμένων ἀσυντάκτως οἴκαδε ἐπανέρχονται. καὶ πολλάκις
numbering in-disorder homeward return and many-times
μετακαλούμενοι παρὰ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος ὑπισχνοῦντο μὲν
being-summoned by the autocrat promised indeed
ἐληλυθέναι, ὑπερετίθεντο δὲ τὴν ἔλευσιν. ὁ δὲ ἐπέκειτο
to-have-come were-postponing but the coming he and pressed

καὶ δωρεὰς αὐτοῖς καὶ τιμὰς διὰ γραφῶν ὑπισχνούμενος,
and gifts to-them and honors through letters promising
καὶ οὐδ᾽ οὕτως πρὸς αὐτὸν ἐληλύθεσαν. οὕτως οὖν τοῦ
and not-even thus to him they-had-come thus then the
βασιλέως κατὰ τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου ἑτοιμαζομένου ἦκέ τις
emperor against — Robert preparing came someone
τῷ Ῥομπέρτῳ ἀπαγγέλλων τὴν τοῦ ῥηγὸς Ἀλαμανίας
— to-Robert announcing the of-the king of-Alamania
εἰς Λογγιβαρδίαν ὅσον ἤδη ἄφιξιν. ὁ δὲ ἐν ἀμηχανίᾳ
into Lombardy all-but already arrival he and in helplessness
γεγονὼς διεσκοπεῖτο τί ἂν χρὴ ποιεῖν. πολλὰ
having-become was-considering what — it-is-needful to-do many-things
τοίνυν γνωσιμαχήσας, ἐπεὶ τὸν μὲν Ῥογέρην ἐν τῷ
therefore having-changed-his-mind since — indeed Roger at the
πρὸς τὸ Ἰλλυρικὸν διαπερᾶν διάδοχον τῆς αὐτοῦ ἀρχῆς
toward — Illyricum crossing successor of-the his rule
κατέλιπε, τῷ δέ γε Βαϊμούντῳ νεωτέρῳ ὄντι οὔπω
he-had-left — and at-least to-Bohemond younger being not-yet
χώραν τινὰ ἀπενείματο, συναγαγὼν τοὺς κόμητας ἅπαντας
land any he-had-allotted having-gathered the counts all
καὶ ἐκκρίτους τοῦ ὁπλιτικοῦ παντὸς μετακαλεσάμενος
and picked-men of-the heavy-armed-force all having-summoned
τὸν υἱὸν αὐτοῦ Βαϊμοῦντον τὸν Σανίσκον δημηγόρος
the son his Bohemond the Saniskos as-an-orator
προὐκάθητο καί φησιν "οἴδατε, κόμητες, ὅτι τὸν φίλτατόν
sat-presiding and says you-know counts that the dearest
μοι υἱὸν Ῥογέρην καὶ πρωτότοκον τῶν υἱῶν κύριον τῆς
to-me son Roger and first-born of-the sons lord of-the
ἐμῆς ἐν τῷ πρὸς τὸ Ἰλλυρικὸν μέλλειν διαπερᾶν κατέστησα
my in the toward — Illyricum being-about to-cross I-appointed
χώρας. οὐ γὰρ ἐχρῆν ἐκεῖθεν ὑποχωροῦντα καὶ τοιοῦτο
land not for it-was-fitting from-there withdrawing and such

ἀναδεχόμενον ἔργον τὴν ἰδίαν χώραν ἄτερ ἡγεμόνος
undertaking a-task the own land without leader
καταλιπεῖν εἰς προνομὴν ἕτοιμον παντὶ τῷ βουλομένῳ
to-leave for plunder ready to-every the wishing
ἐκκεῖσθαι. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ ῥὴξ Ἀλαμανίας πολιορκήσων ταύτην
to-lie-exposed since and the king of-Alamania going-to-besiege it
ἤδη καταλαμβάνει, χρὴ καὶ ἡμᾶς ὡς ἐνὸν ταύτης
already arrives it-is-needful also us as being-possible it
ἀντιποιήσασθαι. οὐδὲ γὰρ δεῖ ἑτέρων ἐπιλαμβανομένους
to-lay-claim-to not for it-is-right other-lands seizing
τῶν ἰδίων κατερρᾳθυμηκέναι. λοιπὸν ἐγὼ μὲν ἄπειμι, ἐφ᾽
the own to-have-neglected for-the-rest I indeed depart for
ᾧ τῆς οἰκείας χώρας ἀντιποιήσασθαι, τὴν πρὸς τὸν
which the own land to-lay-claim-to the against the(-king)
Ἀλαμανίας ἀναδησάμενος μάχην. τουτῳὶ δέ μοι τῷ υἱῷ
of-Alamania having-taken-up battle to-this-one and to-me the son
τῷ νεωτέρῳ ἐπαφίημι τό τε Δυρράχιον καὶ τὸν Αὐλῶνα
the younger I-leave-over — both Dyrrachion and — Avlona
καὶ τὰς λοιπὰς πόλεις καὶ νήσους, ὅσας φθάσας
and the remaining cities and islands as-many-as having-been-first
αὐτὸς τῷμῷ δόρατι κατέσχον. παρεγγυῶμαι δὲ καὶ
I with-my-own spear held I-charge and also
ὑμῖν καὶ ἀξιῶ ὡς ἐμὲ τοῦτον λογίζεσθαι καὶ ὅλῃ
to-you and I-ask as me him to-reckon and with-whole
ψυχῇ καὶ γνώμῃ ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ μάχεσθαι. καὶ σοὶ δὲ τῷ
soul and mind for him to-fight and to-you too the
φιλτάτῳ μοι ἐπισκήπτω υἱῷ" ἀποστρέψας τὸν λόγον
dearest to-me I-enjoin son having-turned the speech
πρὸς τὸν Βαϊμοῦντον "διὰ τιμῆς πάσης τοὺς κόμητας
to — Bohemond in honor all the counts
ἄγειν καὶ συμβούλοις ἐν ἅπασι χρᾶσθαι καὶ μὴ οἷον
to-hold and as-counselors in all to-use and not as-it-were

ἐναυθεντεῖν, ἀλλὰ πάντων αὐτοῖς κοινωνεῖν. σὺ δὲ ἀλλ'
to-act-as-sole-master but in-all-things with-them to-share you and but
ὅρα μὴ καταμελήσῃς τὸν κατὰ τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων
see-that not you-neglect the against the emperor of-Romans
ἀναπράξασθαι πόλεμον, ἀλλ' ἐν ὅσῳ μεγάλην ἥτταν
to-exact war but in the-while-that great defeat
ἡττήθη καὶ μικροῦ μαχαίρας ἔργον ἐγεγόνει καὶ τὸ
he-was-defeated and almost of-the-sword a-work had-become and the
πολὺ τῶν αὐτοῦ στρατευμάτων τῷ πολέμῳ ἀνήλωτο
greater-part of-the his armies in-the war had-been-spent
("καὶ γάρ" φησι "καὶ ἐγγὺς ἦλθε τοῦ ζωγρηθῆναι καὶ ἐκ
and for he-says also near he-came to-the to-be-taken-alive and from
μέσων τῶν χειρῶν ἡμῶν τραυματίας ᾤχετο"), μὴ ἀνήσεις
middle the hands our wounded he-went not you-shall-relax
ὅλως, μή πως ἀνέσεως τυχὼν συλλέξαι τό τε πνεῦμα
at-all lest somehow respite having-gained to-collect the both breath
καὶ γενναιότερον ἢ τὸ πρότερον ἀντικατασταίη σοι. οὐ
and more-nobly than the before he-may-stand-against you not
γὰρ τῶν τυχόντων ὁ ἀνήρ, ἀλλ' ἐκ νηπίου πολέμοις καὶ
for of-the ordinary the man but from infancy in-wars and
μάχαις ἐντραφεὶς πᾶσάν τε τὴν ἕω καὶ τὴν ἑσπέραν
battles having-been-reared all both the east and the west
διεληλυθὼς ὁπόσους ἀποστάτας τοῖς πρώην αὐτοκράτορσι
having-gone-through how-many rebels to-the former autocrats
δορυθηράτους ἐποίησε, καὶ αὐτὸς πάντως ἐκ πολλῶν
spear-captured he-made and you surely from many
ἀκούεις. εἰ γοῦν ὅλως ἀναπέσῃς καὶ μὴ κατ' αὐτοῦ
you-hear if at-any-rate at-all you-fall-back and not against him
χωρήσεις πάσῃ γνώμῃ, ὁπόσα μὲν αὐτὸς ἔργα πολλὰ
you-advance with-all mind as-many-as indeed I works many
καμὼν ἤνυσα, φροῦδα ποιήσεις, αὐτὸς δὲ τοὺς καρποὺς
having-toiled accomplished vanished you-will-make you and the fruits

τῆς ἰδίας ῥᾳθυμίας πάντως δρέψῃ. κἀγὼ μὲν ἤδη ἄπειμι
of-the own sloth surely you-will-reap and-I indeed already depart
ἀγωνισόμενος τὸν ῥῆγα τῆς ἡμεδαπῆς ἀπελάσαι χώρας
going-to-contend the king from-the our-own to-drive-out land
καὶ οὕτω τὸν φίλτατόν μοι Ῥογέρην ἐπὶ τῆς δοθείσης
and thus the dearest to-me Roger upon the given
αὐτῷ ἐξουσίας ἑδράσαι." οὕτω μὲν οὖν συνταξάμενος
to-him authority to-establish thus indeed then having-taken-leave
αὐτῷ εἰσεληλυθὼς εἰς μονῆρες τὴν περαίαν τῆς
of-him having-embarked into a-single-banked-ship the opposite-shore —
Λογγιβαρδίας κατέλαβε· καὶ ὀξέως εἰς τὸ Σαλερηνὸν
of-Lombardy reached and quickly to — Salerno
ἐκεῖθεν παραγίνεται, ὅπερ πάλαι ποτὲ εἰς κατοικίαν τῶν
from-there arrives which long-ago once for dwelling of-those
τῆς δουκικῆς ἀξίας ἀντιποιουμένων ἀφώριστο. κεῖθι
the ducal rank laying-claim-to had-been-set-apart there
γοῦν ἐγκαρτερήσας ἱκανὰς συνειλόχει δυνάμεις καὶ
at-any-rate having-stayed considerable he-had-collected forces and
μισθοφορικὸν ἐξ ἀλλοδαπῶν ὅτι πλεῖστον. ὁ δὲ ῥὴξ
mercenary-force from foreigners as much-as-possible the and king
Ἀλαμανίας κατὰ τὰς πρὸς τὸν αὐτοκράτορα ὑποσχέσεις
of-Alamania according-to the to the autocrat promises
καταλαμβάνειν ἤδη τὴν Λογγιβαρδίαν ἠπείγετο. τοῦτο
to-seize already — Lombardy was-hastening this
μεμαθηκὼς ὁ Ῥομπέρτος ἔσπευδε τὴν Ῥώμην καταλαβεῖν
having-learned — Robert hastened — Rome to-reach
ἑνωθησόμενός τε τῷ πάπᾳ καὶ τὸν Ἀλαμανίας
going-to-unite-himself both with-the pope and the(-king) of-Alamania
ἀπείρξων τοῦ προκειμένου σκοποῦ. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδ' ὁ
going-to-shut-out from-the proposed aim since and not-even the
πάπας πρὸς τοῦτο ἀνένευεν, ἄμφω κατὰ τοῦ Ἀλαμανίας
pope to this refused both against the(-king) of-Alamania

ἐξώρμησαν. ὁ μέντοι ῥὴξ πολιορκῆσαι τὴν Λογγιβαρδίαν
set-out the however king to-besiege — Lombardy
ἐπειγόμενος, ἐπεὶ καὶ τὰ κατὰ τὸν αὐτοκράτορα
hastening since also the(-affairs) concerning the autocrat
μεμαθήκοι καὶ ὅτι μεγάλην ἥτταν ἡττηθείς, τῶν μὲν
he-had-learned and that great defeat having-been-defeated of-those indeed
τοῦ στρατεύματος ξιφῶν παρανάλωμα γεγονότων, τῶν
of-the army of-swords casualty having-become of-those
δὲ ἑκασταχοῦ διασπαρέντων, αὐτὸς εἰς πολλοὺς καταστὰς
and everywhere having-been-scattered he into many having-fallen
κινδύνους ἐν τῷ γενναίως μάχεσθαι καιρίως ἐν διαφόροις
dangers in the nobly fighting mortally in various
τοῦ σώματος πληγεὶς μέρεσι τόλμῃ καὶ γενναιότητι
of-the body struck parts by-daring and nobility
γνώμης παραδόξως ἐρρύσθη, στρέψας τὰς ἡνίας πρὸς
of-mind unexpectedly was-saved having-turned the reins toward
τὴν ἐνεγκαμένην ἐχώρει τοῦτο νίκην λογισάμενος τὸ μὴ
the land-that-bore-him went this victory having-reckoned the not
κινδύνοις ἑαυτὸν ὑποβαλεῖν ἐπὶ μηδενὶ δέοντι. οὗτος μὲν
to-dangers himself to-subject for nothing needful he indeed
οὖν εἶχετο τῆς πρὸς τὰ οἴκοι φερούσης· ὁ δὲ Ῥομπέρτος
then held to-the toward the at-home leading(-road) — and Robert
φθάσας εἰς τὴν τοῦ ῥηγὸς παρεμβολὴν αὐτὸς μὲν
having-arrived-first at the of-the king camp he indeed
προσωτέρω διώκειν οὐκ ἤθελεν, ἀπόμοιραν δὲ ἱκανὴν τῶν
farther to-pursue not wished detachment and considerable of-the
αὐτοῦ ταγμάτων διελὼν διώκειν τὸν Ἀλαμανίας
his units having-divided-off to-pursue the(-king) of-Alamania
προὐτρέψατο. αὐτὸς δὲ τὴν λείαν πᾶσαν ἀναλαβόμενος
urged he and the booty all having-taken-up
μετὰ τοῦ πάπα πρὸς Ῥώμην ἀπένευσε. καὶ τοῦτον ἐπὶ
with the pope toward Rome turned and him on

τοῦ ἰδίου θρόνου ἑδράσας εὐφημίας αὖθις παρ᾽ ἐκείνου
the own throne having-seated acclamations again from that-man
τυγχάνει κἄπειτα πρὸς τὸ Σαλερηνὸν ἐπανέρχεται τῆς ἐκ
obtains and-then to — Salerno returns the from
τῶν πολλῶν μόθων κακοπαθείας ἑαυτὸν ἀνακτησόμενος.
the many turmoils hardship himself going-to-recover

IV · THE WAGONS AND THE CALTROPS

Bohemond takes Ioannina and fortifies its citadel. Alexios marches out in May with wagons fitted with poles to break the Latin charge, but Bohemond splits his force around them and routs the Romans. Alexios fights his way out by Strougai to Achris. In a second battle he strews caltrops, but Bohemond learns of the plan, attacks from the flanks, and wins again. Alexios, pursued by Bohemond and his counts, strikes down a pursuer and escapes to the city.

Μετ᾽ οὐ πολὺ δὲ καταλαμβάνει τοῦτον ὁ Βαϊμοῦντος τὴν
after not long and reaches him — Bohemond the
ἀγγελίαν τῆς ἐπισυμβάσης αὐτῷ ἥττης ἐπὶ τοῦ προσώπου
news of-the having-befallen him defeat on the face
φέρων. ὅπως δὲ ξυνέπεσε τὰ τῆς τύχης αὐτῷ, ὁ
bearing how and befell the(-things) of-the fortune to-him the
λόγος ἤδη δηλώσει. καὶ γὰρ τῶν ἐκείνου μεμνημένος
account now will-show and for the of-that-man mindful
παραγγελμάτων καὶ ἄλλως δὲ Ἀρηΐφιλος ὢν ἀνὴρ καὶ
commands and otherwise too dear-to-Ares being a-man and
φιλοκινδυνότατος ἀπρὶξ τῆς κατὰ τοῦ βασιλέως μάχης
most-fond-of-danger tenaciously to-the against the emperor battle
εἶχετο. καὶ τὰς ἰδίας δυνάμεις ἀναλαβόμενος συνεπομένους
clung and the own forces having-taken-up following
ἔχων καὶ ὁπόσοι ἐλλογιμώτεροι καὶ λογάδες Ῥωμαίων
having and as-many-as more-notable and picked of-Romans

στρατιῶται καὶ ἡγεμόνες τῶν παρὰ τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου
soldiers and leaders of-the by — Robert
κατασχεθεισῶν χωρῶν καὶ πόλεων (ἀπεγνωκότες γὰρ
seized lands and cities having-despaired for
καθάπαξ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος ὅλοι τῆς τοῦ Βαϊμούντου
once-for-all of-the autocrat wholly of-the — of-Bohemond
γεγόνασι γνώμης) καταλαμβάνει διὰ τῆς Βαγενητίας
have-become mind reaches through — Vagenetia
τὰ Ἰωάννινα καὶ τάφρον κατὰ τοὺς ἔξωθεν διακειμένους
— Ioannina and a-trench along the outside lying
ἀμπελῶνας ποιήσας πρότερον, ἅμα δὲ καὶ τὸ ὁπλιτικὸν
vineyards having-made first together and also the heavy-armed-force
ἅπαν ἐν ἐπικαίροις τόποις καταθέμενος αὐτὸς ἐντὸς τὰς
all in suitable places having-laid-up he inside the
σκηνὰς ἐπήξατο. τὰ δὲ τείχη περιαθρήσας καὶ τὴν τοῦ
tents pitched the and walls having-surveyed and the of-the
κάστρου ἀκρόπολιν ἐπισφαλῆ διαγνοὺς οὐ μόνον αὐτὴν
fortress citadel insecure having-discerned not only it
ἀνορθοῦν ὡς ἐνὸν ἠπείγετο, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἑτέραν ἐν
to-restore as being-possible was-hastening but also another in
ἄλλῳ μέρει τῶν τειχῶν, οὗ μᾶλλον συνοῖσον αὐτῷ
other part of-the walls where more advantageous to-him
δέδοκτο, ἐρυμνοτάτην ἀνῳκοδόμει ληζόμενος ἅμα καὶ
it-had-seemed most-strongly-fortified he-built plundering together also
τὰς παρακειμένας πόλεις καὶ χώρας. ταῦτα μεμαθηκὼς
the neighboring cities and lands these(-things) having-learned
ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ εὐθὺς μηδὲ μελλήσας ὅλως τὰς δυνάμεις
the autocrat at-once not having-delayed at-all the forces
ἁπάσας συναγαγὼν τῆς Κωνσταντίνου σπεύσας ἔξεισι
all having-gathered from-the(-city) of-Constantine hastening goes-out
κατὰ μῆνα Μάϊον. τοιγαροῦν τὰ Ἰωάννινα καταλαβών,
in month May accordingly — Ioannina having-reached

ἐπεὶ ὁ τοῦ πολέμου καὶ τῆς μάχης καιρὸς ἤδη παρῆν,
since the of-the war and of-the battle time already was-present
τὰ οἰκεῖα στρατεύματα μηδὲ τὸ πολλοστὸν τῶν τοῦ
the own armies not-even the smallest-fraction of-the —
Βαϊμούντου δυνάμεων ὄντα κατανοῶν καὶ ἄλλως δὲ
of-Bohemond forces being perceiving and otherwise too
ἀπὸ τῆς μετὰ τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου προηγησαμένης μάχης
from the with — Robert preceding battle
γινώσκων τὴν πρώτην κατὰ τῶν ἐναντίων ἵππασίαν
knowing the first against the opponents charge
τῶν Κελτῶν ἀνύποιστον δέον ἔκρινε πρῶτον μὲν διὰ
of-the Celts unbearable needful he-judged first indeed through
πελταστῶν μετρητῶν τινων καὶ ἐκκρίτων ἀκροβολισμοὺς
peltasts moderate some and picked skirmishes
ποιήσασθαι, ἵν' ἐντεῦθεν ἔνδειξίν τινα καὶ τῆς τῷ
to-make that thence proof some also of-the —
Βαϊμούντῳ ἐνυπαρχούσης στρατηγικῆς ἐπιστήμης σχοίη,
in-Bohemond existing generalship knowledge he-might-have
καὶ γένηταί οἱ διὰ τῶν μερικῶν προσβολῶν τὴν τοῦ
and it-might-be for-him through the partial attacks the of-the
ὅλου γνῶσιν ἐσχηκέναι κἀντεῦθεν ξὺν ἐπιστήμῃ βεβαιότερον
whole knowledge to-have-had and-thence with knowledge more-firmly
πρὸς τὸν Κελτὸν ἀντιπαρατάξασθαι. οὕτω γοῦν τὰ
against the Celt to-array-himself-against so at-any-rate the
στρατεύματα κατ' ἀλλήλων ἐσφάδαζεν· ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς
armies against each-other were-quivering the and emperor
τὴν ἀνύποιστον τῶν Λατίνων δεδιὼς πρώτην προσβολὴν
the unbearable of-the Latins fearing first attack
καινόν τι ποιεῖ. ἁμάξας κουφοτέρας κατασκευάσας
new something makes wagons lighter having-built
καὶ τῶν συνήθων ἥττους ἐφ' ἑκάστῃ τούτων κοντοὺς
and than-the usual smaller on each of-these poles

ἐνέπηξε τέσσαρας καὶ πεζοὺς ὁπλοφόρους ἐπέστησεν,
he-fixed four and foot-soldiers armed he-set
ὥστε ὁπηνίκα οἱ Λατῖνοι ὅλους ῥυτῆρας χαλάσαντες κατὰ
so-that when the Latins whole reins having-slackened against
τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς ὁρμήσουσι φάλαγγος, τὰς ἁμάξας ὠθεῖσθαι
the Roman will-charge phalanx the wagons to-be-pushed
πρόσω διὰ τῶν ὑφισταμένων ὁπλοφόρων πεζῶν, ἵν᾽
forward through the stationed armed foot that
οὕτω τὸ συνεχὲς διακόπτηται τοῦ συνασπισμοῦ τῶν
thus the continuity might-be-broken of-the locked-shields of-the
Λατίνων. καὶ ἐπεὶ καιρὸς πολέμου παρῆν τοῦ ἡλίου ἤδη
Latins and since time of-war was-present the sun already
τοῦ ὁρίζοντος λαμπρῶς ὑπερκύψαντος, ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ
the horizon brightly having-peeped-over the autocrat
τὰς φάλαγγας εἰς πολέμου τύπον καταστήσας αὐτὸς τὸ
the phalanxes into of-war form having-set he the
μεσαίτατον εἶχεν. ὁ γοῦν Βαϊμοῦντος οὐκ ἀνέτοιμος
very-center held — at-any-rate Bohemond not unready
τῆς μάχης συγκροτουμένης πρὸς τὴν μηχανὴν ἐφάνη τοῦ
the battle being-joined against the device appeared of-the
αὐτοκράτορος, ἀλλ᾽ ὥσπερ προγνοὺς τὸ βεβουλευμένον
autocrat but as-if having-foreknown the plan
μεθαρμόζεται πρὸς τὸ ξυμπεσὸν καὶ τὰς ἰδίας δυνάμεις δίχα
adapts-himself to the event and the own forces in-two
διελὼν καὶ τὰς ἁμάξας παρεκκλίνας κατὰ τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς
having-divided and the wagons having-avoided against the Roman
ἑκατέρωθεν ἴεται παρατάξεως. καὶ φάλαγγες μὲν φάλαγξι
on-both-sides rushes battle-line and phalanxes indeed with-phalanxes
τηνικαῦτα ἐμίγνυντο καὶ ἀνέρες ἀνδράσι κατὰ στόμα
then were-mingled and men with-men on face
ἐμάχοντο. οὕτω δὲ πολλῶν ἑκατέρωθεν ἐν τῷ μάχεσθαι
fought thus and many on-both-sides in the fighting

πεσόντων τὴν μὲν νικῶσαν εἶχεν ὁ Βαϊμοῦντος, ὁ δέ
having-fallen the indeed victory held — Bohemond the and
γε αὐτοκράτωρ καθάπερ τις πύργος ἀκλόνητος ἵστατο
at-least autocrat like some tower unshaken stood
ἐξ ἑκατέρου μέρους βαλλόμενος καὶ ὅπου μὲν ἱππαζόμενος
from each side being-struck and where indeed riding-out
κατὰ τῶν ἐπιόντων Κελτῶν καὶ συμπλεκόμενος ἐνίοις
against the attacking Celts and grappling with-some
πλήττων καὶ κτείνων καὶ πληττόμενος, ὅπου δὲ καὶ τοὺς
striking and killing and being-struck where and also the
φεύγοντας συχνοῖς ἐμβοήμασιν ἀνακτώμενος. ὡς δ' εἰς
fleeing with-frequent shouts rallying as and into
μέρη πολλὰ τὰς φάλαγγας διασπασθείσας ἑώρα, δεῖν
parts many the phalanxes having-been-torn-apart he-saw it-was-needful
ἐλογίσατο καὶ αὐτὸς ἑαυτῷ τὸ ἀσφαλὲς περιποιήσασθαι
he-reckoned also he for-himself the safety to-secure
οὐ σώσων ἑαυτὸν οὐθ' ὑπὸ δειλίας συγχυθείς, ὡς τάχα
not going-to-save himself nor by cowardice confounded as perhaps
ἄν τις εἴπῃ, ἀλλ' εἴ που τὸν κίνδυνον διεκφυγὼν καὶ
— someone might-say but if somehow the danger having-escaped and
συλλεξάμενος ἑαυτὸν αὖθις γενναιότερον τοῖς μαχομένοις
having-collected himself again more-nobly to-the fighting
Κελτοῖς ἀντικατασταίη. ὑποφεύγων δὲ τοὺς ἐχθροὺς μετ'
Celts he-might-stand-against escaping and the enemies with
ὀλίγων πάνυ τινῶν καὶ τῶν Κελτῶν τισιν ἐντυχὼν αὖθις
few very some and the Celts some having-met again
ἐκεῖνος ὁ ἀκαταπτόητος στρατηγὸς ἐδείκνυτο. ἀναρρώσας
that the undaunted general showed-himself having-encouraged
γὰρ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ καὶ σφοδρὰν τὴν κατ' αὐτῶν ἱππασίαν
for those with him and violent the against them charge
ὡς σήμερον τεθνηξόμενος ποιήσας ἢ κατὰ κράτος
as today going-to-die having-made or by force

ἡττήσων κτείνει μὲν αὐτὸς παίσας ἕνα τῶν Κελτῶν, καὶ
going-to-defeat kills indeed he having-struck one of-the Celts and
ὁπόσοι δὲ σὺν αὐτῷ Ἄρεως ἦσαν ὑπασπισταί, πολλοὺς
as-many-as too with him of-Ares were shield-bearers many
τρώσαντες ἐξεδίωξαν. καὶ οὕτως ἀμετρήτους καὶ μεγίστους
having-wounded chased-off and thus immeasurable and very-great
διεκφυγὼν κινδύνους αὖθις σῴζεται διὰ τῶν Στρουγῶν
having-escaped dangers again is-saved through — Strougai
διελθὼν εἰς Ἀχρίδας κἀκεῖθι ἐγκαρτερήσας καὶ ἱκανοὺς
having-passed to Achris and-there having-stayed and considerable
τῶν πεφευγότων ἀνακαλεσάμενος αὐτοῦ που μετὰ τοῦ
of-the having-fled having-recalled there somewhere with the
μεγάλου δομεστίκου πάντας καταλιπὼν καταλαμβάνει
grand domestic all having-left reaches
τὸν Βαρδάρην, οὐ ῥᾳστώνης χάριν· βασιλικὰς γὰρ
the Vardar not of-ease for-the-sake imperial for
ῥᾳθυμίας καὶ ἀναπαύλας οὐδαμῶς ἑαυτῷ ἀπεμέτρει. καὶ
idleness and rests in-no-way to-himself he-allotted and
αὖθις συναγαγὼν τὰ στρατεύματα καὶ μισθοφορικὸν
again having-gathered the armies and mercenary-force
συλλεξάμενος κατὰ τοῦ Βαϊμούντου χωρεῖ ἕτερόν τι
having-collected against — Bohemond advances another something
σκοπήσας, δι᾽ οὗ καταγωνίσαιτο τοὺς Κελτούς.
having-devised through which he-might-defeat the Celts
τριβόλους γὰρ σιδηρᾶς κατασκευάσας, ἐπεὶ τὴν μάχην ἐς
caltrops for iron having-made since the battle for
νέωτα προσεδόκα, ἑσπέρας ταύτας ἐν τῷ μεσαιχμίῳ τῆς
tomorrow he-expected in-the-evening these in the no-man's-land of-the
πεδιάδος κατέστρωσεν, οὗπερ σφοδροτέραν ἐστοχάζετο τοὺς
plain he-strewed where more-violent he-guessed the
Κελτοὺς τὴν ἱππασίαν ποιήσασθαι, μηχανώμενος τάχα τὴν
Celts the charge to-make contriving perhaps the

πρώτην καὶ ἀνύποιστον τῶν Λατίνων ὁρμὴν διὰ τούτων
first and unbearable of-the Latins onset through these
ἀποθραῦσαι περιπαρέντων τοῖς ποσὶ τῶν ἵππων καὶ τοὺς
to-break being-pierced the feet of-the horses and those
μὲν κατὰ μέτωπον ἱσταμένους τῶν Ῥωμαίων, ὁπόσοι
indeed in front standing of-the Romans as-many-as
δόρατα ἔφερον, μεμετρημένας τὰς ἱππασίας ποιεῖσθαι καὶ
spears carried measured the charges to-make and
ὁπόσον μὴ ταῖς τριβόλοις περιπαρεῖεν, ἀλλ' ἐφ' ἑκάτερα
as-much-as not on-the caltrops they-might-be-pierced but on both-sides
σχιζομένους ὑποστρέφειν, τοὺς δὲ πελταστὰς πόρρωθεν
splitting to-wheel-back the and peltasts from-afar
κατὰ τῶν Κελτῶν σφοδροὺς ἐκπέμπειν τοὺς ὀϊστούς, τὸ
against the Celts violent to-send-out the arrows the
δέ γε δεξιὸν καὶ εὐώνυμον κέρας ἐξ ἑκατέρου μέρους
and at-least right and left wing from each side
ἀσχέτῳ ῥύμῃ τοῖς Κελτοῖς ἐπεισπεσεῖν. τοιαῦτα μὲν τὰ
with-unchecked impetus on-the Celts to-fall-upon such indeed the
τοὐμοῦ πατρὸς διανοήματα· τὸν δὲ Βαϊμοῦντον ταῦτα
of-my father designs — and Bohemond these(-things)
οὐ διέλαθε. συνέβαινε γάρ τι τοιοῦτον. ὅπερ γὰρ ὁ
not escaped happened for something such which for the
βασιλεὺς ἑσπέρας κατ' ἐκείνου ἐβουλεύσατο, πρωΐας
emperor in-the-evening against that-man planned in-the-morning
ὁ Κελτὸς μεμάθηκε. καὶ πρὸς τὸ ἀκουσθὲν εὐφυῶς
the Celt learned and to the(-thing) heard cleverly
μεθαρμοσάμενος τὴν μάχην ἀνεδέχετο καὶ οὐκέθ', ὡς ἔθος
having-adapted-himself the battle accepted and no-longer as custom
αὐτῷ, τ�ὴν ὁρμὴν τῆς μάχης ἐποίει, ἀλλὰ προαρπάσας
to-him the onset of-the battle he-made but having-snatched-first
τὴν τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος βουλὴν αὐτὸς ἐξ ἑκατέρου μέρους
the of-the autocrat plan he from each side

τὸν μόθον μᾶλλον ἀνερρίπισε τὴν κατὰ μέτωπον φάλαγγα
the turmoil rather fanned the in front phalanx
ἀτρεμεῖν τέως παρακελευσάμενος. τῆς γοῦν μάχης
to-keep-still for-the-time having-ordered the at-any-rate battle
ἀγχεμάχου γεγονυίας οἱ τοῦ Ῥωμαϊκοῦ στρατεύματος τὰ
hand-to-hand having-become those of-the Roman army the
νῶτα τοῖς Λατίνοις δεδώκασι μηδ' ἀντωπῆσαι τούτοις
backs to-the Latins gave not-even to-face them
τοῦ λοιποῦ ἰσχύοντες προκατεπτοημένοι ὄντες διὰ
for-the rest being-able having-been-terrified-beforehand being because-of
τὴν προηγησαμένην ἧτταν. καὶ σύγχυσις τηνικαῦτα τῆς
the preceding defeat and confusion then of-the
Ῥωμαϊκῆς παρατάξεως ἦν, κἂν ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀκλόνητος
Roman battle-line was even-if the emperor unshaken
μένων γενναίως καὶ χειρὶ καὶ γνώμῃ ἀντικαθίστατο
remaining nobly both with-hand and with-mind stood-against
πολλοὺς μὲν τρώσας, ἔστι δ' οὗ καὶ τρωθείς. καὶ
many indeed having-wounded it-is and where also wounded and
ἐπεὶ τὸ ἅπαν ἐκρεῦσαν ἤδη στράτευμα ἐθεάσατο
since the whole having-flowed-away already army he-saw
καὶ ἑαυτὸν μετ' ὀλίγων καταλειφθέντα, δέον ἐλογίσατο
and himself with few left needful be-reckoned
μὴ ἀλόγως ἀνθιστάμενος κινδυνεῦσαι. ἐπὰν γάρ τις
not irrationally resisting to-run-risk when for someone
πολλὰ μογήσας μὴ πρὸς ἰσχύος ἔχοι τοῖς ἐχθροῖς
much having-toiled not with strength can the enemies
ἀντικαθίστασθαι, μάταιος ἂν ᾖ εἰς προῦπτον κίνδυνον
to-withstand foolish — would-be into foreseen danger
ἑαυτὸν συνωθῶν. τοῦ γοῦν δεξιοῦ καὶ εὐωνύμου κέρως
himself thrusting the at-any-rate right and left wing
τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς φάλαγγος φυγαδείᾳ χρησαμένων ὁ βασιλεὺς
of-the Roman phalanx flight having-used the emperor

ἔτι ἐγκαρτερῶν μετὰ τῆς τοῦ Βαϊμούντου φάλαγγος
still holding-out with the — of-Bohemond phalanx
γενναίως ἀπεμάχετο τὸν ὅλον αὐτὸς ἀναδεξάμενος πόλεμον.
nobly fought-off the whole he having-taken-on war
τὸ δὲ ἀναντίρρητον συνιεὶς τοῦ κινδύνου δέον ἔκρινεν
the and undeniable perceiving of-the danger needful he-judged
ἑαυτὸν περισῶσαι, ὡς αὖθις δύνασθαι μάχεσθαι πρὸς τὸν
himself to-save so-that again to-be-able to-fight against the
καταγωνισάμενον καὶ ἀντίπαλος ἔσεσθαι καρτερώτατος καὶ
having-defeated and an-adversary to-be most-steadfast and
μὴ τὸ πᾶν τῆς νίκης ἄρασθαι τὸν Βαϊμοῦντον. τοιοῦτος
not the whole of-the victory to-carry-off — Bohemond such
γὰρ ἦν ἡττώμενος καὶ νικῶν, φεύγων καὶ αὖθις διώκων,
for he-was being-defeated and conquering fleeing and again pursuing
καὶ μηδέποτε ὑποπτήσσων μήτε μὴν ἀνελπιστίας βρόχοις
and never cowering nor indeed of-despair by-nooses
ἁλισκόμενος. ἦν γὰρ καὶ εἰς θεὸν μεγίστην ἔχων πίστιν
being-caught he-was for also in God greatest having faith
καὶ τοῦτον μὲν ἐς μέσον διὰ παντὸς περιφέρων, ὅρκου
and him indeed into the-midst through all bearing-about from-oath
δὲ παντάπασιν ἀπεχόμενος. ἀπειρηκὼς οὖν, ὡς ἄνωθεν
and wholly abstaining having-given-up then as above
εἴρηται, ὀπισθόρμητος καὶ αὐτὸς γέγονε διωκόμενος
has-been-said turned-in-flight also he became being-pursued
παρὰ τοῦ Βαϊμούντου καὶ ἐκκρίτων κομήτων. ἐν τούτοις
by — Bohemond and picked counts in these
δέ φησι πρὸς τὸν Γουλήν (οὗτος δὲ πατρῷος αὐτοῦ
and he-says to — Goules this-man and paternal his
θεράπων) καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ "μέχρι πόσου φευξόμεθα;"
servant and those with him until how-long shall-we-flee
καὶ στρέψας τὸν χαλινὸν καὶ τοῦ κουλεοῦ τὸ ξίφος
and having-turned the bridle and from-the scabbard the sword

ἐξαγαγὼν παίει τὸν πρώτως αὐτῷ συναντήσαντα κατὰ
having-drawn strikes the first him meeting on
τῆς ὄψεως. τοῦτο οἱ Κελτοὶ θεασάμενοι καὶ διαγνόντες
the face this the Celts having-beheld and having-discerned
αὐτὸν τῆς ἰδίας ἀπεγνωκότα σωτηρίας, ἐπειδὴ τοὺς
him of-the own having-despaired safety since the
τοιαύτης γνώμης γεγονότας ἄνδρας ἀκαταμαχήτους πάλαι
of-such mind having-become men unconquerable long-ago
ἐγίνωσκον, ὑποσταλέντες τοῦ διώκειν ἐπαύσαντο. καὶ
they-knew having-shrunk-back from-the pursuing ceased and
οὕτω τῶν διωκόντων ἀπαλλαγεὶς ὑπεξῄει τοῦ κινδύνου.
thus from-the pursuers freed he-escaped from-the danger
οὐδὲ φεύγων δὲ ὅλως ἀνεπεπτώκει, ἀλλὰ τῶν φευγόντων
not-even fleeing and at-all he-had-lost-heart but of-the fleeing
τοὺς μὲν ἀνεκαλεῖτο, τοὺς δὲ καὶ ἐπέσκωπτε, κἂν οἱ
some indeed he-recalled others and also mocked even-if the
πολλοὶ τὸν ἀγνοοῦντα ὑπεκρίνοντο. οὕτω γοῦν τοῦ
many the not-knowing played thus at-any-rate from-the
κινδύνου σωθεὶς εἰσέρχεται εἰς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν, ἐφ' ᾧ
danger saved enters into the reigning(-city) for which
συναγαγεῖν αὖθις στρατεύματα καὶ κατὰ τοῦ Βαϊμούντου
to-gather again armies and against — Bohemond
χωρῆσαι.
to-advance

Bohemond's counts take the Polovoi, Skopia, and Kastoria, and some are caught plotting to desert. Bohemond besieges Larissa for six months while Leo Kephalas holds it and writes that hunger will soon force the surrender. Alexios, with Turks sent by the sultan, comes by the Kissavos road and asks a local elder about the ground. Saint Demetrios promises him victory in a dream. He hands the standards to his kinsmen with orders to feign flight, and sets an ambush by night.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου πρὸς Λογγιβαρδίαν
since and — Robert to Lombardy
παλινοστήσαντος τὴν μετὰ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος μάχην
having-returned the with the autocrat battle
ὁ Βαϊμοῦντος ἀνεδέξατο ταῖς ἐκείνου ὑποθημοσύναις
— Bohemond took-up the of-that-man suggestions
χρώμενος καὶ διὰ παντὸς μάχας καὶ πολέμους
using and through all battles and wars
ἀναρριπίζων, τὸν μὲν Πέτρον τοῦ Ἀλίφα μετὰ τοῦ
fanning — indeed Peter — of-Aliphas with —
Πουντέση εἰς πολιορκίαν ἐν διαφόροις χώραις ἐξέπεμψεν·
Pountesis for siege in various lands sent-out
ἔνθεν τοι καὶ τοὺς μὲν δύο Πολόβους εὐθὺς ὁ Πέτρος τοῦ
whence surely also the indeed two Polovoi at-once — Peter —
Ἀλίφα κατέσχε, τὰ δὲ Σκόπια ὁ προρρηθεὶς Πουντέσης·
of-Aliphas held — and Skopia the aforementioned Pountesis
αὐτὸς δὲ μηνυθεὶς παρὰ τῶν Ἀχριδιωτῶν ταχὺ τὰς
he and having-been-informed by the Achridians quickly —
Ἀχρίδας καταλαμβάνει. καὶ πρὸς μικρὸν ἐγκαρτερήσας τοῦ
Achris reaches and for a-little having-held-out —
Ἀριέβη φρουροῦντος τὸ κάστρον ἄπρακτος ἀπῆλθεν εἰς
Ariebes guarding the fortress unsuccessful went-away to
τὸν Ὀστροβὸν κἀκεῖθεν κενὸς ἀποπεμφθεὶς διῆλθε διὰ
— Ostrovos and-from-there empty having-been-sent-away passed through

τοῦ Σοσκοῦ καὶ διὰ τῶν Σερβίων ἀπῆλθεν εἰς Βέροιαν.
— Soskos and through — Servia went-away to Berroia
καὶ προσβαλὼν ἐν πολλοῖς καὶ πολλάκις τόποις καὶ μὴ
and having-attacked in many and many-times places and not
ἀνύσας διὰ τῶν Βοδινῶν καταλαμβάνει τὰ Μόγλενα
having-succeeded through — Vodena reaches — Moglena
καὶ ἀνεγείρει καστέλιόν τι πρὸ χρόνου ἐρειπωθέν. εἶτα
and raises-up fort a-certain before time ruined then
καταλιπὼν μεθ' ἱκανῶν ἐκεῖ κόμητά τινα Σαρακηνὸν
having-left with sufficient(-men) there count a-certain Saracen
ἐξ ἐπωνυμίας καλούμενον εἰς τὸν Βαρδάρην κατέλαβεν
from surname called to the Vardar he-reached
εἰς τὰς καλουμένας Ἄσπρας Ἐκκλησίας. καὶ τριμηναῖον
to the called White Churches and three-months'
χρόνον διατρίβοντος ἐκεῖ ἐν τῷ μεταξὺ ἔκκριτοι τρεῖς τῶν
time spending there in the meantime picked three of-the
κομήτων, ὅ τε Πουντέσης, ὁ Ῥεβόλδος καὶ Γελίελμός
counts — both Pountesis — Rebold and William
τις καλούμενος συνωμοσίαν πεποιηκότες αὐτομολῆσαι
a-certain called a-conspiracy having-made to-desert
πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα ἐφωράθησαν. καὶ ὁ μὲν Πουντέσης
to the emperor were-detected and — indeed Pountesis
τοῦτο προγνοὺς ἀποδράσας προσῆλθε τῷ αὐτοκράτορι,
this having-foreknown having-run-away came to-the autocrat
οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ δύο κατεσχέθησαν καὶ ἀπελύθησαν κατὰ
the and remaining two were-held and were-released according-to
τὸν νόμον τῶν Κελτῶν πρὸς πόλεμον. καὶ ἡττηθεὶς
the law of-the Celts to war and defeated
κατεβλήθη ὁ Γελίελμος, ὃν καὶ κατασχὼν ἐτύφλωσε,
was-thrown-down — William whom also having-seized he-blinded
τὸν δέ γε ἕτερον Ῥεβόλδον ἀπέστειλε πρὸς τὸν πατέρα
the and at-least other Rebold he-sent to the father

αὐτοῦ Ῥομπέρτον εἰς Λογγιβαρδίαν, ὑφ' οὗ ἀφαιρεῖται
his Robert into Lombardy by whom is-deprived
καὶ οὗτος τοὺς ὀφθαλμούς. ὁ δὲ Βαϊμοῦντος ἀπάρας
also this-man of-the eyes — and Bohemond having-set-out
ἀπὸ τῶν Ἄσπρων Ἐκκλησιῶν ἀπῆλθεν εἰς Καστορίαν.
from the White Churches went-away to Kastoria
τοῦτο μαθὼν ὁ μέγας δομέστικος καταλαμβάνει τὰ
this having-learned the grand domestic reaches —
Μόγλενα καὶ κατασχὼν τὸν Σαρακηνὸν κτείνει παραυτίκα
Moglena and having-seized the Saracen kills at-once
ἐριπώσας τελείως τὸ καστέλιον. ὁ δέ γε Βαϊμοῦντος
having-demolished completely the fort — and at-least Bohemond
ἐξελθὼν τῆς Καστορίας ἔρχεται εἰς τὴν Λάρισσαν
having-gone-out — from-Kastoria comes to — Larissa
κεῖθι παραχειμάσαι βουλόμενος. καταλαβὼν δὲ τὴν
there to-winter wishing having-reached and the
μεγαλόπολιν ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ, καθάπερ εἴρηται, εὐθὺς
great-city the autocrat as has-been-said at-once
ἔργου εἶχετο, ὁποῖος ἐκεῖνος θερμουργὸς καὶ μηδέποτε
to-work held such that-man hot-in-action and never
ῥᾳστώνης μετειληχώς, δυνάμεις τε ἠτεῖτο τὸν σουλτάνον
of-ease having-partaken forces and he-asked-for the sultan
μετὰ ἡγεμόνων πεῖραν ἐκ μακροῦ ἐσχηκότων. ὁ δὲ
with leaders experience from long having-had he and
τηνικαῦτα πέμπει πρὸς αὐτὸν χιλιάδας ἑπτὰ μετὰ
then sends to him thousands seven with
ἡγεμόνων λίαν ἐμπείρων καὶ αὐτὸν τὸν Καμύρην χρόνῳ
leaders very experienced and himself — Kamyres in-time
καὶ πείρᾳ τῶν ἄλλων ὑπερέχοντα. ἐν ὅσῳ δὲ ταῦτα
and experience the others surpassing in as-long-as and these(-things)
ὁ βασιλεὺς ᾠκονόμει καὶ ἡτοιμάζετο, ὁ Βαϊμοῦντος
the emperor was-arranging and was-preparing — Bohemond

μέρος τι τοῦ ἰδίου στρατεύματος ἀποδιελόμενος Κελτοὺς
part some of-the own army having-divided-off Celts
καταφράκτους ὅλους ἀποστείλας ἐξ ἐπιδρομῆς κατέσχε
mail-clad wholly having-sent by raid held
τὴν Πελαγονίαν, τὰ Τρίκαλα καὶ τὴν Καστορίαν. αὐτὸς
— Pelagonia — Trikala and — Kastoria he
δὲ ὁ Βαϊμοῦντος μετὰ ξύμπαντος τοῦ στρατεύματος
and — Bohemond with all the army
καταλαβὼν τὰ Τρίκαλα ἀποσπάδα τοῦ ὅλου στρατεύματος
having-reached — Trikala detachment of-the whole army
ἀποστείλας γενναίους ὅλους ἐξ ἐφόδου κατέσχε τὸν
having-sent noble wholly by assault held —
Τζίβισκον. κᾆθ' οὕτως καταλαβὼν τὴν Λάρισσαν κατ'
Tzibiskos and-then thus having-reached — Larissa on
αὐτὴν τὴν τοῦ μεγαλομάρτυρος Γεωργίου μνήμην σὺν
very the of-the great-martyr George memorial with
ὅλαις δυνάμεσι καὶ περιζώσας τὰ τείχη ἐπολιόρκει
whole forces and having-girdled the walls was-besieging
αὐτήν. ὁ δὲ ταυτηνὶ τὴν πόλιν φυλάττων πατρῴου
it the and this the city guarding paternal
τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος θεράποντος υἱός, Λέων ὁ Κεφαλᾶς,
of-the autocrat servant's son Leo the Kephalas
γενναίως πρὸς τὰς τοῦ Βαϊμούντου ἀντικαθίστατο μηχανὰς
nobly against the — of-Bohemond stood-against devices
ἐπὶ ὅλοις μησὶν ἕξ. δηλοῖ δὲ τὴν τοῦ βαρβάρου ἔφοδον
for whole months six makes-known and the of-the barbarian attack
διὰ γραφῶν τηνικαῦτα τῷ αὐτοκράτορι. ὁ δὲ οὐ
through letters then to-the autocrat he and not
παραχρῆμα, καίτοι σφαδάζων, τῆς πρὸς τὸν Βαϊμοῦντον
immediately although quivering the to — Bohemond
φερούσης ἥπτετο, ἀλλὰ πλεῖον μισθοφορικὸν ἐπισυνάγων
leading(-road) took but more mercenary-force gathering

ἁπανταχόθεν ἀνεβάλλετο τὴν ἐξέλευσιν. εἶτα καρτερῶς
from-everywhere was-putting-off the departure then strongly
ὁπλίσας ἅπαντας ἔξεισι τῆς Κωνσταντίνου. καὶ
having-armed all goes-out from-the(-city) of-Constantine and
τοῖς μέρεσι τῆς Λαρίσσης ἐγγίσας καὶ διελθὼν διὰ
to-the parts — of-Larissa having-approached and having-passed through
τοῦ βουνοῦ τῶν Κελλίων καὶ τὴν δημοσίαν λεωφόρον
the hill — of-Kellia and the public highway
δεξιόθεν καταλιπὼν καὶ τὸν βουνὸν τὸν οὑτωσὶ ἐγχωρίως
on-the-right having-left and the hill the thus locally
καλούμενον Κίσσαβον κατῆλθεν εἰς Ἐζεβάν. χωρίον δὲ
called Kissavos went-down to Ezeban place and
τοῦτο Βλαχικὸν τῆς Ἀνδρωνείας ἔγγιστα διακείμενον.
this Vlach — of-Andronia nearest lying
ἐκεῖθεν δὲ καταλαβὼν ἑτέραν αὖθις κωμόπολιν Πλαβίτζαν
from-there and having-reached another again country-town Plabitza
συνήθως καλουμένην, ἀγχοῦ που τοῦ οὑτωσί πως
customarily called near somewhere the thus somehow
καλουμένου ποταμοῦ †ῥέοντος διακειμένην, τὴν σκηνὴν
called river flowing lying the tent
κατέθετο ἀποχρῶντα τάφρον διορύζας. καὶ ἐγερθεὶς
he-set-down sufficient trench having-dug and having-risen
ἐκεῖθεν ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀπῆλθεν ἄχρι τῶν κηπουρείων
from-there the emperor went-away as-far-as the gardens
τοῦ Δελφινᾶ κἀκεῖθεν εἰς τὰ Τρίκαλα. γράμμα δέ
— of-Delphinas and-from-there to — Trikala letter and
τις τηνικαῦτα ἦκε κομίζων τοῦ Κεφαλᾶ Λέοντος, περὶ
someone then came carrying — of-Kephalas Leo about
οὗ φθάσας ὁ λόγος ἐδήλωσε, παρρησιαστικώτερον
whom having-been-first the account showed more-boldly
γράφοντος “ἴσθι, βασιλεῦ, ὅτι μέχρι τοῦ νῦν σπουδὴν
writing know emperor that until the present zeal

πολλὴν εἰσενηνοχὼς διετήρησα τὸ κάστρον ἀνάλωτον.
much having-brought I-kept the fortress uncaptured
ἤδη δὲ τῶν ἐφειμένων Χριστιανοῖς τροφίμων στερούμενοι
already and of-the permitted to-Christians foods being-deprived
καὶ τῶν μὴ προσηκόντων ἡψάμεθα. ἀλλὰ καὶ ταῦθ᾽
also the not fitting we-have-touched but even these
ἡμῖν ἐπέλιπον. εἰ γοῦν βοηθῆσαι ἡμῖν θέλων σπεύσεις
to-us have-failed if at-any-rate to-help us wishing you-shall-hasten
καὶ τοὺς πολιορκοῦντας ἐκδιῶξαι δυνηθείης, τῷ θεῷ
and those besieging to-drive-out you-should-be-able — to-God
χάρις. εἰ δ᾽ οὖν, τοὐμὸν ἤδη πεπλήρωκα· καὶ τὸ
thanks if but then my-part already I-have-fulfilled and the
ἐντεῦθεν ἀνάγκῃ δουλεύοντες (καὶ τί γὰρ δεῖ πρὸς
from-now to-necessity being-slaves and what for must against
φύσιν καὶ τὴν ἐκ ταύτης τυραννίδα ποιεῖν;) γνώμην
nature and the from it tyranny to-do intention
ἔχομεν τὸ φρούριον παραδοῦναι τοῖς ἐπικειμένοις ἐχθροῖς
we-have the fort to-hand-over to-the pressing enemies
καὶ φανερῶς ἀποπνίγουσιν. ἀλλ᾽ εἰ ταῦτα δυστυχῆσαι
and openly choking but if this to-suffer-misfortune
συμβαίη, ἐπάρατος μὲν γενοίμην ἐγώ, τολμηρῶς δὲ καὶ
should-happen accursed indeed may-become I boldly and also
κατὰ τῆς σῆς βασιλείας τοῦτο παρρησιάζομαι· εἰ μὴ
against the your majesty this I-speak-freely if not
τάχιον σπεύσεις τοῦ κινδύνου ἡμᾶς ἐξελέσθαι μὴ πρὸς
quicker you-shall-hasten from-the danger us to-take-out not against
τοσοῦτον βάρος πολέμου τε καὶ λιμοῦ ἀντισχεῖν ἐπὶ
so-great weight of-war both and of-famine to-hold-out on
πλέον δεδυνημένους, σὺ δ᾽ ὁ ἡμέτερος βασιλεύς, εἴ γε
more being-able you and the our emperor if at-least
δυνάμενος βοηθεῖν οὐκ ἐπέσπευσας τὴν βοήθειαν, οὐκ
being-able to-help not you-hastened the help not

ἂν φθάνοις ἔγκλημα προδοσίας ἀποφυγγάνων". ὁ δὲ
— *you-would-escape the-charge of-treason escaping the and*
αὐτοκράτωρ δεῖν ἔγνω διά τινος τρόπου ἑτέρου
autocrat it-was-necessary he-knew through some way another
αὐτοὺς καταγωνίσασθαι. λογισμοὶ δὲ τοῦτον συνεῖχον
them to-defeat reasonings and him held
καὶ μέριμναι. καὶ δῆτα σκοπῶν, ὅπως χρὴ λόχους
and cares and indeed considering how it-is-needful ambushes
ἐνστήσασθαι, δι' ὅλης ἡμέρας διεπονεῖτο θεὸν ἀρωγὸν
to-set through whole day toiled God as-helper
ἐπικαλούμενος. μετακαλεσάμενος οὖν τηνικαῦτα τῶν
invoking having-summoned then at-that-time of-the
γερόντων τινὰ Λαρισσαῖον ἐπυνθάνετο περὶ τῆς τοῦ τόπου
old-men a-certain Larissaean he-inquired about the of-the place
θέσεως. καὶ ἀνατείνας τοὺς ὀφθαλμούς, ἅμα καὶ τῷ
position and having-raised the eyes together also with-the
δακτύλῳ ἐπισημαίνων, ἐπιμελῶς ἀνηρώτα, ὅπη φάραγγές
finger indicating carefully he-asked where ravines
εἰσι διερρωγυῖαι τοῖς τόποις ἢ λόχμαι τινὲς βαθεῖαι
are broken in-the places or thickets some deep
πρὸς αὐτὰς συνεχίζονται. ταῦτα δὲ τοῦ Λαρισσαίου
to them are-continuous these(-things) and of-the Larissaean
ἐπυνθάνετο βουλόμενος λόχον ἐπιστῆσαι καὶ δι' ἀπάτης
he-asked wishing an-ambush to-set and through deceit
τοὺς Λατίνους καταγωνίσασθαι· τὸν γὰρ φανερὸν καὶ
the Latins to-defeat the for open and
κατὰ μέτωπον φθάσας ἀπηγόρευε πόλεμον πολλάκις
in front having-been-first he-renounced war many-times
συμβαλὼν καὶ ἡττηθεὶς καὶ πεῖραν τῆς συμβολῆς
having-engaged and having-been-defeated and experience of-the encounter
τοῦ Φραγγικοῦ πολέμου λαβών. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἥλιος κατέδυ
of-the Frankish war having-taken since and the-sun set

αὐτός τε δι᾽ ὅλης κεκοπιακὼς τῆς ἡμέρας ὁ βασιλεὺς
he both through whole having-toiled the day the emperor
εἰς ὕπνον ἐτράπετο, ὄνειρος ἐφίσταται τούτῳ. ἐδόκει
into sleep turned a-dream stands-over him he-seemed
ἐντὸς τοῦ ἱεροῦ τεμένους τοῦ μεγαλομάρτυρος Δημητρίου
inside the sacred precinct of-the great-martyr Demetrios
ἑστάναι καὶ φωνῆς ἀκοῦσαι "μὴ λυποῦ μηδὲ στένε, αὔριον
to-stand and a-voice to-hear not grieve nor groan tomorrow
νικᾷς". τὴν δὲ φωνὴν βάλλειν αὐτοῦ τὴν ἀκοὴν ᾤετο
you-conquer the and voice to-strike his the hearing he-thought
ἐκ μιᾶς τῶν ἐν τῷ τεμένει ἀπηωρημένων εἰκόνων, ἐν
from one of-the in the precinct hung icons in
ᾗ ὁ μεγαλόμαρτυς Δημήτριος κατεγέγραπτο. διυπνισθεὶς
which the great-martyr Demetrios had-been-painted having-awakened
δὲ καὶ περιχαρὴς γεγονὼς ἐκ τῆς τοῦ ὀνείρου ταύτης
and also overjoyed having-become from the of-the dream this
ὀμφῆς ἐθεοκλύτει τε τῷ μάρτυρι καὶ προσυπισχνεῖτο,
voice he-prayed both to-the martyr and promised-besides
εἰ γένοιτό οἱ νίκην κατὰ τῶν ἐχθρῶν ἄρασθαι,
if it-should-be-granted to-him victory over the enemies to-carry-off
αὐτόθι τε παραγενέσθαι καὶ πρὸ σταδίων ἱκανῶν τῆς
there both to-arrive and before stades many of-the
πόλεως Θεσσαλονίκης οὐκ ἔφιππον, ἀλλὰ πεζῇ καὶ βάδην
city of-Thessalonike not on-horseback but on-foot and at-a-walk
ἐρχόμενον εἰς τὴν αὐτοῦ ἐλεύσεσθαι προσκύνησιν. καὶ δὴ
coming for the his going-to-come veneration and indeed
μετακαλεσάμενος τοὺς στρατηγούς τε καὶ ἡγεμόνας καὶ
having-summoned the generals both and leaders and
συγγενεῖς ἅπαντας βουλῆς ἤρχετο τὴν ἑκάστου γνώμην
kinsmen all of-a-council he-began the of-each opinion
ἀναζητῶν· εἶτα τὸ σκοπηθὲν ἀπήγγειλε. τὸ δὲ ἦν

παραδοῦναι τὰ τάγματα ἅπαντα τοῖς συγγενέσιν αὐτοῦ·
to-hand-over the units all to-the kinsmen his
προεξάρχοντα δὲ τὸν Μελισσηνὸν Νικηφόρον ἐφίστησι καὶ
as-commander and — Melissenos Nikephoros he-sets and
τὸν Κουρτίκιον Βασίλειον, τὸν καὶ Ἰωαννάκην καλούμενον·
— Kourtikios Basil the also Ioannakes called
ἀνὴρ δὲ οὗτος τῶν ἐπιφανῶν, περιβόητος ἐπ᾽ ἀνδρείᾳ καὶ
a-man and this-one of-the illustrious famous for courage and
στρατιωτικῇ ἐπιστήμῃ, ἐξ Ἀδριανουπόλεως ὁρμώμενος.
military knowledge from Adrianople coming
οὐ τὰ τάγματα δὲ μόνον αὐτοῖς παραδίδωσιν, ἀλλὰ
not the units and only to-them he-hands-over but
καὶ τὰ τῆς βασιλείας παράσημα ἅπαντα. ἐπέσκηπτε δὲ
also the of-the empire insignia all he-enjoined and
ποιήσασθαι τὴν παράταξιν καθ᾽ ὃ σχῆμα ἐν τοῖς
to-make the battle-array according-to which form in the
προηγησαμένοις πολέμοις αὐτὸς παρετάττετο παραγγείλας
preceding wars he arrayed-himself having-ordered
αὐτοῖς δι᾽ ἀκροβολισμῶν πρότερον ἀπόπειραν τῶν
them through skirmishes first a-trial of-the
ἔμπροσθεν τῶν Λατίνων ἐρχομένων ποιήσασθαι, εἶτα τὸ
in-front of-the Latins coming to-make then the
ἐνυάλιον ἀλαλάξαντας πανστρατὶ κατ᾽ αὐτῶν χωρῆσαι·
war-cry having-raised with-all-the-army against them to-advance
ἐπὰν δὲ ὁ συνασπισμὸς γένηται καὶ εἰς χεῖρας κατ᾽
when and the locking-of-shields happens and into hands against
ἀλλήλων ἔλθωσι, νῶτα παρασχεῖν τοῖς Λατίνοις καὶ
each-other they-come backs to-turn to-the Latins and
φεύγειν ἀκρατῶς ὡς πρὸς τὸ Λυκοστόμιον ὑποκρίνεσθαι.
to-flee headlong as toward — Lykostomion to-pretend
ἐν ᾧ δὲ ταῦτα ὁ βασιλεὺς παρεκελεύετο, χρεμετισμὸς

ἁπάντων τῶν ἵππων τοῦ στρατοπέδου αἴφνης ἐξηκούσθη.
of-all the horses of-the camp suddenly was-heard
καὶ θάμβος ἐπὶ τούτῳ κατέσχεν ἅπαντας· ἀγαθὸς δὲ
and astonishment at this seized all good and
ὅμως οἰωνὸς αὐτῷ τε τῷ βασιλεῖ τηνικαῦτα καὶ
nevertheless an-omen himself both to-the emperor then and
πᾶσι τοῖς περιεργοτέροις ἐδόκει. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν
to-all the more-curious it-seemed but these(-things) indeed
οὕτω πως ἐπισκήψας αὐτοῖς καὶ καταλιπὼν δεξιόθεν
thus somehow having-enjoined them and having-left on-the-right
τοῦ κάστρου Λαρίσσης περιμείνας τὴν τοῦ ἡλίου δύσιν
of-the fortress of-Larissa having-waited-for the of-the sun setting
γεννάδας τινὰς ἄνδρας ἕπεσθαί οἱ ἐπιτάξας τὴν τοῦ
noble some men to-follow him having-ordered the —
Λιβοτανίου κλεισούραν διεληλυθὼς καὶ τὸν Ῥεβένικον
of-Livotanion pass having-passed-through and — Rebenikos
περικόψας καὶ διὰ τῆς καλουμένης Ἀλλαγῆς πρὸς τὸ
having-gone-round and through the called Allage to the
εὐώνυμον τῆς Λαρίσσης μέρος καταλαβὼν καὶ περιαθρήσας
left — of-Larissa side having-reached and having-surveyed
τὴν ἅπασαν τοῦ τόπου θέσιν χθαμαλώτερον τόπον
the whole of-the place position lower place
κατανοήσας ἐκεῖθι μετὰ τῶν συνεφεπομένων αὐτῷ λοχῶν
having-observed there with the following him ambushers
ἦν. οἱ δὲ ἡγεμόνες τῶν Ῥωμαϊκῶν ταγμάτων, ὁπηνίκα
he-was the and leaders of-the Roman units when
ὁ βασιλεὺς προλοχίσειν, ὡς εἴρηται, ἐπειγόμενος τὴν
the emperor to-set-ambush as has-been-said hastening the
τοῦ Λιβοτανίου κλεισούραν διέρχεσθαι ἔμελλε, τηνικαῦτα
— of-Livotanion pass to-pass-through was-about then
ἀποσπάδα τῶν Ῥωμαϊκῶν ἀποδιελόμενοι ταγμάτων κατὰ
a-detachment from-the Roman having-divided-off units against

τῶν Κελτῶν ἐξέπεμψαν, ἐφ᾽ ᾧ πρὸς ἑαυτοὺς ἑλκύσαι,
the Celts sent-out for which to themselves to-draw
ὡς μὴ ἐκεχειρίαν ἔχοιεν φωρᾶσαι τὸν αὐτοκράτορα,
so-that not leisure they-might-have to-detect the autocrat
ὅπη πορεύεται. οἳ καὶ πρὸς τὴν πεδιάδα κατελθόντες
where he-goes who also to the plain having-gone-down
προσέβαλον τοῖς Κελτοῖς καὶ ἐφ᾽ ἱκανὸν μαχεσάμενοι
attacked the Celts and for a-good-while having-fought
διέστησαν τῆς νυκτὸς ἀπάρτι μὴ παραχωρούσης τὴν μάχην.
separated the night by-now not permitting the battle
καταλαβὼν δὲ τὸν σκοπηθέντα τόπον ὁ βασιλεὺς ἅπαντας
having-reached and the considered place the emperor all
ἀποβῆναι τῶν ἵππων ἐκέλευσε καὶ ἐπὶ γόνυ κλιθέντας
to-dismount from-the horses ordered and on knee having-bent
τοὺς χαλινοὺς χερσὶ κατέχειν. καὶ αὐτὸς δὲ χαμαιδρύῳ
the bridles with-hands to-hold and he too a-ground-oak
περιτυχὼν ὡσαύτως κατακλιθεὶς τὸν χαλινὸν ἐν χερσὶ
having-come-upon likewise having-lain-down the bridle in hands
κατέχων ἐπὶ πρόσωπον τὸ ἐπίλοιπον τῆς νυκτὸς ἔκειτο.
holding on face the rest of-the night lay

VI · THE FEIGNED FLIGHT

At sunrise Bohemond charges the imperial standards and chases the kinsmen toward Lykostomion, believing Alexios is with them. Alexios meanwhile takes Bohemond's camp. His archers shoot the horses of Bryennios' Celts, and the dismounted Latins become helpless. Bohemond, eating grapes on an islet of the Salabria, boasts that he has driven Alexios into the wolf's mouth. Told of the trick he is vexed but not cast down; his Celts kill five hundred, and he routs the Turks sent against him.

Ἀνίσχοντος δὲ τοῦ ἡλίου, ἐπεὶ τὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων τάγματα
rising and the sun when the of-the Romans units
κατὰ φάλαγγας ἱστάμενα ὁ Βαϊμοῦντος ἐθεάσατο τάς τε
in phalanxes standing — Bohemond saw the both
βασιλικὰς σημαίας καὶ τὰ ἀργυρόηλα δόρατα καὶ τοὺς
imperial standards and the silver-studded spears and the
ἵππους μετὰ τῶν βασιλικῶν ἐρυθρῶν ἐφεστρίδων, ὡς
horses with the imperial red saddle-cloths as
ἐνὸν καὶ αὐτὸς κατ᾽ αὐτῶν τὴν ἰδίαν κατεστήσατο
being-possible also he against them the own set
φάλαγγα διχῇ διελὼν τὰς δυνάμεις καὶ τῶν μὲν
phalanx in-two having-divided the forces and of-the indeed
αὐτὸς κατάρχων, τῶν δὲ φαλαγγάρχην τὸν Βρυέννιον
he commanding of-the and as-phalanx-commander — Bryennios
καταστήσας· Λατῖνος δὲ οὗτος τῶν ἐπιφανῶν, ὃν καὶ
having-set a-Latin and this-man of-the illustrious whom also
κονοσταῦλον ὠνόμασαν· οὕτω γοῦν τὰς ἰδίας καταστήσας
constable they-named thus at-any-rate the own having-set
δυνάμεις τὸ σύνηθες καὶ πάλιν ποιεῖ καὶ κατὰ μέτωπον
forces the customary also again does and in front
τῆς παρατάξεως, ὅπου τὰ βασιλικὰ ἑώρα παράσημα,
of-the battle-line where the imperial he-saw insignia
ἐκεῖ τὸν αὐτοκράτορα νομίσας εἶναι ὡς πρηστὴρ τοῖς
there the autocrat having-supposed to-be like a-hurricane on-those
φαινομένοις ἐμπίπτει. οἱ δὲ μικρὸν ἀντισχόντες τὰ νῶτα
appearing falls they and a-little having-held-out the backs
τούτῳ διδόασιν· ὁ δὲ τούτους διώκων ὄπισθεν ἤλαυνεν
to-him give he and them pursuing behind drove
ἀκρατῶς, ὡς ὁ λόγος φθάσας ἐδήλωσεν. ὁ μέντοι
headlong as the account having-anticipated showed the however
βασιλεὺς τὰ ἴδια τάγματα ἐπὶ πολὺ φεύγοντα ὁρῶν
emperor the own units for long fleeing seeing

καὶ τὸν Βαϊμοῦντον ὄπισθεν τῶν Ῥωμαϊκῶν ταγμάτων
and — Bohemond behind the Roman units
ἀκρατῶς διώκοντα στοχασάμενος ἱκανὸν ἤδη διάστημα
headlong pursuing having-guessed considerable already distance
τῆς ἰδίας ἀποστῆναι τὸν Βαϊμοῦντον παρεμβολῆς, ἐπὶ
from-the own to-have-stood-off — Bohemond camp onto
τὸν ἵππον ἀναβάς, τὸ αὐτὸ δὲ καὶ τοῖς μετ᾽ αὐτοῦ
the horse having-mounted the same and also to-those with him
παρακελευσάμενος καταλαμβάνει τὴν τοῦ Βαϊμούντου
having-ordered reaches the — of-Bohemond
παρεμβολήν. καὶ εἴσω ταύτης γενόμενος πολλοὺς μὲν
camp and inside it having-come many indeed
τῶν παρευρεθέντων Λατίνων ἀναιρεῖ καὶ τὰ λάφυρα
of-the found-there Latins kills and the spoils
ἐκεῖθεν ἀναιρεῖται· εἶτα περιαθρεῖ τοὺς διώκοντας καὶ
from-there takes then surveys the pursuers and
φεύγοντας. καὶ ἐπεὶ ἀτέχνως τὴν φυγὴν ἑώρα ποιουμένους
fleeing and since artlessly the flight he-saw making
καὶ τὸν Βαϊμοῦντον ὄπισθεν διώκοντα καὶ ἐκείνου ὄπισθεν
and — Bohemond behind pursuing and that-man behind
τὸν Βρυέννιον, μετακαλεσάμενος τὸν καλούμενον Πυρρὸν
— Bryennios having-summoned the called Pyrrhos
Γεώργιον ἐπὶ τοξείᾳ ὑμνούμενον καὶ ἑτέρους ἄνδρας
George for archery celebrated and other men
γενναίους χωρίσας ἱκανοὺς πελταστὰς ὄπισθεν τοῦ
noble having-separated considerable peltasts behind —
Βρυεννίου ὀξέως ἐλαύνειν ἐπέσκηψε, φθάσαντας δὲ μὴ
Bryennios swiftly to-drive he-enjoined having-overtaken and not
ἀγχέμαχον τὴν μάχην ποιῆσαι, ἀλλὰ πόρρωθεν κατὰ τῶν
hand-to-hand the battle to-make but from-afar against the
ἵππων μᾶλλον συχνὰ πέμπειν τὰ βέλη. ἐπικαταλαβόντες οὖν
horses rather frequent to-send the missiles having-caught-up then

τοὺς Κελτοὺς τοὺς ἵππους πυκνοῖς ὀϊστοῖς ἔβαλλον, ὡς ἐν
the Celts the horses with-thick arrows they-struck so-that in
ἀμηχανίᾳ τοὺς ἱππότας καθίστασθαι. καὶ γὰρ ἀνὴρ Κελτὸς
helplessness the horsemen to-be-set and for a-man Celtic
πᾶς ἐποχούμενος μὲν ἀνύποιστος τὴν ὁρμὴν καὶ τὴν θέαν
every mounted indeed irresistible in-the onset and the look
ἐστίν, ἐπὰν δ' ἀποβαίη τοῦ ἵππου, τὸ μέν τι τῷ
is when and he-dismounts from-the horse partly indeed somewhat by-the
μεγέθει τῆς ἀσπίδος, τὸ δέ τι καὶ διὰ τὰ τῶν
size of-the shield partly and somewhat also because-of the of-the
πεδίλων προάλματα καὶ δρόμον ἀνεπιτήδειον εὐχειρότατός
shoes projecting-points and running unsuited most-easily-handled
τε τηνικαῦτα γίνεται καὶ ἀλλοῖος παντάπασιν ἢ πρότερον
both then becomes and other entirely than before
ὀκλαζούσης οἷον καὶ τῆς ψυχικῆς αὐτῷ προθυμίας. καὶ
sinking-to-its-knees as-it-were also the spiritual in-him eagerness and
τοῦτο, οἶμαι, γινώσκων ὁ βασιλεὺς μὴ τοὺς ἱππότας, ἀλλὰ
this I-think knowing the emperor not the horsemen but
τοὺς ἵππους ἀναιρεῖν ἐπέταττε. τῶν δὲ ἵππων τῶν Κελτῶν
the horses to-kill ordered the and horses of-the Celts
πιπτόντων περιεδινοῦντο οἱ τοῦ Βρυεννίου. καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς
falling were-whirling-about those — of-Bryennios and from the
τούτων πολλῆς συστροφῆς κονίσσαλος μακρὸς καὶ πυκνὸς
of-these great milling dust-cloud long and thick
ἵστατο μέχρι νεφῶν κορυφούμενος, ὡς παραβάλλεσθαι
stood up-to clouds towering so-as to-be-compared
τοῦτον κατ' ἐκεῖνο καιροῦ τῷ κατὰ τὴν Αἴγυπτον
it at that of-the-time to-the in — Egypt
γεγονότι πάλαι σκότει ψηλαφητῷ. τάς τε γὰρ τούτων
having-happened long-ago darkness palpable the both for of-these
ὄψεις ἡ πυκνότης ἀπετύφλου τῆς κόνεως καὶ ἄγνοιαν
eyes the thickness blinded of-the dust and ignorance

ἐμπαρεῖχεν, ὁπόθεν καὶ παρὰ τίνων οἱ ὀϊστοὶ πέμπονται.
provided whence and by whom the arrows are-sent
τρεῖς δὲ Λατίνους ἀποστείλας ὁ Βρυέννιος ἐδήλωσε τῷ
three and Latins having-sent — Bryennios made-known —
Βαϊμούντῳ τὸ πᾶν. οἳ καὶ κατέλαβον αὐτὸν εἴς τι
to-Bohemond the whole who also found him on some
νησίδιον ποταμοῦ τοῦ οὕτω καλουμένου Σαλαβρία μετά
islet of-river the so called Salabria with
τινων ἱστάμενον ὀλίγων Κελτῶν καὶ σταφυλὰς ἐσθίοντα,
some standing few Celts and grapes eating
ἅμα δὲ καὶ ὑπέρκομπόν τι καυχώμενον, ὅπερ
at-the-same-time and also boastful something bragging which
καὶ μέχρι τοῦ νῦν παρῳδεῖται καὶ περιφέρεται. τοῦτο
also until the present is-parodied and goes-about this
γὰρ πολλάκις ἔλεγε βαρβαρίζων τὸ Λυκοστόμιον ὅτι
for often he-said speaking-barbarously — Lykostomion that
"τὸν Ἀλέξιον εἰς λύκου στόμα ἐνέβαλον". τοιοῦτον γὰρ ἡ
— Alexios into of-wolf mouth I-threw such for the
ὑπεροψία σφάλλουσα τοὺς πολλοὺς καὶ πρὸς τὰ ὑπ'
arrogance tripping-up the many even in the(-things) under
ὄψιν καὶ ἐν ποσὶ κείμενα. ἀκούσας δὲ τὰ παρὰ τοῦ
sight and at feet lying having-heard and the(-things) from —
Βρυεννίου μηνυθέντα καὶ ἐπιγνοὺς τὸν δόλον καὶ τὴν
Bryennios reported and having-recognized the trick and the
δι' ἀπάτης νίκην τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος ἤχθετο μέν, ὡς
through deceit victory of-the autocrat was-vexed indeed as
εἰκός, κατέπιπτε δὲ οὐδαμῶς, ὁποῖος ἐκεῖνος. ἀποκριθέντες
is-likely he-collapsed but in-no-way such that-man having-been-detached
οὖν τινες τῶν ὑπ' αὐτὸν κατάφρακτοι Κελτοὶ ἀνῆλθον
then some of-those under him mail-clad Celts went-up
εἰς ἀκρώρειάν τινα κατέναντι τῆς Λαρίσσης διακειμένην.
to ridge a-certain opposite — of-Larissa lying

τούτους τὸ ὁπλιτικὸν θεασάμενοι ξὺν πολλῇ προθυμίᾳ
them the heavy-armed-force having-beheld with much eagerness
ἐβίαζον προσβαλεῖν αὐτοῖς· ὁ δὲ αὐτοκράτωρ ἀπεῖργε
pressed to-attack them the and autocrat restrained
τούτους τοῦ ἐγχειρήματος. ἐκ διαφόρων δὲ πολλοὶ καὶ
them from-the undertaking from various and many and
διάφοροι ξυμμιγέντες ταγμάτων ἀνελθόντες προσέβαλον
various having-mingled units having-gone-up attacked
τοῖς Κελτοῖς· οἱ δὲ παραχρῆμα κατ' αὐτῶν ὡρμηκότες
the Celts they and immediately against them having-rushed
ἀναιροῦσιν ἄχρι τῶν πεντακοσίων. εἶτα τοῦ βασιλέως
kill up-to the five-hundred then the emperor
στοχασαμένου τοῦ τόπου, δι' οὗ ὁ Βαϊμοῦντος ἔμελλε
having-guessed the place through which — Bohemond was-about
διελθεῖν, καὶ ἀποστείλαντος γενναίους στρατιώτας μετὰ
to-pass and having-sent noble soldiers with
καὶ Τούρκων καὶ τοῦ Μιγιδηνοῦ προεξάρχοντος, ἅμα
both Turks and — Migidenos leading as-soon-as
τῷ πλησίον γενέσθαι εὐθὺς ὁ Βαϊμοῦντος ὁρμήσας κατ'
— near to-come at-once — Bohemond having-rushed against
αὐτῶν ἥττησε τούτους μέχρι τοῦ ποταμοῦ διώξας.
them defeated them as-far-as the river having-pursued

VII · BOHEMOND TURNED BACK

Bohemond camps in the defile called Domenikos' Palace. The protostrator Michael Doukas, Anna's uncle, enters the defile against orders and is routed, but Ouzas strikes down the standard-bearer and the Latins fall back to Trikala and Kastoria. Alexios promises Bohemond's counts honors and rewards if they demand the pay Bohemond owes them and send him to Robert for it. When Bohemond cannot pay, he leaves Bryennios at Kastoria and Peter of Aliphas at the Polovoi and goes to Avlona. Alexios returns to the city a victor.

Τῇ δὲ μετ᾽ αὐτὴν αὐγαζούσης ἤδη τῆς ἡμέρας
on-the and after it dawning already the day
παραδραμὼν τὸν ἤδη ῥηθέντα ποταμὸν μετὰ τῶν
having-passed the already mentioned river with the
συνεφεπομένων αὐτῷ κομήτων καὶ αὐτοῦ δὴ τοῦ
following him counts and of-himself indeed —
Βρυεννίου, ἐπεὶ ἑλώδη τόπον ἐν τοῖς τῆς Λαρίσσης
Bryennios when marshy place in the — of-Larissa
μέρεσιν ἐθεάσατο, ἀναμεταξὺ δύο βουνῶν πεδιάδα ἀλσώδη
parts he-saw between two hills a-plain wooded
εὑρὼν ἀποτελευτῶσαν εἰς στενωπὸν ὀξύν (κλεισούραν
having-found ending in a-defile narrow pass
τοῦτο καλοῦσι), τὴν λεγομένην Δομενίκου παλάτιον, διὰ
this they-call the said of-Domenikos Palace through
τούτου εἰσελθὼν ἐκεῖ τὸν χάρακα ἐπήξατο. τῇ δὲ
this having-entered there the palisade he-pitched on-the and
μετ᾽ αὐτὴν κατὰ τὸ περίορθρον καταλαμβάνει αὐτὸν
after it at the early-dawn reaches him
ὁ φαλαγγάρχης Μιχαὴλ ὁ Δούκας, ὁ πρὸς μητρὸς
the phalanx-commander Michael the Doukas the on mother's-side
ἐμὸς θεῖος, μετὰ τοῦ ὁπλιτικοῦ παντός, ἀνήρ τις
my uncle with the heavy-armed-force all a-man a-certain
ἐπὶ φρονήσει διαβεβοημένος, ὥρᾳ δὲ καὶ μεγέθει
for prudence renowned in-beauty and also in-size
σώματος διαφέρων οὐ τῶν τότε καιροῦ, ἀλλὰ καὶ
of-body excelling not of-those then of-the-time but also
τῶν πώποτε γεγενημένων (θάμβος γὰρ εἶχεν ἅπαντας
of-those ever having-been amazement for held all
τοὺς ὁρῶντας τὸν ἄνδρα), συνιδεῖν δὲ τὸ μέλλον καὶ
those seeing the man to-perceive and the future and
φωρᾶσαι τὸ ἐνεστὸς καὶ καταπράξασθαι δεινότατός τε
to-detect the present and to-accomplish most-skilled both

καὶ ἀπαράμιλλος. τούτῳ ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ ἐπέσκηψε μὴ
and unrivalled to-him the autocrat enjoined not
πάντας ἐντὸς τοῦ στομίου τῆς κλεισούρας εἰσελθεῖν, ἀλλὰ
all inside the mouth of-the pass to-enter but
τὰς μὲν δυνάμεις ἔξωθεν ἵστασθαι ἰλαδόν, ὀλίγους δὲ
the indeed forces outside to-stand by-squadrons few and
διελεῖν Τούρκων καὶ Σαυροματῶν τῆς τοξείας εἰδήμονας
to-pick of-Turks and Sauromatai of-the archery skilled
καὶ τούτοις παραχωρῆσαι τῆς εἰσόδου, ἐπισκῆψαι δὲ
and to-these to-yield the entrance to-enjoin and
τούτοις μηδενὶ ἑτέρῳ ξίφει πλὴν ὀϊστοῖς χρήσασθαι.
them with-no other sword except arrows to-use
εἰσελθόντων δὲ καὶ ἱππασίας ποιουμένων κατὰ τῶν
having-entered and also charges making against the
Λατίνων οἱ ἔξωθεν ἱστάμενοι πρὸς ἀλλήλους σφαδάζοντες
Latins those outside standing toward each-other quivering
ἤριζον, ὁποῖος ἂν τὸ στόμιον εἰσέλθοι. ὁ γὰρ Βαϊμοῦντος
strove which-one — the mouth might-enter — for Bohemond
πλήρης ὢν στρατηγικῆς ἐπιστήμης τοὺς ὑπ᾽ αὐτὸν
full being of-generalship knowledge those under him
ἐκέλευε συνησπικότας ἵστασθαι καὶ ταῖς ἀσπίσιν ἑαυτοὺς
ordered locking-shields to-stand and with-the shields themselves
περιφράττοντας ἀτρεμεῖν. ὁ δέ γε πρωτοστράτωρ
fencing-round to-keep-still the and at-least protostrator
θεασάμενος τοὺς ὑπ᾽ αὐτὸν κατὰ μικρὸν ἐκρέοντας καὶ
having-beheld those under him by little flowing-out and
εἰσερχομένους διὰ τοῦ στομίου εἰσῆλθε καὶ αὐτός. ὁ
entering through the mouth entered also himself —
δὲ Βαϊμοῦντος τούτους θεασάμενος, ὥσπερ λέων ἐχάρη
and Bohemond them having-beheld like a-lion rejoiced
μεγάλῳ ἐπὶ σώματι κύρσας, εἶπεν ἄν τις Ὁμηρικῶς,
great upon body having-chanced would-say — someone in-Homer's-words

ὡς καὶ οὗτος ἰδὼν ἐν αὐτοῖς ὀφθαλμοῖσι τούτους καὶ
so also this-man having-seen with very eyes them and
τὸν πρωτοστράτορα Μιχαὴλ ἀσχέτῳ ῥύμῃ πανσυδὶ κατ᾽
the protostrator Michael with-unchecked impetus with-all-speed against
αὐτῶν ἴεται· οἱ δὲ παραχρῆμα νῶτα τούτῳ διδόασιν.
them rushes they and immediately backs to-him give
Οὐζᾶς δὲ τὴν κλῆσιν φερώνυμον ἐκ τοῦ γένους λαχών, ἐπ᾽
Ouzas and the name fitly-named from the race having-got for
ἀνδρείᾳ διαβεβοημένος, εἰδὼς ἠδ᾽ ἐπὶ δεξιὰ ἠδ᾽ ἐπ᾽ ἀριστερὰ
courage renowned knowing both to right and to left
νωμῆσαι βῶν ἀζαλέην καθ᾽ Ὅμηρον ἐν τῷ τοῦ στομίου
to-wield ox-hide dry after Homer in the of-the mouth
ἐξέρχεσθαι δεξιὰ παρεκκλίνας γοργῶς ἐπιστραφεὶς παίει
going-out to-the-right having-swerved swiftly having-turned strikes
τὸν αὐτῷ ὑπαντιάσαντα Λατῖνον· ὁ δ᾽ εὐθὺς κύμβαχος
the him having-met Latin he and at-once headlong
κατὰ γῆς ἔκειτο. ὁ δὲ Βαϊμοῦντος ἐδίωκε τούτους μέχρι
on earth lay — and Bohemond was-pursuing them as-far-as
τοῦ ποταμοῦ Σαλαβρία. ἐν δὲ τῷ φεύγειν ὁ ἤδη ῥηθεὶς
the river Salabria in and the fleeing the already mentioned
Οὐζᾶς παίει τὸν τὴν σημαίαν τοῦ Βαϊμούντου κατέχοντα
Ouzas strikes the(-man) the standard — of-Bohemond holding
διὰ τοῦ δόρατος καὶ τὴν σημαίαν τῶν χειρῶν αὐτοῦ
through the spear and the standard from-the hands his
ἁφαρπάσας μικρὸν περιδινεῖ καὶ κλίνει πρὸς τὸ πρανές.
having-snatched a-little whirls-round and tilts toward the downward
οἱ γοῦν Λατῖνοι τὴν σημαίαν ἐξ ὀρθίου σχήματος
the at-any-rate Latins the standard from upright position
κατακλιθεῖσαν ἑωρακότες ἐν συγχύσει γεγόνασι καὶ ἐφ᾽
having-been-lowered having-seen in confusion have-become and onto
ἑτέραν ἐτράποντο ἀτραπόν, δι᾽ ἧς καὶ τὰ Τρίκαλα
another turned path through which also — Trikala

καταλαμβάνουσιν ἤδη προκατασχεθέντα παρά τινων τῶν
reach already held-beforehand by some of-those
μετὰ τοῦ Βαϊμούντου πρὸς τὸ Λυκοστόμιον φευγόντων.
with — Bohemond toward — Lykostomion fleeing
κἀκεῖσε τέως αὐλίζονται εἴσω τούτων γεγονότες·
and-there for-a-while camp inside them having-come
ἐκεῖθεν δὲ καταλαμβάνουσι τὴν Καστορίαν. ὁ δὲ
from-there and reach — Kastoria the and
βασιλεὺς ὑποστρέψας ἀπὸ Λαρίσσης καὶ τὴν Θεσσαλονίκην
emperor having-turned-back from Larissa and — Thessalonike
καταλαβών, ὁποῖος ἐκεῖνος περὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα, ταχὺ μάλα
having-reached such that-man about the such-things quickly very
πρὸς τοὺς σὺν τῷ Βαϊμούντῳ κόμητας ἀποστείλας πολλὰς
to the with — Bohemond counts having-sent many
ὑποσχέσεις ἐπεποίητο, εἰ τὸν Βαϊμοῦντον τοὺς μισθοὺς
promises had-made if — Bohemond the pay
ἀπαιτήσουσιν, οὕσπερ αὐτοῖς καὶ ὑπέσχετο· τοῦ δὲ μὴ
will-demand which to-them also he-had-promised he and not
ἔχοντος ἀποδοῦναι παραπείσουσι τοῦτον κατελθεῖν εἰς
having to-pay they-will-persuade him to-go-down to
θάλασσαν καὶ ἀναζητῆσαι ταῦτα ἀπὸ τοῦ ἰδίου πατρὸς
the-sea and to-seek these(-things) from the own father
Ῥομπέρτου καὶ αὐτὸν ἐκεῖνον διαπεράσαι τοὺς αὐτῶν
Robert and him that-one to-cross the their
μισθοὺς ἐξαιτησόμενον. καὶ εἰ τοῦτο ἀνύσαιεν, πάντας
pay going-to-demand and if this they-should-accomplish all
τιμῆς καὶ μυρίων εὐεργεσιῶν ἐπαπολαῦσαι. καὶ ὅσοι μὲν
of-honor and countless benefactions to-enjoy and as-many-as indeed
τούτων ἐπὶ μισθῷ δουλεῦσαι θελήσουσι, προσλαμβάνεσθαι
of-them for pay to-serve will-wish to-take-on
τούτους καὶ ἀποχρῶντα τὸν μισθὸν ἀποδοῦναι κατὰ
these and sufficient the pay to-pay according-to

τὰ θελήματα αὐτῶν, τοὺς δ' αὖ εἰς τὰς οἰκίας αὐτῶν
the wishes their those and in-turn to the houses their
βουλομένους ἀπελθεῖν ἀκινδύνως διαβιβάσαι διὰ τῆς
wishing to-go-away safely to-convey through —
Οὐγγρίας. ὑπείξαντες οὖν τῷ τοῦ βασιλέως προστάγματι
Hungary having-yielded then to-the of-the emperor command
οἱ κόμητες τοὺς τῶν παραδραμόντων τεσσάρων ἐνιαυτῶν
the counts the of-the past four years
μισθοὺς ἀσυμπαθῶς ἀπήτουν. ὁ δὲ μὴ ἔχων ἀποδοῦναι
pay pitilessly demanded he and not having to-pay
ἀνεβάλλετο τέως. ὡς δὲ ἐνέκειντο εὔλογα αἰτοῦντες,
was-putting-off for-a-while as and pressed reasonable-things asking
μὴ ἔχων ὅ τι καὶ δράσειε τὸν μὲν Βρυέννιον αὐτοῦ
not having what — also he-might-do — indeed Bryennios there
που φυλάσσειν τὴν Καστορίαν κατέλιπε καὶ τὸν τοὺς
somewhere to-guard — Kastoria he-left and the —
Πολόβους φυλάσσοντα Πέτρον τοῦ Ἀλίφα· αὐτὸς δὲ
Polovoi guarding Peter — of-Aliphas he and
τὸν Αὐλῶνα κατέλαβε. τοῦτο δὲ μεμαθηκὼς ὁ βασιλεὺς
— Avlona reached this and having-learned the emperor
νικητὴς εἰς τὴν βασιλίδα τῶν πόλεων ἐπαναζεύγνυσι.
victor to the queen of-the cities returns

VIII · JOHN ITALOS

Alexios finds the church troubled by Italos. Setting out from Italy, where he had been raised among soldiers in Sicily, Italos came to Constantinople and joined Psellos, but he never learned philosophy's depths. In uproarious disputations he grew harsh and arrogant. Michael Doukas used him and sent him to Epidamnos, where he was caught betraying the Romans, fled to Rome, and was recalled. Head of philosophy after Psellos, he argued unanswerably but wrote clumsily, and struck those he debated, then wept.

Καταλαβὼν δὲ ταύτην καὶ ἐν συγχύσει τὰ κατὰ
having-reached and it and in confusion the(-affairs) concerning
τὴν ἐκκλησίαν εὑρὼν οὐδὲ πρὸς βραχύν τινα χρόνον
the church having-found not-even for short some time
ἀνέσεως ἔτυχεν. ἀλλ' ὁποῖος ἐκεῖνος ἀποστολικὸς ὤν, ἐπεὶ
of-respite he-obtained but such that-man apostolic being since
κυμαινομένην τοῖς τοῦ Ἰταλοῦ δόγμασι τὴν ἐκκλησίαν
surging with-the — of-Italos doctrines the church
εὗρε, κἂν καὶ κατὰ τοῦ Βρυεννίου ἐβουλεύετο (Κελτὸς
he-found even-if also against — Bryennios he-was-planning a-Celt
δὲ οὗτος τὴν Καστορίαν κατασχών, ὡς εἴρηται), ἀλλ'
and this-man — Kastoria having-held as has-been-said but
οὐδ' οὕτως ἠμέλει τοῦ δόγματος. ἐπὶ τούτοις γὰρ καὶ
not-even thus he-neglected the doctrine at these-things for also
τὰ κατὰ τὸν Ἰταλὸν ἐβλάστησαν μεγάλως τὴν
the(-affairs) concerning — Italos sprouted greatly the
ἐκκλησίαν συνταράττοντα. οὗτος δὲ ὁ Ἰταλός (δεῖ
church confounding this and — Italos it-is-necessary
γὰρ τὰ κατ' αὐτὸν ἐξ ἀρχῆς αὐτῆς διηγήσασθαι)
for the(-things) concerning him from beginning itself to-narrate
ὥρμητο μὲν ἐξ Ἰταλίας καὶ ἐν τῇ Σικελίᾳ ἐφ' ἱκανὸν
had-set-out indeed from Italy and in — Sicily for a-good-while
διέτριψε· νῆσος δὲ αὕτη ἀγχοῦ τῆς Ἰταλίας διακειμένη.
spent island and this near — Italy lying
οἱ γὰρ Σικελοὶ ἀποστάντες τῆς Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῆς καὶ
the for Sicilians having-revolted from-the of-Romans rule and
εἰς πόλεμον κατ' αὐτῶν καὶ μάχας ἀπονενευκότες τοὺς
to war against them and battles having-turned the
Ἰταλοὺς εἰς συμμαχίαν προὐκαλέσαντο, μεθ' ὧν καὶ ὁ
Italians into alliance called-in with whom also the
τοῦ Ἰταλοῦ πατὴρ ἦν ἔχων καὶ τὸν παῖδα μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ,
— of-Italos father was having also the boy with himself

κἂν μὴ στρατεύσιμον εἶχε τὴν ἡλικίαν, συνεφεπόμενον
even-if not fit-for-service he-had the age following
τούτῳ καὶ συμπαρασκαίροντα καὶ τὰ πολεμικά, οἷα
him and skipping-alongside and the warlike-things such-as
τὰ τῶν Ἰταλῶν, παιδευόμενον. τὰ μὲν οὖν πρῶτα τῆς
those of-the Italians being-trained the indeed then first of-the
ἡλικίας οὕτως εἶχε τῷ Ἰταλῷ καὶ ἡ πρώτη τοιαύτη τούτῳ
age thus stood — for-Italos and the first such for-him
καταβολὴ τῆς παιδεύσεως. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ κλεινὸς ἐκεῖνος
foundation of-the education since and the famous that
Γεώργιος ὁ Μανιάκης τοῦ Μονομάχου τὰ σκῆπτρα τῆς
George the Maniakes — of-Monomachos the scepters of-the
Ῥωμαίων διέποντος τυραννήσας τὴν Σικελίαν κατέσχε,
of-Romans administering having-usurped — Sicily held
μόλις ἐκεῖθεν ὁ τοῦ Ἰταλοῦ πατὴρ καὶ τὸν παῖδα
hardly from-there the — of-Italos father and the boy
ἐπιφερόμενος πέφευγε. καὶ εἰς Λογγιβαρδίαν φυγάδες
carrying fled and to Lombardy as-fugitives
ἄμφω κατήχθησαν ἔτι ὑπὸ Ῥωμαίους τελοῦσαν. ἐκεῖθεν
both were-brought still under Romans paying-tribute from-there
δὲ οὗτος ὁ Ἰταλός, οὐκ οἶδ' ὅπως, τὴν Κωνσταντίνου
and this — Italos not I-know how the(-city) of-Constantine
κατέλαβε παιδείας ἁπάσης καὶ τέχνης λογικῆς οὐκ ἐνδεῶς
reached of-education all and art logical not deficiently
ἔχουσαν. καὶ γὰρ ἀπὸ τῆς αὐτοκρατορίας Βασιλείου τοῦ
having and for from the reign of-Basil the
πορφυρογεννήτου καὶ μέχρις αὐτῆς τῆς τοῦ Μονομάχου
born-in-the-purple and until itself the — of-Monomachos
βασιλείας ὁ λόγος, εἰ καὶ τοῖς πλείοσιν ἐρραθύμητο,
reign the learning even-if also by-the more-part had-been-neglected
ἀλλ' οὖν γε πάλιν οὐ καταδεδυκὼς ἀνέλαμψε καὶ ἀνέθορε
but then at-least again not having-set shone-forth and leapt-up

καὶ διὰ σπουδῆς τοῖς φιλολόγοις ἐγένετο ἐπὶ τῶν χρόνων
and in zeal to-the lovers-of-learning became in the times
Ἀλεξίου τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος, τὰ πρὸ τούτου χλιδώντων
of-Alexios the autocrat the(-time) before this living-luxuriously
τῶν πλειόνων καὶ παιζόντων ἀνθρώπων καὶ ὀρτυγίαις
the more-part and playing men and with-quail-fighting
καὶ ἄλλοις αἰσχίοσι παιγνίοις ἐνασχολουμένων διὰ
and other more-shameful games being-occupied because-of
τὴν χλιδήν, λόγον δὲ καὶ παίδευσιν ἅπασαν τεχνικὴν
the luxury learning and also education all technical
ἐν παρέργῳ τιθεμένων. οὕτως οὖν τοὺς ἐνταῦθα ἔχοντας
in by-work setting thus then those here being
ὁ Ἰταλὸς εὑρηκὼς καὶ ἀνδράσιν ὁμιλήσας σχολαστικοῖς
— Italos having-found and with-men having-consorted scholastic
καὶ ἀμειλίκτοις καὶ τὸ ἦθος ἀγρίοις (ἦσαν γὰρ τότε
and harsh and the character wild there-were for then
καί τινες περὶ τὴν βασιλεύουσαν τοιοῦτοι) παιδείας τοίνυν
also some about the reigning(-city) such of-education therefore
ἐξ ἐκείνων λογικῆς μετασχὼν καὶ Μιχαὴλ ἐκείνῳ τῷ
from those logical having-partaken also with-Michael that —
Ψελλῷ ἐν ὑστέρῳ προσωμίλησεν, ὃς οὐ πάνυ τι παρὰ
Psellos in later-time consorted who not very at-all with
διδασκάλοις σοφοῖς ἐφοίτησε, διὰ φύσεως δὲ δεξιότητα
teachers wise attended because-of of-nature and dexterity
καὶ νοὸς ὀξύτητα, τυχὼν μέντοι καὶ θεοῦ ἀρωγοῦ
and of-mind sharpness having-obtained however also God as-helper
πρὸς τούτοις διὰ τὴν τῆς μητρὸς θερμοτάτην ἱκεσίαν
besides these-things because-of the of-the mother most-fervent supplication
ἐπαγρυπνούσης συχνῶς τῷ ἐν τῷ ναῷ τοῦ Κύρου τῆς
keeping-vigil frequently at-the in the church — of-Kyros of-the
θεοτόκου σεπτῷ εἰκονίσματι καὶ θερμοῖς τοῖς δάκρυσιν
God-bearer revered icon and with-hot the tears

ὑπὲρ τοῦ παιδὸς ἐκκαλουμένης, εἰς ἄκρον σοφίας
for the boy calling-forth to the-summit of-wisdom
ἁπάσης ἐληλακὼς καὶ τὰ Ἑλλήνων καὶ Χαλδαίων
all having-driven and the(-things) of-Greeks and Chaldaeans
ἀκριβωσάμενος γέγονε τοῖς τότε χρόνοις περιβόητος
having-mastered became in-the then times renowned
ἐν σοφίᾳ. τούτῳ γοῦν ὁ Ἰταλὸς προσομιλήσας ἐν
in wisdom with-him at-any-rate — Italos having-consorted in
ἀπαιδεύτῳ ἤθει καὶ βαρβαρικῷ οὐκ ἠδύνατο φιλοσοφίας
uneducated character and barbarous not could of-philosophy
εἰς βάθος ἐλθεῖν διδασκάλων ὅλως μηδ' ἐν τῷ μανθάνειν
to depth come of-teachers at-all not-even in the learning
ἀνεχόμενος, θράσους ὢν μεστὸς καὶ ἀπονοίας βαρβαρικῆς
bearing of-boldness being full and of-folly barbarous
πάντων τε καθυπερτερεῖν καὶ πρὸ τοῦ μαθεῖν οἰόμενος καὶ
all both to-surpass even before the learning thinking even
πρὸς αὐτὸν τὸν Ψελλὸν ἐκ πρώτης ἀφετηρίας ἀντετάξατο.
against himself — Psellos from first starting-post he-arrayed-himself
ἐμβαθύνας δὲ τῇ διαλεκτικῇ καθημερινοὺς θορύβους
having-gone-deep and into-the dialectic daily uproars
ἐν πανδήμοις συνελεύσεσιν ἐποιεῖτο σοφιστικὰς συνείρων
in public assemblies he-made sophistical stringing-together
ἐρεσχελίας καὶ πᾶν εἴ τι τοιοῦτον προτιθεὶς καὶ αὖθις
quibbles and all if any such-thing putting-forward and again
ὑπέχων λόγον τοιουτότροπον. τοῦτον προσηταιρίσατο
rendering account of-such-a-kind him associated
καὶ ὁ τηνικαῦτα βασιλεύων Μιχαὴλ ὁ Δούκας καὶ οἱ
also the then reigning Michael the Doukas and the
τούτου ἀδελφοί· καὶ δευτέρου μὲν λόγου τοῦτον πρὸς τὸν
his brothers and second indeed of-rank him to —
Ψελλὸν ἐτίθεντο, ὅμως δὲ περιείχοντό τε αὐτοῦ καὶ ἐν
Psellos they-set nevertheless and clung-to both him and in

λογικαῖς συνεχρῶντο ἁμίλλαις· ἦσαν γὰρ φιλολογώτατοι
logical they-used contests they-were for most-fond-of-learning
οἱ Δοῦκαι καὶ οἱ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος ἀδελφοὶ καὶ αὐτὸς
the Doukai and the of-the autocrat brothers and himself
δὴ ὁ βασιλεὺς Μιχαήλ. ὁ δὲ Ἰταλὸς θερμὸν ἀεὶ
indeed the emperor Michael — and Italos hot always
καὶ μανικὸν πρὸς τὸν Ψελλὸν ἔβλεπε, κἂν ἐκεῖνος ὡς
and frenzied at — Psellos looked even-if that-one like
ἀετὸς τῶν τοῦ Ἰταλοῦ ἐρεσχελιῶν ὑπερίπτατο. τί τὸ
an-eagle the — of-Italos quibbles flew-over what the(-thing)
μετὰ ταῦτα; ἐσφάδαζε τὰ τῶν Λατίνων τε καὶ
after these(-things) was-quivering the(-affairs) of-the Latins both and
Ἰταλῶν κατὰ Ῥωμαίων καὶ ἡ τῆς Λογγιβαρδίας ὅλης
Italians against Romans and the — of-Lombardy whole
ὁμοῦ καὶ Ἰταλίας ἐμελετᾶτο κατάσχεσις. καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς
together and of-Italy was-being-planned seizure and the emperor
ἐκεῖνος τὸν Ἰταλὸν ὡς οἰκεῖον δῆθεν καὶ ἄνδρα ἀγαθὸν
that — Italos as intimate supposedly and a-man good
καὶ τὰ τῶν Ἰταλῶν ἐπιστάμενον εἰς Ἐπίδαμνον
and the(-affairs) of-the Italians knowing to Epidamnos
ἀπέστειλε. καὶ ἵνα συντέμω τὸν λόγον, ὡς κἀκεῖ
sent and that I-may-cut-short the account as there-too
ἐφωρᾶτο καταπροδιδοὺς τὰ ἡμέτερα καὶ ἀπεστέλλετο
he-was-detected betraying the our-affairs and was-sent
ὁ μέλλων αὐτὸν μετακινεῖν ἐκεῖθεν, τούτου αἰσθόμενος
the(-one) about him to-remove from-there of-this having-perceived
φυγὰς εἰς Ῥώμην ᾤχετο. εἶθ' ὁποῖος ἐκεῖνος μεταμεληθεὶς
a-fugitive to Rome he-went then such that-man having-repented
πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα παρακλήσει χρησάμενος κατὰ κέλευσιν
to the emperor entreaty having-used at command
ἐκείνου τὴν Κωνσταντίνου κατέλαβε τὴν μονὴν τὴν
of-that-man the(-city) of-Constantine reached the monastery the

οὕτω καλουμένην Πηγὴν ἐνδιαίτημα λαβὼν καὶ τὴν
so called Pege as-lodging having-taken and the
ἐκκλησίαν τῶν ἁγίων τεσσαράκοντα. ἔνθα καὶ τοῦ Ψελλοῦ
church of-the holy forty where also — Psellos
μεταχωρήσαντος Βυζαντόθεν μετὰ τὴν ἀπόκαρσιν αὐτὸς
having-withdrawn from-Byzantium after the tonsure he
φιλοσοφίας ἁπάσης προέστη διδάσκαλος, ὕπατος τῶν
of-philosophy all presided-over as-teacher consul of-the
φιλοσόφων χρηματίσας, καὶ τάς τε Ἀριστοτελικὰς βίβλους
philosophers having-been-styled and the both Aristotelian books
καὶ τὰς Πλατωνικὰς ἐξηγεῖσθαι ἐσπούδαζε. καὶ ἦν μὲν
and the Platonic to-expound he-was-zealous and he-was indeed
τῷ δόξαι πολυμαθέστατος, δεινὸς δὲ μᾶλλον εἴπερ τις
in-the seeming most-learned skilled and rather if anyone
ἄλλος διερευνήσασθαι τῶν ἀνθρώπων τὴν δεινοτάτην
other to-search-out of-the men the most-formidable
περιπατητικὴν καὶ ταύτης πλέον τὴν διαλεκτικήν. πρὸς δὲ
Peripatetic and than-this more the dialectic toward and
τὰς ἄλλας τέχνας τῶν λόγων οὐ πάνυ τι εὐφυῶς εἶχεν,
the other arts of-the letters not very at-all aptly he-had
ἀλλὰ περί τε τὴν γραμματικὴν ἐχώλευε τέχνην καὶ τοῦ
but in both the grammatical was-lame art and of-the
ῥητορικοῦ νέκταρος οὐκ ἐγεύσατο· οὐδὲ ἐκεῖθεν ὁ λόγος
rhetorical nectar not he-tasted nor from-there the speech
τούτου ἐφήρμοστο καὶ εἰς κάλλος ἀπέξεστο. ἔνθεν τοι καὶ
his had-been-fitted and for beauty polished whence surely also
τοῦ χαρακτῆρος εἶχε στρυφνῶς καὶ τὸ πᾶν ἐμπεριβόλως.
the style he-had harshly and the whole involvedly
καὶ συννενεύκει ὁ λόγος αὐτῷ τὰς ὀφρῦς, καὶ διόλου
and had-knit the speech for-him the brows and throughout
ἀπέπνει δριμύτητος. διαλεκτικῶν δὲ ἐφόδων ἐμεμέστωτο
breathed of-acridity of-dialectic and approaches was-full

τούτῳ τὸ ξύγγραμμα, καὶ ἡ γλῶττα τῶν ἐπιχειρημάτων
for-him the writing and the tongue of-the arguments
ἐπεφόρητο τῷ διαλεγομένῳ ἐν ταῖς ὁμιλίαις μᾶλλον
was-laden for-the(-one) conversing in the conversations more
ἢ ταῖς γραφαῖς. οὕτως εἶχεν ἰσχυρῶς πρὸς τὰς διαλέξεις
than in-the writings thus he-was strongly in the disputations
καὶ τοσοῦτον ἄφυκτος ἦν, ὡς τὸν ἀποκρινόμενον
and so-much inescapable was so-that the(-one) answering
αὐτομάτως συνενεχθῆναι πρὸς τὴν σιγὴν καὶ εἰς ἀμηχανίαν
of-his-own-accord to-be-driven toward the silence and into helplessness
ἐλθεῖν. ἑκατέρωθεν γὰρ τῆς ἐρωτήσεως βόθρον ὤρυττε
to-come on-both-sides for of-the question a-pit he-dug
καὶ εἰς φρέαρ ἀποριῶν ἐνέβαλλε τὸν προσδιαλεγόμενον.
and into a-well of-perplexities threw the interlocutor
οὕτως ἐμπείρως εἶχε τῆς διαλεκτικῆς ὁ ἀνὴρ καὶ ταῖς
so experiencedly had of-the dialectic the man and with-the
ἐπαλλήλαις ἐπερωτήσεσι κατέπνιγε τοὺς διαλεγομένους
successive questionings choked those conversing
συγχέων αὐτῶν καὶ συνταράττων τὸν νοῦν. καὶ οὐκ
confounding their and confusing the mind and not
ἦν τὸν ἅπαξ αὐτῷ συντυχόντα τοὺς λαβυρίνθους
it-was-possible the once with-him having-met the labyrinths
τούτου διελθεῖν. ἀμουσότατος δὲ ἄλλως ἦν, καὶ θυμὸς
of-his to-get-through most-uncultured and otherwise he-was and anger
αὐτοῦ κατεκράτει· καὶ ἥντινα προσεκτήσατο ἀρετὴν ἀπὸ
his prevailed and whatever he-acquired virtue from
τοῦ λόγου, κατέλυε καὶ ἠφάνιζεν ὁ θυμός. διελέγετο γὰρ
the learning destroyed and abolished the anger he-disputed for
καὶ ἔπεσι καὶ χερσὶν ὁ ἀνὴρ καὶ τὸν προσδιαλεγόμενον
both with-words and with-hands the man and the interlocutor
οὐκ ἠφίει πρὸς ἀπορίαν ὅλως ἐλθεῖν οὐδ' αὔταρκες ἦν αὐτῷ
not let to perplexity wholly come nor sufficient was to-him

τὸ ἐπιρράψαι τοῦ ἀντικειμένου τὸ στόμα καὶ σιγὴν αὐτοῦ
the to-sew-up of-the opponent the mouth and silence on-him
καταψηφιεῖσθαι, ἀλλ᾽ εὐθὺς ἡ χεὶρ κατά τε τοῦ πώγωνος
to-pass-sentence-of but at-once the hand against both the beard
καὶ τῶν τριχῶν προσεφήλλετο καὶ ὕβρις εὐθὺς ξυνεπόδιζεν
and the hair leapt and insult at-once trod-on-the-heels-of
ὕβριν· καὶ ἀκάθεκτος ἦν ὁ ἄνθρωπος καὶ τὰς χεῖρας
insult and unrestrainable was the fellow both the hands
ὁμοῦ καὶ τὴν γλῶτταν. τοῦτο δὲ μόνον ἀφιλόσοφον εἶχεν,
together and the tongue this and only unphilosophic he-had
ὅτι μετὰ τὴν πληγὴν κατελίμπανε τοῦτον ὁ θυμὸς καὶ τὸ
that after the blow left him the anger and the
δάκρυον κατελάμβανε καὶ εἰς λαμπρὸν μετάμελον ἤρχετο.
tear seized and to conspicuous repentance he-came
εἰ δέ τῳ φίλον καὶ περὶ τῆς ὄψεως αὐτοῦ μαθεῖν,
if and to-anyone dear also about the appearance his to-learn
μεγάλη μὲν αὐτοῦ ἡ κεφαλή, τὸ μέτωπον προπετέστατον,
large indeed his the head the forehead most-prominent
τὸ πρόσωπον ἐμφανὲς καὶ ὁ μυκτὴρ ἐλεύθερόν τε καὶ
the face open and the nostril free both and
ἄνετον ἀπέπνει τὸν ἀέρα καὶ περιφερὴς ὁ πώγων, τὰ
loose breathed-out the air and round the beard the
στέρνα εὐρὺς καὶ εὐπαγὴς τὰ μέλη τοῦ σώματος, τὴν δὲ
chest broad and well-knit the limbs of-the body the and
τῆς ἡλικίας ἀναδρομὴν τῶν εὐμηκεστέρων ἥττων, τὴν
of-the stature height than-the taller less the
δὲ φωνὴν τοιοῦτος, οἷος ἂν ἀπὸ τῶν Λατίνων ἐληλυθὼς
and voice such as — from the Latins having-come
νεανίας εἰς τὴν ἡμεδαπὴν γῆν τὰ Ἑλλήνων μὲν
a-youth into the our-own land the(-things) of-Greeks indeed
ἐκμάθοι, οὐ πάνυ δὲ καθαριεύοι τι τὴν φωνήν,
may-have-learned not very and would-speak-purely somewhat the voice

ἀλλ᾽ ἔστιν οὗ καὶ κολοβωτέρας ἐκφέροι τὰς συλλαβάς.
but there-is where also rather-docked he-would-utter the syllables
ἀλλ᾽ οὔτε τὸ τοῦ στόματος οὐκ εὐαγὲς οὔτε τὸ εἰς ἄκρον
but neither the of-the mouth not clean-speech nor the to the-utmost
ἄφωνον ἐλάνθανε τοὺς πολλούς, τοῖς δὲ ῥητορικωτέροις
voiceless escaped the many to-the and more-rhetorical
ἀγροικίζων κατελαμβάνετο. ἔνθεν τοι καὶ τὰ συγγράμματα
playing-the-rustic he-was-caught whence surely also the writings
τούτου συνέσφιγκτο μὲν ἀπανταχόθεν τοῖς διαλεκτικοῖς
his were-bound-tight indeed on-all-sides with-the dialectical
τόποις, ἀσυνταξίας δὲ κακίαν καὶ σολοικισμὸν σποράδην
commonplaces of-incoherence and (the)-fault and solecism here-and-there
διερριμμένον παντάπασιν οὐκ ἐξέφευγεν.
scattered entirely not escaped

IX · ITALOS CONDEMNED

Italos teaches Proclus, Plato, and Aristotle's logic to unruly students who toy with Ideas and transmigration. Anna digresses on her mother reading Maximos at table. Alexios has the sebastokrator Isaac examine Italos and sends him to the church, where the patriarch Eustratios Garidas comes under his spell. Hunted by the crowd, Italos hides in a hole in the roof of the Great Church. Eleven of his propositions are anathematized, and he later recants, so his name is anathematized only obliquely.

Οὗτος τοίνυν προκαθήμενος φιλοσοφίας ἁπάσης καὶ
this-man therefore presiding-over philosophy all and
συρρεούσης εἰς αὐτὸν τῆς νεότητος (καὶ γὰρ τά τε
flocking to him the youth and for the(-works) both
Πρόκλου καὶ Πλάτωνος καὶ τὰ φιλοσόφων ἀμφοῖν
of-Proclus and of-Plato and the(-works) of-the-philosophers both
Πορφυρίου τε καὶ Ἰαμβλίχου ἀνεκάλυπτε τούτοις δόγματα
of-Porphyry both and of-Iamblichus he-uncovered to-them doctrines

καὶ μάλιστα τὰς Ἀριστοτέλους τέχνας καὶ τὴν ὡς
and especially the of-Aristotle arts and the as
ὀργάνου παρεχομένην χρείαν ὑφηγεῖτο τοῖς ἐθέλουσι
of-an-instrument providing use he-expounded to-those wishing
πραγματείαν καὶ ταύτῃ μᾶλλον ἐνηβρύνετο καὶ ἐνησχόλητο)
treatise and in-this more he-prided-himself and was-occupied
οὐ πάνυ τι τοὺς μανθάνοντας ὠφελῆσαι ἐξίσχυσε τὸν
not very at-all the learners to-benefit he-was-able the
θυμὸν καὶ τὴν ἄλλην τοῦ ἤθους ἀκαταστασίαν κωλύμην
anger and the other of-the character instability as-hindrance
ἔχων. καὶ ὅρα μοι τοὺς τούτου μαθητάς, τὸν Σολομῶντα
having and see for-me the his disciples — Solomon
Ἰωάννην καί τινας Ἰασίτας καὶ Σερβλίας καὶ ἄλλους
John and some Iasitai and Serbliai and others
τάχα περὶ τὴν μάθησιν ἐσπουδακότας· ὧν τοὺς πλείους
perhaps about the learning having-been-zealous of-whom the most
θαμὰ φοιτῶντας πρὸς τὰ βασίλεια καὶ αὐτὴ ἐθεασάμην
frequently coming to the palace even I-myself saw
ὕστερον τεχνικὸν μηδέν τι κατὰ ἀκρίβειαν εἰδότας,
later technical nothing at-all in exactness knowing
σχηματιζομένους δὲ τὸν διαλεκτικὸν κινήσεσιν ἀτάκτοις
posing and as-the dialectician with-movements disorderly
καὶ μορίων παραφόροις τισὶ μεταφοραῖς, ὑγιὲς δὲ οὐδὲν
and of-limbs deranged some shiftings sound and nothing
ἐπισταμένους, προβαλλομένους τὰς ἰδέας, ἤδη δὲ καὶ
knowing putting-forward the ideas already and also
τὰς μετεμψυχώσεις συνεσκιασμένως πως καὶ ἄλλα τινὰ
the transmigrations in-a-shadowy-way somehow and other some
ὁμοιότροπα καὶ παραπλησίως τούτοις ἀλλόκοτα. καὶ
similar and likewise to-these strange and
τίς γὰρ λόγου μετέχων οὐ παρῆν τοῦ ἱεροῦ ζεύγους
who for of-learning partaking not was-near-to the sacred pair

τοσοῦτον περὶ τὴν τῶν θείων λόγων ἐξερεύνησιν διὰ
so-much about the of-the divine words searching-out through
πάσης νυκτὸς καὶ ἡμέρας διαπονουμένων; τοὺς ἐμούς φημι
all night and day toiling the my I-mean
τοκέας καὶ βασιλεῖς. ἀλλά τι μικρὸν παραδιηγήσομαι·
parents and sovereigns but something small I-will-narrate-in-passing
δίδωσι γάρ μοι τοῦτο νόμος ῥητορικός. μέμνημαι τῆς
gives for to-me this law rhetorical I-remember the
μητρὸς καὶ βασιλίδος πολλάκις ἀρίστου προκειμένου βίβλον
mother and empress often breakfast set-before a-book
ἐν χεροῖν φερούσης καὶ τοὺς λόγους διερευνωμένης τῶν
in both-hands carrying and the words searching-out of-the
δογματιστῶν ἁγίων πατέρων, μάλιστα δὲ τοῦ φιλοσόφου
dogmatic holy fathers especially and of-the philosopher
Μαξίμου καὶ μάρτυρος. ἐσπουδάκει γὰρ οὐ τοσοῦτον
Maximos and martyr she-had-been-zealous for not so-much
περὶ τὰς φυσικὰς συζητήσεις, ὁπόσον περὶ τὰ δόγματα τὴν
about the natural inquiries as about the doctrines the
ὄντως σοφίαν καρποῦσθαι βουλομένη. καί μοι πολλάκις
truly wisdom to-harvest wishing and to-me often
θαυμάζειν ἐπήει καὶ θαυμάζουσα ἔφην ποτὲ πρὸς αὐτὴν
to-wonder it-occurred and wondering I-said once to her
"πῶς αὐτόθεν πρὸς τοσοῦτον ὕψος ἀπέβλεψας; ἔγωγε
how of-yourself to so-great height did-you-look I-for-my-part
τρέμω καὶ οὐδ' ἄκροις ὠσὶν ἀποτολμῶ τούτων ἐπαΐειν.
tremble and not-even with-tips-of ears dare these to-hear
τὸ γὰρ πάνυ θεωρητικόν τε καὶ νοερὸν τοῦ ἀνδρός, ὥς
the for very contemplative both and intellectual of-the man as
φασιν, ἴλιγγον παρέχεται τοῖς ἀναγινώσκουσιν." ἡ δὲ
they-say dizziness provides to-those reading she and
μειδιάσασα ἔφη "ἐπαινετὴν οἶδα τὴν δειλίαν ταύτην· καὶ
having-smiled she-said praiseworthy I-know the timidity this and

οὐδ᾽ αὐτὴ ἀτρέμας ταῖς βίβλοις ταύταις πρόσειμι.
not-even I-myself without-trembling to-the books these approach
ἀλλ᾽ ὅμως ἀποσπᾶσθαι τούτων οὐ δύναμαι. σὺ δέ μοι
but nevertheless to-be-torn-away from-these not I-can you and for-me
μικρὸν ἀνάμεινον καὶ ταῖς ἄλλαις ἐγκύψασα βίβλοις
a-little wait and in-the other having-pored-over books
πρότερον καὶ τῆς τούτων ἀπογεύσῃ ἡδύτητος.” ἔτρωσέ μου
first and the of-these you-will-taste sweetness wounded my
τὴν καρδίαν ἡ τῶν ῥηθέντων μνήμη καὶ ὥσπερ εἰς
the heart the of-the(-things) said memory and as-if into
πέλαγος ἄλλων διηγημάτων ἐμπέπτωκα. ἀλλά με θεσμὸς
a-sea of-other narratives I-have-fallen but me law
ἱστορίας ἀπείργει· ἔνθεν τοι καὶ πρὸς τὰ κατὰ
of-history restrains whence surely also to the(-affairs) concerning
τὸν Ἰταλὸν ἀνατρεχέτω ὁ λόγος. ἐν τούτοις οὖν τοῖς
— Italos let-run-back the account in these then the
ἄνωθεν ῥηθεῖσιν αὐτοῦ μαθηταῖς ἀκμάζων ὁ Ἰταλὸς πᾶσι
above mentioned his disciples flourishing — Italos to-all
καταφρονητικῶς προσεφέρετο τοὺς πολλοὺς τῶν ἀνοήτων
contemptuously bore-himself the many of-the foolish
πρὸς ἀνταρσίας ἀνακινῶν καὶ τυράννους ἐκ τῶν οἰκείων
to revolts stirring-up and tyrants from the own
μαθητῶν οὐκ ὀλίγους ἀποκαθιστάς. καὶ εἶχον πολλοὺς
disciples not few establishing and I-could many
προφέρειν, εἰ μὴ ὁ χρόνος με τὴν μνήμην ἀφείλετο. ἀλλὰ
to-name if not the time me of-the memory had-deprived but
ταῦτα μὲν ἦσαν πρὸ τοῦ ἀναχθῆναι τὸν ἐμὸν πατέρα εἰς
these(-things) indeed were before the to-be-raised the my father to
τὴν τῆς βασιλείας περιωπήν· ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ ὧδὶ παιδείας
the of-the empire eminence since and the(-things) here of-education
ἁπάσης εὗρεν ἐνδεῶς ἔχοντα καὶ τέχνης λογικῆς τοῦ λόγου
all he-found lacking being and of-art logical the learning

πόρρω που ἀπελαθέντος, αὐτός, εἴ που σπινθῆρές
far somewhere having-been-driven-off he if anywhere sparks
τινες ἦσαν τούτου ὑπὸ σποδιᾷ κρυπτόμενοι, ἀναχωννύειν
some were of-it under ash hidden to-rake-up
ἠπείγετο καὶ ὅσοι περὶ τὰ μαθήματα ἐπιρρεπῶς εἶχον
was-hastening and as-many-as about the sciences inclined were
(ἦσαν γάρ τινες καὶ οὗτοι βραχεῖς, καὶ οὗτοι μέχρι
there-were for some even these few and these up-to
τῶν Ἀριστοτελικῶν ἑστηκότες προθύρων), τούτους πρὸς
the Aristotelian standing porches these to
μάθησιν ὀτρύνων οὐκ ἐνεδίδου, προηγεῖσθαι δὲ τὴν τῶν
learning urging not he-ceased to-take-precedence and the of-the
θείων βίβλων μελέτην τῆς Ἑλληνικῆς παιδείας ἐπέτρεπε.
divine books study of-the Hellenic education he-directed
τὸν δὲ Ἰταλὸν εὑρηκὼς θορύβων τὰ πάντα μεστὰ
— and Italos having-found with-uproars the(-things) all full
ποιούμενον καὶ πολλοὺς ἐξαπατῶντα τῷ σεβαστοκράτορι
making and many deceiving to-the sebastokrator
Ἰσαακίῳ τὴν τούτου δοκιμασίαν ἀνέθετο· ἀνὴρ δὲ οὗτος
Isaac the his examination he-entrusted a-man and this
φιλολογώτατος καὶ μεγαλεπηβολώτατος. καὶ ὃς οὕτως
most-fond-of-learning and most-high-minded and he thus
ἔχοντα τὸν ἄνδρα εὑρηκὼς δημοσίᾳ ἤλεγξε παραστήσας εἰς
being the man having-found publicly refuted having-set-him into
μέσον εἶθ' οὕτως τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ παρέπεμψε κατὰ κέλευσιν
the-midst then thus to-the church he-sent according-to command
τἀδελφοῦ καὶ βασιλέως. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ ἀπαιδευσίαν
of-his-brother and emperor since and the own lack-of-education
κρύπτειν οὐχ οἷός τε ἦν, κἀκεῖσε ἔκφυλα τῆς ἐκκλησίας
to-hide not able — he-was even-there alien to-the church
δόγματα ἐξηρεύξατο καὶ εἰς μέσους τοὺς τῆς ἐκκλησίας
doctrines he-belched-out and into the-midst the of-the church

λογάδας κωμῳδῶν οὐκ ἐπαύετο καὶ ἄλλα τινὰ ποιῶν
picked-men mocking not he-ceased and other some-things doing
ἤθους ἀπαιδεύτου καὶ βαρβαρικοῦ προέδρου ὄντος τῆς
of-character uneducated and barbarous president being of-the
ἐκκλησίας τηνικαῦτα Εὐστρατίου τοῦ Γαριδᾶ· ὃς τοῦτον
church then Eustratios the Garidas who him
παρακατέσχε περὶ τὰς οἰκοδομὰς τῆς μεγάλης ἐκκλησίας,
detained about the buildings of-the great church
ὡς ἵνα τάχα πρὸς τὸ κρεῖττον μεταποιήσῃ. ἀλλὰ μικροῦ
as that perhaps to the better he-might-change but almost
θᾶττον ἂν αὐτὸς τῆς ἐκείνου μετέσχε κακίας ἢ μετέδωκε
sooner — he of-the that-man's partook wickedness than imparted
κρείττονος γνώσεως, κατὰ τὸ φάμενον, καὶ ὁ Ἰταλὸς
better knowledge according-to the saying and — Italos
τὸν Γαριδᾶν ὅλον ἑαυτοῦ ἐποιήσατο. τί τὸ ἐντεῦθεν;
— Garidas wholly his-own made what the(-thing) thereupon
ὁ δῆμος ἅπας τῆς Κωνσταντίνου πρὸς τὴν ἐκκλησίαν
the people all of-the(-city) of-Constantine toward the church
συγκεκίνητο τὸν Ἰταλὸν ἀναζητοῦντες. καὶ τάχα ἂν ἀφ'
had-been-stirred — Italos seeking and perhaps — from
ὕψους εἰς μέσον τῆς ἐκκλησίας ἔρριπτο, εἰ μὴ
height into the-midst of-the church would-have-been-thrown if not
λαθὼν ἐκεῖνος εἰς τὸν ὄροφον τουτουΐ τοῦ θείου
having-escaped-notice that-man to the roof of-this-here the divine
τεμένους ἀνελθὼν ἔν τινι φωλεῷ ἑαυτὸν συνεκάλυψεν.
precinct having-gone-up in some hole himself hid
ὡς δὲ τὰ παρ' ἐκείνου κακῶς δογματισθέντα πολλοῖς
as and the(-things) by that-man wrongly taught-as-dogma among-many
τῶν περὶ τὰ ἀνάκτορα ἐθρυλλεῖτο καὶ μεγιστᾶνες
of-those about the palace were-noised-abroad and magnates
οὐκ ὀλίγοι διεφθάρησαν ὑπὸ τῶν φθοροποιῶν τούτων
not few were-corrupted by the destructive these

δογμάτων καὶ μεγάλως ἡ τοῦ βασιλέως ψυχὴ διὰ τοῦτο
doctrines and greatly the of-the emperor soul because-of this
ἐδάκνετο, εἰς ἕνδεκά τινα κεφάλαια τὰ δογματισθέντα
was-stung into eleven some chapters the taught-as-dogma
κακῶς παρὰ τοῦ Ἰταλοῦ συνεκεφαλαιώσαντο καὶ τῷ
wrongly by — Italos they-summarized and to-the
βασιλεῖ ἐξαπέστειλαν. ὁ δὲ αὐτοκράτωρ αὐτὰ ταῦτα
emperor sent the and autocrat very these
τὰ κεφάλαια τὸν Ἰταλὸν ἀναθεματίσαι ἐπ᾽ ἄμβωνος
the chapters — Italos to-anathematize from ambo
ἐν τῇ μεγάλῃ ἐκκλησίᾳ ἐκέλευσεν ἀνακεκαλυμμένῃ τῇ
in the great church ordered with-uncovered the
κεφαλῇ τοῦ πλήθους ἅπαντος ἀκροωμένου καὶ ἐπιλέγοντος
head the multitude all listening and pronouncing-upon
αὐτοῖς τὸ ἀνάθεμα. ὡς οὖν ἐγένετο ταῦτα καὶ ὁ
them the anathema as then happened these(-things) and —
Ἰταλὸς ἀκάθεκτος ἦν καὶ πάλιν ἐν πολλοῖς τὰ τοιαῦτα
Italos unrestrainable was and again among many the such-things
ἔλεγεν ἀναφανδὸν καὶ παραινούμενος παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως
said openly and being-admonished by the emperor
ἄτακτόν τι καὶ βαρβαρικὸν ἀπεπήδα, ἀνεθεματίσθη
disorderly something and barbarous jumped-off was-anathematized
καὶ αὐτός, κἂν ἐς ὕστερον αὖθις ἐκείνου μεταμεληθέντος
also he even-if for later again that-man having-repented
μετριώτερος καὶ ὁ τούτου γέγονεν ἀναθεματισμός. καὶ τὰ
more-moderate also the his became anathematization and the
μὲν δόγματα ἀπεντεῦθεν ἀναθεματίζεται, τὸ δὲ ἐκείνου
indeed doctrines thereupon is-anathematized the and that-man's
ὄνομα πλαγίως πως καὶ ὑποκεκρυμμένως καὶ οὐδὲ
name obliquely somehow and covertly and not-even
τοῖς πολλοῖς γνωρίμως ὑπάγεται τῷ ἐκκλησιαστικῷ
to-the many recognizably is-brought-under the ecclesiastical

ἀναθέματι. καὶ γὰρ οὗτος ἐν ὑστέροις καιροῖς μετεβέβλητο
anathema and for this-man in later times had-changed
περὶ τὸ δόγμα καὶ ἐφ᾽ οἷς ποτε πεπλάνητο,
about the doctrine and for the-things-in-which once he-had-strayed
μεταμεμέλητο. ἠρνεῖτο δὲ καὶ τὰς μετεμψυχώσεις καὶ τὸ
had-repented he-denied and also the transmigrations and the
ὑβρίζειν τὰς σεπτὰς εἰκόνας τῶν ἁγίων καὶ τὸν περὶ
to-insult the revered icons of-the saints and the about
τῶν ἰδεῶν λόγον μεθερμηνεύειν πως πρὸς τὸ ὀρθόδοξον
the ideas doctrine to-reinterpret somehow toward the orthodox
ἔσπευδε καὶ δῆλος ἦν καὶ αὐτὸς καταγινώσκων ἑαυτοῦ
hastened and plain was also himself condemning himself
ἐφ᾽ οἷς πρώην τοῦ εὐθέος μετετέτραπτο.
for the-things-in-which formerly from-the straight he-had-turned-aside

BOOK VI

X · KASTORIA RECOVERED

Alexios besieges Bryennios in Kastoria, a fortress on a neck of land in its lake. When siege-engines fail, he has boats carted across the isthmus, and George Palaiologos lands behind the town while Alexios attacks from the land. The counts, caught between the two, desert to him, some to serve and some to go home. Bryennios swears never again to take arms against him and is given safe conduct out of the empire. Alexios returns to Byzantium victorious.

Τοῦ μέντοι Βρυεννίου κατέχοντος τὴν Καστορίαν, καθάπερ
— however Bryennios holding — Kastoria as
ἄνωθεν εἴρηται, τοῦτον ἐκεῖθεν ἐξελάσαι καὶ τὴν Καστορίαν
above has-been-said him from-there to-drive-out and — Kastoria
κατασχεῖν ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ σπουδάζων τὸ ὁπλιτικὸν
to-take the autocrat being-eager the heavy-armed-force

αὖθις ἀνεκαλεῖτο καὶ ὅπλοις ἅπαντας καταφράξας πρὸς
again was-recalling and with-arms all having-fenced for
τειχομαχίαν καὶ τὰς κατὰ τοὺς ἔξωθεν πολέμους συμπλοκὰς
wall-fighting and the in the outside wars engagements
τῆς πρὸς τὸ κάστρον φερούσης εἴχετο. ἔστι δὲ ἡ θέσις
to-the toward the fortress leading(-road) held is and the position
τοῦ τόπου τοιαύτη. λίμνη τίς ἐστιν ἡ τῆς Καστορίας,
of-the place such a-lake certain is the — of-Kastoria
ἐν ᾗ τράχηλος ἀπὸ τῆς χέρσου εἰσέρχεται καὶ περὶ
in which a-neck from the mainland enters and about
τὸ ἄκρον εὐρύνεται εἰς πετρώδεις βουνοὺς ἀποτελευτῶν.
the tip widens into rocky hills ending
περὶ δὲ τὸν τράχηλον καὶ πύργοι καὶ μεσοπύργια
about and the neck both towers and curtain-walls
ᾠκοδόμηνται κάστρου δίκην, διόπερ καὶ Καστορία
have-been-built of-a-fortress in-the-manner-of wherefore also Kastoria
ὀνομάζεται. ἐκεῖ καταλαβὼν ὁ βασιλεὺς τὸν Βρυέννιον δέον
it-is-named there having-caught the emperor — Bryennios needful
ἔκρινε τῶν πύργων καὶ τῶν μεσοπυργίων πρώτως δι᾽
he-judged the towers and the curtain-walls first through
ἑλεπόλεων ἀποπειρᾶσθαι. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἄλλως οὐκ ἐνῆν,
siege-engines to-make-trial-of since and otherwise not it-was-possible
εἰ μὴ ὡς ἔκ τινος ὁρμητηρίου τοὺς στρατιώτας τοῖς
if not as from some base the soldiers to-the
τείχεσι προσπελάζειν, χάρακα μέντοι πρώτως ἐπήξατο,
walls to-approach a-palisade however first he-pitched
εἶτα πύργους ξυλίνους κατασκευάσας καὶ σιδήρῳ τὰ
then towers wooden having-built and with-iron the
τούτων συνδήσας περισφίγματα ἐκ τούτων ὡς ἔκ τινος
of-these having-bound joinings from these as from some
φρουρίου τοὺς κατὰ τῶν Κελτῶν συνίστατο πολέμους. τὰς
garrison the against the Celts organized wars the

γοῦν ἐλεπόλεις καὶ τὰ πετροβόλα μηχανήματα ἔξωθεν
at-any-rate siege-engines and the stone-throwing machines outside
καταστήσας διὰ πάσης νυκτὸς καὶ ἡμέρας μαχόμενος καὶ
having-set through all night and day fighting and
κατασείσας τὸν τοῦ τείχους περίβολον, ἐπεὶ καρτερώτερον
having-shaken the of-the wall circuit since more-stoutly
οἱ ἐντὸς ἀνθίσταντο (οὐκ ἐνεδίδουν οὐδὲ τοῦ τείχους
those inside resisted not they-yielded not-even the wall
καταρραγέντος), ὡς δὲ οὐκ ἐνῆν αὐτῷ ἔτι τῶν κατὰ
having-been-broken-down as and not it-was-possible for-him still the in
σκοπὸν τυχεῖν, βουλὴν βουλεύεται γενναίαν ἅμα καὶ
aim to-hit a-plan plans noble together and
συνετήν, ἵν' ἐξ ἑκατέρου ἔκ τε τῆς ἠπείρου καὶ τῆς
intelligent that from each-side from both the mainland and the
λίμνης διὰ πλοίων εἰσαγαγὼν γενναίους τινὰς ἐν ταὐτῷ
lake through boats having-brought-in noble some in the-same
τὸν πόλεμον ποιήσηται. πλοίων δὲ μὴ ἐνόντων ἐν ἁμάξαις
the war he-might-make boats and not being-available on wagons
ἐπιφορτίσας ἀκάτιά τινα μικρὰ διὰ τοῦ μολισκοῦ ἐν αὐτῇ
having-loaded skiffs some small through the isthmus into it
εἰσήγαγεν. ὁρῶν δὲ τοὺς μὲν ἀνιόντας τῶν Λατίνων ἐξ
he-brought-in seeing and those indeed going-up of-the Latins from
ἑνὸς μέρους ταχέως ἀνιόντας, τοὺς δ' ἐξ ἑτέρου κατιόντας
one side quickly going-up those and from the-other going-down
πλείονα χρόνον τρίβοντας ἐν τῷ κατιέναι τὸν Παλαιολόγον
more time spending in the going-down — Palaiologos
Γεώργιον μετὰ ἀλκίμων ἀνδρῶν ἐν αὐτοῖς εἰσελάσας εἰς
George with valiant men in them having-driven-in to
τοὺς περὶ τοὺς βουνοὺς πρόποδας προσορμίσαι προσέταξε
the about the hills foothills to-moor he-ordered
παραγγείλας, ὁπηνίκα τὸ δοθὲν αὐτῷ σημεῖον θεάσοιτο,
having-instructed when the given to-him signal he-should-see

τηνικαῦτα τὴν ἀκρολοφίαν καταλαβόντα ἐξ ὀπισθίων
then the hill-top having-seized from rear
αὐτῶν καὶ διὰ τῆς ἀοικήτου καὶ ῥᾳδιωτέρας εἰσελθεῖν·
them and through the uninhabited and easier to-enter
καὶ ὁπηνίκα τὸν αὐτοκράτορα θεάσεται ἀπὸ τῆς χέρσου
and when the autocrat he-will-see from the mainland
τὸν μετὰ τῶν Λατίνων πόλεμον ἀναδεξάμενον, καὶ αὐτὸν
the with the Latins war having-taken-up also he
σπεῦσαι ὡς δύναμις, ἵνα μὴ ὡσαύτως πρὸς ἑκάτερα
to-hasten as possible that not likewise on both-sides
μάχεσθαι δυνάμενοι, ἀλλ' ἐξ ἑνὸς μέρους τοῦ τόνου
to-fight being-able but from one side the tension
τῆς μάχης χαλάσαντος ἁλώσιμοι τηνικαῦτα ἐκ ταὐτοῦ
of-the battle having-slackened capturable then from the-same
μέρους γένωνται. ὁ μὲν οὖν Παλαιολόγος Γεώργιος
side they-might-become — indeed then Palaiologos George
ταῖς ἀκταῖς τοῦ ἤδη ῥηθέντος βουνοῦ προσορμίσας
to-the shores of-the already mentioned hill having-moored
ὁπλισάμενος εἱστήκει σκοπὸν ἄνωθεν ἐπιστήσας τὸν τὸ
having-armed stood a-lookout above having-set the(-one) the
δοθὲν αὐτῷ παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως σημεῖον ἐπιτηροῦντα ἰδεῖν
given to-him by the emperor signal watching-for to-see
καὶ παρήγγειλεν ὡς, ὁπηνίκα τοῦτο θεάσοιτο, αὖθις αὐτὸ
and instructed that when this he-should-see again it
τούτῳ ἐπισημήνασθαι. αὐγαζούσης δὲ τῆς ἡμέρας ἤδη τὸ
to-him to-signal dawning and the day already the
ἐνυάλιον ἀλαλάξαντες οἱ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος πόλεμον μετὰ
war-cry having-raised those of-the autocrat war with
τῶν Λατίνων ἀπὸ τῆς χέρσου συναίρειν ἠπείγοντο. ὁ δὲ
the Latins from the mainland to-take-up were-hastening the and
σκοπὸς τὸ δοθὲν σημεῖον θεασάμενος δι' ἑτέρου σημείου
lookout the given signal having-beheld through another signal

δηλοῖ τῷ Παλαιολόγῳ. ὁ δ' εὐθὺς μετὰ τῶν σὺν αὐτῷ
makes-known — to-Palaiologos he and at-once with those with him
τὴν ἀκρολοφίαν θᾶττον καταλαβὼν συνησπικὼς ἵστατο.
the hill-top more-quickly having-seized locking-shields stood
τὴν γοῦν ἐκτὸς πολιορκίαν ὁ Βρυέννιος ὁρῶν καὶ τὸν
the at-any-rate outside siege — Bryennios seeing and —
Παλαιολόγον κατ' αὐτῶν βρύχοντα οὐδ' οὕτως ἐνεδίδου,
Palaiologos against them roaring not-even thus yielded
ἀλλὰ τοὺς κόμητας ἐκέλευε γενναιότερον ἀντικαθίστασθαι.
but the counts ordered more-nobly to-stand-against
οἱ δὲ ἀναισχυντότερον αὐτῷ προσφερόμενοι ἔλεγον "ὁρᾷς,
they and more-shamelessly to-him bearing-themselves said you-see
ὡς κακὸν ἐπὶ κακῷ ἐστήρικται· ἔξεστιν οὖν ἑκάστῳ
how evil upon evil is-fixed it-is-permitted then to-each
ἡμῶν τοῦ λοιποῦ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σωτηρίαν πραγματεύσασθαι
of-us for-the rest the own safety to-see-to
καὶ τοὺς μὲν τῷ βασιλεῖ προσελθεῖν, τοὺς δὲ ἐπὶ
and some indeed to-the emperor to-go-over others and to
τὴν οἰκείαν πατρίδα ἐπαναζεῦξαι". καὶ παραχρῆμα
the own homeland to-return and immediately
ἔργου ἁψάμενοι ἐξαιτοῦνται τὸν αὐτοκράτορα μίαν μὲν
work having-taken-up they-ask the autocrat one indeed
σημαίαν πρὸς τῷ τοῦ μεγαλομάρτυρος Γεωργίου τεμένει
standard by the of-the great-martyr George precinct
στῆναι (ἔφθασε γὰρ ἐπ' ὀνόματι τούτου τοῦ μάρτυρος
to-stand had-been-first for in name of-this the martyr
ἐκεῖσε ἀνοικοδομηθῆναι ὁ ναὸς οὑτοσί), τὴν δὲ ὡς
there to-be-rebuilt the church this-here the(-other) and as
πρὸς τὸν Αὐλῶνα, ἵν' "ὁπόσοι μὲν ἡμῶν τῇ σῇ
toward — Avlona that as-many-as indeed of-us to-the your
βασιλείᾳ θητεῦσαι βούλοιντο, τῇ πρὸς τὸ τέμενος τοῦ
majesty to-serve might-wish to-the toward the precinct of-the

μάρτυρος ἀπονενευκυίᾳ προσέλθωσιν, ὁπόσοι δὲ πρὸς
martyr inclining may-go-over as-many-as and to
τὴν ἰδίαν πατρίδα ἐπαναζεῦξαι, τῇ πρὸς τὸν Αὐλῶνα
the own homeland to-return to-the toward — Avlona
ἀφορώσῃ προσχωρήσωσι". ταῦτ' εἰπόντες παραχρῆμα
looking may-go-over these(-things) having-said immediately
προσῆλθον τῷ βασιλεῖ. ὁ δὲ Βρυέννιος γενναῖος ὢν
went-over to-the emperor — and Bryennios noble being
ἀνὴρ προσεληλυθέναι μὲν τῷ βασιλεῖ οὐδαμῶς ἠβούλετο,
a-man to-have-gone-over indeed to-the emperor in-no-way wished
ἐπώμνυτο δὲ μηδέποτε κατ' αὐτοῦ ὅπλα κινῆσαι, εἰ
swore and never against him arms to-move if
μόνον δοίη τοὺς τοῦτον μέχρι τῶν ὁρίων τῆς τῶν
only he-would-give those him as-far-as the borders of-the of-the
Ῥωμαίων βασιλείας ἀκινδύνως διασώσοντας καὶ οὕτω
Romans empire safely going-to-bring-through and thus
πρὸς τὴν ἰδίαν ἀπολῦσαι χώραν. ὁ δὲ αὐτοκράτωρ μάλα
to the own to-release land the and autocrat very
ταχέως ἐπλήρου τὸ αἰτηθέν· αὐτὸς δὲ τῆς πρὸς τὸ
quickly fulfilled the request he and to-the(-road) toward —
Βυζάντιον εἶχετο νικητὴς ἐπιφανέστατος.
Byzantium held victor most-illustrious

XI · THE PAULICIANS SEIZED

Before entering the palace Alexios settles with the Paulician Manichaeans, who had deserted him. He summons them to Mosynopolis with friendly letters, pretending he wants to enroll them, and has them come in by tens to be registered. Each group is disarmed and shut up without the next knowing. Their property goes to the loyal soldiers and their wives are held in the citadel. The ringleaders are exiled to islands, while the rest are pardoned or baptized and sent home.

Μικρὸν δὲ ἐνταῦθα τὴν τοῦ λόγου διήγησιν διακόψασα,
a-little and here the of-the account narration having-interrupted
ὅπως καὶ τοὺς Παυλικιανοὺς κατηγωνίσατο, διηγήσομαι.
how also the Paulicians he-defeated I-will-narrate
οὐκ ἔφερε μηδὲ τούτους τοὺς ἀποστάτας καταγωνίσασθαι
not he-bore not-even these the rebels to-defeat
πρὸ τοῦ τὰ βασίλεια καταλαβεῖν, ἀλλ' ὥσπερ ἀπό
before the the palace to-reach but as-if from
τινος νίκης ἑτέραν νίκην πρυτανευόμενος καὶ τὴν πληθὺν
some victory another victory administering also the multitude
τῶν Μανιχαίων τὸν κύκλον συμπληροῦσαν τῶν ἑαυτοῦ
of-the Manichaeans the circle completing of-the his
κατορθωμάτων ἐποίει. οὐδὲ γὰρ ἐνῆν τῷ λαμπρῷ
successes he-made not-even for it-was-possible on-the brilliant
τροπαίῳ τῶν ἑσπερίων πολεμίων οἷον σπίλον ἐνεῖναι
trophy of-the western enemies as-it-were a-stain to-be-in
τοὺς ἐκ Παυλικιανῶν ὁρμωμένους ἐκείνους. διὰ πολέμου
those from Paulicians sprung those through war
δὲ καὶ μάχης οὐκ ἤθελεν, ἵνα μὴ ἐν τῇ συμβολῇ τοῦ
and also battle not he-wished that not in the encounter of-the
πολέμου πολλοὶ ἐξ ἑκατέρων ἀναιρεθήσονται, πάλαι
war many from both-sides will-be-killed long-ago
τούτους γινώσκων ἐκθυμοτάτους ἄνδρας καὶ δριμὺ κατὰ
them knowing most-passionate men and keenly against
τῶν ἐχθρῶν πνέοντας. ἔσπευδεν οὖν διὰ τοῦτο τοὺς
the enemies breathing he-hastened then because-of this the
πρωταιτίους μὲν τιμωρήσασθαι, τοὺς δέ γε λοιποὺς τῷ
ringleaders indeed to-punish the and at-least rest to-the
τοῦ στρατοπέδου συγκαταλέξαι σώματι. ἔνθεν τοι καὶ διὰ
of-the camp to-enroll-with body whence surely also by
τρόπου τούτους μετήει. γινώσκων δὲ τὸ φιλοκίνδυνον τῶν
stratagem them he-pursued knowing and the love-of-danger of-the

ἀνδρῶν ἐκείνων καὶ περὶ τοὺς πολέμους καὶ τὰς μάχας
men those and about the wars and the battles
ἀκάθεκτον ἐδεδίει μὴ ἀπογνόντες χεῖρόν τι μελετήσαιεν·
unrestrainable he-feared lest having-despaired worse something they-might-plan
ἠρέμουν γὰρ τέως τὴν σφῶν οἰκοῦντες πατρίδα καὶ
were-quiet for for-the-time the their inhabiting homeland and
οὔπω πρὸς λεηλασίας ἄλλας καὶ προνομὰς ἐξετράποντο·
not-yet to plunderings other and forays had-turned
μετεπέμπετο οὖν διὰ γραμμάτων τούτους ἐν τῷ πρὸς τὸ
he-summoned then through letters them in the toward —
Βυζάντιον ἐπανέρχεσθαι συχναῖς ὑποσχέσεσιν. οἱ δὲ τὴν
Byzantium returning with-frequent promises they and the
κατὰ τῶν Κελτῶν νίκην αὐτοῦ μεμαθηκότες ἐδεδίεσαν, εἰ
against the Celts victory his having-learned feared if
τάχα καὶ τὰ γράμματα χρησταῖς αὐτοὺς ἐλπίσιν ὑπέσαινον·
perhaps even the letters with-good them hopes fawned-upon
ὅμως καὶ μὴ βουλόμενοι τῆς πρὸς αὐτὸν εἴχοντο.
nevertheless even not wishing to-the(-road) toward him held
ἐκεῖνος δὲ τὴν Μοσυνούπολιν καταλαβὼν αὐτοῦ που
that-man and — Mosynopolis having-reached there somewhere
προσέμενεν ὑποκρινόμενος δι᾽ ἄλλα τινὰ ἐγκαρτερεῖν, τὸ
waited pretending for other some-things to-stay the
δέ γε ὅλον τὴν αὐτῶν ἀναμένων ἄφιξιν. καταλαβόντων
and at-least whole the their awaiting arrival having-arrived
δὲ ἐσχηματίζετο ἀναθεωρῆσαι τούτους βούλεσθαι καὶ
and he-feigned to-review them to-wish and
ἑκάστου τὴν ὀνομασίαν ἐγγράψασθαι. ἔνθεν τοι καὶ
of-each the name to-enroll whence surely also
φοβερὸς προὐκάθητο καὶ οὐ φύρδην, ἀλλὰ κατὰ δεκάδας
formidable he-sat-presiding and not pell-mell but by tens
τοὺς λογάδας τῶν Μανιχαίων πορεύεσθαι ἐκέλευσε τὴν τῶν
the picked of-the Manichaeans to-go ordered the of-the

κοινῶν θέαν ἐς νέωτα ὑποσχόμενος κᾆθ' οὕτως εἴσω τῶν
common-men review for tomorrow having-promised and-then thus inside the
πυλῶν ἀπογραφομένους εἰσέρχεσθαι. ἡτοιμασμένοι δὲ ὄντες
gates being-registered to-enter prepared and being
οἱ τούτους δεσμεῖν ὀφείλοντες τοὺς ἵππους καὶ τὰ ὅπλα
those them to-bind obliged the horses and the arms
ἀναλαμβανόμενοι τούτους ἐν τοῖς ἀποτεταγμένοις φρουρίοις
taking them in the assigned fortresses
ἐνέκλειον. οἱ δέ γε ἐφεξῆς ἐρχόμενοι παντελῆ τῶν
shut-up those and at-least next coming complete of-the(-things)
πραττομένων ἄγνοιαν ἔχοντες εἰσῄεσαν ἀγνοοῦντες τὸ
being-done ignorance having entered not-knowing the
ἀποβησόμενον ἑκάστῳ. τούτους μὲν οὖν οὕτω κατέσχε καὶ
outcome for-each these indeed then thus he-held and
τὰς αὐτῶν περιουσίας δημεύσει καθυποβαλὼν διενείματο
the their properties to-confiscation having-subjected distributed
τοῖς συγκεκοπιακόσι τούτῳ ἐν ταῖς συμπεσούσαις μάχαις
to-the having-toiled-with him in the having-befallen battles
καὶ τοῖς κινδύνοις ἐκείνοις γενναίοις στρατιώταις. ἀπελθὼν
and the dangers those noble soldiers having-gone
δὲ ὁ τὴν οἰκονομίαν ταύτην ἀναδεξάμενος καὶ
and the(-one) the management this having-taken-up also
τὰς αὐτῶν γυναῖκας τῶν οἰκιῶν ἀπελάσας κατὰ τὴν
the their wives from-the houses having-driven in the
ἀκρόπολιν ἐμφρούρους εἶχε. τοὺς δέ γε κατασχεθέντας
citadel under-guard held those and at-least held
τῶν Μανιχαίων συμπαθείας μετὰ μικρὸν ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ
of-the Manichaeans of-sympathy after a-little the autocrat
ἠξίωσεν· ὁπόσοι δὲ καὶ τοῦ θείου βαπτίσματος τυχεῖν
deemed-worthy as-many-as and also of-the divine baptism to-obtain
προείλοντο, οὐδὲ τούτου ἀπετύγχανον. διὰ παντοίας δὲ
chose not-even of-this failed through every-kind and

περιελθὼν αὐτοὺς μεθόδου καὶ διαγνοὺς τοὺς αἰτίους
having-gone-round them method and having-discerned those responsible
τῆς τοιαύτης ἀπονοίας ἐν νήσοις περιορίσας καθεῖρξε·
of-the such madness in islands having-confined shut-up
τοῖς δέ γε λοιποῖς ἄδειαν δεδωκώς, ὅποι βουλητὸν
those and at-least remaining license having-given wherever wished
αὐτοῖς ἀπιέναι, ἀπέλυσεν. οἱ δὲ τὴν ἐνεγκαμένην τῶν
for-them to-go released they and the land-that-bore-them over-the
ἄλλων προτιμησάμενοι αὐτίκα πρὸς αὐτὴν ἐπανέτρεχον
others having-preferred at-once to it ran-back
ὡς ἐνὸν τὰ κατ' αὐτοὺς οἰκονομήσοντες.
as being-possible the(-affairs) concerning them going-to-arrange

XII · THE EMPEROR ON TRIAL

Rumors charge Alexios with plundering the churches. At Blachernai he calls a council, sets himself on trial, and has the inventories of the church treasures read. Only the ornaments on the empress Zoe's coffin and a few vessels prove to have been taken. He pleads necessity: enemies on every side, the empty treasury, David eating the shewbread, the canons that permit ransoming captives. Then he condemns himself and grants the Antiphonetes and the Chalkoprateia a yearly payment in restitution.

Ἐκεῖνος δὲ πρὸς τὴν βασιλίδα τῶν πόλεων ἐπάνεισιν.
that-man and to the queen of-the cities returns
οὐκ ἔλαθε δὲ τοῦτον τὰ κατ' αὐτοῦ ἐν τριόδοις τε
not escaped and him the(-things) against him in crossroads both
καὶ γωνίαις ὑποψιθυριζόμενα, ἀλλ' ἀκούων ἐτιτρώσκετο
and corners being-whispered but hearing he-was-wounded
τὴν ψυχήν, ὅτι μὴ τοσοῦτον εἰργασμένος πολλαπλασίω τὰ
in-the soul that not so-much having-done many-times-over the

στόματα τῶν συκοφαντούντων εἶχεν ἑαυτῷ περιχαίνοντα.
mouths of-the slanderers he-had at-himself gaping
ἐκεῖνος γὰρ χρείας κατεπειγούσης καὶ κοσμικοῦ κλύδωνος
that-man for need pressing and worldly surge
ἐξ ἀπορίας τῶν βασιλικῶν ταμιείων πρὸς τοῦτο ἀπέβλεψε
from lack of-the imperial treasuries to this looked
καὶ ὡς δάνειον ἐλογίζετο, ἀλλ' οὐχ ὡς ἅρπαγμα ἢ
and as a-loan reckoned but not as plunder or
τυραννικῆς χειρὸς ἐπιβουλήν, ὡς οἱ διαλοιδορούμενοι λέξειαν.
of-tyrannical hand a-plot as the reviling might-say
ἀλλὰ καὶ γνώμης οὕτως εἶχεν ὡς μετὰ τὸ κατορθῶσαι
but also of-intention so he-was as after the to-succeed-in
τοὺς ἐπικειμένους πολέμους ἀποδώσων ταῖς ἐκκλησίαις τὸν
the pressing wars going-to-return to-the churches the
ἀφηρημένον κόσμον αὐτῶν. καὶ οὐκ ἔφερεν ἐπαναζεύξας τῇ
taken-away ornament their and not he-bore having-returned to-the
βασιλίδι πόλει ὑπόθεσιν γίνεσθαι τοῖς ἐθέλουσι διασύρειν
queen city a-pretext to-become for-those wishing to-disparage
τὰ ἐκείνου. ἔνθεν τοι καὶ ἐκκλησίαν κηρύττει καὶ
the(-acts) of-that-man whence surely also an-assembly he-proclaims and
συνέδριον μέγιστον εἰς τὰ ἐν Βλαχέρναις ἀνάκτορα ἑαυτὸν
council very-great into the in Blachernai palace himself
ἐθέλων ὑπόδικον πρῶτον καταστήσασθαι καὶ οὕτω τὰ
wishing liable-to-trial first to-set and thus the(-things)
ὑπὲρ ἑαυτοῦ ἀπολογήσασθαι. παρῆν δὲ ἤδη καὶ ἡ
on-behalf-of himself to-defend was-present and already both the
σύγκλητος ἅπασα καὶ τὸ στρατιωτικὸν καὶ ὅσον τοῦ
senate all and the military and as-much-as of-the
ἱερατικοῦ καταλόγου καραδοκοῦντες τὸ τί ἂν βούλοιτο ἡ
priestly roll expecting the what — might-want the
τῶν ἁπάντων συνέλευσις. τὸ δὲ ἦν ἄρα ἄλλο οὐδὲν ἢ ἡ
of-the all gathering it and was after-all other nothing than the

τῶν κατὰ τοῦ βασιλέως θρυλλουμένων ἀνάκρισις. παρῆσαν
of-the against the emperor being-noised-about inquiry were-present
οὖν τηνικαῦτα οἱ τῶν ἱερῶν φροντιστηρίων κηδεμόνες καὶ
then at-that-time the of-the sacred monasteries guardians and
τὰ βιβλία ἐς μέσον τηνικαῦτα προὐτίθετο (βρέβια ταῦτα ἡ
the books into the-midst then were-set-out breves these the
συνήθεια οἶδε καλεῖν), ἐν οἷς ἀναγεγράφαται τὰ ἐν ἑκάστῳ
custom knows to-call in which have-been-written-up the in each
τεμένει κειμήλια. καὶ τῷ μὲν φαινομένῳ κριτὴς ὁ βασιλεὺς
precinct treasures and in-the indeed seeming judge the emperor
ἐπὶ τοῦ βασιλικοῦ καθῆστο θρόνου, τῇ δ' ἀληθείᾳ αὐτὸς
on the imperial sat throne in-the but truth he
ἐξετασθησόμενος. ἐξητάζετο τοίνυν τὰ πάλαι παρὰ
going-to-be-examined was-examined therefore the(-things) long-ago by
πολλῶν ἀνατεθέντα τοῖς εὐαγέσιν οἴκοις καὶ παρὰ τῶν ἐς
many dedicated to-the holy houses and by those in
ὕστερον ἢ καὶ αὐτοῦ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος ἀφαιρεθέντα. καὶ
later-time or even himself the autocrat taken-away and
ἐπεὶ μηδὲν ἕτερον ἀφαιρεθὲν κατεφαίνετο, ἀλλ' ἢ μόνον
since nothing other taken-away was-apparent but than only
ὁ τῇ σορῷ τῆς βασιλίδος ἐκείνης Ζωῆς ἐκ χρυσοῦ καὶ
the on-the coffin of-the empress that Zoe of gold and
ἀργύρου ἐπικείμενος κόσμος καὶ ὀλίγα τινὰ ἄλλα σκεύη
silver lying ornament and few some other vessels
μὴ τοσοῦτον εἰς ἱερὰν λειτουργίαν χρηματίζοντα, ἑαυτὸν
not so-much for sacred liturgy serving himself
εἰς τοὐμφανὲς ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ ὑπόδικον καθίστησι, κριτὴν
into the-open the autocrat liable-to-trial sets judge
δὲ τὸν βουλόμενον ὁντινοῦν. καὶ μετὰ μικρὸν μεταβαλὼν
and the wishing anyone-whatever and after a-little having-changed
τῇ γλώττῃ "ἐγώ" φησι "τὴν βασιλείαν πανταχόθεν
in-the tongue I he-says the empire from-all-sides

κυκλουμένην βαρβάροις εὑράμενος καὶ μηδέν τι πρὸς
being-encircled by-barbarians having-found and nothing at-all against
τοὺς ἐπικειμένους ἐχθροὺς ἀξιόμαχον ἔχουσαν, ἴστε,
the pressing enemies a-match-for-battle having you-know
ὁπόσοις κινδύνοις περιπέπτωκα, μικροῦ καὶ βαρβαρικοῦ
into-how-many dangers I-have-fallen almost also of-barbarian
ξίφους ἔργον γεγονώς. καὶ γὰρ πολλαπλασίους ἦσαν
sword a-work having-become and for many-times-more were
οἱ ἑκατέρωθεν ἡμᾶς τοξεύοντες. τὰς γὰρ τῶν Περσῶν
those from-both-sides us shooting the for of-the Persians
ἐπελεύσεις καὶ τὰς τῶν Σκυθῶν ἐκδρομὰς οὐκ ἀγνοεῖτε
onsets and the of-the Scythians raids not you-are-ignorant
καὶ τῶν ἐκ Λογγιβαρδίας ὀξυνομένων δοράτων οὐκ
and the from Lombardy sharpened spears not
ἐπιλέλησθε. τὰ δὲ χρήματα συναπῆρε τοῖς ὅπλοις καὶ
you-have-forgotten the and money went-off-with the arms and
ὁ κύκλος τῆς ἡγεμονίας εἰς τὸ ἀμερὲς συνένευε κέντρον.
the circle of-the dominion into the partless converged center
ὅπως δὲ τό τε ὁπλιτικὸν ἅπαν ηὔξηται γυμναζόμενον
how and the both heavy-armed-force all has-been-increased being-trained
καὶ ἁπανταχόθεν συλλεγόμενον καὶ ξυγκροτούμενον, οἴδατε·
and from-everywhere being-collected and being-welded you-know
καὶ ταῦτα πάντα ὅτι πολλῶν ἐδεῖτο χρημάτων, ἴστε
and these(-things) all that much needed money you-know
πάντες, καὶ ὅτι τὰ ἀφαιρεθέντα εἰς δέον ἀνήλωτο
all and that the(-things) taken-away for need had-been-spent
κατὰ τὸν Περικλέα ἐκεῖνον καὶ ὑπὲρ τῆς ἡμῶν τιμῆς
according-to — Pericles that and for the our honor
δεδαπάνηται. εἰ δὲ τοῖς μεμψιμοίροις ὡς τοῖς κανόσι
has-been-expended if and to-the fault-finders as to-the canons
προσκεκρουκότες κατεφάνημεν, θαυμαστὸν οὐδέν. ἀκούομεν
having-offended we-appeared wonderful nothing we-hear

γάρ, ὅτι καὶ ὁ ἐν βασιλεῦσι προφήτης Δαβὶδ εἰς τὴν
for that also the among kings prophet David into the
αὐτὴν ἀνάγκην ἐληλυθὼς τῶν ἱερῶν ἐγεύσατο ἄρτων μετὰ
same necessity having-come of-the sacred tasted loaves with
τῶν στρατευμάτων αὐτοῦ καὶ ταῦτα μὴ ἐνδεχομένου τῆς
the armies his and this not being-allowed the
ἐξιδιαζομένης ἱερεῦσι τροφῆς ἰδιώτην ἅψασθαι. καὶ ἄλλως δὲ
reserved for-priests food a-layman to-touch and otherwise too
καταμαθεῖν ἐστι τοὺς ἱεροὺς κανόνας ἐν ἑτέροις ἐνδιδόντας
to-learn it-is the sacred canons in other-cases permitting
τὰ ἱερὰ πιπράσκεσθαι ὑπὲρ ἀναρρύσεως αἰχμαλώτων.
the sacred-objects to-be-sold for ransoming of-captives
εἰ δ' αἰχμαλωτιζομένης οἰκουμένης καὶ δορυαλώτων ἤδη
if and being-taken-captive inhabited-world and spear-won already
τῶν πόλεων καὶ αὐτῆς τῆς Κωνσταντίνου γενέσθαι
the cities and itself the(-city) of-Constantine to-become
κινδυνευουσῶν, ὀλίγων τινῶν καὶ οὐδὲ πάνυ τῆς τῶν
in-danger few some and not-even very of-the of-the
ἱερῶν μετεχόντων ἀξίας ἐν βίᾳ τοσαύτῃ ἁψάμενοι εἰς
sacred-objects partaking dignity in force so-great having-touched for
τὴν ἐλευθερίαν τούτων συνεχρησάμεθα, οὐδεμίαν ἄρα
the freedom these we-used no after-all
κατηγορίαν εὔλογον τοῖς φιλοσκώμμοσι καταλιμπάνομεν."
accusation reasonable to-the lovers-of-mockery we-leave
ταῦτ' εἰπὼν καὶ μεταστρέψας τὸν λόγον ἔνοχον
these(-things) having-said and having-turned the speech guilty
οἷον ἑαυτὸν ποιεῖται καὶ καταδικάζει αὐτὸς ἑαυτόν. εἶτ'
as-it-were himself makes and condemns he himself then
αὖθις τὰ βρέβια ἀνελίττειν προστάττει τοῖς ἔχουσιν, ἵνα
again the breves to-unroll orders those having that
καταφανῆ γένηται τὰ ἀφηρημένα. καὶ παραχρῆμα τῷ
manifest may-become the(-things) taken-away and immediately to-the

μὲν σεκρέτῳ τοῦ Ἀντιφωνητοῦ χρυσίου ποσότητα ἱκανὴν
indeed bureau — of-Antiphonetes of-gold amount considerable
ἐλογίσατο κατ᾽ ἔτος εἰσκομιζομένου τοῖς τοῦ δημοσίου
he-reckoned by year being-brought-in by-the of-the treasury
φροντισταῖς, ὃ καὶ μέχρι τοῦ νῦν ἀπαρασάλευτον
officials which also until the present unshaken
διαμεμενήκει· ἐκεῖσε γὰρ ἡ τῆς δηλωθείσης βασιλίδος
has-remained there for the of-the mentioned empress
σορὸς ἐναπέκειτο· τοῖς δὲ Χαλκοπρατίοις ἐτησίαν εἴσοδον
coffin lay-stored to-the and Chalkoprateia yearly revenue
χρυσίου ἀρκοῦντος τοῖς τῷ θείῳ τεμένει τῆς θεομήτορος
of-gold sufficient for-those in-the divine precinct of-the mother-of-God
συνήθως τοὺς ὕμνους ἐπιτελοῦσιν ἐκ τῶν βασιλικῶν
customarily the hymns performing from the imperial
ταμιείων πρυτανεύεσθαι παρεκελεύσατο.
treasuries to-be-administered he-ordered

XIII · TRAULOS AT BELIATOBA

A plot by senators and generals is discovered, and its leaders suffer only confiscation and exile. Traulos, a baptized Manichaean in the emperor's service married to one of the empress's maids, flees with his kin when his four sisters are carried off and stripped of their goods. He seizes Beliatoba, raids as far as Philippopolis, and makes alliances with the Scythians of the Paristrion, marrying a chief's daughter. Alexios offers him a chrysobull of immunity, but the crab will not learn to walk straight.

Ἐν τούτοις ἐπιστᾶσα βουλὴ ἀνεφάνη κατὰ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος
in these having-arisen a-plot came-to-light against the autocrat
μελετωμένη παρά τε τῶν τῆς συγκλήτου λογάδων καὶ
being-planned by both the of-the senate picked-men and
τῶν τοῦ στρατοῦ κορυφαίων καὶ διεμηνύθη τηνικαῦτα
the of-the army chiefs and it-was-reported then

τῷ αὐτοκράτορι. καὶ οἱ κατήγοροι παρέστησαν καὶ τοὺς
to-the autocrat and the accusers presented-themselves and the
συνίστορας τῆς τοιαύτης βουλῆς ἐξήλεγχον. ἐκδήλου δὲ τῆς
accomplices of-the such plot convicted evident and the
μελέτης ἤδη γεγονυίας καὶ τῆς ἀπὸ τῶν νόμων ποινῆς
planning already having-become and the from the laws penalty
κατ᾽ αὐτῶν βαρείας ἐπερχομένης ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ ποινὴν
against them heavy coming-upon the autocrat penalty
μὲν οὐδαμῶς αὐτοῖς ἐπενεγκεῖν προτεθύμητο, δήμευσιν δὲ
indeed in-no-way on-them to-bring had-been-eager confiscation and
μόνον καὶ περιορισμὸν κατὰ τῶν πρωταιτίων ἀπεφήνατο
only and banishment against the ringleaders he-declared
καὶ μέχρι τούτου τὴν τῆς τοιαύτης ἐπιβουλῆς ἐπεξέλευσιν
and up-to this the of-the such plot prosecution
ἔστησεν. ἀλλὰ γὰρ ὁ λόγος ἀνατρεχέτω αὖθις ὅθεν
he-stopped but for the account let-run-back again whence
ἀπερρύη. ὁπηνίκα ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ εἰς τὴν τοῦ δομεστικάτου
it-flowed-away when the autocrat to the of-the domestic's-office
ἀξίαν παρὰ Νικηφόρου τοῦ Βοτανειάτου ἀνηνέχθη, Τραυλόν
rank by Nikephoros the Botaneiates was-raised Traulos
τινα Μανιχαῖον προσλαβόμενος μετὰ τῶν γνησίων αὐτοῦ
a-certain Manichaean having-taken-on with the trusted his
θεραπόντων συγκατέλεξε καὶ τοῦ θείου βαπτίσματος
servants he-enrolled and of-the divine baptism
ἀξιώσας μιᾷ τῶν τῆς βασιλίδος θεραπαινίδων
having-deemed-worthy to-one of-the of-the empress handmaids
συνέζευξεν. οὗτος οὖν τέσσαρας ἀδελφὰς ἔχων, ὡς ταύτας
he-married this-man then four sisters having when them
ἐμφρούρους μετὰ τῶν λοιπῶν τότε συναπαχθείσας ἐθεάσατο
under-guard with the rest then carried-off-together he-saw
τά τε προσόντα ἀφαιρεθείσας ἅπαντα, ἤχθετο καὶ
the and belongings having-been-deprived-of all he-was-vexed and

φέρειν οὐκ εἶχεν, ἀλλὰ διεσκοπεῖτο, ὅπως ἑαυτὸν τῆς τοῦ
to-bear not could but considered how himself from-the of-the
αὐτοκράτορος χειρὸς ἀπαλλάξειεν. ἐν γνώσει δὲ τούτων
autocrat hand he-might-free in knowledge and of-these
ἡ αὐτοῦ ὁμευνέτις ἤδη γεγονυῖα καὶ ἀποδιδράσκοντα
the his bed-partner already having-come and running-away
τοῦτον ὁρῶσα δηλοῖ τῷ τηνικαῦτα τὴν οἰκονομίαν τῶν
him seeing makes-known to-the then the management of-the
Μανιχαίων ἐμπεπιστευμένῳ. οὐ διέλαθε τοῦτο τὸν Τραυλὸν
Manichaeans entrusted not escaped this — Traulos
καὶ τηνικαῦτα ὁπόσοις φθάσας τὸ ἀπόρρητον ἀνεκάλυψε,
and then to-as-many-as beforehand the secret he-had-revealed
πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ἑσπέρας μεταπέμπεται. καὶ ὁπόσοι δὲ ἐκ
to himself in-the-evening summons and as-many-as too by
συγγενείας ἦσαν αὐτῷ προσήκοντες, ἐς αὐτὸν συνελθόντες
kinship were to-him related to him having-come-together
καταλαμβάνουσι τὴν Βελιάτοβαν· πολίχνιον δὲ τοῦτο
reach — Beliatoba little-town and this
διακείμενον κατὰ τὴν ἀκρολοφίαν τοῦ κατὰ ταυτηνὶ τὴν
lying on the hill-top of-the along this-here —
Βελιάτοβαν τέμπους. ἄοικον δὲ τοῦτο ἐφευρηκότες ὥσπερ
Beliatoba valley uninhabited and this having-found as-if
ἴδιόν τι λάχος λογισάμενοι ἐν αὐτῷ τὰς οἰκήσεις ἐποιοῦντο,
own some allotment having-reckoned in it the dwellings made
εἶτα τὰς καθ' ἑκάστην ἐκεῖθεν ἐκδρομὰς ποιούμενοι καὶ μέχρι
then the by each(-day) from-there raids making and as-far-as
τῆς σφετέρας φθάνοντες πόλεως Φιλίππου λείαν πολλὴν
the own reaching city of-Philip booty much
ἀναλαμβανόμενοι ἐπανέστρεφον. ὁ δὲ Τραυλὸς τούτοις μὴ
taking-up returned — and Traulos with-these not
ἀρκούμενος σπονδὰς μετὰ τῶν τὸ Παρίστριον νεμομένων
being-content treaties with the — Paristrion inhabiting

Σκυθῶν ἐποιεῖτο τοὺς περὶ τὴν Γλαβινίτζαν καὶ Δρίστραν
Scythians made the about — Glabinitza and Dristra
ἡγεμόνας καὶ τὰ ταύταις παρακείμενα ὑποποιούμενος,
leaders and the to-these lying-near winning-over
μνηστευσάμενος ἅμα ἑαυτῷ καὶ τῶν λογάδων Σκυθῶν ἑνὸς
having-wooed together for-himself also of-the picked Scythians of-one
θυγατέρα, σπεύδων ὅλῃ χειρὶ λυπῆσαι τὸν αὐτοκράτορα
a-daughter hastening with-whole hand to-grieve the autocrat
διὰ τῆς τῶν Σκυθῶν ἐπελεύσεως. ταῦτα δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς
through the of-the Scythians invasion these(-things) and the emperor
καθ' ἑκάστην μανθάνων τὸ μέλλον προμηθευσόμενος ἔσπευδεν
by each(-day) learning the future going-to-provide-against hastened
ὑποποιεῖσθαι τοῦτον διὰ γραμμάτων καὶ ὑποσχέσεων
to-win-over him through letters and promises
ὑφορώμενος τὸ ἐξ αὐτοῦ τεχθησόμενον κακόν. ἀλλὰ
suspecting the from him going-to-be-born evil but
καὶ χρυσόβουλλον λόγον ἀπαθείας καὶ πάσης ἐλευθερίας
also chrysobull word of-immunity and all freedom
ἐκθέμενος ἐκπέπομφε πρὸς αὐτόν. ἀλλ' ὁ καρκίνος ὀρθὰ
having-issued he-sent to him but the crab straight
βαδίζειν οὐκ ἐμάνθανεν· ὁ αὐτὸς δὲ ἦν ὁ χθὲς
to-walk not learned the same and he-was the(-one) yesterday
καὶ πρότριτα τούς τε Σκύθας ὑποποιούμενος καὶ
and the-day-before-yesterday the both Scythians winning-over and
πλείονας ἐκ τῶν σφετέρων μεταπεμπόμενος χωρῶν καὶ
more from the own summoning lands and
λῃζόμενος τὰ παρακείμενα ἅπαντα.
plundering the(-places) nearby all

Bohemond returns to Salerno and rouses Robert, who gathers a great army and sends his sons Roger and Guy ahead to take Avlona and Bothrentos. Alexios secretly offers Guy a marriage-alliance. Robert sails against Corfu, and the Venetians defeat him twice at Kassope. When they grow careless he destroys them, and some thirteen thousand drown. The Venetians refuse to abandon Alexios and defeat him again, and Alexios rewards them with titles and trading privileges.

Εἶτα ὁ μὲν αὐτοκράτωρ ὁδοῦ πάρεργον καὶ τὰ
then the indeed autocrat of-the-road a-by-work also the(-affairs)
κατὰ τοὺς Μανιχαίους ποιησάμενος ὑποσπόνδους αὖθις
concerning the Manichaeans having-made under-treaty again
εἶχεν. ὁ δέ γε Βαϊμοῦντος κατὰ τὸν Αὐλῶνα ἔτι
held — and at-least Bohemond at — Avlona still
χρονοτριβῶν ἦν· ἐπαναγέσθω γὰρ πρὸς αὐτὸν αὖθις ὁ
delaying was let-be-brought-back for to him again the
λόγος· καὶ τὰ κατὰ τὸν Βρυέννιον μεμαθηκὼς
account and the(-affairs) concerning — Bryennios having-learned
καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους κόμητας, ὧν οἱ μὲν θητεῦσαι τῷ
and the other counts of-whom some indeed to-serve the
αὐτοκράτορι προείλοντο, ἄλλοι δὲ ἄλλοσε διεσπάρησαν,
autocrat chose others and elsewhere were-scattered
τὴν ἐνεγκαμένην ἀναζητήσας διαπερᾷ εἰς Λογγιβαρδίαν
the land-that-bore-them seeking crosses to Lombardy
καὶ καταλαμβάνει τὸν ἴδιον πατέρα Ῥομπέρτον εἰς τὸ
and reaches the own father Robert at —
Σαλερηνόν, ὡς ὁ λόγος φθάσας ἐδήλωσε, καὶ πολλὰ
Salerno as the account having-been-first showed and many-things
κατὰ τοῦ βασιλέως εἰπὼν ἠρέθιζε κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ. ὃν
against the emperor having-said he-provoked-him against him whom
θεασάμενος ὁ Ῥομπέρτος τὴν δεινὴν ἐκείνην ἀγγελίαν
having-beheld — Robert the terrible that news

ἐπὶ τοῦ προσώπου φέροντα καὶ τὰς πολλὰς ἐκείνας
on the face bearing and the many those
ἃς ἐπ᾽ αὐτῷ εἶχεν ἐλπίδας ὀστράκου δίκην εἰς
which on him he-had hopes of-a-potsherd in-the-manner-of into
τοὐναντίον μεταπεσούσας αὖος ἐφ᾽ ἱκανὸν εἱστήκει
the-opposite having-turned dried-up for a-good-while stood
ὥσπερ ὑπὸ κεραυνοῦ βληθείς. περὶ πάντων δὲ πυθόμενος
as-if by thunderbolt struck about all-things and having-inquired
καὶ μαθὼν τὰ παρ᾽ ἐλπίδας αὐτῷ συμπεσόντα
and having-learned the(-things) beyond hopes to-him having-befallen
ἀθυμίᾳ κατεσχέθη. ἀγεννὲς μὲν οὖν οὐδ᾽ οὕτω τι
by-despondency was-seized ignoble indeed then not-even thus anything
ἐλογίσατο οὐδὲ τῆς ἑαυτοῦ ἀνδρείας καὶ τόλμης ἀνάξιον.
he-reckoned nor of-the own courage and daring unworthy
μᾶλλον μὲν οὖν καὶ πρὸς μάχας ἐπὶ πλέον ἠρέθιστο
rather indeed then even to battles on more he-had-been-provoked
καὶ φροντίδες τοῦτον καὶ μέριμναι αὖθις τῶν προτέρων
and thoughts him and cares again than-the former
μείζους συνεῖχον. ἦν γὰρ ὁ ἀνὴρ ἰσχυρὸς προστάτης
greater held was for the man a-strong champion
οἰκείων βουλευμάτων τε καὶ προλήψεων καὶ μηδαμῶς
of-own counsels both and preconceptions and in-no-way
ἐθέλων ἀνεῖναι ἐφ᾽ οἷς καθάπαξ διεβουλεύσατο καὶ τὸ ὅλον
wishing to-relax on which once-for-all he-had-resolved and the whole
εἰπεῖν ἀκατάπληκτος καὶ πάντα αὐτῷ ἁλώσιμα ἐκ μόνης
to-say undaunted and all-things to-him capturable from only
προσβολῆς οἰόμενος γίνεσθαι. εὐθὺς οὖν τὸ φρονοῦν αὐτῷ
attack thinking to-become at-once then the thinking-part of-him
τῆς ψυχῆς συναγαγὼν καὶ τῆς πολλῆς ἀθυμίας ἑαυτὸν
of-the soul having-collected and from-the great despondency himself
ἀνακτησάμενος ἀποστείλας ἁπανταχόθεν διεκηρύκευε τὴν
having-recovered having-sent from-everywhere he-proclaimed the

εἰς τὸ Ἰλλυρικὸν αὖθις κατὰ τοῦ βασιλέως διαπεραίωσιν
to — Illyricum again against the emperor crossing
μετακαλούμενος ἅπαντας. καὶ αὐτίκα πανταχόθεν πλῆθος
summoning all and at-once from-everywhere a-multitude
συνείλεκτο στρατιωτῶν, ἱππέων τε καὶ πεζῶν, πάντων
was-collected of-soldiers horse both and foot all
ἐξωπλισμένων λαμπρῶς καὶ πρὸς μάχην ἀποβλεπόντων.
armed brilliantly and to battle looking
τὸ πλῆθος εἶπεν ἂν Ὅμηρος "ἠύτ' ἔθνεα εἶσι μελισσάων
the multitude would-say — Homer like tribes go of-bees
ἀδινάων". καὶ συνέρρεον ἔκ τε τῶν παρακειμένων
thronging and they-flowed-together from both the neighboring
πόλεων καὶ ἐξ ἀλλοδαπῶν δὲ οὐχ ἧττον. κἀντεῦθεν
cities and from foreign-lands and not less and-thence
ὡπλίζετο καρτερῶς, ἐφ' ᾧ τὴν τοῦ υἱοῦ ἀνακαλέσασθαι
he-armed strongly for which the of-the son to-retrieve
ἥρπαν. ἱκανὰ δὲ συλλεξάμενος στρατεύματα, εἶτα τοὺς
defeat considerable and having-collected armies then the
αὐτοῦ μετακαλεσάμενος υἱεῖς, τόν τε Ῥογέρην καὶ τὸν
his having-summoned sons — both Roger and —
Γίδον καλούμενον (ὃν ὁ βασιλεὺς Ἀλέξιος θέλων τοῦ
Guy called whom the emperor Alexios wishing from-the
πατρὸς ἀποστῆσαι ἀποστείλας λάθρᾳ περὶ κήδους
father to-detach having-sent secretly about marriage-alliance
αὐτῷ ἐδήλωσεν ὑποσχόμενος καὶ τιμὴν διαφέρουσαν καὶ
to-him made-known promising both honor distinguished and
χρημάτων δόσιν δαψιλῆ· ὁ δὲ τούτων ἀκούσας συνέθετο,
of-money gift abundant he and these-things having-heard agreed
τὸν δὲ λόγον τέως εἶχεν ἀπόρρητον) τούτοις ἅπαν τὸ
the but word for-the-time held secret to-these all the
ἱππικὸν παραδοὺς ἀπέστειλε παραγγείλας σπουδάσαι
cavalry having-handed-over sent having-ordered to-be-zealous

κατασχεῖν τὸν Αὐλῶνα. οἱ δὲ διαπεράσαντες ἐξ ἐπιδρομῆς
to-seize — Avlona they and having-crossed by raid
τοῦτον εἷλον. καὶ μετρητούς τινας εἰς φυλακὴν αὐτοῦ
it took and countable some for guard of-it
καταλιπόντες μετὰ τῶν λοιπῶν καταλαβόντες τὸ Βοθρεντὸν
having-left with the rest having-reached — Bothrentos
ἐξ ἐφόδου καὶ τοῦτο κατέσχον. ὁ δέ γε Ῥομπέρτος τὸ
by assault also this held — and at-least Robert the
ναυτικὸν αὐτοῦ ἅπαν ἀναλαβόμενος καὶ τὴν ὡς πρὸς τὸ
fleet his all having-taken-up and the as toward —
Βοθρεντὸν παραλίαν παραπλέων κατέλαβε τὸ Βρεντήσιον,
Bothrentos coast sailing-along reached — Brentesion
ἐφ' ᾧ πρὸς τὸ Ἰλλυρικὸν διαπερᾶσαι. τὸν δ' ἀπὸ τῆς
for which to — Illyricum to-cross the but from —
Ὑδροῦντος πορθμὸν ἧττον διάστημα ἔχειν μεμαθηκὼς
Hydrous strait less distance to-have having-learned
ἐκεῖθεν διεπέρασεν εἰς τὸν Αὐλῶνα. καὶ οὕτως διὰ τῆς
from-there crossed to — Avlona and thus through the
ἀναμεταξὺ τοῦ Αὐλῶνος καὶ τοῦ Βοθρεντοῦ παραλίας μετὰ
between — Avlona and — Bothrentos coast with
τοῦ στόλου αὐτοῦ παντὸς διελθὼν ἡνώθη μετὰ τῶν υἱῶν
the fleet his all having-passed was-united with the sons
αὐτοῦ. ὡς δὲ ἡ Κορυφὼ προκατασχεθεῖσα παρ' αὐτοῦ
his as and — Corfu held-beforehand by him
αὖθις ἀπεστάτησε, τοὺς υἱοὺς αὐτοῦ εἰς τὸ Βοθρεντὸν
again revolted the sons his at — Bothrentos
καταλιπὼν αὐτὸς μετὰ τοῦ ναυτικοῦ παντὸς ἀπέπλευσε
having-left he with the fleet all sailed-off
πρὸς τὴν Κορυφώ. ἀλλ' ὁ μὲν Ῥομπέρτος τοιαῦτα· ἅπερ
to — Corfu but — indeed Robert such-things which
μεμαθηκὼς ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ οὐδαμῶς ἀνεπεπτώκει, ἀλλὰ τοὺς
having-learned the autocrat in-no-way lost-heart but the

Βενετίκους διὰ γραμμάτων ἐξώτρυνε παρασκευάσας αὖθις
Venetians through letters urged having-prepared again
τὸν μετὰ τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου ἀναδήσασθαι πόλεμον στόλον
the with — Robert to-take-up war a-fleet
ἱκανὸν ἐξοπλίσαντας καὶ τὰς δαπάνας πολλαπλασίους
considerable having-equipped and the expenses many-times-over
λήψεσθαι ὑποσχόμενος. αὐτὸς δὲ διήρεις τε καὶ τριήρεις
to-receive promising he and biremes both and triremes
καὶ παντοῖον εἶδος ληστρικῶν νηῶν κατασκευάσας κατὰ
and every-kind-of sort of-pirate ships having-built against
τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου ἐξέπεμψεν ὁπλίτας εἰσαγαγὼν τῆς διὰ
— Robert sent-out hoplites having-put-in of-the by
θαλάττης μάχης εἰδήμονας. τὴν δὲ κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ τῶν στόλων
sea battle skilled the and against him of-the fleets
ἔφοδον μεμαθηκὼς ὁ Ῥομπέρτος, τὴν μάχην προαρπάζων
onset having-learned — Robert the battle snatching-first
ὁποῖος ἐκεῖνος, λύσας τὰ πρυμνήσια μετὰ τοῦ ναυτικοῦ
such that-man having-loosed the stern-cables with the fleet
αὐτοῦ παντὸς τὸν λιμένα Κασσόπης κατέλαβεν. οἱ δέ
his all the harbor of-Kassope reached the and
γε Βενέτικοι καταλαβόντες εἰς τὸν λιμένα Πασάρων
at-least Venetians having-arrived at the harbor of-Pasara
καὶ μικρὸν κεῖθι διατρίψαντες τὴν τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου ἔφοδον
and a-little there having-spent the — of-Robert attack
μεμαθηκότες θᾶττον καὶ αὐτοὶ καταλαμβάνουσι τὸν
having-learned more-quickly also they reach the
λιμένα Κασσόπης. καὶ συμβολῆς καρτερᾶς γενομένης
harbor of-Kassope and encounter strong having-happened
καὶ τῆς μάχης ἀγχεμάχου ἡττᾶται ὁ Ῥομπέρτος. ὁποῖος
and the battle hand-to-hand is-defeated — Robert such
δ᾽ ἐκεῖνος φιλοπόλεμος καὶ ἐκθύμως ἔχων πρὸς μάχας,
but that-man war-loving and passionately being for battles

οὐδὲ μετὰ τὴν ἥτταν ἐκείνην τὸ παράπαν ἐνεδίδου,
not-even after the defeat that the at-all he-yielded
ἀλλ᾽ αὖθις πρὸς ἑτέραν ἡτοιμάζετο μάχην καὶ συμβολὴν
but again for another was-preparing battle and encounter
πολέμου μείζονος. ὅπερ οἱ ἡγεμόνες ἀμφοτέρων τῶν
of-war greater which the leaders of-both the
στόλων μεμαθηκότες κἀκ τῆς προηγησαμένης νίκης
fleets having-learned and-from the preceding victory
θαρρήσαντες μετὰ τρίτην ἡμέραν προσβαλόντες αὐτῷ
having-taken-courage after third day having-attacked him
λαμπρὰν τὴν κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ νίκην ἤραντο. εἶθ᾽ οὕτως
brilliant the over him victory won then thus
ἐπανέρχονται πάλιν εἰς τὸν λιμένα Πασάρων. εἴτε δὲ
return again to the harbor of-Pasara whether and
ὁποῖα ἐν τοῖς τοιούτοις ὡς τὰ πολλὰ φιλεῖ γίνεσθαι
such-as in the such-cases as the many-times is-wont to-happen
ἐπαρθέντες ἐπὶ ταῖς προγεγενημέναις νίκαις εἴτε τοὺς
elated at the previous victories or the
ἡττηθέντας ἀπελπίσαντες ἀναπεπτώκασιν ὡς ἤδη τὸ πᾶν
defeated having-despaired-of slackened as already the whole
ἠνυκότες καὶ καταφρονητικῶς πρὸς τὸν Ῥομπέρτον
having-accomplished and contemptuously toward — Robert
διετίθεντο. εἶτα διελόντες τὰ ταχύδρομα τῶν πλοίων
were-disposed then having-separated the swift of-the boats
ἀπέστειλαν εἰς Βενετίαν διηγησομένους τὰ ξυμπεσόντα
they-sent to Venice going-to-narrate the(-things) having-befallen
καὶ ὅπως κατὰ κράτος τὸν Ῥομπέρτον ἥττησαν. ὁ δὲ
and how by force — Robert they-defeated — and
Ῥομπέρτος ταῦτα μεμαθηκὼς ἀπό τινος Βενετίκου
Robert these(-things) having-learned from a-certain Venetian
Κονταρίνου Πέτρου καλουμένου ἄρτι προσπεφευγότος
Kontarinos Peter called just having-fled

αὐτῷ ἐπὶ πλέον ἀθύμει καὶ οὐκέτ᾽ ἀνεκτῶς εἶχε·
to-him on more was-despondent and no-longer bearably he-was
λογισμοῖς δὲ κρείττοσιν ἀναρρώσας ἑαυτὸν αὖθις κατὰ
with-reasonings and better having-encouraged himself again against
τῶν Βενετίκων ἴεται. οἱ δὲ Βενέτικοι τῷ ἀπροόπτῳ
the Venetians rushes the and Venetians by-the unforeseen
καταπλαγέντες τῆς αὐτοῦ ἐλεύσεως εὐθὺς δεσμήσαντες
astounded of-the his coming at-once having-bound
τὰ μείζονα τούτων πλοῖα καλῳδίοις περὶ τὸν λιμένα τῆς
the larger of-them boats with-cables about the harbor —
Κορυφὼ καὶ συναπαρτίσαντες τὸν λεγόμενον πελαγολιμένα
of-Corfu and having-fitted-together the so-called sea-harbor
τὰ σμικρὰ τούτων ἐς μέσον ἤλασαν· σιδηροφορήσαντες
the small of-them into the-middle drove having-armed-themselves-in-iron
δὲ ἅπαντες ἐκαραδόκουν τὴν τούτου ἔλευσιν. ὁ δὲ
and all awaited the his coming he and
καταλαβὼν συμμίγνυται τούτοις πρὸς πόλεμον. ὁ δὲ
having-arrived engages them in war the and
πόλεμος δεινὸς ἦν καὶ τῶν πρώην ἰσχυρότερος ἐκθύμως
war terrible was and than-the former stronger passionately
μαχομένων ἢ πρότερον. καρτερᾶς οὖν μάχης ἀναμεταξὺ
fighting than before strong then battle between
γεγονυίας καὶ μηδενὸς τῶν μερῶν νῶτα διδόντος, ἀλλὰ
having-happened and of-none of-the sides backs giving but
μᾶλλον κατὰ πρόσωπον ἐρχομένων, ἐπεὶ οἱ Βενέτικοι τὰ
rather in face coming since the Venetians the
προσόντα τούτοις φθάσαντες προκατηναλώκεσαν καὶ οὐδὲν
provisions for-them having-been-first had-used-up and nothing
ἄλλο πλὴν τῶν ὁπλιτῶν ταῖς ναυσὶ παρῆν, αὗται δὲ τῇ
other except the hoplites to-the ships was-present these and with-the
κουφότητι ἐπεπόλαζον οἷον τοῖς ὕδασιν ἀνεχόμεναι, ὡς
lightness floated as-it-were on-the waters held-up so-that

μηδ᾽ ἄχρι δευτέρου ζωστῆρος τοῦ ὕδατος φθάνοντος,
not-even as-far-as second belt the water reaching
πανσυδὶ ἐπὶ τὴν ἑτέραν πλευρὰν τὴν ὡς πρὸς τοὺς
with-all-speed onto the other side the as toward the
πολεμίους συρρεύσαντες τηνικαῦτα ἐβυθίσθησαν· ἦσαν δὲ
enemies having-flowed-together then they-were-sunk they-were and
ὡσεὶ χιλιάδες τρισκαίδεκα. αἱ δ᾽ ἄλλαι τῶν νηῶν σὺν
about thousands thirteen the and other of-the ships with
αὐτοῖς πλωτῆρσι κατεσχέθησαν. ὁ δὲ Ῥομπέρτος μετὰ
the-very crews were-seized — and Robert after
τὴν λαμπρὰν ἐκείνην νίκην ἀπηνῶς διατεθεὶς πολλοῖς τῶν
the brilliant that victory harshly disposed to-many of-those
κατασχεθέντων ὠμοτάτως ἐχρήσατο τῶν μὲν τὰς ὄψεις
seized most-cruelly dealt of-some indeed the eyes
πηρώσας, τοὺς δὲ ῥινοτομήσας, τινῶν δὲ καὶ χεῖρας
having-maimed others and having-cut-the-noses of-some and also hands
ἢ πόδας ἢ καὶ ἀμφότερα ἀφελόμενος. περὶ δέ γε
or feet or even both having-taken-off about and at-least
τῶν λοιπῶν ἀποστείλας πρὸς τοὺς ὁμοχώρους αὐτῶν
the rest having-sent to the countrymen their
διεφήμισεν, ἵν᾽ ὁ βουλόμενος πρίασθαι τὸν ἴδιον τιμῆς
he-gave-out-word that the wishing to-buy the own for-a-price
ἀφόβως παραγίνοιτο. ἅμα δὲ καὶ τὰ περὶ
fearlessly might-come at-the-same-time and also the(-terms) about
εἰρήνης αὐτοὺς ἠρώτα· οἱ δὲ μηνύουσι πρὸς αὐτόν "ἴσθι,
peace them he-asked they and send-word to him know
δοὺξ Ῥομπέρτε, ὡς εἰ καὶ τὰς σφῶν ἡμῶν γυναῖκας καὶ
duke Robert that if even the own our wives and
τὰ τέκνα ἀποσφαττόμενα θεασαίμεθα, οὐκ ἂν τὰς πρὸς τὸν
the children being-slaughtered we-should-see not — the toward the
αὐτοκράτορα Ἀλέξιον συνθήκας ἀπαρνησώμεθα οὔτε μὴν
autocrat Alexios treaties we-would-deny nor indeed

τοῦ ἐπαρήγειν αὐτῷ καὶ ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ ἐκθύμως μάχεσθαι
from-the to-aid him and for him passionately to-fight
ὅλως ἐνδώσομεν''. καιροῦ δ' ὀλίγου παρερρυηκότος
wholly we-shall-desist of-time and little having-flowed-by
δρόμωνάς τε καὶ τριήρεις εὐτρεπίσαντες οἱ Βενέτικοι
dromons both and triremes having-made-ready the Venetians
καὶ ἄλλα τινὰ τῶν μικρῶν καὶ ταχυδρόμων νηῶν μετὰ
and other some of-the small and swift ships with
πλείονος δυνάμεως κατὰ τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου ἔρχονται. καὶ
greater force against — Robert come and
δὴ καταλαβόντες αὐτὸν περὶ τὸ Βοθρεντὸν αὐλιζόμενον
indeed having-caught him about — Bothrentos camping
τὸν μετ' αὐτοῦ συνάπτουσι πόλεμον καὶ κατὰ κράτος
the with him join war and by force
νικῶσι πολλοὺς μὲν ἀποκτείναντες, πλείονας δὲ καὶ
conquer many indeed having-killed more and also
βυθίσαντες· μικροῦ δὲ δεῖν καὶ αὐτὸν τὸν γνήσιον υἱὸν
having-sunk almost and to-lack even himself the legitimate son
αὐτοῦ Γίδον καὶ τὴν ὁμευνέτιν κατέσχον. καὶ νίκην κατ'
his Guy and the bed-partner they-seized and victory over
αὐτοῦ λαμπρὰν ἀράμενοι δηλοῦσι πάντα τῷ βασιλεῖ.
him brilliant having-won make-known all-things to-the emperor
ὃς διὰ πολλῶν τούτους ἀμειψάμενος δωρεῶν καὶ τιμῆς
who with many them having-requited gifts and honor
καὶ αὐτὸν τὸν δοῦκα Βενετίας τῷ τῶν πρωτοσεβαστῶν
and himself the doge of-Venice with-the of-the protosebastoi
ἀξιώματι μετὰ τῆς ῥόγας ἐτίμησεν, ὑπέρτιμον δὲ καὶ τὸν
dignity with the stipend honored hypertimos and also the
πατριάρχην ἠξίωσε μετὰ τῆς ἀναλόγου ῥόγας. ἀλλὰ
patriarch he-deemed-worthy with the proportionate stipend but
καὶ πάσαις ταῖς ἐν Βενετίᾳ ἐκκλησίαις χρυσίου ποσότητα
also to-all the in Venice churches of-gold amount

ἱκανὴν ἐτησίως διανείμασθαι ἀπὸ τῶν βασιλικῶν ταμιείων
considerable yearly to-distribute from the imperial treasuries
ἐκέλευσε. τῇ μέντοι ἐπ᾽ ὀνόματι τοῦ εὐαγγελιστοῦ
he-ordered to-the however in name of-the evangelist
ἀποστόλου Μάρκου ἐκκλησίᾳ ὑποφόρους ἅπαντας τοὺς
apostle Mark church tributary all those
ἐκ Μέλφης ἐν Κωνσταντινουπόλει ἐργαστήρια κατέχοντας
from Amalfi in Constantinople workshops holding
πεποίηκε καὶ τὰ ἀπὸ τῆς παλαιᾶς Ἑβραϊκῆς σκάλας
he-made and the from the old Hebrew landing-stage
μέχρι τῆς καλουμένης Βίγλας διήκοντα ἐργαστήρια καὶ τὰς
as-far-as the called Vigla extending workshops and the
ἐντὸς τοῦ διαστήματος τούτου ἐμπεριεχομένας σκάλας
inside the space this contained landing-stages
ἐδωρήσατο καὶ ἑτέρων πολλῶν ἀκινήτων δωρεὰς ἔν
he-gave and of-other many immovable-properties gifts in
τε τῇ βασιλευούσῃ καὶ τῇ πόλει Δυρραχίου καὶ ὅποι
both the reigning(-city) and the city of-Dyrrachion and wherever
ποτ᾽ ἂν ἐκεῖνοι ᾐτήσαντο. τὸ δὲ δὴ μεῖζον, τὴν ἐμπορίαν
ever — those asked the and indeed greater the trade
αὐτοῖς ἀζήμιον ἐποίησεν ἐν πάσαις ταῖς ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν
for-them unpenalized he-made in all the under the authority
Ῥωμαίων χώραις, ὥστε ἀνέτως ἐμπορεύεσθαι καὶ κατὰ
of-Romans lands so-that freely to-trade and according-to
τὸ αὐτοῖς βουλητὸν μήτε μὴν ὑπὲρ κομμερκίου ἢ ἑτέρας
the to-them wished neither indeed for customs-duty or other
τινὸς εἰσπράξεως τῷ δημοσίῳ εἰσκομιζομένης παρέχειν
any exaction to-the treasury brought to-pay
ἄχρι καὶ ὀβολοῦ ἑνός, ἀλλ᾽ ἔξω πάσης εἶναι Ῥωμαϊκῆς
up-to even obol one but outside all to-be Roman
ἐξουσίας.
authority

XV · THE DEATH OF ROBERT

Robert sends his son against Kephalenia and follows. At Ather he falls ill with fever; told of a spring at the ruined city of Jerusalem on Ithaca, he remembers a prophecy that he would subdue all as far as Ather and die going to Jerusalem. He dies within six days. The Venetians and Amalfitans hand Dyrrachion back to Alexios.

Ὁ δέ γε Ῥομπέρτος (ἐπαναγέσθω γὰρ αὖθις ὁ λόγος
— and at-least Robert let-be-brought-back for again the account
ὅθεν ἐξέπεσε καὶ καθ' εἰρμὸν ἐχέσθω τῆς διηγήσεως)
whence it-fell-out and in sequence let-it-hold-to the narration
οὐδὲ μετὰ ταύτην τὴν ἧτταν αὖθις ἠρέμει. ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ
not-even after this the defeat again was-quiet but since
προφθάσας τινὰ τῶν πλοίων αὐτοῦ μετὰ τοῦ ἰδίου υἱοῦ
having-sent-ahead some of-the boats his with the own son
κατὰ τῆς Κεφαληνίας ἀπέστειλε σπεύδων τὴν ἐν αὐτῇ
against — Kephalenia he-sent hastening the in it
πόλιν κατασχεῖν, τὰ μὲν ἐνόντα αὐτῷ πλοῖα τῇ Βοντίτζῃ
city to-seize the indeed being-present to-him boats — at-Bonditza
προσώρμισε μετὰ τῆς παρεμβολῆς πάσης, αὐτὸς δὲ εἰς
he-moored with the camp all he and into
μονήρη γαλέαν εἰσελθὼν τὴν Κεφαληνίαν κατέλαβε.
a-single-banked galley having-entered — Kephalenia reached
καὶ πρὶν ἢ ταῖς λοιπαῖς δυνάμεσι καὶ τῷ υἱῷ αὐτοῦ
and before than with-the remaining forces and the son his
ἑνωθῆναι, ἐγκαρτερῶν ἔτι περὶ τὸν Ἀθέρα (ἀκρωτήριόν
to-be-united staying still about — Ather a-cape
τι τοῦτο τῆς Κεφαληνίας) λάβρῳ κατέχεται πυρετῷ.
some this — of-Kephalenia by-a-violent is-seized fever
μὴ φέρων δὲ τὴν τοῦ πυρετοῦ φλόγωσιν ὕδωρ ψυχρὸν
not bearing and the of-the fever burning water cold

αἰτεῖ. τῶν δὲ περὶ αὐτὸν ἁπανταχοῦ σκεδασθέντων εἰς
asks those and about him everywhere having-scattered for
τὴν τοῦ ὕδατος ζήτησιν, τῶν ἐγχωρίων τις πρὸς
the of-the water search of-the natives someone to
αὐτούς φησιν "ὁρᾶτε ταυτηνὶ τὴν νῆσον τὴν Ἰθάκην.
them says you-see this-here the island — Ithaca
ἐν αὐτῇ πόλις μεγάλη πρῴην ᾠκοδόμηται Ἱερουσαλὴμ
in it a-city great formerly was-built Jerusalem
καλουμένη, κἂν τῷ χρόνῳ ἠρείπωται· ἐν αὐτῇ πηγὴ
called even-if in-the time it-has-fallen-to-ruin in it a-spring
ἦν πότιμον ἐς ἀεὶ καὶ ψυχρὸν ὕδωρ ἀναδιδοῦσα." τούτων
was drinkable for ever and cold water sending-up these
ὁ Ῥομπέρτος ἀκούσας δέει πολλῷ τηνικαῦτα συνεσχέθη.
— Robert having-heard with-fear much then was-seized
συμβαλὼν οὖν τὸν Ἀθέρα καὶ τὴν πόλιν Ἱερουσαλὴμ
having-put-together then — Ather and the city Jerusalem
τὸν ἐφιστάμενον αὐτῷ θάνατον τηνικαῦτα ἐπεγίνωσκε. καὶ
the impending on-him death then he-recognized and
γὰρ πρὸ πολλοῦ τινες αὐτῷ ἐμαντεύοντο, ὁποῖα εἰώθασιν
for before long some to-him prophesied such-as are-wont
οἱ κόλακες τοῖς μεγιστᾶσιν εἰσηγεῖσθαι, ὅτι "μέχρι καὶ
the flatterers to-the magnates to-suggest that as-far-as even
αὐτοῦ τοῦ Ἀθέρος ἅπαντα μέλλεις ὑποτάξαι· ἐκεῖθεν δὲ
the-very — Ather all-things you-are-about to-subdue from-there and
εἰς Ἱερουσαλὴμ ἀπερχόμενος τῷ χρεὼν λειτουργήσεις".
to Jerusalem departing to-the debt you-will-render
εἴτε δὲ ὁ πυρετὸς τοῦτον ἀνάλωσεν εἴτε πλευρῖτις ἡ
whether and the fever him consumed or pleurisy the
νόσος ἦν, ἀκριβῶς λέγειν οὐκ ἔχω. τέως δι' ἓξ ἡμερῶν
sickness was exactly to-say not I-can meanwhile within six days
τελευτᾷ. καταλαμβάνει δὲ τοῦτον τὰ ἔσχατα πνέοντα ἡ
he-dies reaches and him the last-breaths breathing the

γυνὴ αὐτοῦ Γαΐτα καὶ τὸν υἱὸν αὐτοῦ κλαίοντα ἐπ᾽ αὐτῷ.
wife his Gaita and the son his weeping over him
ἀπαγγέλλεται γοῦν τὸ συμβὰν τῷ υἱῷ αὐτοῦ, ὅνπερ ἔτι
is-announced at-any-rate the event to-the son his whom still
ζῶν διάδοχον τῆς ἀρχῆς αὐτοῦ ἐποίει. ὃς τοῦτο μαθὼν
living successor of-the rule his he-made who this having-learned
λύπῃ μὲν τηνικαῦτα ἀφορήτῳ συνείχετο, κρείττοσι
with-grief indeed then unbearable was-held with-better
δὲ λογισμοῖς ἑαυτὸν ἀνακτησάμενος καὶ συναγαγὼν τὸ
and reasonings himself having-recovered and having-collected the
φρονοῦν αὐτῷ τῆς ψυχῆς μετακαλεσάμενος ἅπαντας
thinking-part of-him of-the soul having-summoned all
πρῶτον μὲν ἀπαγγέλλει τὸ συμβὰν ἀπαράκλητα κλαίων
first indeed he-announces the event inconsolably weeping
ἐπὶ τῇ τοῦ πατρὸς τελευτῇ, ὁρκίζει δὲ ἅπαντας εἰς
for the of-the father death makes-swear and all to
ἑαυτόν. καὶ ἀναλαβόμενος τούτους εἰς Ἀπουληΐαν διαπερᾷ.
himself and having-taken-up them to Apulia crosses
ἐν τῷ διαπερᾶν δὲ μεγίστῳ κλύδωνι, κἂν ὥρα θέρους
in the crossing and with-very-great surge even-if season of-summer
ἦν, περιπέπτωκεν, ὥστε τὰ μὲν τῶν πλοίων βυθισθῆναι,
it-was be-met so-that some indeed of-the boats to-be-sunk
τινὰ δὲ τῇ ψάμμῳ προσαρράξαντα συνθραυσθῆναι. τὸ δὲ
some and on-the sand having-dashed to-be-shattered the and
τὸν νεκρὸν κομίζον πλοῖον ἡμίθραυστον γέγονε· μόγις δὲ
the corpse carrying boat half-shattered became hardly and
τὸ τοῦτον συνέχον κιβώτιον οἱ ἀμφ᾽ αὐτὸν ἀναλαβόμενοι
the him holding coffin those about him having-taken-up
εἰς τὸ Βενούσιον διεσώσαντο. καὶ εἰς τὴν ἐπ᾽ ὀνόματι τῆς
to — Venusia brought-safely and into the in name of-the
ἁγίας Τριάδος πάλαι ἀνοικοδομηθεῖσαν μονήν, οὗ καὶ
holy Trinity long-ago built monastery where also

οἱ ἀδελφοὶ αὐτοῦ προετάφησαν, καὶ αὐτὸς ἐνσοριάζεται.
the brothers his were-buried-before also he is-entombed
τελευτᾷ δὲ ὁ Ῥομπέρτος εἰκοστῷ πέμπτῳ χρόνῳ
dies and — Robert in-the-twenty fifth year
τῆς δουκικῆς αὐτοῦ ἀρχῆς τὸν ἅπαντα χρόνον βιώσας
of-the ducal his rule the whole time having-lived
ἔτη ἑβδομήκοντα. μεμαθηκὼς δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς τὸν τοῦ
years seventy having-learned and the emperor the —
Ῥομπέρτου αἰφνίδιον θάνατον ἀνέσφαλε μὲν ἄχθος τοιοῦτον
of-Robert sudden death revived indeed burden such
ἀπωμισάμενος· ἐπιτίθεται δὲ παραχρῆμα τοῖς τὸ Δυρράχιον
having-shaken-off attacks and immediately those — Dyrrachion
ἔτι κατέχουσιν εἰς διχόνοιαν τούτους διὰ γραμμάτων
still holding into discord them through letters
καὶ παντοίας μεθόδου εἰσάξαι σκεψάμενος κᾆθ' οὕτως
and every-kind-of method to-bring having-considered and-then thus
ῥᾷστα τὴν πόλιν Δυρραχίου ἐλπίζων λήψεσθαι. ἀλλὰ καὶ
most-easily the city of-Dyrrachion hoping to-take but also
τοὺς ἐν τῇ πόλει παρατυχόντας Βενετίκους παρασκευάζει
the in the city present Venetians he-prepares
διὰ γραμμάτων ξυμβουλεῦσαι τοῖς τε Ἀμαλφηνοῖς καὶ
through letters to-counsel the both Amalfitans and
Βενετίκοις καὶ ὅσοι ἄποικοι εἰς Ἐπίδαμνον ἔτυχον,
Venetians and as-many-as colonists in Epidamnos happened-to-be
ὑπεῖξαι τῷ αὐτοῦ θελήματι καὶ παραδοῦναί οἱ τὸ
to-yield to-the his will and to-hand-over to-him —
Δυρράχιον. ἀλλὰ καὶ αὐτὸς δι' ὑποσχέσεων καὶ δωρεῶν
Dyrrachion but also he through promises and gifts
οὐκ ἐνεδίδου ὅλως, ὥστε τὴν πόλιν Δυρραχίου παραδοῦναι
not ceased at-all so-that the city of-Dyrrachion to-hand-over
αὐτῷ. καταπειθεῖς οὖν γεγονότες (τοιοῦτον γὰρ τὸ Λατίνων

ἅπαν γένος ἐρασιχρήματόν τε καὶ ὀβολοῦ ἑνὸς πιπράσκειν
whole race money-loving both and for-an-obol one to-sell
εἰωθὸς καὶ αὐτὰ δὴ τὰ φίλτατα) μεγάλα ἐλπίσαντες
wont even the-things indeed the dearest great-things having-hoped
καὶ συνωμοσίαν τηνικαῦτα ποιησάμενοι ἀναιροῦσι μὲν
and a-conspiracy then having-made kill indeed
τὸν πρώτως αὐτοὺς ἀναπείσαντα τὸ κάστρον τῷ
the(-one) first them having-persuaded the fortress —
Ῥομπέρτῳ προδοῦναι καὶ τοὺς συνωμότας αὐτοῦ· ἐκεῖνοι
to-Robert to-betray and the fellow-conspirators his they
δὲ προσελθόντες παραδιδόασι τὸ κάστρον τῷ βασιλεῖ
and having-come hand-over the fortress to-the emperor
πάσης ἐλευθερίας ἐξ αὐτοῦ παραπολαύσαντες.
all freedom from him having-enjoyed

XVI · ASTROLOGY AND ROBERT'S PORTRAIT

Seth the astrologer had foretold Robert's death in a sealed oracle. Anna digresses on astrology, a new art unknown to Eudoxos and Plato and inexact in Manetho, which she studied only to condemn it. Alexios sent an Alexandrian astrologer off to Rhaidestos but would not banish Katanankes, whose prophecy of the emperor's death came true only for a lion and for the emperor's mother, Anna. Robert is described: tall, handsome, eloquent, honoring his followers but stingy and grasping, and more confident in defeat. Critics say Alexios fought him too soon.

Τὴν δὲ τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου τελευτὴν μαθηματικός τις Σὴθ
the and — of-Robert death mathematician a-certain Seth
καλούμενος μεγάλα ἐπ' ἀστρολογίᾳ αὐχῶν μετὰ τὴν εἰς τὸ
called greatly in astrology boasting after the to —
Ἰλλυρικὸν αὐτοῦ διαπεραίωσιν προειρήκει διὰ χρησμοῦ,
Illyricum his crossing had-foretold through an-oracle

ὃν ἐν χάρτῃ ἐκθέμενος καὶ σφραγίσας τισὶ τῶν τοῦ
which on paper having-set-out and having-sealed to-some of-the of-the
βασιλέως οἰκειοτάτων ἐνεχείρισε παραγγείλας κατέχειν
emperor most-intimate he-entrusted having-instructed to-keep
αὐτὸν μέχρι τινός. εἶτα τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου τετελευτηκότος
it until a-certain-time then — Robert having-died
ἐξ ἐπιταγῆς αὐτοῦ λύουσι τὸν χάρτην. εἶχε δὲ ὁ χρησμὸς
by order his they-open the paper had and the oracle
οὕτως "μέγας ἐχθρὸς ἐξ ἑσπέρας πολλὰ κυκήσας
thus a-great enemy from the-west many-things having-stirred-up
ἄφνω πεσεῖται". ἐθαύμασαν μὲν οὖν πάντες τὴν τοῦ
suddenly will-fall marveled indeed then all the of-the
ἀνδρὸς ἐπιστήμην· ἦν γὰρ ἐπὶ ταύτῃ τῇ σοφίᾳ εἰς
man knowledge he-was for in this the wisdom to
ἄκρον ἐληλακώς· καὶ ἵνα τι βραχὺ παραδράμωμεν
the-summit having-driven and that something brief we-may-run-beside
τοῦ λόγου τῆς ἱστορίας μικρὸν ἀποστάντες, οὕτως ἔχει
from-the account of-the history a-little having-stood-away thus stand
τὰ κατὰ τοὺς χρησμούς. νεώτερον μὲν τὸ ἐφεύρημα
the(-things) concerning the oracles more-recent indeed the invention
καὶ οὐκ οἶδε ταύτην τὴν ἐπιστήμην ὁ πάλαι χρόνος.
and not knows this the knowledge the ancient time
οὔτε γὰρ ἐπ' Εὐδόξου τοῦ ἀστρονομικωτάτου ἡ τῶν
neither for in-the-time-of Eudoxos the most-astronomical the of-the
χρησμῶν μέθοδος ἦν οὔτε ὁ Πλάτων τὴν σύνεσιν ταύτην
oracles method was nor — Plato the understanding this
ᾔδει, ἀλλ' οὐδὲ Μανέθων ὁ ἀποτελεσματικὸς περὶ ταύτης
knew but not-even Manetho the astrologer about it
ἠκρίβωκεν. ἀλλὰ λῆψις ἦν ἐκείνοις *** ὡροσκόπου, ἐν
was-exact but taking was for-them (lacuna) of-the-horoscope in
οἷς προὐμαντεύοντο, καὶ πῆξις τῶν κέντρων καὶ τοῦ
which-things they-foretold and fixing of-the cardinal-points and of-the

ὅλου διαθέματος ἐπιτήρησις καὶ ὁπόσα ἄλλα ὁ τὴν
whole configuration observation and as-many-as other-things the(-one) the
μέθοδον ταύτην εὑρηκὼς τοῖς ἐς ὕστερον παρέδωκεν,
method this having-discovered to-those for later-time handed-down
ἅπερ ξυνετὰ τοῖς περὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα ματαιάζουσιν. ἡμεῖς δὲ
which-things intelligible to-those about the such-things toying we and
ἐκεῖθέν ποτε ὀλίγον τι τῆς ἐπιστήμης ταύτης ἡψάμεθα,
thence once little something of-the knowledge this touched
οὐχ ἵνα τι τοιοῦτον διαπραξαίμεθα (μὴ γένοιτο), ἀλλ᾽
not that something such we-might-do not may-it-be but
ἵνα τῆς ματαιολόγου ταύτης ἀκριβέστερον καταγνόντες καὶ
that the vain-talking this more-exactly having-condemned and
τῶν περὶ αὐτὴν ἠσχολημένων καταγινώσκοιμεν. ταῦτα
those about it occupied we-might-condemn these(-things)
δὲ γράφω οὐκ ἐπιδείξεως ἕνεκα, ἀλλ᾽ ἵνα ἐνδειξαίμην,
and I-write not of-display for-the-sake but that I-might-show
ὅτι ἐπὶ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος τούτου πολλαὶ τῶν ἐπιστημῶν
that under the autocrat this many of-the sciences
εἰς ἐπίδοσιν ἐληλύθεισαν τιμῶντος τοὺς φιλοσόφους καὶ
to advance had-come honoring the philosophers and
φιλοσοφίαν αὐτήν, εἰ καὶ πρὸς τὸ μάθημα τοῦτο τῆς
philosophy itself if even toward the study this of-the
ἀστρολογίας δυσχεραίνων πως κατεφαίνετο, οἶμαι, διότι
astrology being-annoyed somehow he-appeared I-think because
τοὺς πολλοὺς τῶν ἀκεραιοτέρων ἀφίστασθαι ἀνέπειθε
the many of-the more-simple to-stand-away persuaded
τῶν ἄνωθεν ἐλπίδων καὶ κεχηνέναι τοῖς ἀστράσιν. αὕτη
from-the above hopes and to-gape at-the stars this
αἰτία γέγονε πόλεμον ἔχειν τὸν αὐτοκράτορα πρὸς τὸ
cause became war to-have the autocrat with the
μάθημα τῆς ἀστρολογίας. οὐ μὴν διὰ τοῦτο αὐχμός
study of-the astrology not indeed because-of this a-dearth

τις ἦν ἀστρολόγων τὸ τηνικάδε, ἀλλὰ καὶ ὁ εἰρημένος
any was of-astrologers the at-that-time but also the mentioned
Σὴθ κατ᾽ ἐκεῖνο καιροῦ ἐξήνθει καὶ ὁ Αἰγύπτιος ἐκεῖνος
Seth at that of-the-time flourished and the Egyptian that
Ἀλεξανδρεὺς πολὺς ἦν τὰ τῆς ἀστρολογίας ἐμφαίνων
Alexandrian much was the of-the astrology displaying
ὄργια. ὃς καὶ παρὰ πολλῶν ἐρωτώμενος ἀκριβέστατα
rites who also by many being-asked most-exactly
προεμαντεύετο ἐν ἐνίοις οὐδὲ ἀστρολάβου δεόμενος, ἀλλὰ
foretold in some not-even an-astrolabe needing but
διά τινος ψηφηφορίας τὰς προρρήσεις ἐπεποίητο. ἦν
through some pebble-reckoning the predictions had-made it-was
δ᾽ ἄρα καὶ τοῦτο μαγικὸν μὲν οὐδαμῶς, ἀλλὰ τέχνη
and after-all also this magical indeed in-no-way but art
τις Ἀλεξανδρέων λογική. ὁρῶν δὲ ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ
a-certain of-Alexandrians logical seeing and the autocrat
τὴν νεότητα συρρέουσαν ἐπ᾽ αὐτὸν καὶ ὥσπερ τινὰ
the youth flocking to him and as-if some
προφήτην τὸν ἄνδρα λογιζομένην δὶς καὶ αὐτὸς τοῦτον
prophet the man reckoning twice also he him
ἐπερωτήκει, καὶ τοσαυτάκις καὶ ὁ Ἀλεξανδρεὺς εὐστοχήκει
had-asked and so-many-times also the Alexandrian had-hit-the-mark
τῆς ἐπερωτήσεως· δειλιάσας δὲ ἵνα μὴ πολλῶν βλάβη
of-the question having-feared and that not of-many harm
γένηται καὶ πρὸς τὴν ματαιότητα τῆς ἀστρολογίας
should-happen and toward the vanity of-the astrology
ἀποκλίνωσιν ἅπαντες, κατὰ τὴν Ῥαιδεστὸν τούτῳ τὰς
should-incline all at — Rhaidestos for-him the
διατριβὰς ἀφώρισε τῆς πόλεως ἀπελάσας, πολλὴν
residence he-assigned from-the city having-driven much
τὴν περὶ αὐτὸν προμήθειαν ἐνδειξάμενος, ὥστε δαψιλῶς
the about him forethought having-shown so-that abundantly

αὐτῷ τὰ πρὸς χρῆσιν ἐκ τῶν βασιλικῶν ταμιείων
to-him the(-things) for use from the imperial treasuries
ἐπιχορηγεῖσθαι. ναὶ μὴν καὶ ὁ διαλεκτικώτατος Ἐλευθέριος,
to-be-supplied yes indeed also the most-dialectical Eleutherios
Αἰγύπτιος καὶ οὗτος ἀνήρ, τὰ τῆς ἐπιστήμης ταύτης
Egyptian also this a-man the(-things) of-the knowledge this
πρεσβεύων εἰς ἄκρον ἤλαυνεν εὐφυΐας μηδενὶ μηδαμῶς
championing to the-summit drove of-natural-gift to-no-one in-no-way
τῶν πρωτείων παραχωρῶν. ἐν ὑστέροις δὲ καὶ ὁ
of-the first-prizes yielding in later-times and also the
καλούμενος Κατανάγκης Ἀθήνηθεν εἰς τὴν μεγαλόπολιν
called Katanankes from-Athens to the great-city
παρελθὼν τὰ πρωτεῖα τῶν πρὸ αὐτοῦ φιλονεικῶν φέρειν,
having-come the first-prizes of-those before him contending to-carry
ἐπερωτηθεὶς παρά τινων περὶ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος, πότε
having-been-asked by some about the autocrat when
τεθνήξοιτο, καὶ τὸν θάνατον αὐτοῦ προκαταγγείλας, ὡς
he-would-die and the death his having-foretold as
ᾤετο, ἐψεύσθη τοῦ στοχασμοῦ. συνέβη δὲ τηνικαῦτα
he-thought was-deceived of-the guess happened and then
τὸν θῆρα λέοντα ἐν τοῖς βασιλείοις διαιτώμενον ἐπὶ
the beast lion in the palace living for
τέσσαρσιν ἡμέραις πυρέξαντα τὴν ψυχὴν ἐξερεύξασθαι· εἰς
four days having-had-fever the soul to-belch-out into
ὃ τοῖς πολλοῖς ἔδοξεν ἡ τοῦ Κατανάγκη πρόρρησις
which to-the many seemed the — of-Katanankes prediction
τελευτῆσαι. καιροῦ δὲ παρερρυηκότος ἱκανοῦ αὖθις τὸν τοῦ
to-have-ended time and having-flowed-by considerable again the of-the
αὐτοκράτορος θάνατον προὐμαντεύσατο καὶ διεψεύσθη·
autocrat death he-foretold and was-wholly-deceived
ἐτεθνήκει δ' ὅμως ἡ βασιλὶς Ἄννα καὶ μήτηρ αὐτοῦ
had-died but nevertheless the empress Anna and mother his

κατὰ τὴν ἡμέραν ἐκείνην, ἣν ὁ Κατανάγκης προεῖπεν. ὁ
on the day that which — Katanankes foretold the
δὲ βασιλεύς, ἐπεὶ περὶ αὐτοῦ πολλάκις προμαντευσάμενος
and emperor since about him often having-foretold
τοσαυτάκις διήμαρτε, τῆς πόλεως τοῦτον μεταστῆσαι οὐκ
so-many-times he-missed from-the city him to-remove not
ἤθελεν αὐτέλεγκτον γενόμενον, ἅμα δὲ καὶ ἵνα μὴ δι᾽
he-wished self-refuted having-become together and also that not because-of
ἐμπάθειαν δόξῃ τοῦτον ἐκεῖθεν ἀπελαύνειν. ἀλλ᾽ ἡμεῖς
passion he-might-seem him from-there to-drive-out but we
γε ἐντεῦθεν πάλιν ὅθεν ἐξεληλύθειμεν ἀναστρέψωμεν,
at-least hence again whence we-had-gone-out let-us-turn-back
ἵνα μὴ δοκοίημεν μετεωρολέσχαι τινὲς καὶ τοῖς ἐξ
that not we-might-seem star-gazing-babblers some and with-the from
ἀστρολογίας ὀνόμασι τὸ σῶμα τῆς ἱστορίας καταζοφοῦντες.
astrology names the body of-the history darkening
ὁ δέ γε Ῥομπέρτος, ὡς ὁ λόγος ἐκράτει καί τινες
— and at-least Robert as the account prevailed and some
ἔλεγον, ἡγεμὼν ἐξαίρετος γέγονεν, ἀγχίνους, εὐπρεπὴς τὴν
said leader outstanding became shrewd comely in-the
ὄψιν, ἀστεῖος ἐν λόγοις, ὀξὺς μὲν εἰπεῖν, φωνὴ δ᾽ αὐτοῦ
look witty in speech quick indeed to-speak voice and his
μεγάλη, εὐπρόσιτος, εὐμεγέθης τὸ σῶμα, σύμμετρον τὴν
great affable tall in-the body proportioned the
κόμην ἔχων ἀεὶ τῇ κεφαλῇ, βαθυπώγων, σπεύδων ἀεὶ
hair having always on-the head deep-bearded hastening always
τὰ ἤθη τοῦ οἰκείου γένους τηρεῖν, τὸ τοῦ προσώπου
the customs of-the own race to-keep the of-the face
ἄνθος καὶ τοῦ ὅλου σώματος μέχρι τέλους σῴζων καὶ
bloom and of-the whole body until end preserving and
τούτοις ἐπιγαννύμενος, δι᾽ ἅπερ ἄξιον τυραννίδος
in-these delighting because-of which worthy of-tyranny

τὸ εἶδος αὐτοῦ ἐνομίζετο, πάντας τοὺς ὑπ᾽ αὐτὸν
the form his was-thought all those under him
τιμῆς ἀξιῶν καὶ πλείονος μᾶλλον τοὺς εὐνοϊκώτερον
of-honor deeming-worthy and of-more rather those more-loyally
πρὸς αὐτὸν διατιθεμένους. φειδωλότατος δὲ ἦν καὶ
toward him disposed most-sparing and he-was and
φιλοχρυσότατος, ἐμπορικώτατος καὶ φιλοκτεανώτατος καὶ
most-fond-of-gold most-mercantile and most-acquisitive and
ἐπὶ τούτοις φιλοδοξότατος· ὑφ᾽ ὧν πάντων ἡττώμενος
besides these most-fond-of-glory by which all being-overcome
πολλὴν τὴν μέμψιν πάντων ἐπεσπάσατο. κακίζουσι δέ
much the blame of-all he-drew-on blame and
τινες τὸν αὐτοκράτορα ὡς μικροψυχήσαντα καὶ τὸν μετ᾽
some the autocrat as having-lost-heart and the with
αὐτοῦ πόλεμον τότε προαρπάσαντα. εἰ μὴ γὰρ πρὸ τοῦ
him war then having-snatched-first if not for before the
προσήκοντος καιροῦ τοῦτον ἀνεζήτησεν, ὥς φασιν, ἄλλως
fitting time him he-had-sought-out as they-say otherwise
ἂν ῥᾳδίως κατίσχυσεν αὐτοῦ βαλλομένου ἁπανταχόθεν
— easily he-would-have-prevailed him being-pelted from-everywhere
παρά τε τῶν καλουμένων Ἀρβανιτῶν παρά τε τῶν ἀπὸ
by both the called Arbanitai by both those from
Δαλματίας παρὰ τοῦ Βοδίνου πεμπομένων. ἀλλὰ τοιαῦτα
Dalmatia by — Bodinos sent but such-things
μὲν οἱ μωμοσκόποι ἔξω βελῶν ἱστάμενοι καὶ κατὰ τῶν
indeed the fault-finders outside missiles standing and against the
ἀγωνιζομένων πικροὺς ὀϊστοὺς διὰ γλώττης πέμποντες.
contenders bitter arrows through tongue sending
τὸ γὰρ τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου ἀνδρεῖον καὶ περὶ τὰ πολεμικὰ
the for — of-Robert courage and about the warlike-things
περιδέξιον καὶ τὸ τοῦ φρονήματος ἑδραῖον ἅπαντες ἴσασι·
dexterity and the of-the spirit steadfastness all know

καὶ γὰρ οὐ τῶν ῥᾳδίως, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῶν λίαν δυσκόλως
and for not of-those easily but even of-those very hardly
καταγωνιζομένων ἦν ὁ ἀνὴρ ἐν ταῖς ἥτταις μᾶλλον
being-defeated was the man in the defeats rather
θαρραλεώτερος φαινόμενος.
more-confident appearing

XVII · ANNA'S BIRTH

Alexios returns on the first of December, in the seventh indiction, and Anna is born at dawn on a Saturday in the porphyra, the chamber long set apart for empresses in childbirth. She had waited, her mother said, for her father's return, as the empress commanded when she signed the cross upon her womb. She is crowned and acclaimed with Constantine Doukas, the son of Michael. A second daughter follows, and then, in the eleventh indiction, a son, to great rejoicing, who is baptized and crowned in God's great church.

Ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς μετὰ τῶν αὐτομολησάντων πρὸς αὐτὸν τοῦ
the and emperor with the having-deserted to him of-the
κόμητος Βρυεννίου Λατίνων τροπαιοφόρος νικητὴς πρὸς τὴν
count Bryennios Latins trophy-bearing victor to the
μεγαλόπολιν ἐπαναζεύγνυσιν, ὡς ἄνωθεν εἴρηται, πρώτην
great-city returns as above has-been-said first
ἄγοντος τοῦ Δεκεμβρίου μηνὸς ἑβδόμης ἐπινεμήσεως, τὴν
leading the December month of-the-seventh indiction the
βασιλίδα κατὰ τὸ ἀφωρισμένον πάλαι ταῖς τικτούσαις τῶν
empress in the set-apart long-ago for-the bearing of-the
βασιλίδων οἴκημα ἐπὶ ταῖς ὠδῖσιν εὑρηκώς· πορφύραν
empresses chamber at the birth-pangs having-found porphyra
τοῦτο οἱ ἀνέκαθεν ὀνομάζουσιν, ἐξ οὗ καὶ τὸ τῶν
this the from-of-old name from which also the of-the

πορφυρογεννήτων ὄνομα εἰς τὴν οἰκουμένην διέδραμε. κατὰ
born-in-the-purple name into the inhabited-world ran at
δὲ τὸ περίορθρον (σάββατον δὲ ἦν) τίκτεται τούτοις
and the early-dawn Saturday and it-was is-born to-them
παιδίον θῆλυ ἐμφερές, ὡς ἔλεγον, κατὰ πάντα τῷ πατρί·
a-child female resembling as they-said in all-things the father
ἐγὼ δὲ ἄρα ἦν τοῦτο. καὶ ὥς γε τὴν βασιλίδα καὶ
I and after-all was this and as at-least the empress and
μητέρα ἔν τισι καιροῖς διηγουμένην ἤκουον, ὅτι πρὸ τρίτης
mother on some occasions narrating I-heard that before third
ἡμέρας τῆς τοῦ βασιλέως εἰς τὰ ἀνάκτορα εἰσελεύσεως
day of-the of-the emperor into the palace entrance
(ἐπανήει γὰρ ἤδη ἀπὸ τῆς τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου μάχης καὶ
he-was-returning for already from the — of-Robert battle and
τῶν πολλῶν ἐκείνων πολέμων καὶ κόπων) ταῖς ὠδῖσι
the many those wars and labors by-the birth-pangs
συνεχομένη σταυροῦ τύπον τῇ γαστρὶ ἐνσημήνασα ἔφη
gripped of-a-cross the-sign on-the belly having-marked she-said
"μεῖνον ἔτι, παιδίον, τὴν τοῦ πατρὸς ἄφιξιν". πολλὰ δὲ
wait still child the of-the father arrival much and
αὐτήν, ὡς ἔλεγεν, ἡ πρωτοβεστιαρία καὶ μήτηρ αὐτῆς
her as she-said the protovestiaria and mother her
καταμεμψαμένη ἔφη μετ' ὀργῆς "εἰ δὲ μετὰ μῆνα
having-reproached she-said with anger if and after a-month
ἐλεύσεται, οἶδας; καὶ πῶς αὐτὴ τοσαύταις ὀδύναις
he-will-come do-you-know and how yourself so-many pains
ἐγκαρτερήσεις;" ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν ἡ ἐκείνης μήτηρ·
will-endure but these(-things) indeed the of-that-woman mother
τὸ δέ γε τῆς βασιλίδος ἐπίταγμα πέρας εἰλήφει, ὅπερ
the and at-least of-the empress command end had-received which
κἀν τῇ γαστρὶ τὴν εἰς τὸ μέλλον πρὸς τοὺς γειναμένους
even-in the belly the for the future toward the parents

εὔνοιαν ἀριδήλως ὑπεσημαίνετο. καὶ γὰρ μετὰ ταῦτα εἰς
goodwill clearly signified and for after these(-things) to
ἡλικίαν ἐπιδεδωκυῖα καὶ ἀπολαβοῦσα τὸ φρονοῦν καθαρῶς
age having-advanced and having-received the understanding purely
φιλομήτωρ κατὰ ταὐτὸν ἐγεγόνειν καὶ φιλοπάτωρ.
mother-loving at the-same-time I-had-become and father-loving
καὶ μάρτυρες τοῦ τοιούτου ἤθους εἰσί μοι πολλοὶ μὲν
and witnesses of-the such character are to-me many indeed
τῶν ἀνθρώπων, ἤδη δὲ καὶ πάντες, ὁπόσοι τἀμὰ
of-the men already and also all as-many-as my-affairs
γινώσκουσι, προσεπιμαρτυρούντων αὐτοῖς καὶ τῶν πολλῶν
know testifying-besides to-them also the many
μου ὑπὲρ τῶν γονέων ἄθλων καὶ καμάτων καὶ τῶν
my for the parents struggles and toils and the
κινδύνων ἐκείνων, εἰς οὓς ἐμαυτὴν διὰ τὸ πρὸς ἐκείνους
dangers those into which myself because-of the toward them
φίλτρον ἐνέβαλον, ἀφειδήσασα μὲν καὶ τιμῆς καὶ
love I-threw having-spared-nothing indeed both honor and
χρημάτων καὶ αὐτῆς τῆς ζωῆς· οὕτω γὰρ τὸ πρὸς αὐτούς
money and itself the life so for the toward them
με φίλτρον ἐξέκαεν, ὡς καὶ αὐτὴν τὴν ψυχὴν δι' αὐτοὺς
me love burned as even itself the soul for them
προέσθαι πολλάκις. ἀλλὰ μήπω περὶ τούτων. ἀνατρεχέτω
to-throw-away many-times but not-yet about these let-run-back
δ' αὖθις ὁ λόγος πρὸς τὰ ἐξ αὐτῆς μοι ξυμπεσόντα
and again the account to the(-things) from itself to-me having-befallen
γενέσεως. πάντων γὰρ τῶν συνήθων ἐπὶ τοῖς νεογνοῖς
birth all for the customary-things for the newborn
τῶν βασιλέων παισὶ δαψιλέστερον τελεσθέντων, ὡς
of-the emperors children more-abundantly having-been-performed as
λέγεται, εὐφημιῶν δηλαδὴ καὶ δωρεῶν καὶ φιλοτιμημάτων
is-said acclamations namely and gifts and largesses

παρεχομένων τοῖς λογάσι τῆς συγκλήτου καὶ τοῦ στρατοῦ,
being-provided to-the picked-men of-the senate and of-the army
πλέον ἤπερ ποτὲ ἔχαιρον, ἐσκίρτων, ἐπαιάνιζον ἅπαντες
more than ever they-rejoiced leapt sang-paeans all
καὶ μᾶλλον οἱ τῇ βασιλίδι καθ' αἷμα προσήκοντες οὐκ
and rather those to-the empress by blood related not
εἶχον ὑφ' ἡδονῆς ὅ τι καὶ γένοιντο. μετρητῶν δέ
could from pleasure what — also they-might-become countable and
τινων παρελθουσῶν ἡμερῶν στέφους κἀμὲ ἀξιοῦσιν οἱ
some having-passed days with-crown me-too deem-worthy the
γονεῖς καὶ βασιλικοῦ διαδήματος. ἐπεὶ δὲ Κωνσταντίνου
parents and with-imperial diadem since and Constantine
τοῦ υἱοῦ τοῦ προβεβασιλευκότος Μιχαὴλ τοῦ Δούκα, περὶ
the son of-the predecessor-on-the-throne Michael the Doukas about
οὗ πολλάκις ὁ λόγος ἐμνήσθη, συμβασιλεύοντος ἔτι τῷ
whom many-times the account made-mention reigning-together still with-the
αὐτοκράτορι καὶ ἐμῷ πατρὶ κἀν ταῖς δωρεαῖς δι' ἐρυθρῶν
autocrat and my father and-in the donations in red
συνυπογράφοντος τούτῳ κἀν ταῖς προπομπαῖς μετὰ
signing-with him and-in the processions with
τιάρας αὐτῷ συνεπομένου κἀν ταῖς εὐφημίαις δευτέρου
tiara him following and-in the acclamations second
εὐφημουμένου κἀγὼ εὐφημεῖσθαι ἔμελλον, Κωνσταντῖνον
being-acclaimed I-too to-be-acclaimed was-about Constantine
καὶ Ἄνναν ἐν ταὐτῷ ἐξεφώνουν ἐν τοῖς τῆς εὐφημίας
and Anna at the-same-time shouted in the of-the acclamation
καιροῖς οἱ τῆς εὐφημίας προεξάρχοντες. καὶ τοῦτο
times those of-the acclamation leading and this
δὴ μέχρι καιρῶν ἱκανῶν ἐτελεῖτο, ὥς γέ μοι τῶν
indeed until times considerable was-performed as at-least to-me of-the
συγγενῶν καὶ ἐμῶν γεννητόρων ἐν ὑστέροις πολλάκις
kinsmen and my parents in later-times many-times

διηγουμένων ἀκήκοα. προμάντευμα δὲ ἴσως τοῦτο τῶν
narrating I-have-heard a-presage and perhaps this of-the
ἐμοὶ ξυμπεσόντων ἦν εἴτε εὐτυχημάτων εἴτε τοὔμπαλιν
to-me having-befallen was whether good-fortunes or on-the-contrary
δυστυχημάτων. ἐπεὶ δὲ τοῖς βασιλεῦσι καὶ δεύτερον ἐτέχθη
misfortunes since and to-the sovereigns also second was-born
θῆλυ, ἀναφέρον μὲν κατὰ τὴν ὄψιν ἐς τοὺς προγόνους,
a-female resembling indeed in the look to the ancestors
ἐμφαῖνον δ' ἅμα καὶ τὴν ἐς ὕστερον ἐπιλάμψουσαν
showing and at-once also the for later-time going-to-shine-forth
αὐτῷ ἀρετήν τε καὶ φρόνησιν, ἐπεπόθουν καὶ ἄρρεν
on-it virtue both and prudence they-longed also a-male
τεκεῖν καὶ δι' εὐχῆς αὐτοῖς τοῦτ' ἦν. ἐπινεμήσεως οὖν
to-bear and through prayer to-them this was of-indiction then
ἑνδεκάτης τρεχούσης τίκτεται τούτοις καὶ ἄρρεν. εὐθὺς οὖν
eleventh running is-born to-them also a-male at-once then
οἱ μὲν γονεῖς ἐγεγήθεσαν καὶ πένθους οὐκέτι ἴχνος αὐτοῖς
the indeed parents rejoiced and of-mourning no-longer a-trace to-them
ἐπιλέλειπτο τῆς σφῶν ἐπιθυμίας εἰς ἔργον προαχθείσης.
was-left of-the their desire into deed having-been-brought
τὸ δὲ ὑπήκοον ἅπαν ἐσκίρτων τοὺς κρατοῦντας οὕτω
the and subject-people all leapt the rulers so
χαίροντας ὁρῶν, συνέχαιρον ἀλλήλοις, ἐγεγήθεσαν. καὶ
rejoicing seeing rejoiced-with one-another rejoiced and
ἦν ἰδεῖν τὰ βασίλεια χαρμονῆς ἀνάπλεω καὶ πένθους
it-was to-see the palace of-joy full and of-mourning
οὐδαμοῦ οὐδ' ἑτέρας οἱασδηποτοῦν ἐννοίας, τῶν μὲν ἐκ
nowhere nor of-other any-whatever thought those indeed from
μέσης θαλάμης καρδίας χαιρόντων ὁπόσοι εὖνοι, τῶν
inmost chamber of-heart rejoicing as-many-as well-disposed those
δὲ συσχηματιζομένων χαίρειν. ἔστι μὲν γὰρ τὸ ὑπήκοον
and pretending to-rejoice is indeed for the subject-people

ὡς ἐπίπαν δύσνουν τοῖς κρατοῦσι, σχηματιζόμενον
as on-the-whole ill-disposed to-the rulers pretending
δὲ τὰ πολλὰ καὶ διὰ κολακείας ἐπισπώμενον τοὺς
and the many-times also through flattery drawing-over the
ὑπερέχοντας. ὅμως δ' οὖν κοινὴν ἦν ἰδεῖν τότε τὴν
superiors nevertheless — then common it-was to-see then the
χαρμονὴν συνηδομένων ἁπάντων. τὸ δὲ παιδίον μέλαν ἦν
joy rejoicing-together all the and child dark was
τὴν χροιάν, μέτωπον τούτῳ εὐρύ, παρειαὶ ὑπόξηροι, ῥὶς
in-the complexion forehead to-it broad cheeks rather-lean nose
οὔτε σιμὴ οὔτε κάμπτουσα πρὸς τὸ γρυπόν, ἀλλὰ μέση
neither snub nor bending toward the hooked but middle
πως ἀμφοῖν· ὀφθαλμοὶ μελάντεροι καὶ τὸ ὑποκαθήμενον
somehow of-both eyes rather-dark and the underlying
ἦθος καὶ ὀξύ, ὅσον ἐκ βρεφυλλίου σώματος εἰκάσαι,
character also sharp as-much-as from infant body to-guess
ἐμφαίνοντες. ἐθέλοντες τοιγαροῦν τουτὶ τὸ παιδίον εἰς
showing wishing accordingly this-here the child to
τὴν αὐτοκράτορος περιωπὴν ἀναβιβάσαι καὶ κλῆρον
the of-autocrat eminence to-raise and inheritance
οἷον αὐτῷ τὴν βασιλείαν Ῥωμαίων καταλιπεῖν εἰς
as-it-were to-him the empire of-Romans to-leave in
τὴν τοῦ θεοῦ μεγάλην ἐκκλησίαν τοῦ θείου βαπτίσματος
the — of-God great church of-the divine baptism
καὶ τοῦ στέφους αὐτὸ ἀξιοῦσι. τοιαῦτα τοίνυν τὰ
and of-the crown it deem-worthy such therefore the(-things)
τοῖς πορφυρογεννήτοις ἡμῖν ἐξ αὐτῶν βαλβίδων τῆς
to-the born-in-the-purple us from the-very starting-lines of-the
ἡμῶν γενέσεως ξυμβάντα· τὰ δέ γε ἐς ὕστερον
our birth having-befallen the(-things) and at-least for later-time
συμπεσόντα κατὰ τὸν προσήκοντα ῥηθήσεται τόπον.
having-befallen in the fitting will-be-told place

Alexios has driven Solyman's Turks from Bithynia. Philaretos, an Armenian who seized Antioch after Diogenes fell, plans to turn Turk, and his son leads Solyman to take Antioch. Toutoushes defeats Solyman, who kills himself. The great sultan, fearing Toutoushes, sends Siaous to offer Alexios a marriage-alliance. Alexios ignores the proposal but persuades Siaous to use the sultan's letters to clear the coastal cities of their satraps. Siaous is baptized and made duke of Anchialos.

Ὁ μέντοι αὐτοκράτωρ Ἀλέξιος τῶν παραλίων τῆς
the however autocrat Alexios from-the coastal-parts —
Βιθυνίας καὶ αὐτῆς Βοσπόρου καὶ τῶν ἀνωτέρω χωρῶν
of-Bithynia and of-the-very Bosporus and the higher lands
τοὺς Τούρκους ἀπελάσας μετὰ τοῦ Σολυμᾶ εἰς εἰρηνικὰς
the Turks having-driven-out with — Solyman to peaceful
ἐληλύθει σπονδάς, καθὼς ὁ λόγος ἀνωτέρω φθάσας
had-come treaties as the account above having-been-first
ἐδήλωσε, καὶ οὕτως πρὸς τὸ Ἰλλυρικὸν τὰς ἡνίας στρέψας
showed and thus to — Illyricum the reins having-turned
τόν τε Ῥομπέρτον καὶ τὸν αὐτοῦ υἱὸν Βαϊμοῦντον πολλὰ
— both Robert and the his son Bohemond much
μογήσας κατὰ κράτος ἥττησε καὶ μεγίστης συμφορᾶς
having-toiled by force defeated and from-very-great calamity
τὰ κατὰ τὴν ἑσπέραν ἐρρύσατο. κἀκεῖθεν ἐπανελθὼν
the(-parts) toward the west rescued and-from-there having-returned
αὖθις τοὺς ὑπὸ τὸν Ἀπελχασὴμ Τούρκους οὐ τὴν ἔω ἁπλῶς
again the under — Apelchasem Turks not the east simply
κατατρέχοντας εὗρεν, ἀλλὰ μέχρις αὐτῆς Προποντίδος καὶ
overrunning he-found but as-far-as the-very Propontis and
τῶν παραλίων ταύτῃ χωρίων κατεληλυθότας. ὅπως μὲν
the coastal there places having-come-down how indeed
οὖν ὁ Ἀμὴρ Σολυμᾶς τῆς Νικαίας ἐξελθὼν τουτονὶ τὸν
then the Amir Solyman — from-Nicaea having-gone-out this-here —

Ἀπελχασὴμ φρουρὸν αὐτῆς καταλέλοιπεν, ὁ δὲ Πουζάνος
Apelchasem as-guard of-it left — and Pouzanos
παρὰ τοῦ Περσῶν σουλτὰν πρὸς τὴν Ἀσίαν ἐξεπέμφθη
by the of-Persians sultan to — Asia was-sent
καὶ παρὰ τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ τοῦ σουλτὰν Τουτούση ἡττηθεὶς
and by the brother of-the sultan Toutoushes defeated
ἀνῃρέθη καὶ τὸν Τουτούσην μετὰ τὸ τὸν Πουζάνον
was-killed and — Toutoushes after the — Pouzanos
ἡττῆσαι οἱ ἀνεψιαδεῖς αὐτοῦ ἀπέπνιξαν, ἀρκτέον ἤδη
to-defeat the nephews his strangled one-must-begin now
διηγεῖσθαι. ἀνήρ τις ἐξ Ἀρμενίας ὁρμώμενος Φιλάρετος
to-narrate a-man certain from Armenia sprung Philaretos
τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν, περίβλεπτος ἐπ᾽ ἀνδρείᾳ καὶ φρονήσει, εἰς
the by-name admired for courage and prudence to
τὴν τοῦ δομεστικάτου ἀξίαν παρὰ τοῦ προβεβασιλευκότος
the of-the domestic's-office rank by the predecessor-on-the-throne
Ῥωμανοῦ τοῦ Διογένους ἀνενεχθεὶς καὶ τὰ συμβάντα
Romanos the Diogenes raised and the(-things) having-befallen
τῷ Διογένει θεασάμενος καὶ τὴν τῶν ὀμμάτων αὐτοῦ
— to-Diogenes having-beheld and the of-the eyes his
στέρησιν βεβαιωθεὶς διαφερόντως τοῦτον ποθῶν οὐκ
deprivation having-been-assured exceedingly him longing not
ἔφερεν, ἀλλ᾽ ἀποστασίαν μελετήσας τὴν τῆς Ἀντιόχου
he-bore but rebellion having-planned the of-the(-city) of-Antiochos
ἐξουσίαν ἑαυτῷ περιεποιήσατο. καθ᾽ ἑκάστην δὲ τῶν
authority for-himself secured by each(-day) and the
Τούρκων λῃζομένων τὰ πέριξ, ἐπεὶ μὴ ἄνεσις
Turks plundering the(-places) around since not respite
τούτῳ ἐδίδοτο, ἐσκέψατο προσελθεῖν τοῖς Τούρκοις καὶ
to-him was-given he-considered to-go-over to-the Turks and
περιτμηθῆναι, ὡς ἔθος αὐτοῖς. ὁ δὲ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ ἐνέκειτο
to-be-circumcised as custom for-them the and son his pressed

τοῦτον σφόδρα τῆς παραλόγου ἀνακόπτων ὁρμῆς, ἀλλ'
him vehemently from-the irrational checking impulse but
οὐκ εἰσηκούσθη τὰ λῴονα συμβουλεύων. περίλυπος τοίνυν
not was-heeded the better-things counseling very-grieved therefore
γενόμενος δι' ἡμερῶν ὀκτὼ καταλαμβάνει τὴν Νίκαιαν
having-become within days eight reaches — Nicaea
καὶ προσελθὼν τῷ Ἀμὴρ Σολυμᾶ διεγείρει τοῦτον εἰς
and having-gone to-the Amir Solyman rouses him for
πολιορκίαν τῆς Ἀντιοχείας τὴν τοῦ σουλτανικίου τηνικαῦτα
siege — of-Antioch the of-the sultanate then
περιβεβλημένον ἀξίαν καὶ πρὸς τὸν πόλεμον τὸν κατὰ
having-been-invested-with rank and to the war the against
τοῦ πατρὸς παροξύνει. πείθεται τούτοις ὁ Σολυμᾶς, ἐν
the father incites is-persuaded by-these — Solyman in
δὲ τῷ πρὸς τὴν Ἀντιόχειαν μέλλειν ἀπέρχεσθαι τὸν μὲν
and the toward — Antioch being-about to-go-away — indeed
Ἀπελχασὶμ κατέλιπε φύλακα τῆς Νικαίας ὑπερέχοντα
Apelchasem he-left as-guard — of-Nicaea surpassing
πάντων τῶν ἡγεμόνων ἡγεμόνα τοῦτον κατονομάσας·
all the leaders leader him having-named
ἐκεῖνος δὲ συνεφεπόμενον ἔχων καὶ τὸν τοῦ Φιλαρέτου
that-man and following having also the — of-Philaretos
υἱὸν διὰ δώδεκα νυκτῶν διὰ τὸ ἀνύποπτον (τὰς
son through twelve nights because-of the unsuspected the
γὰρ ἡμέρας ἠρέμει) καταλαμβάνει τὴν Ἀντιόχειαν καὶ ἐξ
for days he-kept-quiet reaches — Antioch and by
ἐφόδου ταύτην κατέσχεν. ἐν τούτοις δὲ καὶ ὁ Χαρατικὴς
assault it held in these and also — Charatikes
λαθραίως συλᾷ τὴν Σινώπην χρυσίον ἱκανὸν καὶ χρήματα
secretly plunders — Sinope gold considerable and money
τῶν βασιλικῶν ταμιείων κεῖθι ἐναποκείμενα μεμαθηκώς.
of-the imperial treasuries there stored having-learned

ὁ δὲ Τουτούσης τοῦ μεγάλου σουλτὰν ἀδελφός, τῶν
— *and Toutoushes of-the great sultan brother —*
Ἱεροσολύμων καὶ τῆς Μεσοποταμίας πάσης καὶ τοῦ Χάλεπ
of-Jerusalem and — of-Mesopotamia all and — of-Aleppo
καὶ μέχρις αὐτοῦ Βαγδᾶ ἐξουσιάζων καὶ τῆς Ἀντιοχείας
and as-far-as itself Baghdad having-authority and — Antioch
ἀντιποιούμενος, ἐπεὶ τὸν Ἀμὴρ Σολυμᾶν ἀφηνιάζοντα
laying-claim-to since the Amir Solyman throwing-off-the-rein
ἔβλεπε καὶ τὴν τῆς Ἀντιοχείας ἀρχὴν ἑαυτῷ ἤδη
he-saw and the — of-Antioch rule for-himself already
περιποιούμενον, σὺν ὅλαις δυνάμεσιν ἐν μεταιχμίῳ τοῦ
securing with whole forces in the-space-between —
Χάλεπ καὶ τῆς Ἀντιοχείας καταλαμβάνει. συνηντηκότος
Aleppo and — Antioch arrives having-met
δ' αὐτῷ τοῦ Ἀμὴρ Σολυμᾶ πόλεμος εὐθὺς ἀναρρήγνυται
and him the Amir Solyman war at-once breaks-out
μέγας, καὶ ἀγχεμάχου τῆς μάχης γεγονυίας νῶτα οἱ
great and hand-to-hand the battle having-become backs those
τοῦ Σολυμᾶ ὑποσχόντες προτροπάδην ἔφευγον. πολλὰ
— of-Solyman having-presented headlong fled much
δὲ τούτους θαρσύνων ὁ Σολυμᾶς, ἐπεὶ τῆς φυγῆς
and them encouraging — Solyman since from-the flight
ἀποσχέσθαι οὐκ ἔπειθεν, ὑπὲρ κεφαλῆς τὸν κίνδυνον
to-abstain not he-persuaded over head the danger
ἐφιστάμενον ὁρῶν παρεκκλίνας ἐν ἀκινδύνῳ τάχα ἐδόκει
standing seeing having-turned-aside in safe-place perhaps he-seemed
καθεστάναι καὶ κατὰ γῆς τὴν ἀσπίδα τεθεικὼς ἐπ' αὐτῇ
to-be-set and on ground the shield having-placed on it
προσουδίσας ἐκάθητο. ἀλλ' οὐ διέλαθε τοὺς ὁμοφύλους.
having-sat-down sat but not he-escaped-notice-of the fellow-tribesmen
προσεληλυθότες γὰρ αὐτῷ τινες τῶν σατραπῶν ἔλεγον τὸν
having-come for to-him some of-the satraps said the

θεῖον αὐτοῦ Τουτούσην μεταπέμπεσθαι αὐτόν. ὁ δ' ἀνένευεν
uncle his Toutoushes to-summon him he and refused
ὑφορώμενος τὸν ἐξ αὐτοῦ κίνδυνον. ἐγκειμένων δὲ τῶν
suspecting the from him danger pressing and the
σατραπῶν, ἐπεὶ οὐ πρὸς ἰσχύος αὐτῷ ἀντικαθίστασθαι
satraps since not with strength for-him to-stand-against
ἦν οἷα μόνῳ ὄντι, τοῦ κουλεοῦ τὸ ξίφος
it-was-possible as alone being from-the scabbard the sword
σπασάμενος κατὰ τῶν ἰδίων ὦσε σπλάγχνων διαμπερὲς
having-drawn against the own he-thrust bowels right-through
τὸ ξίφος ἐλάσας καὶ κακὸς κακῶς ἀπώλετο. παραχρῆμα
the sword having-driven and evil evilly perished immediately
γοῦν οἱ σωθέντες τῶν τοῦ Ἀμὴρ Σολυμᾶ δυνάμεων
at-any-rate those saved of-the of-the Amir Solyman forces
προσχωροῦσι τῷ Τουτούσῃ. ὁ δὲ μέγας σουλτὰν ταῦτα
go-over — to-Toutoushes the and great sultan these(-things)
μεμαθηκὼς καὶ δεδιὼς τὸν Τουτούσην ἰσχυροποιούμενον
having-learned and fearing — Toutoushes growing-strong
ἤδη ἀπέστειλε πρὸς τὸν αὐτοκράτορα τὸν Σιαοὺς
already sent to the autocrat — Siaous
μηνύσας αὐτῷ περὶ κήδους καὶ ὑποσχόμενος, ἐὰν
having-informed him about marriage-alliance and promising if
τοῦτο γένηται, ἀναστεῖλαι μὲν τοὺς Τούρκους τῶν τῆς
this should-happen to-hold-back indeed the Turks from-the of-the
παραλίας μερῶν καὶ παραδοῦναί οἱ τὰ κάστρα καὶ
coast parts and to-hand-over to-him the fortresses and
ὁλοψύχως βοηθεῖν. τοῦτον θεασάμενος ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ τὰς
wholeheartedly to-help him having-beheld the emperor and the
τοῦ σουλτὰν γραφὰς ὑπαναγνοὺς περὶ μὲν τοῦ κήδους
of-the sultan letters having-read about indeed the marriage-alliance
οὐδένα λόγον ἐπεποίητο, τὸν δὲ Σιαοὺς νουνεχῆ ἄνδρα
no word he-had-made — and Siaous a-sensible man

θεασάμενος ἐπυνθάνετο, πόθεν τε ὥρμηται καὶ τίνες οἱ
having-beheld he-inquired whence both he-came and who the
τούτου γονεῖς. τοῦ δὲ μητρόθεν μὲν ἐξ Ἰβήρων εἶναι
his parents he and on-the-mother's-side indeed from Iberians to-be
λέγοντος, τὸν δὲ τούτου πατέρα Τοῦρκον ἀνομολογοῦντος
saying the and his father a-Turk confessing
πολλὴν ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ πραγματείαν ἐπεποίητο, ὥστε τοῦ
much the autocrat effort made so-that of-the
θείου βαπτίσματος τοῦτον τυχεῖν. συνέθετο πρὸς τοῦτο ὁ
divine baptism him to-obtain agreed to this —
Σιαοὺς καὶ πίστεις ἐδεδώκει τῷ αὐτοκράτορι, ὥστε μὴ
Siaous and pledges had-given to-the autocrat so-that not
παλινοστῆσαι τοῦ θείου φωτίσματος τυχών. καὶ ἐπεὶ
to-return of-the divine illumination having-obtained and since
ἐντεταλμένον ἦν αὐτῷ δι' ἐγγράφου προστάξεως
enjoined it-had-been to-him through written command
σουλτανικῆς, ἵν' εἴπερ ὁ βασιλεὺς πρὸς τὸ τελέσαι τὸ
sultanic that if the emperor to the to-complete the
μετ' αὐτοῦ κῆδος προθυμηθείη, ἅπαντας τοὺς τὰς
with him marriage-alliance should-be-eager all the the
παραλίας πόλεις κατασχόντας σατράπας ἀπελάσῃ
coastal cities having-held satraps he-should-drive-out
ἐκεῖθεν τὸ περὶ τούτων διαλαμβάνον σουλτανικὸν γράμμα
from-there the about these comprehending sultanic letter
ὑποδεικνὺς αὐτοῖς, ταύτῃ τῇ γραφῇ συγχρήσασθαι ὁ
showing them this the letter to-use the
βασιλεὺς τῷ Σιαοὺς ὑπέθετο, καὶ ἐπὰν τούτους ἐκεῖθεν
emperor — Siaous advised and when them from-there
ἀπελάσειε τὰς σουλτανικὰς ὑποδεικνύων γραφάς, αὖθις
he-should-drive-out the sultanic showing letters again
πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν ἐπαναστρέψαι. ὁ δὲ μάλα
to the reigning(-city) to-return he and very

προθύμως τὴν Σινώπην πρότερον καταλαβὼν καὶ τὰς
eagerly — Sinope first having-reached and the
σουλτανικὰς ἐπιστολὰς ὑποδείξας τῷ Χαρατικῇ ἐκεῖθεν
sultanic epistles having-shown — to-Charatikes from-there
αὐτὸν ἀπήλασε μηδ' ἄχρις ἑνὸς ὀβολοῦ τῶν βασιλικῶν
him drove-out not-even as-far-as one obol of-the imperial
ὑποκρατήσαντα χρημάτων. γίνεται δέ τι τοιοῦτον.
having-kept-back money happens and something such
ἐν τῷ τῆς Σινώπης ἐξέρχεσθαι αὐτὸν κατεάξας τὸ
in the — of-Sinope going-out him having-broken-down the
ἐπ' ὀνόματι τῆς ὑπεραμώμου δεσποίνης ἡμῶν θεοτόκου
in name of-the all-blameless lady our God-bearer
τέμενος δαίμονι καθάπερ τινὶ ἀλάστορι ἐκ θείας προνοίας
precinct to-a-demon as to-some avenging-spirit by divine providence
παραδοθεὶς ἔκειτο ἀφρίζων· καὶ οὕτως ἐκεῖθεν
having-been-handed-over he-lay foaming and thus from-there
δαιμονιῶν ἐξεληλύθει. τὴν μέντοι κυρίαν τῆς Σινώπης ὁ
possessed he-had-gone-out the however rule — of-Sinope —
Σιαοὺς Κωνσταντίνῳ τῷ Δαλασσηνῷ ἀνέθετο ἐπ' αὐτῷ
Siaous to-Constantine the Dalassenos entrusted for this-purpose
παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως ἀποσταλέντι κᾆθ' οὕτως τὰς ἄλλας
by the emperor sent and-then thus the other
πόλεις περιὼν καὶ τὰς σουλτανικὰς τοῖς σατράπαις
cities going-round and the sultanic to-the satraps
ὑποδεικνύων γραφὰς ἐκεῖθεν ἐξήλαυνε παραδιδοὺς πρὸς
showing letters from-there drove-out handing-over to
τοὺς τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος σατράπας. ταῦτα οὖν ὁ Σιαοὺς
the of-the autocrat satraps these(-things) then — Siaous
διαπραξάμενος ὑποστρέφει πρὸς αὐτὸν κἀντεῦθεν τοῦ θείου
having-accomplished returns to him and-thence of-the divine

βαπτίσματος τετυχηκὼς καὶ πολλῶν δωρεῶν ἐπαπολαύσας
baptism having-obtained and many gifts having-enjoyed
δοὺξ Ἀγχιάλου προχειρίζεται.
duke of-Anchialos is-appointed

XIX · APELCHASEM AND THE FORT

After Solyman's death the satraps keep the cities they guard. Apelchasem holds Nicaea and raids Bithynia, and Tatikios beats him at Prenetos. He starts a pirate fleet at Kios, but Boutoumites burns the half-built ships, and Tatikios routs him after fifteen days of fighting. Alexios invites him to Constantinople, entertains him with baths, hunts, and races, and meanwhile has a fort built secretly on the coast, to drive the Turks out of Nikomedeia. He then sends him home a sebastos, as Alcibiades once tricked the Spartans while Athens was rebuilt.

Τῆς σφαγῆς δὲ τοῦ Ἀμὴρ Σολυμᾶ κατὰ τὴν Ἀσίαν
the slaughter and of-the Amir Solyman throughout — Asia
ἅπασαν διαδραμούσης, ὁπόσοι τῶν σατραπῶν πόλεις
all having-run-through as-many-as of-the satraps cities
καὶ πολίχνια ἔτυχον φυλάσσοντες, ἕκαστος ὅπερ ἔτυχε
and little-towns happened guarding each which happened
φυλάσσων κάστρον κατέσχε καὶ ἰδιοποιήσατο. καὶ γὰρ
guarding fortress held and appropriated and for
ὁπηνίκα πρὸς τὸν Ἀπελχασὴμ τὴν Νίκαιαν παρεδίδου
when to — Apelchasem — Nicaea he-handed-over
φρουρεῖν ἐν τῷ πρὸς Ἀντιόχειαν αὐτὸν ἀπιέναι, διαφόροις
to-guard in the toward Antioch him going-away to-various
σατράπαις τά τε κατὰ τὴν παραλίαν καὶ τὴν
satraps the(-parts) both along the coast and —
Καππαδοκίαν καὶ τὴν ἅπασαν Ἀσίαν, ὡς εἴρηται, ἀνέθετο,
Cappadocia and the whole Asia as has-been-said he-entrusted

ὥστε ἕκαστον τὸ ἴδιον λάχος φρουρεῖν τὴν αὐτοῦ ἐκεῖθεν
so-that each the own allotment to-guard the his from-there
ἐπανέλευσιν ἀπεκδεχόμενον. ὁ δὲ Ἀπελχασὴμ ἀρχισατράπης
return awaiting — and Apelchasem chief-satrap
τῷ τότε τῆς Νικαίας ὢν ταύτην κατασχών, ἐν ᾗ καὶ
at-the then(-time) — of-Nicaea being it having-held in which also
τὸ σουλτανίκιον ἦν, καὶ τῷ ἰδίῳ ἀδελφῷ Πουλχάσῃ τῶν
the sultanate was and to-the own brother Poulchases the(-parts)
κατὰ τὴν Καππαδοκίαν παραχωρήσας ἐν ἀμεριμνίᾳ
along — Cappadocia having-ceded in freedom-from-care
τέως ἦν τὴν τοῦ σουλτανικίου ἀξίαν περιζώσασθαι
for-the-time was the of-the sultanate rank to-gird-on
οἰόμενος καὶ ἤδη ἐν χερσὶ νομίζων κατέχειν. δεινὸς γὰρ
thinking and already in hands supposing to-hold formidable for
ὢν ὁ ἀνὴρ καὶ φιλοκίνδυνος ἀρκεῖσθαι τοῖς ἐνοῦσιν
being the man and fond-of-danger to-be-content with-the(-things) present
οὐκ ἤθελεν, ἀλλὰ προνομεῖς ἀποστέλλων τὴν Βιθυνῶν
not he-wished but foragers sending the of-Bithynians
ἐλῄζετο ἅπασαν καὶ μέχρις αὐτῆς Προποντίδος. τῇ
was-plundering all and as-far-as of-the-very Propontis the
γοῦν προτέρᾳ μεθόδῳ χρησάμενος ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ
at-any-rate former method having-used the autocrat
τοὺς μὲν προνομεῖς ἀνέστελλε, τὸν δὲ Ἀπελχασὴμ
the indeed foragers checked — and Apelchasem
πρὸς εἰρηνικὰς σπονδὰς συνήλαυνε. βυσσοδομεύοντα δὲ
to peaceful treaties drove plotting-in-secret and
τοῦτον διαγινώσκων ἀεὶ κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ καὶ τὰς σπονδὰς
him discerning always against him and the treaties
ἀναβαλλόμενον δεῖν ἐλογίσατο κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ ἀξιόμαχον
putting-off to-be-needful he-reckoned against him a-match-for-battle
ἐκπέμψαι στράτευμα. τὸν Τατίκιον δέ, περὶ οὗ ἐν πολλοῖς
to-send-out army — Tatikios and about whom in many-places

ὁ λόγος ἐμέμνητο, μετὰ δυνάμεως ἀποχρώσης πέπομφε
the account made-mention with force sufficient sent
κατὰ τῆς Νικαίας ἐντειλάμενος αὐτῷ μετὰ νουνεχείας
against — Nicaea having-enjoined him with sense
τοῖς ἐχθροῖς ἀντικαταστῆναι, εἴ γε τέως ἔξωθέν
the enemies to-stand-against if at-least for-the-time outside
τισιν ἐντύχοιεν. ἀπελθόντος δὲ τοῦ Τατικίου καὶ ἀγχοῦ
some they-should-meet having-gone-away and — Tatikios and near
τῶν τειχῶν σχῆμα παρατάξεως διατυπώσαντος διὰ τὸ
the walls form of-battle-array having-drawn because-of the
μηδένα τῶν Τούρκων τηνικαῦτα παρεῖναι, ἀναπετάσαντες
none of-the Turks then to-be-present having-thrown-open
οἱ Τοῦρκοι τὰς πύλας εἰς διακοσίους ποσούμενοι ἀθρόως
the Turks the gates to two-hundred numbering in-a-body
κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ ἐξιππάσαντο. οἱ δὲ Κελτοί (ἦσαν γὰρ
against him rode-out the and Celts there-were for
ἱκανοί) τούτους θεασάμενοι κατὰ πρόσωπον σφοδρᾷ τῇ
considerable them having-beheld in face with-violent the
ῥύμῃ δόρατα μακρὰ ἐναγκαλισάμενοι κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ἴενται
impetus spears long having-couched against them rush
καὶ ἱκανοὺς τρώσαντες εἴσω τοῦ κάστρου τοὺς λοιποὺς
and considerable having-wounded inside the fortress the rest
συνήλασαν. ὁ δέ γε Τατίκιος ἵστατο αὖθις ἐπὶ ταὐτοῦ
drove-together — and at-least Tatikios stood again on the-same
σχήματος τῆς παρατάξεως μέχρις ἡλίου δυσμῶν. ἐπεὶ
form of-the battle-array until of-sun setting since
δὲ μηδεὶς ἔξω πυλῶν τῶν Τούρκων ἑωρᾶτο, ἀναποδίσας
and no-one outside gates of-the Turks was-seen having-turned-back
κατὰ τὴν Βασίλειαν τὸν χάρακα ἐπήξατο δύο πρὸς τοῖς
at — Basileia the palisade he-pitched two besides the
δέκα σταδίους τῆς Νικαίας ἀπέχουσαν. νυκτὸς δέ τις
ten stades — from-Nicaea being-distant at-night and someone

προσεληλυθὼς αὐτῷ ἀγρότης τὸν Προσοὺχ διενίστατο μετὰ
having-come to-him a-rustic — Prosouch announced with
πεντήκοντα χιλιάδων ἐπικαταλαμβάνειν παρὰ τοῦ νεωστὶ
fifty thousand to-be-arriving by the newly
γεγονότος σουλτὰν τοῦ Παργιαροὺχ ἀποσταλέντα. ταῦτα
become sultan — Pargiarouch sent these(-things)
ὁ Ταtίκιος καὶ δι᾽ ἑτέρων βεβαιωθείς, ἐπεὶ πρὸς
— Tatikios also through others having-been-assured since against
τοσαῦτα πλήθη δυνάμεις τὰς ἀντικαθισταμένας οὐκ εἶχεν,
so-great multitudes forces the resisting not he-had
ἀναλύων τὰ δόξαντα πρότερον ἀγαπητὸν ἐλογίζετο, εἰ
undoing the(-things) resolved before desirable he-reckoned if
τὸ ὁπλιτικὸν ἅπαν σῶον διατηρήσειε καὶ μὴ πολλοστὸς
the heavy-armed-force all safe he-should-keep and not much-outnumbered
πρὸς ὑπερπληθεῖς καὶ ἰσχυροτέρους μαχόμενος τὸ πᾶν
against superabundant and stronger fighting the whole
ἀπολέσειεν. ἔνθεν τοι καὶ τὴν βασιλεύουσαν κατὰ νοῦν εἶχε
he-should-lose whence surely also the reigning(-city) in mind he-had
καὶ πρὸς ταύτην ἑώρα διὰ τῆς Νικομήδους βουλόμενος
and to it he-looked through the(-city) of-Nikomedes wishing
ἐπαναστρέψαι. ὁ δὲ Ἀπελχασὴμ ἄνωθεν τοῦ τείχους
to-return — and Apelchasem from-above the wall
θεασάμενος αὐτὸν πρὸς τὴν Κωνσταντίνου ἀπονενευκότα
having-beheld him toward the(-city) of-Constantine having-turned
καὶ ἤδη καὶ πορευόμενον ἐξεληλυθὼς παρείπετο, ἵν᾽ ἐπὰν
and already also going having-gone-out was-following that when
ἐν ἐπικαίρῳ τόπῳ τοῦτον στρατοπεδεύσαντα θεάσοιτο,
in suitable place him having-encamped he-should-see
προσβαλεῖ. καταλαμβάνοντα δὲ τοῦτον τὴν Πρένετον
he-will-attack reaching and him — Prenetos
ἐφθακὼς ξυμμίγνυσί τε αὐτῷ καὶ ἐκθύμως τὴν μάχην
having-arrived-first engages both him and passionately the battle

ἀναρρήγνυσιν. ὁ δὲ Τατίκιος θᾶττον τὰς δυνάμεις εἰς
breaks-out — and Tatikios more-quickly the forces into
πολέμου τύπον καταστησάμενος τοῖς Κελτοῖς τὴν πρώτην
of-war form having-set to-the Celts the first
κατὰ τῶν βαρβάρων ἱππασίαν καὶ τὴν τοῦ πολέμου
against the barbarians charge and the of-the war
συμβολὴν ἐπέτρεψεν. οἱ δὲ δόρατα μακρὰ ἐναγκαλισάμενοι
encounter entrusted they and spears long having-couched
χαλάσαντες ὅλας ἡνίας ὡς πῦρ κατὰ τῶν βαρβάρων ἴενται
having-slackened whole reins like fire against the barbarians rush
καὶ διακόψαντες τὰς φάλαγγας τρέπουσι κατὰ κράτος.
and having-cut-through the phalanxes rout by force
κᾆθ' οὕτως διὰ τῆς Βιθυνῶν πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν
and-then thus through the of-Bithynians to the reigning(-city)
ὁ Τατίκιος ἐπανέρχεται. ὁ μέντοι Ἀπελχασὴμ οὐδαμῶς
— Tatikios returns — however Apelchasem in-no-way
ἠρεμεῖν ἤθελεν. ἐπιθυμητικῶς γὰρ εἶχε τὰ σκῆπτρα τῆς
to-be-quiet wished desirously for he-was the scepters of-the
Ῥωμαίων ἀναδήσασθαι ἀρχῆς, εἰ δὲ μὴ τοῦτο, ἀλλά
of-Romans to-bind-on rule if and not this but
γε τῶν παρὰ θάλατταν πάντων καὶ αὐτῶν δὴ
at-least of-the by sea all and of-the-very indeed
τῶν νήσων τὴν ἐξουσίαν ἐσχηκέναι. τοιαῦτα γοῦν
of-the islands the authority to-have such at-any-rate
λογιζόμενος πρότερον μὲν ληστρικὰς νῆας κατασκευάζειν
reckoning first indeed pirate ships to-build
διενοεῖτο τὴν Κίον καταλαβών (πόλις δὲ αὕτη Βιθυνῶν
he-intended — Kios having-seized city and this of-Bithynians
παρὰ θάλατταν διακειμένη), καὶ προέβαινεν, ὡς ᾤετο,
by sea lying and it-progressed as he-thought
τὰ κατὰ σκοπὸν αὐτῷ ἀπαρτιζομένων τῶν νηῶν.
the(-things) according-to aim for-him being-completed the ships

οὐδὲ τοῦτο τὸν αὐτοκράτορα διέλαθε, καὶ παραχρῆμα
not-even this the autocrat escaped and immediately
τὰς παρατυχούσας διήρεις τε καὶ τριήρεις καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ
the present biremes both and triremes and the rest
τῶν ναυτικῶν ἐξοπλίσας Μανουὴλ τὸν Βουτουμίτην δοῦκα
of-the naval-craft having-equipped Manuel the Boutoumites as-duke
προβαλόμενος κατὰ τοῦ Ἀπελχασὴμ ἀπέστειλεν ἐπισκήψας
having-put-forward against — Apelchasem sent having-enjoined
σπεῦσαι τὰς ἡμιτελεῖς τοῦ Ἀπελχασὴμ νῆας ἐμπρῆσαι, ἐν
to-hasten the half-finished — of-Apelchasem ships to-burn in
ὁποίᾳ καταστάσει ταύτας εὑρήσει. ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸν Ταtίκιον
whatever condition them he-will-find but also — Tatikios
μετὰ ἀποχρώσης δυνάμεως ἠπειρόθεν κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ ἐκπέμπει.
with sufficient force by-land against him sends-out
ἀμφοτέρων οὖν τῆς πόλεως ἐξεληλυθότων, ἐπεὶ τὸν
both then from-the city having-gone-out since —
Βουτουμίτην ὁ Ἀπελχασὴμ διαπόντιον μετὰ σφοδρᾶς
Boutoumites — Apelchasem by-sea with violent
τῆς ῥύμης ἤδη καταλαμβάνοντα ἐθεάσατο, μεμαθήκοι
the impetus already arriving saw he-had-learned
δὲ καὶ περὶ τῶν ἐξ ἠπείρου ἐπικαταλαμβανόντων καὶ
and also about those from mainland arriving and
τὸν τόπον, ἐν ᾧ ἔτυχε, μὴ συμβαλλόμενον αὐτῷ
the place in which he-happened not suiting him
λογίζεται διὰ τὸ τραχὺ καὶ στενὸν καὶ τοῖς τοξόταις
he-reckons because-of the rough and narrow and for-the archers
πάντη ἀκατάλληλον ὡς μὴ ἀποχρῶντα τούτοις πρὸς
wholly unsuitable as not sufficing for-them for
τὰς κατὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἱππασίας, ἀπάρας ἐκεῖθεν εἰς
the against the Romans charges having-set-out from-there to
ἐπίκαιρον τόπον ἐβουλεύσατο τὰς δυνάμεις καταθεῖναι.
suitable place he-planned the forces to-set

καταλαμβάνει τοίνυν τόπον παρὰ μὲν τῶν Ἁλυκὰς
he-reaches therefore a-place by indeed some Halykai
ὀνομαζόμενον, παρὰ δὲ τῶν Κυπαρίσσιον. ἐφθακὼς δὲ
named by and others Kyparission having-arrived-first and
ὁ Βουτουμίτης διαπόντιος θᾶττον ἢ λόγος τὰς τοῦ
— Boutoumites by-sea more-quickly than word the —
Ἀπελχασὶμ νῆας ἐνέπρησε. τῇ δὲ μετ' αὐτὴν ἐξ ἠπείρου
of-Apelchasem ships burned on-the and after it from mainland
ἐληλυθὼς καὶ ὁ Τατίκιος ἐν ἐπικαίροις τὸ στράτευμα
having-come also — Tatikios in suitable the army
κατέθετο τόποις καὶ ἀπὸ πρωΐας μέχρι ἑσπέρας οὐκ
set places and from morning till evening not
ἐνεδίδου πὴ μὲν ἀκροβολιζόμενος, πὴ δὲ μάχας
he-ceased in-one-way indeed skirmishing in-another and battles
συνάπτων μετὰ τοῦ Ἀπελχασὶμ ἐπὶ ὅλαις πεντεκαίδεκα
joining with — Apelchasem for whole fifteen
ἡμέραις. τοῦ δὲ Ἀπελχασὶμ μηδ' ὅλως ἐνδιδόντος, ἀλλ'
days — and Apelchasem not-even at-all yielding but
ἰσχυρῶς ἀντικαθισταμένου ἐκκακήσαντες οἱ Λατῖνοι, κἂν
strongly resisting having-lost-heart the Latins even-if
μὴ τὴν ἐκ τοῦ τόπου εἶχον βοήθειαν, ὤχλουν ὅμως
not the from the place they-had help pestered nevertheless
τὸν Τατίκιον, ἵν' οὗτοι καὶ μόνοι τὴν μετὰ τῶν Τούρκων
— Tatikios that they even alone the with the Turks
ἀναδέξωνται μάχην. ὁ δέ, κἂν μὴ κατὰ γνώμην αὐτῷ
might-take-up battle he and even-if not by mind to-him
τὸ πρᾶγμα ἐδόκει, ἀλλὰ καθ' ἑκάστην ὁρῶν δυνάμεις
the matter seemed but by each(-day) seeing forces
Τουρκικὰς προσχωρούσας τῷ Ἀπελχασὶμ ὑπεῖξε τῇ βουλῇ
Turkish going-over — to-Apelchasem yielded to-the counsel
τῶν Λατίνων. καὶ περὶ ἀνατολὰς ἡλίου τὰς φάλαγγας
of-the Latins and about rising of-sun the phalanxes

καταστήσας τὸν μετὰ τοῦ Ἀπελχασὴμ συνῆψε πόλεμον.
having-set the with — Apelchasem joined war
πολλοὶ μὲν οὖν τῶν Τούρκων τηνικαῦτα κτείνονται,
many indeed then of-the Turks then are-killed
πλεῖστοι δὲ καὶ ἁλίσκονται, οἱ δὲ πλείους τὰ νῶτα
very-many and also are-captured the and most the backs
διδόασι μηδὲ τῶν οἰκείων σκευῶν φροντίδα ποιησάμενοι.
give not-even of-the own baggage care having-made
καὶ αὐτὸς ὁ Ἀπελχασὴμ κατευθὺ Νικαίας ἐλάσας μόγις
and himself — Apelchasem straight-for Nicaea having-ridden hardly
διασῴζεται. λείαν οὖν πολλὴν ἐντεῦθεν ἀναλαβόμενοι
is-saved booty then much thence having-taken-up
οἱ ὑπὸ τὸν Ταtίκιον πρὸς τὴν οἰκείαν παλινοστοῦσι
those under — Tatikios to the own return
παρεμβολήν. ταῦτα μεμαθηκὼς ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ, ὁποῖος
camp these(-things) having-learned the autocrat such
ἐκεῖνος δεινὸς θηρᾶσαι ψυχὴν ἀνθρώπου καὶ λιθίνην
that-man skilled to-hunt soul of-man and stony
μαλάξαι φύσιν, γραφὴν τηνικαῦτα ἐκτίθεται πρὸς τὸν
to-soften nature a-letter then sets-out to —
Ἀπελχασὴμ συμβουλεύων ἀποσχέσθαι μὲν τῶν τοιούτων
Apelchasem counseling to-abstain indeed from-the such
κενῶν ἐπιχειρημάτων καὶ μὴ εἰς ἀέρα παίειν, ἀλλὰ
empty attempts and not into air to-strike but
προσεληλυθέναι τε αὐτῷ καὶ πολλῶν καμάτων ἑαυτὸν
to-have-come both to-him and from-many toils himself
ἀπαλλάξαι δωρημάτων τε δαψιλῶν ἐπαπολαῦσαι καὶ
to-free gifts both abundant to-enjoy and
τιμῆς. ὁ δὲ Ἀπελχασήμ, ἐπεὶ καὶ τὸν Προσοὺχ ἐμάνθανε
honor — and Apelchasem since also — Prosouch he-learned
πολιορκοῦντα τὰ κατεχόμενα παρά τινων σατραπῶν
besieging the held by some satraps

κάστρα, ἤδη δὲ καὶ τῇ Νικαίᾳ προσπελάζειν ἐφ' ᾧ
fortresses already and also — Nicaea to-approach for which
πολιορκῆσαι ταύτην, τὴν ἀνάγκην φιλοτιμίαν, ὅ φασι,
to-besiege it the necessity a-point-of-honor as they-say
ποιησάμενος, ἅμα δὲ καὶ τῆς τοῦ βασιλέως γνώμης
having-made together and also the of-the emperor mind
καταστοχασάμενος καὶ τεθαρρηκὼς τὴν μετ' αὐτοῦ
having-guessed and having-taken-courage the with him
εἰρήνην ἀσπάζεται. τῶν δὲ ἀναμεταξὺ εἰρηνικῶν σπονδῶν
peace embraces the and meanwhile peaceful treaties
τελεσθεισῶν μελετήσας καὶ ἕτερόν τι συνοῖσον ὁ
having-been-completed having-planned also another something advantageous the
αὐτοκράτωρ, ἐπεὶ οὐκ ἐνῆν ἄλλως ἀνυσθῆναι τὸ
autocrat since not it-was-possible otherwise to-be-accomplished the
σκοπούμενον, μετακαλεῖται τοῦτον εἰς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν,
aim summons him to the reigning(-city)
ἐφ' ᾧ καὶ χρήματα λαβεῖν καὶ τρυφῆς ἅλις ἐπαπολαῦσαι
for which both money to-take and of-luxury enough to-enjoy
καὶ οὕτως οἴκαδε ἐπαναστρέψαι. πείθεται ὁ Ἀπελχασήμ.
and thus homeward to-return is-persuaded — Apelchasem
καὶ εἰσελθὼν εἰς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν παντοίας ἀξιοῦται
and having-entered into the reigning(-city) of-every-kind is-deemed-worthy
φιλοφροσύνης. ὡς δὲ τὴν Νικομήδους (πόλις δὲ αὕτη
of-kindness as and the of-Nikomedes city and this
μητρόπολις Βιθυνίας) κατεῖχον οἱ τῆς Νικαίας ἐξάρχοντες
metropolis of-Bithynia held the — of-Nicaea leaders
Τοῦρκοι, ἐκεῖθεν ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐξελάσαι τούτους βουλόμενος
Turks from-there the emperor to-drive-out them wishing
ἕτερον παρὰ θάλατταν οἰκοδομῆσαι πολίχνιον δεῖν
another by sea to-build little-town to-be-needful
ἔκρινεν, ἐν ὅσῳ τὰ τῆς ἀγάπης ἥδραστο. τοιγαροῦν
he-judged in as-long-as the(-terms) of-the friendship had-been-settled accordingly

ἐν φορταγωγοῖς ναυσὶν ἅπαντα τὰ πρὸς κτίσιν χρειώδη
in cargo ships all the for building useful
σὺν αὐτοῖς οἰκοδόμοις ἐμβαλὼν ἐξαπέστειλε τὴν τούτου
with the-very builders having-put-in he-sent-off the its
οἰκοδομὴν Εὐσταθίῳ τῷ τοῦ στόλου δρουγγαρίῳ ἀναθέμενος
building to-Eustathios the of-the fleet drungarios having-entrusted
καὶ τὸ ἀπόρρητον ἐκκαλύψας, ἐπισκήψας, εἴ τινες τῶν
and the secret having-revealed having-enjoined if any of-the
Τούρκων διέρχοιντο, παντοίως φιλοφρονεῖσθαι καὶ ἐς κόρον
Turks should-pass in-every-way to-treat-kindly and to satiety
διδόντα ἐπαπολαύειν τῶν χρειωδῶν προτιθέναι τὸ μετ᾽
giving to-enjoy the necessities to-set-forth the with
εἰδήσεως τοῦ Ἀπελχασὴμ τοῦτο οἰκοδομεῖν, εἶτα ἅπαν
knowledge — of-Apelchasem this to-build then every
πλοῖον ἀπείρξαι τῶν τῆς Βιθυνίας παραλίων μερῶν, ὡς
boat to-shut-out from-the — of-Bithynia coastal parts so-that
μὴ δῆλον αὐτῷ γενέσθαι τὸ γινόμενον. τῷ δὲ Ἀπελχασὴμ
not plain to-him to-become the happening — and to-Apelchasem
καθ᾽ ἑκάστην χρήματα διδοὺς οὐκ ἐνεδίδου εἰς βαλανεῖά
by each(-day) money giving not he-ceased to baths
τε προτρεπόμενος καὶ ἱππηλασίας καὶ κυνηγέσια, πρὸς
both urging and horse-drives and hunts besides
δὲ καὶ τὰς κατὰ τὰς λεωφόρους ἱσταμένας στήλας
and also the along the highways standing columns
ἀναθεωρεῖν· ἀλλὰ καὶ ἱππικὸν ἀγῶνα δι᾽ αὐτὸν ἐνστήσασθαι
to-view but also horse contest for him to-set-up
τοῖς διφρηλάταις ἐκέλευσε κατὰ τὸ πάλαι τῷ μεγάλῳ
for-the charioteers he-ordered in the long-ago by-the great
Κωνσταντίνῳ οἰκοδομηθὲν θέατρον καὶ καθ᾽ ἑκάστην ἐν
Constantine built theater and by each(-day) in
τούτῳ παραγίνεσθαι καὶ τὰς τῶν ἵππων δοκιμασίας ὁρᾶν
it to-be-present and the of-the horses trials to-see

ἠρέθιζεν, ἵν᾽ ἐντεῦθεν τριβομένου τοῦ καιροῦ ἐκεχειρία τοῖς
he-urged that hence being-spent the time respite to-the
οἰκοδόμοις δίδωται. ὡς δὲ τὸ πολίχνιον ἤδη τετέλεσται
builders might-be-given as and the little-town already had-been-completed
καὶ πέρας τὸ σκοπούμενον ἔσχηκε, πλείοσι δωρεαῖς τοῦτον
and end the aim had-had with-more gifts him
ἀμειψάμενος τῷ σεβαστοῦ τε ἀξιώματι τιμήσας καὶ ἐπὶ
having-requited with-the of-sebastos both rank having-honored and on
πλέον τὰς συνθήκας ἐμπεδώσας διὰ τιμῆς αὐτὸν ἐξέπεμψε
more the treaties having-confirmed with honor him sent-out
διαπόντιον. ἀγγελθείσης δὲ αὐτῷ τῆς τοῦ κάστρου
by-sea having-been-announced and to-him the of-the fortress
οἰκοδομῆς, κἂν καὶ ἐπὶ τῇ τούτου ἀνεγέρσει κατετέτρωτο
building even-if also at the its raising he-had-been-wounded
τὴν ψυχήν, ἀλλ᾽ οὖν τὸν ἀγνοοῦντα ὑποκριθεὶς τὸ
in-the soul but nevertheless the not-knowing having-feigned the
παράπαν ἐσίγησε. τοιοῦτόν τι καὶ περὶ Ἀλκιβιάδους
at-all kept-silent such something also about Alcibiades
ἱστόρηται. οὕτω γὰρ κἀκεῖνος Λακεδαιμονίους ἐξηπατήκει
is-recorded so for that-man-too Lacedaemonians had-deceived
μὴ συγχωροῦντας ἀνοικοδομηθῆναι Ἀθήνας καθαιρεθείσας
not allowing to-be-rebuilt Athens destroyed
ὑπὸ Περσῶν. παραγγείλας γὰρ ἀνοικοδομεῖν Ἀθηναίους
by Persians having-ordered for to-rebuild Athenians
ἐκεῖνος ἀπῴχετο πρεσβεύσων εἰς Λακεδαίμονα. εἶτα
that-man went-off going-to-be-ambassador to Lacedaemon then
τῆς πρεσβείας τὸν χρόνον τρίβοντος καὶ διδόντος τὸ
of-the embassy the time spending and giving the
ἐνδόσιμον τοῖς οἰκοδομοῦσι μετὰ τὴν ἐξαπάτην ὅλην
cue to-the builders after the deception whole
ἤκουσαν Λακεδαιμόνιοι τὴν οἰκοδομὴν Ἀθηνῶν. καὶ
heard Lacedaemonians the building of-Athens and

μέμνηται τῆς καλῆς ἀπάτης ταυτησὶ καὶ ὁ Παιανιεὺς
mentions the fine deception this also the Paianian
ἐνιαχοῦ τῶν λόγων αὐτοῦ. τοιοῦτον ἄρα καὶ τοὐμοῦ
somewhere of-the speeches his such after-all also of-my
πατρὸς τὸ ἐπινόημα ἦν, μᾶλλον δὲ καὶ Ἀλκιβιάδους
father the device was rather and also than-Alcibiades
στρατηγικώτερον. ἱπποδρομίαις γὰρ καὶ τρυφαῖς ἄλλαις
more-generalship-like with-horse-races for and luxuries other
τὸν βάρβαρον τοῦτον ὑποσαίνων καὶ εἰς ἡμέραν ἐξ
the barbarian this fawning-upon and to day from
ἡμέρας παραπεμπόμενος ἔφθασεν ἀπαρτίσας τὸ φρούριον
day putting-off he-was-first having-completed the fort
καὶ τηνικαῦτα τοῦ σύμπαντος τελεσθέντος ἔργου τὸν
and then the whole having-been-completed work the
ἄνδρα τῆς βασιλίδος ἀπέλυσε πόλεως.
man from-the queen released city

XX · THE BOUNDS OF THE EMPIRE

Prosouch besieges Nicaea for three months, and Apelchasem asks Alexios for help. Alexios sends standards and silver-studded scepters, meaning not to rescue the Turk but to win the city for himself. Anna recalls the empire's old bounds, from the pillars of Herakles to those of Dionysos in India, and how they had shrunk to the Bosporus and Adrianople, and says that her father would have restored them but for his ceaseless wars. The Roman standards on Nicaea's walls frighten Prosouch away.

Ὁ δὲ Προσοὺχ δεινῆς μετὰ δυνάμεως, ὡς ἠλπίζετο,
— and Prosouch formidable with force as was-expected
καταλαβὼν ἐπολιόρκει τὴν Νίκαιαν, καθὼς ὁ τῷ Ταικίῳ
having-arrived besieged — Nicaea as the — to-Tatikios
νυκτὸς προσεληλυθὼς τότε ἔλεγε, καὶ ἐπὶ τρισὶ μησὶ
at-night having-come then said and for three months

πολιορκῶν ταύτην οὐκ ἐνεδίδου. ἐν στενῷ δὲ κομιδῇ τὰ
besieging it not he-ceased in strait and utterly the(-affairs)
κατ᾽ αὐτοὺς οἱ ἐντὸς καὶ αὐτὸς δὴ ὁ Ἀπελχασὴμ
concerning them those inside and himself indeed — Apelchasem
ἑωρακότες καὶ μὴ ἐπὶ πλέον ἀντέχειν πρὸς τὸν Προσοὺχ
having-seen and not for more to-hold-out against — Prosouch
δυνάμενοι διαπεμψάμενοι πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα ᾐτοῦντο τῆς
being-able having-sent to the emperor asked of-the
ἐξ αὐτοῦ βοηθείας τυχεῖν κρεῖττον λέγοντες ἡγεῖσθαι
from him help to-obtain better saying to-consider
δούλους αὐτοῦ ὀνομάζεσθαι ἢ τῷ Προσοὺχ δοῦναι χεῖρας.
slaves his to-be-called than — to-Prosouch to-give hands
ὁ δὲ παραχρῆμα τοὺς τῶν παρατυχόντων ἐκκρίτους
he and immediately the of-those present picked-men
διελὼν σημαίας τε καὶ σκῆπτρα ἀργυρόηλα ἐπιδοὺς εἰς
having-selected standards both and scepters silver-studded having-given for
ἀρωγὴν τούτους ἐκπέμπει. οὐ γὰρ ἄντικρυς βοηθῶν τῷ
aid them sends-out not for openly helping —
Ἀπελχασὴμ στρατιὰν ἔπεμπεν, ἀλλὰ τὰ τῆς βοηθείας
Apelchasem an-army he-sent but the(-things) of-the help
ἐντεῦθεν κατὰ τὸν νοῦν τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος εἰς κατάλυσιν
hence according-to the mind of-the autocrat to destruction
τοῦ Ἀπελχασὴμ περιΐστατο. δύο γὰρ πρὸς ἀλλήλους
— of-Apelchasem turned two for with each-other
μαχομένων ἐχθρῶν τῆς τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἡγεμονίας ἔδει
fighting enemies of-the of-the Romans dominion it-was-needful
τῷ ἀσθενεστέρῳ συνθέσθαι, οὐχ ἵν᾽ ἐπικρατέστερος
with-the weaker to-side not that more-powerful
γένηται, ἀλλ᾽ ἵνα τὸν μὲν ἀποκρούσηται, ἀφ᾽ οὗ δὲ
he-might-become but that the(-one) indeed he-might-beat-off from whom and
τὴν πόλιν ἐξέληται καὶ τὴν τέως μὴ οὖσαν ὑπὸ τὸν
the city he-might-take-away and the for-the-time not being under the

κύκλον αὐτοῦ ἰδίαν ποιήσηται καὶ κατὰ μικρὸν ἐκ ταύτης
circle his own he-might-make and by little from this
ἑτέραν καὶ μάλα ἄλλην ἑλόμενος τὴν τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἀρχὴν
another and very other having-taken the of-the Romans rule
πλατυτέραν ποιήσηται εἰς στενὸν κομιδῇ καταστᾶσαν καὶ
broader he-might-make into narrow utterly having-come and
μᾶλλον, ἐξ ὅτου τὸ τῶν Τούρκων δόρυ ἐπικρατέστερον
rather from when the of-the Turks spear more-powerful
γέγονεν. ἦν μὲν γὰρ ὅτε οἱ ὅροι τῆς τῶν Ῥωμαίων
has-become there-was indeed for when the bounds of-the of-the Romans
ἡγεμονίας αἱ ἀμφότεραι στῆλαι ἦσαν ἀνατολὴν καὶ δύσιν
dominion the both pillars were east and west
περιορίζουσαι, ἐξ ἑσπέρας μὲν αἱ τοῦ Ἡρακλέους
bounding from west indeed those — of-Herakles
ὀνομαζόμεναι, ἐξ ἕω δὲ αἱ ἀγχοῦ που ἱστάμεναι τοῦ
named from east and those near somewhere standing of-the
Ἰνδικοῦ πέρατος αἱ τοῦ Διονύσου. κατὰ γὰρ πλάτος οὐκ
Indian end those — of-Dionysos in for breadth not
ἔστιν εἰπεῖν ὅσον ἦν τῆς τῶν Ῥωμαίων βασιλείας τὸ
it-is-possible to-say how-great was of-the of-the Romans empire the
κράτος *** Αἴγυπτος καὶ Μερόη καὶ Τρωγλοδυτικὴ πᾶσα
sovereignty (lacuna) Egypt and Meroe and Troglodytike all
καὶ τὰ ἐγγύθεν τῆς διακεκαυμένης καὶ τὰ ἐξ ἑτέρου
and the(-parts) near the torrid-zone and the(-parts) from other
μέρους ἡ περιθρύλλητος Θούλη καὶ ὅσα ἔθνη βόσκει τὸ
side the much-talked-of Thule and as-many-as nations feeds the
κλίμα τὸ Βόρειον, οἷς κατὰ κορυφὴν ὁ Βόρειος ἵσταται
clime the northern for-whom at zenith the northern stands
πόλος. ἀλλ᾽ ἐπ᾽ ἐκείνῳ γε τοῦ καιροῦ ἐκ μὲν ἀνατολῆς
pole but at that at-least of-the time from indeed east
ὁ γείτων Βόσπορος ὅριον τῶν Ῥωμαϊκῶν σκήπτρων,
the neighboring Bosporus boundary of-the Roman scepters

ἐκ δὲ τῆς ἑσπέρας ἡ Ἀδριανοῦ καθίστατο πόλις. ἀλλ'
from and the west the of-Hadrian was-set city but
ὅ γε βασιλεὺς Ἀλέξιος ἀμφοτέραις ὥσπερ παίων χερσὶ
the at-least emperor Alexios with-both as-if striking hands
τοὺς ἑκατέρωθεν ἐπιτιθεμένους βαρβάρους καὶ καθάπερ
the from-both-sides attacking barbarians and as-if
ἀπὸ κέντρου τῆς Βυζαντίδος περιορχούμενος ηὐρύνετο τὸν
from center — of-Byzantis dancing-round widened the
κύκλον τῆς βασιλείας καὶ ἐκ μὲν ἑσπέρας τὸν Ἀδρίαντος
circle of-the empire and from indeed west the of-Hadrias
πόντον ἔθετο ὅριον, ἐκ δὲ τῆς ἀνατολῆς Εὐφράτην
sea he-set as-boundary from and the east Euphrates
καὶ Τίγρητα. καὶ κἂν εἰς τὴν προτέραν εὐδαιμονίαν τὴν
and Tigris and even into the former prosperity the
βασιλείαν ἀνενεώσατο, εἰ μή γε οἱ ἐπάλληλοι ἀγῶνες
empire he-would-have-renewed if not indeed the successive contests
καὶ οἱ πυκνοὶ πόνοι καὶ κίνδυνοι (ἦν γὰρ καὶ ἀμφότερα ὁ
and the frequent toils and dangers he-was for also both the
αὐτοκράτωρ μεγαλοκίνδυνός τε καὶ πυκνοκίνδυνος) τοῦτον
autocrat facing-great-danger both and facing-frequent-danger him
ἀπέστησαν τοῦ ὁρμήματος. ἀλλ' ὅπερ ἐξ ἀρχῆς ἔλεγον,
held-back from-the impulse but what from beginning I-said
ὅτι στρατιὰν ἀποστέλλων τῷ τῆς Νικαίας τυράννῳ
that an-army sending to-the — of-Nicaea tyrant
Ἀπελχασὴμ γνώμης εἶχεν οὐχ ἵν' ἐκεῖνον ἐξέληται τοῦ
Apelchasem of-mind he-was not that that-one he-might-take-out of-the
κινδύνου, ἀλλ' ὅπως ἂν ἑαυτῷ τὴν νίκην περιποιήσηται·
danger but so-that — for-himself the victory he-might-secure
οὐ μὴν ἡ τύχη τούτῳ συνέπνευσεν. ἔσχε γὰρ οὕτως
not indeed the fortune him breathed-with it-went for thus
τὰ κατ' αὐτούς. οἱ γὰρ ἀποσταλέντες τὸ τοῦ
the(-affairs) concerning them those for sent the of-the

κυρίου Γεωργίου ὀνομαζόμενον κατέλαβον πολίχνιον· οἱ
lord George named reached little-town the
δὲ Τοῦρκοι παραχρῆμα τὰς πύλας αὐτοῖς ἀνεπέτασαν. οἱ
and Turks immediately the gates to-them threw-open those
δὲ ἄνωθεν τῆς ἀνατολικῆς πόρτης περὶ τὰ κρήδεμνα τοῦ
and above the eastern gate about the battlements of-the
τείχους ἀνελθόντες τὰς σημαίας καὶ τὰ σκῆπτρα ἰλαδὸν
wall having-gone-up the standards and the scepters by-squadrons
κατέστησαν ἀλαλάζοντες ἅμα καὶ τὸ ἐνυάλιον συνεχῶς
set raising-the-war-cry together and the war-cry continuously
ἐνηχοῦντες. ὑφ' ὧν οἱ μὲν ἔξωθεν ἐκδειματωθέντες διὰ
sounding by which those indeed outside having-been-terrified through
νυκτὸς ἐκεῖθεν ᾤχοντο αὐτὸν ἐληλυθέναι τὸν αὐτοκράτορα
night from-there went himself to-have-come the autocrat
νομίσαντες· αἱ δὲ Ῥωμαϊκαὶ δυνάμεις αὖθις πρὸς τὴν
having-supposed the and Roman forces again to the
βασιλεύουσαν ὑπέστρεψαν. οὐ γὰρ ἦσαν ἀξιόμαχον
reigning(-city) returned not for they-were a-match-for-battle
πλῆθος πρὸς ἔφοδον Περσικὴν ἐλπιζομένην ἐκ τοῦ βάθους
multitude against attack Persian expected from the depth
τῆς Τουρκικῆς ἐξουσίας αὖθις ἐλεύσεσθαι.
of-the Turkish dominion again to-come

The sultan writes proposing a marriage between Alexios' daughter and his son, and sends Pouzanos against Apelchasem. Apelchasem goes to the sultan with gold but is strangled with a bowstring. Alexios laughs at the proposal. Toutoushes has the sultan murdered by Chasioi, assassins who think dying for murder a glory. He then kills Pouzanos, but Pargiarouch defeats and kills him. Solyman's two sons escape to Nicaea, Poulchases hands it over to them, and Klitziasthlan becomes sultan there.

Τὴν δὲ τοῦ Σιαοὺς ὑποστροφὴν ὁ σουλτὰν ἀπεκδεχόμενος,
the and — of-Siaous return the sultan awaiting
ἐπεὶ ἑώρα τοῦτον ἐμβραδύνοντα, μεμαθήκοι δὲ καὶ τὰ
since he-saw him delaying he-had-learned and also the(-affairs)
κατ᾽ αὐτόν, ὡς τὸν Χαρατικῆν μετὰ τρόπου τῆς
concerning him how — Charatikes by stratagem —
Σινώπης ἀπήλασεν, ὡς τετυχήκει τοῦ θείου βαπτίσματος
from-Sinope drove-out how he-had-obtained the divine baptism
καὶ κατὰ τὴν ἑσπέραν παρὰ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος ἀπεστάλη
and toward the west by the autocrat had-been-sent
τὴν δουκικὴν ἐξουσίαν Ἀγχιάλου περιζωσάμενος, ἠνιᾶτο
the ducal authority of-Anchialos having-girded-on was-grieved
καὶ ἤσχαλλε. δεῖν οὖν ἐλογίσατο τὸν Πουζάνον αὖθις
and was-vexed to-be-needful then he-reckoned — Pouzanos again
μετὰ δυνάμεων κατὰ τοῦ Ἀπελχασὴμ ἀποστεῖλαι, ἅμα
with forces against — Apelchasem to-send together
δὲ καὶ πρὸς τὸν αὐτοκράτορα γραφὴν περὶ τοῦ αὐτοῦ
and also to the autocrat a-letter about the same
κήδους διαλαμβάνουσαν αὐτῷ ἐγχειρίσαι. εἶχε δὲ τὰ
marriage-alliance comprising him to-entrust had and the
γράμματα οὕτως. "ἠκηκόειν, ὦ βασιλεῦ, τὰ κατὰ
letter thus I-had-heard O emperor the(-affairs) concerning
σὲ καὶ ὅπως τὴν τῆς βασιλείας ἀναδησάμενος ἀρχὴν
you and how the of-the empire having-bound-on rule

ἐκ προοιμίου πολλοῖς ἀγῶσιν ἐμπέπτωκας καὶ ὡς ἄρτι
from the-outset into-many contests you-have-fallen and how just
τὰ κατὰ τοὺς Λατίνους κατευνάσαντος οἱ Σκύθαι
the(-affairs) concerning the Latins you-having-lulled the Scythians
κατὰ σοῦ ἑτοιμάζονται καὶ αὐτὸς ὁ Ἀμὴρ Ἀπελχασὴμ
against you are-preparing and himself the Amir Apelchasem
τὰς μετὰ σοῦ τοῦ Σολυμᾶ σπονδὰς καταλύσας μέχρις
the with you — of-Solyman treaties having-dissolved as-far-as
αὐτῆς Δαμάλεως τὴν Ἀσίαν λῄζεται. εἰ γοῦν βούλει
itself Damalis — Asia plunders if at-any-rate you-wish
καὶ τὸν Ἀπελχασὴμ τῶν αὐτόθι μερῶν ἀπελαθῆναι καὶ
both — Apelchasem from-the there parts to-be-driven-out and
τὴν Ἀσίαν καὶ αὐτὴν δὴ τὴν Ἀντιόχειαν ὑπὸ τὴν σὴν
— Asia and itself indeed — Antioch under the your
γενέσθαι χεῖρα, ἀπόστειλόν μοι τὴν σὴν θυγατέρα εἰς
to-come hand send to-me the your daughter as
νύμφην ἐμὴν τῷ πρωτοτόκῳ τῶν ἐμῶν υἱῶν. καὶ τοῦ
bride my to-the first-born of-the my sons and for-the
λοιποῦ οὐδέν σοι σκῶλον ἔσεται, ἀλλὰ πάντα ῥᾳδίως
rest nothing to-you obstacle will-be but all-things easily
ἐξέσται σοι ἀνύειν ἐμοῦ σοι ἐπαρήγοντος οὐ κατὰ
it-will-be-possible for-you to-accomplish me you helping not in
τὴν ἕω μόνον, ἀλλὰ μέχρις Ἰλλυρικοῦ καὶ τῆς ἑσπέρας
the east only but as-far-as Illyricum and the west
ἁπάσης διὰ δυνάμεων ἀποστελλομένων σοι παρ᾽ ἡμῶν
all through forces being-sent to-you by us
καὶ ὁ ἀντικαθιστάμενός σοι τοῦ λοιποῦ οὐκ ἔσεται.᾽᾽ ἀλλὰ
and the resisting you for-the rest not will-be but
ταῦτα μὲν τὰ κατὰ τὸν Περσῶν σουλτάν· ὁ δὲ
these(-things) indeed the(-affairs) concerning the of-Persians sultan — and
Πουζάνος μέχρι Νικαίας καταλαβὼν καὶ ἀπόπειραν ταύτης
Pouzanos as-far-as Nicaea having-reached and attempt on-it

οὐχ ἅπαξ, ἀλλὰ καὶ πολλάκις ποιησάμενος καὶ διαμαρτὼν
not once but also many-times having-made and having-missed
τοῦ σκοποῦ τοῦ Ἀπελχασὴμ γενναίως ἀνταγωνιζομένου,
the aim — Apelchasem nobly contending
ἐξαιτησαμένου καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ βασιλέως βοήθειαν καὶ
having-requested also from the emperor help and
λαβόντος πρὸς τὴν τῶν λοιπῶν πόλεών τε καὶ πολιχνίων
having-received for the of-the remaining cities both and little-towns
κατάσχεσιν ὥρμησεν ἐκεῖθεν ὑποχωρήσας τὴν σκηνὴν κατὰ
seizure set-out from-there having-withdrawn the tent at
τὴν Λάμπην πηξάμενος. μετὰ δὲ τὴν τούτου ὑποχώρησιν
— Lampe having-pitched after and the his withdrawal
ἑνδεκατέσσαρσιν ἡμιόνοις χρυσίον ἐπισάξας ὁ Ἀπελχασὴμ
on-fourteen mules gold having-loaded — Apelchasem
ὁπόσον φέρειν ἠδύναντο ἀπέρχεται πρὸς τὸν Περσῶν
as-much-as to-carry they-could goes-away to the of-Persians
σουλτὰν δῶρον αὐτῷ κομίζων ἐφ' ᾧ μὴ παραλυθῆναι
sultan a-gift to-him bringing for which not to-be-removed
τῆς ἀρχῆς. καταλαμβάνει δὲ τοῦτον περὶ τὸ Σπαχᾶ
from-the rule reaches and him about — Spacha
αὐλιζόμενον. ὡς δὲ οὐδὲ θεάσασθαι τοῦτον ὁ σουλτὰν
encamped as and not-even to-see him the sultan
ἠξίου, μεσίταις ἐχρῆτο. ὁ δὲ ὀχλούμενος ὑπ' αὐτῶν
deigned with-intermediaries he-dealt he and being-pestered by them
ἔφη "ἐπεὶ καθάπαξ τὴν ἐξουσίαν τῷ Ἀμὴρ Πουζάνῳ
he-said since once-for-all the authority to-the Amir Pouzanos
ἀνεθέμην, οὐκέτι ταύτην ἐξ αὐτοῦ ἀφαιρήσεσθαι βούλομαι.
I-entrusted no-longer it from him to-take-away I-wish
ἐπιδότω τοίνυν τὰ χρήματα ἀπελθὼν πρὸς αὐτὸν καὶ πᾶν
let-him-give therefore the money having-gone to him and all
ὃ βούλεται εἰπάτω. καὶ τὸ δόξαν αὐτῷ καὶ ἐμὸν
that he-wishes let-him-say and the(-thing) resolved by-him also my

ἔσεται θέλημα.” ἐφ᾽ ἱκανὸν οὖν ἐγκαρτερήσας ἐκεῖσε
will-be will for a-good-while then having-stayed there
καὶ πολλὰ μογήσας καὶ μηδὲν ἠνυκὼς ἀπάρας
and much having-toiled and nothing having-accomplished having-set-out
ἐκεῖθεν ὡς πρὸς τὸν Πουζάνον ἀπερχόμενος συναντᾷ τοῖς
from-there as to — Pouzanos going meets the
ἐξ ἐκείνου κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ ἀποσταλεῖσι διακοσίοις ἐκκρίτοις
from that-man against him sent two-hundred picked
σατράπαις. οὐδὲ γὰρ ἡ ἐκείνου τῆς Νικαίας ἐξέλευσις
satraps not-even for the of-that-man — from-Nicaea departure
τοῦτον διέλαθεν. οἳ καὶ κατασχόντες αὐτὸν καὶ βρόχον ἐκ
him escaped who also having-seized him and a-noose from
νευρᾶς ἐπικλώσαντες τῷ τραχήλῳ τούτου περιβαλόντες
bowstring having-twisted on-the neck his having-thrown
ἀπέπνιξαν· τὸ δὲ ὅλον οὐ τοῦ Πουζάνου ἦν κατ᾽ ἐμὸν
strangled the and whole not — of-Pouzanos was by my
λόγον, ἀλλὰ τοῦ σουλτὰν ἐκείνου τοιαῦτ᾽ οἰκονομῆσαι
reckoning but of-the sultan that such-things to-manage
κατὰ τοῦ Ἀπελχασὴμ δηλώσαντος. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν
against — Apelchasem having-made-known but these(-things) indeed
τὰ κατὰ τὸν Ἀπελχασήμ· ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς τὰς
the(-affairs) concerning — Apelchasem the and emperor the
τοῦ σουλτὰν ὑπαναγνοὺς γραφὰς οὐδ᾽ εἰς νοῦν τὸ
of-the sultan having-read letters not-even into mind the(-thing)
δηλούμενον βαλεῖν ἤθελε. καὶ πῶς γάρ; τὸ γὰρ βασιλικὸν
made-known to-cast wished and how for the for imperial
θυγάτριον, ὅπερ τὸ γράμμα ἐζήτει κατεγγυηθῆναι τῷ
little-daughter whom the letter sought to-be-betrothed to-the
πρωτοτόκῳ υἱῷ τοῦ βαρβάρου, ἦν ἄρα δυστυχές,
first-born son of-the barbarian would-have-been after-all unhappy
ὡς ἔοικεν, εἰ ἀνεληλύθει εἰς Περσίδα βασιλείας μετεσχηκὸς
as it-seems if she-had-gone-up to Persia in-a-kingship having-shared-in

ἀπάσης κακοδαιμονεστέρας πενίας. ἀλλ' οὔτε ὁ θεὸς
than-all more-wretched poverty but neither — God
τοῦτο ἐπέτρεπεν οὔτε ὁ βασιλεὺς εἶχε γνώμης οὕτω
this permitted nor the emperor had of-mind thus
ταῦτα προβῆναι, οὐδ' ἂν εἰς στενὸν κατηντήκει αὐτῷ
these(-things) to-go-forward nor — to strait had-come for-him
τὰ πράγματα. εὐθὺς γὰρ καὶ κατὰ πρώτην ἀκοὴν
the affairs at-once for also at first hearing
τοῦ γράμματος τῆς τοῦ βαρβάρου κατεγέλασεν ὀρέξεως
of-the letter the of-the barbarian laughed-at desire
ὑποφθεγξάμενος ὅτι "ὁ δαίμων τοῦτο εἰς νοῦν αὐτοῦ
having-uttered that the demon this into mind his
ἀνεβίβασε". περὶ μὲν τοῦ κήδους οὕτως ἔσχεν ὁ
had-raised about indeed the marriage-alliance thus was-minded the
αὐτοκράτωρ· ἐλπίσι δὲ κεναῖς τὸν τοῦ σουλτὰν λογισμὸν
autocrat with-hopes and empty the of-the sultan reasoning
ἀπαιωρεῖν δεῖν λογισάμενος μεταπεμψάμενος τὸν
to-keep-in-suspense to-be-needful having-reckoned having-summoned —
Κουρτίκιον μεθ' ἑτέρων τριῶν ἀποστέλλει τούτους πρέσβεις
Kourtikios with others three sends them as-envoys
καὶ γράμματα, δι' ὧν τὴν εἰρήνην ἐνέφαινεν ἀσπάζεσθαι
and letters through which the peace he-showed to-embrace
καὶ πρὸς τὰ μηνυθέντα κατανεύειν, ἀπαιτῶν ἅμα
and to the(-things) reported to-assent demanding at-the-same-time
καὶ αὐτὸς ἄλλα τινὰ χρόνου παράτασιν εἰσάγοντα. οὔπω
also himself other some-things of-time prolongation bringing-in not-yet
οἱ ἐκ τοῦ Βυζαντίου πεμφθέντες πρέσβεις τὸν Χοροσὰν
the from — Byzantium sent envoys — Khorasan
κατέλαβον, καὶ τὴν τοῦ σουλτὰν μεμαθηκότες ἀναίρεσιν
had-reached and the of-the sultan having-learned killing
ὑπέστρεψαν. καὶ γὰρ ὁ αὐτάδελφος αὐτοῦ Τουτούσης
returned and for the own-brother his Toutoushes

μετὰ τὸ ἀνελεῖν τὸν Ἀμὴρ Σολυμᾶν καὶ τὸν ἴδιον
after the to-kill the Amir Solyman and the own
γαμβρὸν ἐξ Ἀραβίας κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ στρατεύσαντα τυφωθεὶς
son-in-law from Arabia against him having-campaigned puffed-up
καὶ τὸν σουλτὰν μεμαθηκὼς εἰς εἰρηνικὰς σπονδὰς μετὰ
and the sultan having-learned to peaceful treaties with
τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος ἤδη ἐπείγεσθαι πρὸς τὸν τἀδελφοῦ
the autocrat already to-be-hastening to the of-his-brother
φόνον ἀπέβλεψε. δυοκαίδεκα τοίνυν Χασίους τῇ Περσίδι
murder looked twelve therefore Chasioi in-the Persian
διαλέκτῳ καλουμένους φόνιον πνέοντας μετακαλεσάμενος ὡς
tongue called murder breathing having-summoned as
πρέσβεις τάχα πρὸς τὸν σουλτὰν ἐξέπεμψε καὶ τὸν τρόπον
envoys perhaps to the sultan sent-out and the way
αὐτοῖς ὑποθέμενος ἅμα τῆς τἀδελφοῦ σφαγῆς,
to-them having-suggested at-the-same-time of-the of-his-brother slaughter
"ἅπιτε" φάμενος "καὶ πρῶτα μὲν διακηρυκεύσατε, ὡς
go having-said and first indeed proclaim that
ἀπόρρητά τινα μέλλειν τῷ σουλτὰν ἀπαγγεῖλαι, ἐπὰν
secret some-things to-be-about to-the sultan to-announce when
δὲ παραχωρηθῆτε τῆς εἰσόδου, ὡς τάχα πρὸς οὖς αὐτῷ
and you-are-granted the entrance as perhaps into ear with-him
ὡμιληκέναι βούλεσθαι, πλησιάσαντες παραχρῆμα τὸν ἐμὸν
to-have-conversed to-wish having-approached immediately the my
διαμελίσατε ἀδελφόν". οἱ δὲ πρέσβεις ἢ μᾶλλον φονεῖς
cut-to-pieces brother the and envoys or rather murderers
καθάπερ εἰς δεῖπνον ἢ εὐωχίαν πεμπόμενοι προθυμότατα
as-if to dinner or feast being-sent most-eagerly
πρὸς τὴν τοῦ σουλτὰν σφαγὴν ἀπῄεσαν. μεθύοντα τοίνυν
to the of-the sultan slaughter went-off drunk therefore
τοῦτον καταλαβόντες, ἐπεὶ πᾶσα ἐκεχειρία τούτοις ἐδίδοτο
him having-found since all license to-them was-given

τῶν ἐμπεπιστευμένων τὴν τοῦ σουλτὰν φυλακὴν πόρρωθεν
those entrusted the of-the sultan guard far-off
ἑστηκότων, αὐτοὶ πλησιάσαντες τὰ ξίφη τῆς μάλης
standing they having-approached the swords from-the armpit
σπασάμενοι διαμελίζουσι παραχρῆμα τὸν ἄθλιον. τοιοῦτον
having-drawn cut-to-pieces immediately the wretch such
γὰρ τὸ τῶν Χασίων ἐστὶν αἵμασι χαῖρον καὶ τρυφὴν αὐτὸ
for the of-the Chasioi is in-blood rejoicing and luxury itself
τοῦτο λογιζόμενοι, εἰ μόνον διὰ σπλάγχνων ἀνθρωπίνων
this reckoning if only through bowels human
τὸ ξίφος ἐλάσειαν· τοῦ λοιποῦ δέ, κἄν τινες αὐτοὺς
the sword they-might-drive for-the rest and even-if any them
ἴσως ἐπ᾽ αὐτῷ τούτῳ ἐπιθέμενοι καταχορδεύσειαν, καθάπερ
perhaps for itself this having-attacked should-butcher as-if
τι κῦδος τὸν τοιοῦτον λογίζονται θάνατον ὥσπερ τινὰ
some glory the such they-reckon death as-if some
πάτριον κλῆρον τὰ φονικὰ ταῦτα ἔργα ἄλλος πρὸς
ancestral inheritance the murderous these works one to
ἄλλον διαδεχόμενοί τε καὶ παραπέμποντες. ἐκείνων μὲν
another receiving both and passing-on of-them indeed
οὖν πρὸς τὸν Τουτούσην ὑπέστρεψεν οὐδεὶς ἀντίλυτρον
then to — Toutoushes returned no-one ransom
οἷον τὰς ἰδίας ὑποσχόντων σφαγάς· ὁ μέντοι Πουζάνος
as-it-were the own having-submitted-to slaughters — however Pouzanos
ταῦτα μεμαθηκὼς σὺν ὅλαις δυνάμεσι πρὸς τὸν Χοροσὰν
these(-things) having-learned with whole forces to — Khorasan
ἐπανέστρεψεν. ἐπὰν δὲ τῷ Χοροσὰν προσπελάσειε, δέχεται
returned when and — Khorasan he-should-approach receives
τοῦτον ὁ τοῦ ἀναιρεθέντος ἀδελφὸς Τουτούσης. καὶ εὐθὺς
him the of-the slain brother Toutoushes and at-once
ἀγχεμάχου τῆς μάχης γενομένης, ἐπεὶ καρτερῶς ἄμφω
hand-to-hand the battle having-become since strongly both

τὰ στρατεύματα ἐμάχοντο καὶ θάτερον θατέρῳ τῆς νίκης
the armies fought and the-one to-the-other of-the victory
οὐδαμῶς παρεχώρει, πίπτει καὶ ὁ Πουζάνος καιρίαν
in-no-way yielded falls also — Pouzanos mortally
πληγεὶς γενναίως ἀγωνιζόμενος καὶ ὅλας συνταράσσων
struck nobly contending and whole confounding
τὰς φάλαγγας· ἕκαστος δὲ τῶν αὐτοῦ φυγῇ τὴν
the phalanxes each and of-the his by-flight the
σωτηρίαν ἐπραγματεύσατο ἄλλος ἄλλοσε σκεδασθέντες. ὁ
safety achieved one elsewhere having-scattered —
δὲ Τουτούσης νικητὴς πρὸς τὸν Χοροσὰν ἐπανέστρεφεν
and Toutoushes victor to — Khorasan was-returning
ὡς ἤδη τὴν τοῦ σουλτανικίου ἀξίαν περιζωσάμενος
as already the of-the sultanate rank having-girded-on
καὶ ταῦτα τὸν κίνδυνον ὑπὲρ κεφαλῆς ἔχων. καὶ γὰρ
and this the danger over head having and for
συνηντηκὼς αὐτῷ ὁ τοῦ ἀναιρεθέντος Ταπάρη σουλτὰν
having-met him the of-the slain Tapares sultan
υἱός, ὁ Παργιαρούχ, ὡς λέων ἐχάρη μεγάλῳ ἐπὶ σώματι
son — Pargiarouch as a-lion rejoiced great upon body
κύρσας κατὰ τὴν ποίησιν καὶ συμβαλὼν ὅλῃ
having-chanced according-to the poem and having-engaged with-whole
χειρὶ καὶ γνώμῃ εἰς πολλὰ τὰς τοῦ Τουτούση δυνάμεις
hand and mind into many the — of-Toutoushes forces
διέσπασε καὶ τρέψας ἀνὰ κράτος ἐδίωκεν. ἀναιρεῖται δὲ
tore-apart and having-routed at full-speed pursued is-killed and
καὶ αὐτὸς ὁ τὰ Ναυάτου φυσῶν Τουτούσης. τοῦ δὲ
also himself — the(-things) of-Novatus breathing Toutoushes — and
Ἀπελχασὴμ μετὰ χρημάτων τότε πρὸς τὸν τοῦ Χοροσὰν
Apelchasem with money then to the — of-Khorasan
σουλτὰν ἐξεληλυθότος, ὡς ὁ λόγος φθάσας ἱστόρησεν,
sultan having-gone-out as the account having-been-first recorded

ὁ ἀδελφὸς αὐτοῦ Πουλχάσης τὴν Νίκαιαν καταλαβὼν
the brother his Poulchases — Nicaea having-reached
κατέσχεν. αἰσθόμενος δὲ τούτου ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ δαψιλεῖς
held having-perceived and this the autocrat abundant
τὰς δωρεὰς ὑπισχνεῖτο, εἰ ταύτης αὐτῷ παρακεχωρηκὼς
the gifts promised if it to-him having-ceded
ἐκεῖθεν ἐκσταίη. ὁ δὲ Πουλχάσης ἤθελε μέν, ἀλλ'
from-there he-should-withdraw — and Poulchases wished indeed but
ἀνεβάλλετο αὖθις ἀποβλέπων πρὸς τὸν Ἀπελχασὴμ καὶ
put-off again looking to — Apelchasem and
λόγους ἐκ λόγων πρὸς τὸν αὐτοκράτορα διεπέμπετο
words from words to the autocrat he-sent
ἀπαιωρῶν οἷον αὐτόν, τῇ δ' ἀληθείᾳ τὴν τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ
keeping-in-suspense as-it-were him in-the but truth the of-the brother
ἀπεκδεχόμενος ἐπανέλευσιν. ἐν τῷ μεταξὺ δὲ γίνεταί τι
awaiting return in the meantime and happens something
τοιοῦτον. ὁ παρὰ τῶν Χασίων ἀναιρεθεὶς τοῦ Χοροσὰν
such the by the Chasioi slain — of-Khorasan
σουλτὰν ἔφθασε κατασχεῖν τοὺς τοῦ μεγάλου Σολυμᾶ δύο
sultan had-been-first to-seize the of-the great Solyman two
υἱεῖς. οὗτοι δὲ μετὰ τὴν ἐκείνου σφαγὴν ἀποδράσαντες τοῦ
sons these and after the of-that-man slaughter having-run-away —
Χοροσὰν ὀξέως τὴν Νίκαιαν κατέλαβον. τούτους οἱ ἐντὸς
from-Khorasan swiftly — Nicaea reached them those inside
Νικαίας θεασάμενοι δημοκρατοῦντες οἷον περιχαρῶς
Nicaea having-beheld ruling-by-the-people as-it-were overjoyed
ἐδέξαντο. καὶ ὁ Πουλχάσης καθάπερ τινὰ πατρῷον κλῆρον
received and — Poulchases as-if some ancestral inheritance
τὴν Νίκαιαν προθύμως αὐτοῖς παραδίδωσι. προχειρίζεται
— Nicaea eagerly to-them hands-over is-appointed
δὲ σουλτὰν ὁ πρωτογενὴς τῶν δύο, Κλιτζιασθλὰν τὴν
and sultan the first-born of-the two Klitziasthlan the

κλῆσιν. ἐκεῖνος δὲ τὰς γυναῖκας καὶ τὰ τέκνα τῶν
name that-one and the wives and the children of-those
τηνικαῦτα ἐν Νικαίᾳ παρόντων μεταπεμψάμενος ἐν αὐτῇ
then in Nicaea present having-sent-for in it
καθίδρυσεν ἀποκαταστήσας τὴν πόλιν ταύτην σουλτάνων,
settled having-established the city this of-sultans
ὡς ἄν τις εἴποι, κατοικητήριον. οὕτω δὲ τὰ κατὰ
as — anyone might-say residence thus and the(-affairs) concerning
τὴν Νίκαιαν οἰκονομήσας τὸν μὲν Πουλχάσην τῆς
— Nicaea having-arranged — indeed Poulchases from-the
ἀρχῆς μεθίστησι, τῷ δὲ ἀρχισατράπῃ Μουχοῦμετ τὴν
rule removes to-the and chief-satrap Mouchoumet the
ἡγεμονίαν τῶν ἐν Νικαίᾳ ὄντων σατραπῶν ἀναθέμενος
command of-the in Nicaea being satraps having-entrusted
καὶ αὐτοῦ που καταλιπὼν κατὰ τῆς Μελιτηνῆς ἔξεισιν.
and there somewhere having-left against — Melitene goes-out

XXII · ELCHANES WON OVER

Elchanes seizes Apollonias and Kyzikos. Alexander Euphorbenos takes the outer town of Apollonias but is trapped at the bridge on the river, and many of his men are captured or drowned. Opos then retakes Kyzikos and Poimanenon and recovers Apollonias. Elchanes deserts to Alexios, is baptized and rewarded, and Skaliarios and other chief satraps follow him. Anna describes her father as a priestly teacher of the faith, eager to convert Scythians, Persians, and Egyptians.

Ἀλλὰ τοιαῦτα μὲν τὰ περὶ τῶν σουλτάνων·
but such indeed the(-things) about the sultans
ὁ δὲ Ἐλχάνης ἀρχισατράπης μετὰ τῶν ὑπ᾽ αὐτὸν
— and Elchanes chief-satrap with those under him
καταλαβὼν τὴν Ἀπολλωνιάδα καὶ Κύζικον (πόλεις δὲ
having-seized — Apollonias and Kyzikos cities and

αὗται καὶ ἄμφω παράλιοι) τὰ παρὰ θάλατταν ἐλήζετο
these also both coastal the(-places) by sea plundered
ἅπαντα. τοῦτο μεμαθηκὼς ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ ἀπὸ τῶν
all this having-learned the autocrat from the
παρατυχόντων ἀκατίων (οὐδέπω γὰρ στόλος ἠὐτρέπιστο)
present skiffs not-yet for a-fleet had-been-made-ready
ἱκανὰ παρασκευασάμενος καὶ ἑλεπόλεις ἐν αὐτοῖς
considerable having-prepared and siege-engines in them
μετὰ στρατιωτῶν γενναίων εἰσαγαγὼν τὸν Εὐφορβηνὸν
with soldiers noble having-put-in — Euphorbenos
Ἀλέξανδρον, ἄνδρα τῶν ἐπιφανῶν μὲν κατὰ γένος καὶ
Alexander a-man of-the illustrious indeed by birth and
κατὰ ἀνδρείαν περίφημον, τὴν ἡγεμονίαν τούτων αὐτῷ
for courage famous the command of-them to-him
ἀναθέμενος κατὰ τοῦ Ἐλχάνη ἐξέπεμψε. καταλαβὼν
having-entrusted against — Elchanes sent-out having-reached
δὲ τὴν Ἀπολλωνιάδα παραχρῆμα ἐπολιόρκει. δι' ἓξ
and — Apollonias immediately besieged within six
δὲ ἡμερῶν μηδ' ἐν νυξὶ τῆς τειχομαχίας ὅλως
and days not-even at nights from-the wall-fighting at-all
ἀφιστάμενος κατέσχε τὸν ἔξωθεν τοῦ κάστρου κύκλον,
standing-off be-held the outside of-the fortress circuit
ὅνπερ ἐξώπολον ἡ συνήθεια νῦν καλεῖν εἴωθεν. ὁ δὲ
which outer-town the custom now to-call is-wont — and
Ἐλχάνης καρτερῶς ἀντεποιεῖτο τῆς ἀκροπόλεως δυνάμεις
Elchanes strongly held-on-to the citadel forces
ἐλπίζων ἔξωθεν ἐλθεῖν. καὶ δὴ στρατιὰν βαρβαρικὴν
expecting from-outside to-come and indeed army barbarian
ἀξιόμαχον ἐπικαταλαμβάνουσαν εἰς ἀρωγὴν τοῦ Ἐλχάνη
a-match-for-battle arriving for aid — of-Elchanes
ὡς ἐθεάσατο ὁ Ἀλέξανδρος, τοὺς δ' ὑπ' αὐτὸν μηδὲ τὸ
when saw — Alexander those and under him not-even the

πολλοστὸν τῆς ἐπικαταλαμβανούσης δυνάμεως σῴζοντας,
smallest-fraction of-the arriving force keeping
βέλτιον ἔγνω, κἂν μὴ νικῴη, ἀλλά γε τοὺς ὑπ᾽
better he-knew even-if not he-should-win but at-least those under
αὐτὸν ἀσινεῖς διατηρῆσαι. ἐν στενῷ δὲ κομιδῇ τὰ
him unharmed to-preserve in strait and utterly the(-affairs)
κατ᾽ αὐτὸν ἐληλακότα συνορῶν καὶ ὅτι σωτηρίας τρόπος
concerning him having-come seeing and that of-safety a-way
οὐκ ἐπιλέλειπται, ὡς πρὸς τὴν θάλασσαν ἀπονενεύκει. καὶ
not is-left as toward the sea he-had-turned and
διὰ τοῦ ποταμοῦ εἰσελθὼν ἐν ταῖς ἰδίαις ναυσὶ πρὸς
through the river having-entered in the own ships to
αὐτὴν διεπλῴζετο. στοχασάμενος δὲ ὁ Ἐλχάνης τὸν τοῦ
it was-sailing having-guessed and — Elchanes the —
Ἀλεξάνδρου σκοπὸν προκαταλαβὼν τὸ τῆς λίμνης κατέσχε
of-Alexander aim having-seized-first the of-the lake held
στόμιον καὶ τὴν ἐν τῷ ποταμῷ γέφυραν, ἐν ᾗ καὶ τέμενος
mouth and the in the river bridge on which also a-church
πάλαι παρὰ τῆς ἁγίας ᾠκοδόμητο Ἑλένης ἐπ᾽ ὀνόματι
long-ago by the holy had-been-built Helena in name
τοῦ μεγάλου Κωνσταντίνου, ἐξ ὧν τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν ἡ
of-the great Constantine from whom the name the
γέφυρα μέχρι καὶ νῦν ἐκτήσατο. τῷ γοῦν ἤδη ῥηθέντι
bridge until even now acquired at-the at-any-rate already mentioned
στομίῳ καὶ αὐτῇ δὴ τῇ γεφύρᾳ ἄνδρας πολεμικωτάτους
mouth and itself indeed the bridge men most-warlike
ἐπιστήσας ἐφ᾽ ἑκάτερα παρήγγειλε τὴν τῶν πλοίων δίοδον
having-set on both-sides he-ordered the of-the boats passage
ἐνεδρεύειν. ὡς δὲ ἅπαντες ἐν τοῖς ἤδη ῥηθεῖσιν ἀγραρίοις
to-ambush as and all in the already mentioned boats
εἰσελθόντες διὰ τοῦ στομίου τῆς λίμνης ταῖς πάγαις
having-entered through the mouth of-the lake into-the snares

τοῦ Ἐλχάνη ἐμπεπτώκασι, θεασάμενοι τὸ καταλαβὸν
— of-Elchanes fell having-beheld the having-seized
αὐτοὺς δεινὸν καὶ μὴ ἔχοντες ὅ τι καὶ δράσαιεν τῇ
them terror and not having what — also they-might-do on-the
χέρσῳ τὰς νῆας ἐφορμίσαντες κἀκεῖθεν ἁλλόμενοι περὶ
dry-land the ships having-moored and-from-there leaping about
τὴν ἤπειρον ἐξεληλύθεσαν. καταλαβόντων δὲ αὐτοὺς τῶν
the mainland had-gone-out having-overtaken and them the
Τούρκων μέγας ἀναρρήγνυται πόλεμος. καὶ πολλοὶ μὲν
Turks great breaks-out war and many indeed
τῶν λογάδων ἁλίσκονται, πολλοὶ δὲ καὶ ταῖς δίναις τοῦ
of-the picked-men are-captured many and also into-the eddies of-the
ποταμοῦ ἐμπεπτωκότες παρεσύρησαν. ταῦτα ὁ βασιλεὺς
river having-fallen were-swept-away these(-things) the emperor
μεμαθηκὼς καὶ μὴ φέρων τὴν ἧτταν ἀξιόμαχον δύναμιν
having-learned and not bearing the defeat a-match-for-battle force
μετὰ τοῦ Ὤπου διὰ τῆς ἠπείρου κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ἐξέπεμψεν.
with — Opos by the mainland against them sent-out
ὃς καὶ τὴν Κύζικον καταλαβὼν ἐξ ἐπιδρομῆς ταύτην
who also — Kyzikos having-reached by raid it
κατέσχε. διελὼν δὲ καὶ τῶν ἰδίων ταγμάτων ἄνδρας
held having-selected and also from-the own units men
τειχεσιπλήτας καὶ φιλοκινδύνους ὡσεὶ τριακοσίους κατὰ τοῦ
wall-stormers and danger-loving about three-hundred against —
Ποιμανηνοῦ ἐξαπέστειλεν. οἳ καὶ ἐξ ἐφόδου τοῦτο κατέσχον
Poimanenon sent-off who also by assault it held
καὶ τοὺς μὲν τῶν ἐντὸς αὐτοῦ που κτείνουσι, τοὺς δὲ
and some indeed of-those inside there somewhere they-kill others and
καὶ ζωγρίαν πρὸς τὸν Ὤπον πεπόμφασιν. ὁ δὲ θᾶττον
also alive to — Opos sent he and more-quickly
τούτους πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα ἐκπέπομφεν· αὐτὸς δὲ ἐκεῖθεν
them to the emperor sent-out he and from-there

ἀπάρας τὴν Ἀπολλωνιάδα καταλαμβάνει, καὶ πολιορκῶν
having-set-out — Apollonias reaches and besieging
ταύτην οὐκ ἐνεδίδου. ὁ δὲ Ἐλχάνης ἀποχρῶσαν ἀπάρτι
it not he-ceased — and Elchanes sufficient by-now
πρὸς αὐτὸν μὴ ἔχων δύναμιν τὴν μὲν πόλιν ἐθελοντὴς
against him not having force the indeed city voluntarily
παραδίδωσιν, αὐτὸς δὲ μετὰ τῶν καθ' αἷμα προσηκόντων
hands-over he and with those by blood related
αὐτομολεῖ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα καὶ μυρίων μὲν ἐπαπολαύει
deserts to the emperor and countless indeed enjoys
δωρεῶν, τυγχάνει δὲ καὶ τοῦ μεγίστου, τοῦ ἁγίου φημὶ
gifts obtains and also the greatest the holy I-mean
φωτίσματος. ὁπόσοι δὲ συνέψεσθαι τῷ Ὤπῳ οὐκ ἤθελον,
illumination as-many-as and to-follow — Opos not wished
ὅ τε Σκαλιάριος καὶ ὁ ἐν ὑστέροις ὑπερπερίλαμπρος
— both Skaliarios and the(-one) in later-times as-hyperperilampros
τιμηθεὶς ∗∗∗ (ἀρχισατράπαι δὲ καὶ οὗτοι τῶν ἐπιφανῶν)
honored (lacuna) chief-satraps and also these of-the illustrious
μεμαθηκότες τὰς εἰς τὸν Ἐλχάνην φιλοφροσύνας καὶ
having-learned the to — Elchanes kindnesses and
δαψιλεῖς δωρεὰς τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος προσεληλυθότες καὶ
abundant gifts of-the autocrat having-come also
αὐτοὶ τῶν ἱμειρομένων ἐπιτυγχάνουσιν. ἦν γὰρ ὁ
themselves the(-things) longed-for obtain was for the
βασιλεὺς οὗτος ἄντικρυς ἱερατικώτατος καὶ τὴν ἀρετὴν
emperor this outright most-priestly both in-the virtue
καὶ τὸν λόγον, ὡς εἰπεῖν, εὐσεβείας ἁπάσης ἀρχιερεύς.
and the word as to-say of-piety all high-priest
διδασκαλικώτατός τε γὰρ ἦν τοῦ ἡμετέρου δόγματος
most-able-to-teach both for he-was of-the our doctrine
καὶ ἀποστολικὸς τὴν προαίρεσιν καὶ τὸν λόγον καὶ
and apostolic in-the purpose and the word and

εἴσω τῆς ἡμετέρας πίστεως ποιῆσαι βουλόμενος οὐ μόνον
inside the our faith to-bring wishing not only
τοὺς νομάδας τουτουσὶ Σκύθας, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὴν Περσίδα
the nomads these-here Scythians but also — Persia
πᾶσαν καὶ ὁπόσοι τὴν Αἴγυπτον καὶ τὴν Λιβύην νέμονται
all and as-many-as — Egypt and — Libya inhabit
βάρβαροι καὶ ταῖς τοῦ Μωάμεθ τελεταῖς ὀργιάζουσιν.
barbarians and with-the — of-Muhammad rites perform-rites

XXIII · THE SCYTHIANS CROSS

The Scythians, driven out by the Sauromatai, cross the Danube and make treaties with the chiefs of Dristra and Bitzina. Traulos calls them in, and they plunder the land. Pakourianos and Branas meet them near Beliatoba, but Branas forces battle. He is killed, and Pakourianos dies when he strikes an oak. Tatikios defeats a foraging party near Philippopolis; after a two-day standoff the Scythians withdraw and escape his pursuit through the Sidera pass.

Ἀλλὰ περὶ μὲν τούτων ἅλις· βουλομένη δὲ δεινοτέραν καὶ
but about indeed these-things enough wishing and more-terrible and
μείζονα τῆς προλαβούσης κατὰ τῆς τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῆς
greater than-the preceding against the of-the Romans rule
ἔφοδον διηγήσασθαι εἰς ἀρχὴν αὖθις καθιστῶ τὸν λόγον·
attack to-narrate to beginning again I-set the account
ἄλλα γὰρ ἐπ' ἄλλοις διεκυμάνθησαν. γένος τι Σκυθικὸν
other for upon others surged race a-certain Scythian
παρὰ τῶν Σαυροματῶν καθ' ἑκάστην σκυλευόμενοι
by the Sauromatai by each(-day) being-despoiled
ἀπάραντες τῶν οἴκοι κατῆλθον πρὸς τὸν Δάνουβιν.
having-set-out from-the at-home came-down to the Danube
ὡς δὲ πρὸς ἀνάγκης ἦν αὐτοῖς μετὰ τῶν κατὰ τὸν
as and of necessity it-was for-them with those along the

Δάνουβιν οἰκούντων σπείσασθαι, τούτου συνδόξαντος πᾶσιν
Danube dwelling to-make-a-treaty this having-been-agreed by-all
εἰς ὁμιλίαν ἦλθον μετὰ τῶν ἐκκρίτων, τοῦ τε Τατοῦ τοῦ
to conference they-came with the picked-men — both of-Tatos the
καὶ Χαλῆ ὀνομαζομένου καὶ τοῦ Σεσθλάβου καὶ τοῦ Σατζᾶ
also Chales named and — of-Sesthlavos and — of-Satzas
(χρὴ γὰρ καὶ τῆς ἐπωνυμίας μεμνῆσθαι τῶν κατ' αὐτοὺς
it-is-needful for also the name to-mention of-the among them
ἀρίστων ἀνδρῶν, εἰ καὶ τὸ σῶμα τῆς ἱστορίας τούτοις
best men if even the body of-the history by-these
καταμιαίνεται), τοῦ μὲν τὴν Δρίστραν κατέχοντος,
is-defiled of-the(-one) indeed — Dristra holding
τῶν δὲ τὴν Βιτζίναν καὶ τἆλλα. σπεισάμενοι γοῦν
of-those and — Bitzina and the-rest having-made-a-treaty at-any-rate
μετ' αὐτῶν ἀδεῶς τοῦ λοιποῦ διαπερῶντες τὸν Δάνουβιν
with them fearlessly for-the rest crossing the Danube
ἐλῄζοντο τὴν παρακειμένην χώραν, ὡς καὶ πολίχνιά τινα
plundered the neighboring land so-that also little-towns some
κατασχεῖν. κἀντεῦθεν ἐκεχειρίαν τινὰ σχόντες ἀροτριῶντες
to-seize and-thence respite some having-had plowing
ἔσπειρον κέγχρους τε καὶ πυρούς. ὁ δὲ Τραυλὸς ἐκεῖνος
they-sowed millet both and wheat — and Traulos that
Μανιχαῖος μετὰ τῶν συνεφεπομένων αὐτῷ καὶ οἱ τὸ κατὰ
Manichaean with those following him and those the on
τὴν ἀκρολοφίαν τῆς Βελιατόβης πολίχνιον κατασχόντες
the hill-top — of-Beliatoba little-town having-held
ὁμόφρονες, περὶ ὧν ὁ λόγος φθάσας πλατύτερον
like-minded about whom the account having-been-first more-broadly
ἐδίδαξε, τὰ κατὰ τοὺς Σκύθας μεμαθηκότες ὃ
taught the(-things) concerning the Scythians having-learned what
πάλαι ὤδινον εἰς φῶς ἐξήγαγον καὶ κατασχόντες
long-ago they-travailed-with into light brought-out and having-held

τὰς τραχείας ὁδοὺς καὶ στενωποὺς μετεκαλοῦντο τοὺς
the rough roads and defiles summoned the
Σκύθας. κἀντεῦθεν τὴν ἅπασαν Ῥωμαίων ἐλῄζοντο χώραν.
Scythians and-thence the whole of-Romans plundered land
γένος γὰρ οἱ Μανιχαῖοι φύσει μαχιμώτατον καὶ αἵμασιν
race for the Manichaeans by-nature most-warlike and with-the-blood
ἀνθρώπων λαφύσσειν καθαπερεὶ κύνες ἀεὶ ἱμειρόμενον.
of-men to-gulp like dogs always longing
ταῦτα ὁ βασιλεὺς Ἀλέξιος μεμαθηκὼς παρακελεύεται
these(-things) the emperor Alexios having-learned orders
τῷ δομεστίκῳ τῆς ἑσπέρας Πακουριανῷ γινώσκων αὐτὸν
the domestic of-the west Pakourianos knowing him
ἱκανώτατον οἰκονομῆσαι στράτευμα καὶ κατὰ φάλαγγα
most-able to-arrange an-army and in phalanx
στῆσαι καὶ παράταξιν διαμηχανήσασθαι ποικιλώτατον σὺν
to-set and a-battle-line to-contrive most-variedly with
αὐτῷ τῷ Βρανᾷ (ἀνὴρ δὲ καὶ οὗτος μαχιμώτατος) τὰς
himself — Branas a-man and also this-one most-warlike the
δυνάμεις ἀναλαβόμενον κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ἀπελθεῖν. καταλαβὼν
forces having-taken-up against them to-go having-reached
δὲ τοὺς Σκύθας διελθόντας τοὺς στενωποὺς καὶ
and the Scythians having-passed-through the defiles and
τῆς Βελιατόβης ἔνθεν τὸν χάρακα πηξαμένους, πλῆθος
— from-Beliatoba thence the palisade having-pitched a-multitude
ἀναρίθμητον τούτους θεασάμενος, πρὸς τὸν μετ᾽ αὐτῶν
innumerable them having-beheld at the with them
εὐθὺς ἀπενάρκησε πόλεμον βέλτιον νομίζων τὰς ἰδίας
at-once shrank-from war better thinking the own
τὸ παρὸν ἀμαχητὶ διασῶσαι δυνάμεις ἢ τὸν μετὰ
for-the present without-battle to-preserve forces than the with
τῶν Σκυθῶν ἀναδησάμενον πόλεμον καὶ ἡττηθέντα
the Scythians having-taken-up war and having-been-defeated

πολλοὺς ἀπολωλεκέναι. ἀλλὰ τῷ Βρανᾷ φιλοκινδυνοτάτῳ
many to-have-lost but — to-Branas most-fond-of-danger
τε καὶ θρασεῖ ὄντι ταῦτα οὐκ ἤρεσκεν. ὁ δέ γε
both and bold being these(-things) not pleased the and at-least
δομέστικος, ἵνα μὴ δειλίας ὑποψία τις κατ' αὐτοῦ
domestic that not of-cowardice suspicion some against him
ἀναβαλλομένου τὸν πόλεμον δοθῇ, ἐνεδίδου ταῖς ὁρμαῖς
putting-off the war might-be-given yielded to-the impulses
τοῦ Βρανᾶ καὶ θωρήξασθαί τε ἅπασι κελεύσας καὶ
— of-Branas and to-arm both all having-ordered and
πολέμου σχῆμα διατυπώσας κατὰ τῶν Σκυθῶν ἐχώρησε
of-war form having-drawn against the Scythians advanced
τὸ μεσαίτατον αὐτὸς διέπων τῆς φάλαγγος. ἐπεὶ δὲ
the very-center he managing of-the phalanx since and
οὐδὲ τὸ πολλοστὸν τοῦ πλήθους τῶν ἀντιτεταγμένων τὸ
not-even the smallest-fraction of-the multitude of-those arrayed-against the
Ῥωμαϊκὸν ἔσωζε στράτευμα, ἐκ μόνης ὄψεως περιδεεῖς
Roman kept army from only sight very-afraid
ἐγεγόνεισαν ἅπαντες. προσβαλόντες δ' ὅμως τοῖς
had-become all having-attacked and nevertheless the
Σκύθαις ἀναιροῦνται μὲν πολλοὶ ἐν τῷ μάχεσθαι, πίπτει
Scythians are-killed indeed many in the fighting falls
δὲ καιρίαν πληγεὶς ὁ Βρανᾶς. ὁ δέ γε δομέστικος
and mortally struck — Branas — and at-least domestic
ἐκθύμως μαχόμενος καὶ σφοδρὰς τὰς κατὰ τῶν ἐναντίων
passionately fighting and violent the against the opponents
ἱππασίας ποιούμενος φηγῷ προσκεκρουκὼς ἀφῄρηται
charges making on-an-oak having-struck is-deprived
παραχρῆμα τὴν ψυχήν. τὸ δὲ ἐπίλοιπον τοῦ στρατοῦ
immediately of-the soul the and rest of-the army
ἄλλος ἀλλαχοῦ διεσπάρησαν. ταῦτ' οὖν μεμαθηκὼς ὁ
one elsewhere were-scattered these(-things) then having-learned the

αὐτοκράτωρ ἐπένθει μὲν τοὺς πεπτωκότας ἅπαντας ἰδίᾳ
autocrat mourned indeed the fallen all privately
καὶ καθ' ἕκαστον καὶ ὁμοῦ· ἐπὶ δὲ τῷ τοῦ δομεστίκου
and by each-one and together for and the of-the domestic
θανάτῳ μᾶλλον στενάζων κρουνοὺς ἠφίει δακρύων. ἐφίλει
death rather groaning streams he-let-go of-tears he-loved
γὰρ ἐξόχως τὸν ἄνδρα καὶ πρὸ τῆς ἀναρρήσεως. οὐ
for exceedingly the man even before the proclamation not
μέντοι διὰ ταῦτα ἀναπέπτωκεν, ἀλλὰ μεταπεμψάμενος
however because-of these(-things) he-lost-heart but having-summoned
τὸν Τατίκιον μετὰ χρημάτων ἱκανῶν ἐκπέμπει πρὸς
— Tatikios with money considerable sends to
Ἀδριανούπολιν, ἐφ' ᾧ τοῖς μὲν στρατιώταις τοὺς
Adrianople for which to-the indeed soldiers the
ἐπετείους διδόναι μισθούς, συλλέγειν δὲ καὶ ἀπανταχόθεν
yearly to-give pay to-collect and also from-everywhere
δυνάμεις, ἵνα στράτευμα ἀξιόμαχον αὖθις συστήσηται.
forces that an-army a-match-for-battle again he-might-form
τὸν δὲ Οὐμπερτόπουλον εἰς Κύζικον φρουρὰν ἀξιόμαχον
— and Houmbertopoulos to Kyzikos garrison a-match-for-battle
καταλιπόντα μετὰ μόνων τῶν Κελτῶν εἰς τὸν Τατίκιον
having-left with only the Celts to — Tatikios
γοργῶς ἐφθακέναι παρεκελεύσατο. οὗτος δὲ τοὺς Λατίνους
swiftly to-have-arrived he-ordered this-man and the Latins
καὶ τὸν Οὐμπερτόπουλον θεασάμενος καὶ τεθαρρηκώς, ἐπεὶ
and — Houmbertopoulos having-beheld and having-taken-courage since
καὶ ἱκανὸν προεφθάκει συλλέξασθαι στράτευμα, κατευθὺ
also considerable he-had-been-first to-collect army straight-for
Σκυθῶν ἐχώρει παραχρῆμα. καταλαβὼν δὲ τὰ περὶ
Scythians advanced immediately having-reached and the(-parts) about
τὴν Φιλιππούπολιν παρὰ τῷ χείλει τοῦ κατὰ τὸν Βλίσνον
— Philippopolis by the lip of-the along — Blisnos

ῥέοντος ποταμοῦ χάρακα πήγνυται. ἐπὰν δὲ τοὺς Σκύθας
flowing river palisade pitches when and the Scythians
ἐκ προνομῆς ἐπανερχομένους ἐθεάσατο λείαν πολλὴν καὶ
from foraging returning he-saw booty much and
δορυαλώτους συνεπαγομένους, μήπω σχεδὸν τὰς σκευὰς
spear-captives bringing-along not-yet nearly the baggage
εἴσω τοῦ χάρακος καταθέμενος ἱκανοὺς ἀποτεμόμενος
inside the palisade having-laid-up considerable having-cut-off
κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ἐκπέμπει αὐτός τε ὁπλισάμενος καὶ πάντας
against them sends-out he both having-armed and all
θωρήξασθαι κελεύσας τὰς φάλαγγας καταστησάμενος
to-arm having-ordered the phalanxes having-set
τοῖς προπεμφθεῖσι παρείπετο στρατιώταις. θεασάμενος δὲ
the sent-ahead followed soldiers having-beheld and
τοὺς Σκύθας μετὰ τῶν λαφύρων καὶ τῶν δορυαλώτων
the Scythians with the spoils and the spear-captives
τῷ ἐπιλοίπῳ στρατεύματι τῶν Σκυθῶν ἑνωθέντας κατὰ
with-the remaining army of-the Scythians united at
τὸν †πυρὸν ὄχθον, διχῇ τὸ στράτευμα διελὼν καὶ τὸ
the Pyros hill in-two the army having-divided and the
ἐνυάλιον ἑκατέρωθεν ἠχῆσαι κελεύσας σὺν ἀλαλαγμῷ καὶ
war-cry from-both-sides to-sound having-ordered with shouting and
βοῇ πολλῇ προσβάλλει τοῖς βαρβάροις. καὶ καρτερᾶς τῆς
cry much attacks the barbarians and strong the
μάχης γενομένης πίπτουσι τῶν Σκυθῶν οἱ πλείονες, πολλοὶ
battle having-become fall of-the Scythians the most many
δὲ καὶ διασπαρέντες ἐσώθησαν. ὁ δὲ τὴν λείαν πᾶσαν
and also having-scattered were-saved he and the booty all
ἀναλαβόμενος νικητὴς τὴν Φιλιππούπολιν καταλαμβάνει.
having-taken-up victor — Philippopolis reaches
κεῖθι δὲ τὸ ὁπλιτικὸν ἅπαν καταθέμενος ἐσκόπει, ὅθεν
there and the heavy-armed-force all having-laid-up he-considered whence

χρὴ καὶ ὅπως τοῖς βαρβάροις αὖθις προσβαλεῖν.
it-is-needful and how the barbarians again to-attack
ἀπειροπληθεῖς δὲ τὰς αὐτῶν γινώσκων δυνάμεις σκοποὺς
infinitely-numerous and the their knowing forces scouts
ἁπανταχόσε ἐξέπεμψεν, ἵν' ἐκεῖθεν ἔχοι τὰ
everywhere he-sent-out that from-there he-might-be-able the(-things)
κατὰ τοὺς Σκύθας συχνάκις μανθάνειν. ἐπαναδεδραμηκότες
concerning the Scythians frequently to-learn having-run-back
δὲ οἱ σκοποὶ πλῆθος βαρβάρων ἔλεγον πολὺ περὶ τὴν
and the scouts a-multitude of-barbarians said great about —
Βελιάτοβαν ἐνδιατρίβειν καὶ τὰ πέριξ λῄζεσθαι. καὶ
Beliatoba to-be-spending-time and the(-places) around to-plunder and
ὁ Ταtίκιος προσδόκιμον τὴν τῶν Σκυθῶν ἔλευσιν ἔχων
— Tatikios expected the of-the Scythians coming having
καὶ πρὸς τοσούτους μὴ ἀποχρώσας ἔχων δυνάμεις τὸ
and against so-many not sufficient having forces the
παράπαν ἀλύων τοῖς λογισμοῖς ἐν ἀμηχανίᾳ καθειστήκει.
at-all distraught in-the reasonings in helplessness was-set
ἀλλ' ὅμως καὶ τὸ σιδήριον ἔθηγε καὶ πρὸς μάχας
but nevertheless both the iron he-whetted and for battles
ἐθάρρυνε τὸ στράτευμα. καταλαβὼν δέ τις τὴν τῶν
encouraged the army having-arrived and someone the of-the
βαρβάρων κατ' αὐτοῦ ἔλευσιν διεμήνυε καὶ φθάνειν
barbarians against him coming reported and to-be-arriving
ἤδη διισχυρίζετο. ὁ δὲ εὐθὺς ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις ἦν καὶ
already insisted he and at-once in the arms was and
ἅπαν τὸ στράτευμα ἐξοπλίσας τὸν Εὖρον παραχρῆμα
all the army having-armed the Hebros immediately
διαπεράσας τὰς φάλαγγας ἰλαδὸν καταστήσας εἱστήκει
having-crossed the phalanxes by-squadrons having-set stood
πολέμου σχῆμα διατυπώσας· αὐτὸς δὲ τὸ μέσον εἶχε τῆς
of-war form having-drawn he and the middle held of-the

παρατάξεως. καὶ οἱ βάρβαροι Σκυθικῶς παραταξάμενοι
battle-line and the barbarians Scythian-fashion having-arrayed-themselves
καὶ τὰς αὐτῶν δυνάμεις πρὸς μάχην καταστησάμενοι
and the their forces for battle having-set
ἐῴκεσαν μὲν πόλεμον ἀναζητεῖν καὶ τοὺς ἀντιπάλους
seemed indeed war to-seek and the adversaries
ἐρεθίζειν οἷον πρὸς μάχην· ἐδεδίεσαν δὲ ὅμως καὶ
to-provoke as-it-were to battle they-feared but nevertheless and
ἄμφω τὰ στρατεύματα καὶ τὴν συμπλοκὴν ἀνεβάλλοντο, τὸ
both the armies and the engagement put-off the
μὲν Ῥωμαϊκὸν τὸ ὑπερπληθὲς τῶν Σκυθῶν ὑποπτῆσσον,
indeed Roman the superabundance of-the Scythians cowering-before
τὸ δὲ Σκυθικὸν τεθωρακισμένους ἅπαντας ὁρῶν τάς
the and Scythian armored all seeing the
τε σημαίας καὶ τὸ λαμπρὸν τῶν ἀμφίων καὶ τὴν
both standards and the brilliance of-the garments and the
ἐκεῖθεν ἀποπαλλομένην αἴγλην πρὸς τὴν ἀστρῴαν βολὴν
from-there shaken-off gleam against the starry beam
ἀντιστίλβουσαν. μόνοι δὲ ἁπάντων οἱ τολμητίαι Λατῖνοι
flashing-back alone and of-all the daring Latins
καὶ θρασεῖς τὴν μάχην προαρπάζειν ἤθελον θήγοντες
and bold the battle to-snatch-first wished whetting
ὀδόντας ὁμοῦ καὶ σιδήρια. ἀνέστελλε δ' αὐτοὺς ὁ Τατίκιος·
teeth together and irons held-back and them — Tatikios
ἀνὴρ γὰρ οὗτος εὐσταθὴς καὶ τοῦ μέλλοντος ῥᾷστα
a-man for this-one steady and the future most-easily
καταστοχάσασθαι δυνατός. ἱσταμένων οὖν ἀμφοτέρων τῶν
to-guess able standing then both the
στρατευμάτων καὶ οἷον ἑτέρου τὴν ἐξ ἑτέρου κίνησιν
armies and as-it-were the-one the from the-other movement
ἀπεκδεχομένου καὶ μηδ' οὑτινοσοῦν τῶν στρατιωτῶν
awaiting and not-even any-whatever of-the soldiers

κατὰ τὸ μεσαίχμιον ἐξ οὐδετέρου τῶν στρατευμάτων
in the no-man's-land from neither of-the armies
ἱππάσασθαι κατατολμῶντος, ἐπεὶ ἐν δυσμαῖς ἤδη ὁ ἥλιος
to-ride daring since at setting already the sun
ἦν, ἕκαστος τῶν στρατηγῶν ἐπὶ τὴν ἰδίαν παρεμβολὴν
was each of-the generals to the own camp
ἐπάνεισι. τούτου ἐπὶ δυσὶν ἡμέραις γεγονότος καὶ πρὸς
returns this for two days having-happened and for
μάχην εὐτρεπιζομένων τῶν δημαγωγῶν καὶ πολέμου
battle getting-ready the leaders and of-war
σχῆμα καθ' ἑκάστην διατυπούντων, ἐπεὶ μηδεὶς τὴν πρὸς
form by each(-day) drawing since no-one the against
ἕτερον ἀπεθάρρησε μάχην, κατὰ τὸ τῆς τρίτης περίορθρον
other dared battle at the of-the third early-dawn
ἀναχωροῦσιν οἱ Σκύθαι. αἰσθόμενος δὲ ὁ Τατίκιος τούτου
withdraw the Scythians having-perceived and — Tatikios this
παραχρῆμα κατόπιν αὐτῶν ἤλαυνεν· ἀλλὰ πεζός φασι
immediately behind them drove but a-footman they-say
παρὰ Λύδιον ἅρμα. προφθάσαντες γὰρ οἱ Σκύθαι διῆλθον
beside a-Lydian chariot having-been-first for the Scythians passed-through
τὴν Σιδηρᾶν· τέμπη δ' οὕτως εἰσὶ κατονομαζόμενα·
— Sidera valleys and thus are named
κἀκεῖσε δὲ τούτους μὴ καταλαβὼν ἀναλαβόμενος τὰς ὅλας
and-there and them not having-overtaken having-taken-up the whole
δυνάμεις πρὸς Ἀδριανούπολιν ἐπαναζεύγνυσι. καὶ τοὺς μὲν
forces to Adrianople returns and the indeed
Κελτοὺς αὐτοῦ που καταλιπών, τῶν δὲ στρατιωτῶν
Celts there somewhere having-left of-the and soldiers
οἴκοι πορευθῆναι ἕκαστον κελεύσας μετά τινος μερίδος
home to-go each having-ordered with some portion
τῆς στρατιᾶς αὐτὸς ἐπαναζεύγνυσι πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν.
of-the army he returns to the reigning(-city)

BOOK VII

XXIV · VICTORY AT KOULES

In spring Tzelgou comes through the passes above the Danube with eighty thousand Sauromatai, Scythians, and Dacians, and plunders around Charioupolis. Nicholas Maurokatakalon and Bempetziotes fall back to the little town of Koules, and the Scythians follow. Maurokatakalon attacks in three divisions. Tzelgou is killed, and many Scythians drown in the stream between Skoteinos and Koules. The victors are rewarded in the city and return under Adrian Komnenos, the new grand domestic of the west.

Ἔαρος δὲ ἐπιφανέντος διελθὼν ὁ Τζελγοὺ τὰ
spring and having-appeared having-passed-through — Tzelgou the
ὑπερκείμενα τοῦ Δανούβεως τέμπη (ἡγεμὼν δὲ οὗτος
overlying of-the Danube valleys leader and this-one
ὑπερέχων τοῦ Σκυθικοῦ στρατεύματος) σύμμικτον
surpassing of-the Scythian army mixed
ἐπαγόμενος στράτευμα ὡσεὶ χιλιάδας ὀγδοήκοντα ἔκ
bringing army about thousands eighty from
τε Σαυροματῶν καὶ Σκυθῶν καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ Δακικοῦ
both Sauromatai and Scythians and from the Dacian
στρατεύματος οὐκ ὀλίγους, ὧν ὁ οὕτω καλούμενος
army not few of-whom the so called
Σολομὼν δημαγωγὸς ἦν, τὰς κατὰ τὴν Χαριούπολιν
Solomon leader was the about — Charioupolis
παρακειμένας πόλεις ἐλῄζετο. καὶ εἰς αὐτὴν δὲ φθάσας
lying-near cities plundered and to itself and having-arrived
τὴν Χαριούπολιν καὶ λείαν πολλὴν ἀναλαβόμενος κατέλαβε
— Charioupolis and booty much having-taken-up reached
τόπον τινὰ Σκοτεινὸν καλούμενον. μεμαθηκὼς τοῦτο
place a-certain Skoteinos called having-learned this

ὁ Μαυροκατακαλὼν Νικόλαος καὶ ὁ Βεμπετζιώτης τὴν
— *Maurokatakalon Nicholas and — Bempetziotes the*
ἐπωνυμίαν ἀπὸ τῆς ἐνεγκαμένης λαχὼν μετὰ τῶν ὑπ᾽
surname from the land-that-bore-him having-got with the under
αὐτοὺς δυνάμεων καταλαμβάνουσι τὸ Πάμφυλον. ὁρῶντες
them forces reach — Pamphylon seeing
δὲ τοὺς περὶ τὰς κωμοπόλεις τῶν παρακειμένων χωρῶν
and those about the country-towns of-the nearby lands
πρὸς τὰς πόλεις καὶ τὰ φρούρια συνελαυνομένους διὰ
to the cities and the forts being-driven because-of
πτοίαν πολλὴν ἀπάραντες τοῦ οὑτωσὶ καλουμένου
terror much having-set-out from-the so called
Παμφύλου τόπου καταλαμβάνουσι τὸ τοῦ Κούλη πολίχνιον
Pamphylon place reach the — of-Koules little-town
τὸ ἅπαν συνεπαγόμενοι στράτευμα. ὄπισθεν δὲ τούτων
the whole bringing army behind and them
ἐρχόμενοι καὶ τὸν οὑτωσὶ καλούμενον κοπὸν τοῦ Ῥωμαϊκοῦ
coming and the so called kopos of-the Roman
στρατεύματος (λέξις δὲ αὕτη συνήθης τοῖς στρατιώταις)
army word and this customary for-the soldiers
εὑρόντες οἱ Σκύθαι παρείποντο ἰχνηλατοῦντες οἷον τὸ
having-found the Scythians followed tracking as-it-were the
Ῥωμαϊκὸν στράτευμα. αὐγαζούσης δὲ ἤδη τῆς ἡμέρας
Roman army dawning and already the day
τὰς ἰδίας ὁ Τζελγοὺ καθιστᾷ δυνάμεις καὶ τὸν κατὰ τοῦ
the own — Tzelgou sets forces and the against —
Μαυροκατακαλὼν ἐβουλεύετο πόλεμον. ἐκεῖνος δὲ κατὰ
Maurokatakalon was-planning war that-man and onto
τὸν ὑπερκείμενον τῆς πεδιάδος αὐχένα ἀνῆλθε μετά τινων
the overlying of-the plain ridge went-up with some
λογάδων κατασκοπήσων τὰς βαρβαρικὰς δυνάμεις. ὁρῶν δὲ
picked-men going-to-spy-out the barbarian forces seeing and

τὸ πλῆθος τῶν Σκυθῶν ἐσφάδαζε μὲν τὴν συμπλοκὴν τοῦ
the multitude of-the Scythians was-quivering indeed for-the engagement of-the
πολέμου, ἀνεβάλλετο δὲ τὴν Ῥωμαϊκὴν στρατιὰν κατανοῶν
war was-putting-off but the Roman army perceiving
μηδὲ τὸ πολλοστὸν σῴζουσαν τῆς τῶν βαρβάρων δυνάμεως.
not-even the smallest-fraction keeping of-the of-the barbarians force
ἐπανελθὼν δὲ μετὰ τῶν λογάδων τοῦ ὁπλιτικοῦ παντὸς
having-returned and with the picked-men of-the heavy-armed-force all
καὶ αὐτοῦ τοῦ Ἰωαννάκη διεσκοπεῖτο, εἰ χρὴ
and himself — of-Ioannakes be-considered whether it-is-needful
προσβαλεῖν τοῖς Σκύθαις. τῶν δὲ πρὸς τοῦτο ἐποτρυνόντων,
to-attack the Scythians those and to this urging
ἐπεὶ καὶ αὐτὸς πρὸς τοῦτο μᾶλλον κατάρροπος ἦν, τριχῇ
since also he to this rather inclined was in-three
διελὼν τὰς δυνάμεις καὶ τὸ ἐνυάλιον ἠχῆσαι κελεύσας
having-divided the forces and the war-cry to-sound having-ordered
ξυμμίγνυται τοῖς βαρβάροις. πολλοὶ μὲν οὖν τηνικαῦτα
engages the barbarians many indeed then at-that-time
τρωθέντες πίπτουσι, κτείνονται δὲ οὐχ ἧττους· καὶ αὐτὸς
wounded fall are-killed and not fewer and himself
ὁ Τζελγοὺ γενναίως μαχόμενος καὶ ὅλας συνταράσσων
— Tzelgou nobly fighting and whole confounding
φάλαγγας καιρίαν πληγεὶς ἀφῄρηται τὴν ψυχήν. οἱ πλείους
phalanxes mortally struck is-deprived-of the soul the most
δὲ ἐν τῷ φεύγειν πίπτοντες εἰς τὸν ἀναμεταξὺ τοῦ
and in the fleeing falling into the between the
καλουμένου Σκοτεινοῦ καὶ τοῦ Κούλη ῥύακα ἀπεπνίγοντο
called Skoteinos and — Koules stream were-drowned
ὑπ᾽ ἀλλήλων συμπατούμενοι. λαμπρὰν τοίνυν τὴν κατὰ
by each-other trampled brilliant therefore the over
τῶν Σκυθῶν νίκην ἀράμενοι οἱ τοῦ βασιλέως εἰσῆλθον εἰς
the Scythians victory having-won those of-the emperor entered into

τὴν μεγαλόπολιν. δωρεὰς δὲ καὶ τιμὰς ἀπὸ τοῦ βασιλέως
the great-city gifts and also honors from the emperor
δεξάμενοι κατὰ τὸ ἀνάλογον ὑπέστρεψαν μετὰ τοῦ
having-received according-to the proportion returned with the
τηνικαῦτα προχειρισθέντος μεγάλου δομεστίκου τῆς δύσεως
then appointed grand domestic of-the west
Ἀδριανοῦ τοῦ Κομνηνοῦ καὶ αὐταδέλφου τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος.
Adrian the Komnenos and own-brother of-the autocrat

XXV · THE ECLIPSE

The Scythians camp about the Ister and plunder the Roman lands as their own. Alexios, at Lardea, sends George Euphorbenos by water against Dristra and debates crossing the Haimos. Bryennios warns that the swifter horses will be tested in flight, but the young men, with Diogenes' sons, urge battle. Anna describes the porphyra and praises her husband the Caesar, a writer of history. The Scythians send envoys, and Alexios stakes their reception on a sign; an eclipse follows, and the envoys, sent under guard, escape.

Οὕτως δὲ τῶν κατὰ Μακεδονίαν καὶ Φιλιππούπολιν μερῶν
thus and from-the in Macedonia and Philippopolis parts
ἀπελαθέντες περὶ τὸν Ἴστρον αὖθις ἐπαναστρέψαντες
having-been-driven-out about the Ister again having-returned
ηὐλίζοντο καὶ ὥσπερ ἰδίαν τὴν ἡμεδαπὴν ἀνέτως πάντη
they-camped and as-if own the our-land freely everywhere
παροικοῦντες ἐλῄζοντο. ταῦτα ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀκούων
dwelling-beside they-plundered these(-things) the emperor hearing
οὐκ ἠνείχετο τῶν Ῥωμαϊκῶν ὁρίων εἴσω τοὺς Σκύθας
not endured the Roman borders inside the Scythians
παροικεῖν, ἅμα δὲ καὶ δεδιώς, μὴ διὰ τῶν στενωπῶν
to-dwell together and also fearing lest through the defiles

διελθόντες αὖθις χείρονα τῶν προτέρων ἀπεργάσωνται.
having-passed again worse-things than-the former they-might-work
ἔνθεν τοι καὶ παρεσκευασμένος καὶ καλῶς ἐξοπλίσας τὸ
whence surely also having-prepared and well having-equipped the
στράτευμα καταλαμβάνει τὴν Ἀδριανούπολιν καὶ ἐκεῖθεν
army reaches — Adrianople and from-there
πρὸς τὸν Λαρδέαν ἄπεισιν ἐν μεταιχμίῳ τῆς Διαμπόλεως
to — Lardea goes-away in the-space-between — Diampolis
καὶ Γολόης διακείμενον. κἀκεῖσε προχειρισάμενος ἡγεμόνα
and Goloe lying and-there having-appointed as-leader
Γεώργιον τὸν Εὐφορβηνὸν κατὰ τῆς Δρίστρας διαπόντιον
George the Euphorbenos against — Dristra by-water
ἐξέπεμψεν. ὁ δὲ αὐτοκράτωρ ἐπὶ τεσσαράκοντα ἡμέραις
he-sent-out the and autocrat for forty days
αὐτοῦ που ἐγκαρτερῶν τὰς ἀπανταχόθεν δυνάμεις
there somewhere staying the from-everywhere forces
μετεπέμπετο. ἱκανὸν δὲ συνειλοχὼς στράτευμα ἐβουλεύετο,
summoned considerable and having-collected army was-deliberating
εἰ χρὴ τὰς κλεισούρας διεληλυθότα τὴν μετὰ τῶν
whether it-is-needful the passes having-passed-through the with the
Σκυθῶν ἀναδέξασθαι μάχην, “οὐ χρὴ” λέγων “ἐκεχειρίαν
Scythians to-take-up battle not it-is-needful saying respite
ὅλως τοῖς Σκύθαις δίδοσθαι,” εἰκότως τοῦτο περὶ τουτωνὶ
at-all to-the Scythians to-be-given reasonably this about these-here
τῶν βαρβάρων σκοπήσας. οὐδὲ γὰρ ἀπό τινος καιροῦ
the barbarians having-considered not-even for from some season
τῶν τεττάρων καταρξάμεναι αἱ τῶν Σκυθῶν προνομαὶ
of-the four having-begun the of-the Scythians forays
εἰς τὸν ἐφεξῆς κατέληγον, θέρους τυχὸν εἰς τὸν καιρὸν
into the next ended in-summer perhaps into the season
τῆς ὀπώρας ἢ καὶ χειμῶνος ἐν φθινοπώρῳ παυσάμεναι·
of-the autumn or even of-winter in late-autumn having-ceased

οὐδὲ κύκλος εἷς ἐνιαύσιος τουτὶ τὸ κακὸν περιέγραψεν,
nor circle one yearly this the evil circumscribed
ἀλλ᾽ ἐφ᾽ ἱκανοῖς ἔτεσι τὰ Ῥωμαίων ἐκυμαίνετο,
but for considerable years the(-affairs) of-Romans surged
κἂν ἐκ πολλῶν ὀλίγων τινῶν αὐτοὶ ἐπεμνήσθημεν.
even-if from many few some we made-mention
οὐδὲ διπλοῖς ἐμερίσθησαν λογισμοῖς, κἂν ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ
not-even double they-were-divided reasonings even-if the autocrat
πολλάκις διὰ παντοίων τούτους ἐφείλκετο· ἀλλ᾽ οὐδέ
often through every-kind-of-means them drew but not-even
τις λαθὼν πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα ἀπηυτομόλησεν,
anyone having-escaped-notice to the emperor deserted
ἔτι ἀμετάθετον τέως τὴν γνώμην ἔχοντες. ὁ μὲν
still unchanged for-the-time the mind having — indeed
οὖν Νικηφόρος ὁ Βρυέννιος καὶ ὁ Μαυροκατακαλὼν
then Nikephoros the Bryennios and — Maurokatakalon
Γρηγόριος, ὃν τιμῆς τεσσαράκοντα χιλιάδων ὁ βασιλεὺς
Gregory whom at-a-price of-forty thousand the emperor
παρὰ τῶν Σκυθῶν ἑαλωκότα ἐπρίατο, οὐδαμῶς τὸν μετὰ
from the Scythians captured had-bought in-no-way the with
τῶν Σκυθῶν κατὰ τὸ Παρίστριον συνεχώρουν πόλεμον·
the Scythians in — Paristrion allowed war
ὁ δέ γε Παλαιολόγος Γεώργιος καὶ Νικόλαος ὁ
— and at-least Palaiologos George and Nicholas the
Μαυροκατακαλὼν καὶ ὁπόσοι ἄλλοι νέοι καὶ ἀκμάζοντες
Maurokatakalon and as-many-as other young and in-their-prime
τῷ τοῦ βασιλέως προσκείμενοι θελήματι ἐπέτρεπον τὰ
to-the of-the emperor attached will urged the
τέμπη τοῦ Αἵμου διελθεῖν καὶ κατὰ τὸ Παρίστριον
valleys of-the Haimos to-pass-through and in — Paristrion
τὴν μετὰ τῶν Σκυθῶν ἀναδέξασθαι μάχην. σὺν οἷς
the with the Scythians to-take-up battle with whom

καὶ οἱ δύο υἱεῖς Διογένους τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος, Νικηφόρος
also the two sons of-Diogenes the autocrat Nikephoros
τε καὶ Λέων, οἳ μετὰ τὸ ἀνενεχθῆναι αὐτὸν εἰς τὴν
both and Leo who after the to-be-raised him to the
τῆς βασιλείας περιωπὴν ἐν τῇ πορφύρᾳ ἐξ αὐτοῦ
of-the empire eminence in the porphyra from him
ἐτέχθησαν κἀντεῦθεν πορφυρογέννητοι προσηγορεύθησαν.
were-born and-thence born-in-the-purple were-called
ἡ δὲ πορφύρα οἴκημά τί ἐστι κατὰ τὰ ἀνάκτορα ἐξ
the and porphyra chamber a is in the palace from
αὐτῆς τῆς βάσεως μέχρι τῆς τοῦ ὀρόφου κινήσεως διὰ
the-very the base up-to the of-the roof spring through
τετραγώνου συμπληρούμενον σχήματος, ἐκεῖθεν δὲ εἰς
square completed form from-there and into
πυραμίδα ἀποτελευτῶν, ἀφορῶν μὲν ὡς πρὸς θάλατταν
a-pyramid ending looking indeed as toward sea
πρὸς τὸν λιμένα, οὗπερ οἱ πέτρινοι βόες καὶ οἱ λέοντες,
toward the harbor where the stone oxen and the lions
διὰ μαρμάρων δὲ τό τε ἔδαφος κατέστρωτο καὶ οἱ
with marble and the both floor was-paved and the
τοῖχοι περιεστέλλοντο, οὐ τῶν τυχόντων οὐδὲ τῶν ἄλλων
walls were-faced not of-the ordinary nor of-the others
ὁπόσοι εὐποριστότεροι τῶν τιμιωτέρων λίθων εἰσίν, ἀλλ'
as-many-as more-easily-procured of-the more-precious stones are but
ἐξ ὧν ἀπὸ Ῥώμης οἱ ἀνέκαθεν βασιλεῖς ἐπεσύροντο.
of which from Rome the from-of-old emperors brought
ἔστι δὲ οὗτος ὁ λίθος τὸ ὅλον εἰπεῖν πορφυροῦς δι'
is and this the stone the whole to-say purple through
ὅλου καὶ οἷον στίγματά τινα ψαμμοειδῆ λευκὰ αὐτῷ
whole and as-it-were spots some sandy white over-it
περιτρέχουσιν. ἐκ τουτωνὶ τῶν λίθων, οἶμαι, πορφύραν τὸ
run-round from these-here the stones I-think porphyra the

οἴκημα οἱ ἀνέκαθεν ὠνόμασαν. ἀλλ᾽ ὅπερ ἔλεγον, ὡς οὖν
chamber the from-of-old named but what I-was-saying as then
ἡ σάλπιγξ μέγα ἠχήσασα ἅπαντας τὴν πρὸς τὸν Αἷμον
the trumpet loudly having-sounded all the to the Haimos
ὁδὸν οἱονεὶ κατὰ τῶν Σκυθῶν προὐτρέπετο, ὁ Βρυέννιος
road as-if against the Scythians urged — Bryennios
πολλὰ κωλύων τὸν αὐτοκράτορα τοῦ ἐγχειρήματος, ὡς
much preventing the autocrat from-the undertaking as
οὐκ ἔπειθεν, ἐπιφωνηματικῶς φησιν "ἴσθι, ὦ βασιλεῦ,
not he-persuaded exclaiming says know O emperor
εἰ τὸν Αἷμον διέλθητε, τοὺς δρομικωτέρους τῶν ἵππων
if the Haimos you-pass-through the swifter of-the horses
δοκιμάσεις." ἐρωτήσαντος δέ τινος, τί ὁ λόγος οὑτοσὶ
you-will-test having-asked and someone what the saying this-here
βούλεται, "ἐν τῷ φεύγειν" φησὶν "ἅπαντας." οὗτος γὰρ ὁ
means in the fleeing he-says all this-one for the
ἀνήρ, εἰ καὶ τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς δι᾽ ἀποστασίαν ἐξεκέκοπτο,
man if even the eyes for rebellion had-been-put-out
ἀλλὰ τό γε εἰς στρατηγικωτάτην βουλὴν καὶ παράταξιν
but as-to at-least in most-strategic counsel and battle-array
δεινότατος τῶν πολλῶν καὶ ποικιλώτατος ἐγνωρίζετο.
most-skilled of-the many and most-versatile was-known
ὅπως δὲ τῶν ὀμμάτων ὁ προμνημονευθεὶς Βρυέννιος
how and of-the eyes the aforementioned Bryennios
ἀπεστέρητο δι᾽ ἀποστασίαν ἢ ἐπανάστασιν κατὰ τοῦ
was-deprived for rebellion or uprising against the
αὐτοκράτορος Βοτανειάτου καὶ ὅτι παρὰ τοῦ Κομνηνοῦ
autocrat Botaneiates and that by — Komnenos
Ἀλεξίου τότε μεγάλου δομεστίκου τυγχάνοντος τῶν δυτικῶν
Alexios then grand domestic being of-the western
τε καὶ ἀνατολικῶν στρατευμάτων κατασχεθεὶς τῷ Βορίλῳ
both and eastern armies seized — to-Borilos

παρεδόθη τὰς ὄψεις ἀβλαβεῖς ἔχων, τοὺς ἐθέλοντας
was-handed-over the eyes unharmed having those wishing
λεπτομερέστερον μαθεῖν παραπέμπομεν εἰς τὸν μέγιστον
in-more-detail to-learn we-refer to the greatest
Καίσαρα. ὁ γὰρ Καῖσαρ οὗτος τοῦ μὲν Ἀλεξίου ἤδη
Caesar the for Caesar this — indeed of-Alexios already
τὰ Ῥωμαίων διέποντος σκῆπτρα γαμβρὸς ἐγεγόνει, τοῦ
the of-Romans administering scepters son-in-law had-become —
δὲ Βρυεννίου ἐκείνου ἀπόγονος. ἀλλ' ἐνταυθοῖ γενομένη
and of-Bryennios that descendant but here having-come
συγχέομαι τὴν ψυχὴν καὶ πάθους ἐμπίπλαμαι. σοφὸς
I-am-confounded in-the soul and with-grief am-filled wise
μὲν γὰρ τὴν γνώμην ἦν οὗτος ὁ ἀνὴρ καὶ τὸν λόγον
indeed for in-the mind was this the man and in-the speech
σοφώτατος. πάντα γὰρ καὶ ῥώμη καὶ τάχος καὶ κάλλος
most-wise all for both strength and speed and beauty
σώματος καὶ ἁπλῶς ἐς ταὐτὸ συνελθόντα ὅσα ψυχῆς
of-body and simply into the-same having-come-together as-many-as of-soul
καὶ σώματος ἀγαθά, τὸν ἄνδρα ἐκεῖνον ἐκόσμησεν. ἕνα γὰρ
and of-body goods the man that adorned one for
αὐτὸν ἐν τοῖς ἅπασιν ἐξοχώτατον καὶ ἡ φύσις ἀνεβλάστησε
him in the all-things most-outstanding both the nature made-grow
καὶ ὁ θεὸς ἐδημιούργησε. καὶ οἷον τὸν Ἀχιλλέα ὕμνησεν
and — God fashioned and as — Achilles hymned
Ὅμηρος ἐν τοῖς Ἀχαιοῖς, τοιοῦτον ἄν τις εἶπε
Homer among the Achaeans such — anyone would-say
τὸν ἐμὸν Καίσαρα ἐν τοῖς ὑπὸ τὸν ἥλιον ἅπασιν
the my Caesar among the under the sun all
ἀναπεφηνότα. οὗτος τοίνυν ὁ Καῖσαρ καὶ τὰ στρατιωτικὰ
having-appeared this therefore the Caesar also the military-arts
γεγονὼς ἄριστος οὐκ ἀμελετήτως ἔσχε πρὸς λόγους, ἀλλὰ
having-become best not unpracticed was toward letters but

πᾶσαν βίβλον ἀναπτυξάμενος καὶ εἰς πᾶσαν ἐπιστήμην
every book having-unrolled and into every science
ἐγκεκυφὼς πολλὴν σοφίαν ἐκεῖθεν ἠρύσατο, ὅση τε
having-pored much wisdom thence drew as-much-as both
ἡμετέρα καὶ ὅση ποτὲ ἡμετέρα. ὕστερον δὲ καὶ πρὸς
ours and as-much-as once ours later and also to
συγγραφὰς ἐξέδωκεν ἑαυτὸν καὶ δὴ καὶ σύγγραμμα ἐξ
writings gave himself and indeed also a-writing by
ἐπιταγῆς τῆς ἐμῆς δεσπότιδος καὶ μητρός, τῆς βασιλίδος
command of-the my mistress and mother the empress
φημὶ Εἰρήνης, ἐσχεδίασεν ἄξιον λόγου καὶ ἀναγνώσεως
I-mean Irene composed worthy of-mention and of-reading
ἱστορίαν συντεταχὼς τῶν πρὸ τοῦ ἀναδήσασθαι τὰς
a-history having-composed of-the before the to-bind-on the
τῆς βασιλείας ἡνίας πράξεων τοὐμοῦ πατρός, ἐν ᾗ
of-the empire reins deeds of-my father in which
τὰ κατὰ τὸν Βρυέννιον ἀκριβέστερον ἐπεξέρχεται
the(-affairs) concerning — Bryennios more-exactly he-goes-through
καὶ ὁμοῦ τάς τε τοῦ προγόνου συμφορὰς ὡς ἀληθῶς
and together the both of-the ancestor misfortunes as truly
ἀφηγήσατο καὶ τὰς τοῦ πενθεροῦ ἀριστείας συνέγραψε
narrated and the of-the father-in-law prowess wrote-up
καὶ οὐκ ἂν ἐψεύσατο καὶ περὶ ἀμφοῖν ὡς τοῦ
and not — he-would-have-lied also about both as of-the(-one)
μὲν ἀγχιστεύς, τοῦ δὲ καθ' αἷμα προσήκων. καὶ
indeed a-relative-by-marriage of-the(-other) and by blood related also
μεμνήμεθα τούτων κἂν τοῖς προτέροις λόγοις τῆσδε τῆς
we-have-mentioned these even-in the former words of-this the
ἱστορίας. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὸν Εὐφορβηνὸν Γεώργιον μεθ' ἱκανῆς
history since and — Euphorbenos George with considerable
στρατιᾶς καὶ στόλου διὰ τοῦ Ἴστρου ἐρχόμενον κατ'
army and fleet through the Ister coming against

αὐτῶν οἱ Σκύθαι ἐθεάσαντο (ὁ δὲ ποταμὸς οὗτος ῥεῖ
them the Scythians saw the and river this flows
μὲν ἄνωθεν ἀπὸ τῶν δυτικῶν ὀρῶν, ἐκδίδοται δὲ διὰ
indeed from-above from the western mountains is-discharged and through
τῶν καταρρακτῶν καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα διὰ πέντε τινῶν
the cataracts and after these through five some
στομάτων εἰς τὸν Πόντον τὸν Εὔξεινον, μέγας τε καὶ
mouths into the Pontus the Euxine great both and
πολὺς διὰ πολλῆς πεδιάδος ἐρχόμενος καὶ ναυσίπορος
much through much plain coming and navigable
ὤν, ὡς καὶ τῶν πλοίων τὰ μέγιστά τε καὶ φορτηγότατα
being so-that also of-the boats the greatest both and most-cargo-bearing
τούτῳ τῷ ποταμῷ ἐπινήχεσθαι· οὐ μίαν δὲ προσηγορίαν
on-this the river to-float not one and name
λαμβάνει, ἀλλὰ τὰ ἀνωτέρω μὲν καὶ πρὸς τὰς πηγὰς
it-takes but the higher-parts indeed and toward the springs
Δάνουβις ὄνομα τούτῳ, τὰ κάτω δὲ καὶ πρὸς τὰς
Danube name for-it the(-parts) below and also toward the
ἐκβολὰς Ἴστρος ἐπονομάζεται), ἐπειδὴ τοίνυν διὰ τούτου
outlets Ister it-is-named since therefore through this
τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὸν Εὐφορβηνὸν Γεώργιον ἡ τῶν Σκυθῶν
the river — Euphorbenos George the of-the Scythians
μερὶς ἐθεάσατο, ἐξ ἠπείρου δὲ καὶ τὸν αὐτοκράτορα
portion saw from mainland and also the autocrat
μετὰ στρατεύματος πλείστου αὐτοὺς ἤδη καταλαμβάνοντα
with army very-great them already reaching
μεμαθήκεσαν, ὡς ἀμήχανον τὴν μεθ' ἑκατέρων μάχην
they-had-learned as impossible the with both battle
εὑρίσκοντες τρόπον ἐπεζήτουν, δι' οὗ γένοιτ' ἂν αὐτοῖς
finding a-way they-sought through which might-be — for-them
τὸ ὀξὺ τοῦ κινδύνου διεκφυγεῖν. πέμπουσι τοίνυν πρέσβεις
the sharpness of-the danger to-escape they-send therefore envoys

ἑκατὸν πρὸς τοῖς πεντήκοντα Σκύθας ἐπερωτῶντας τάχα
hundred besides the fifty Scythians asking perhaps
τὰ περὶ εἰρήνης, ἅμα δὲ καὶ ἀπειλήν τινα μεταξὺ
the(-terms) about peace together and also a-threat some between
τῶν λόγων παρενείροντας, ἔστιν οὗ καὶ ὑπισχνουμένους,
the words weaving-in there-is where also promising
εἰ ταῖς τούτων αἰτήσεσι κατανεῦσαι θελήσειε, μεθ' ἱππέων
if to-the their requests to-assent he-should-wish with horsemen
χιλιάδων τριάκοντα συμμαχεῖν τῷ αὐτοκράτορι, ὁπηνίκα
thousands thirty to-fight-alongside the autocrat when
βούλοιτο. ὁ δὲ αὐτοκράτωρ τὴν ἀπάτην διαγνοὺς
he-might-wish the and autocrat the deceit having-discerned
τῶν Σκυθῶν καὶ ὅτι τὸν ὑπόγυον κίνδυνον φεύγοντες
of-the Scythians and that the imminent danger fleeing
τοιαῦτα διαπρεσβεύονται, καὶ εἰ ἀδείας ὅλως τύχοιεν,
such-things they-negotiate and if license at-all they-should-get
τὸν ὑποκρυπτόμενον τῆς αὐτῶν κακίας σπινθῆρα εἰς
the hidden of-the their wickedness spark into
πυρσὸν ἀνάψουσι μέγαν, τὴν πρεσβείαν οὐκ ἐδέχετο.
blaze they-will-kindle great the embassy not he-received
τούτων δὲ τῶν λόγων συνειρομένων Νικόλαός τις
these and the words being-strung-together Nicholas a-certain
τῶν ὑπογραμματευόντων τῷ αὐτοκράτορι προσελθὼν
of-the under-secretaries to-the autocrat having-come
πρὸς τὸ οὖς καὶ ὑποψιθυρίσας φησί "κατὰ ταυτηνὶ τὴν
to the ear and having-whispered says on this-here the
ἡμέραν, βασιλεῦ, ἔκλειψιν τοῦ ἡλιακοῦ φωτὸς προσδόκει
day emperor eclipse of-the solar light expect
γενήσεσθαι". τοῦ δὲ διαπιστοῦντος ἐκεῖνος ἐπώμνυτο μὴ
to-happen him and disbelieving that-man swore not
διαψεύσασθαι. ὁποῖος δὲ ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ γοργὸς περὶ τὰς
to-be-mistaken such-as and the autocrat quick about the

ἐνθυμήσεις, ἐπιστραφείς φησι τοῖς Σκύθαις "θεῷ τὴν κρίσιν
thoughts having-turned says to-the Scythians to-God the judgment
ἀνατίθημι· καὶ εἰ μέν τι σημεῖον ἐξ οὐρανοῦ κατὰ
I-refer and if indeed some sign from heaven on
ταυτηνὶ τὴν ἡμέραν ἔκδηλον γένηται, εἴσεσθε πάντως,
this-here the day manifest happens you-will-know certainly
ὡς ἐγὼ μὲν ὕποπτον οὖσαν τὴν ὑμῶν πρεσβείαν εὐλόγως
that I indeed suspect being the your embassy reasonably
οὐ δέχομαι, ὅτι οὐκ ἐπ' ἀληθείας οἱ φαλαγγάρχαι ὑμῶν
not receive that not in truth the phalanx-commanders your
τὰ περὶ εἰρήνης διαπρεσβεύονται· εἰ δ' οὖν, διαμαρτὼν
the(-terms) about peace negotiate if but then having-missed
αὐτὸς τοῦ στοχασμοῦ ἐλεγχθήσομαι." δύο οὔπω παρῆλθον
I of-the guess I-shall-be-refuted two not-yet had-passed
ὧραι, καὶ τὸ ἡλιακὸν φῶς ἐπιλέλοιπεν, ὡς ἀφεγγῆ τὸν
hours and the solar light failed so-that lightless the
ὅλον δίσκον γενέσθαι ὑποδραμούσης αὐτὸν τῆς σελήνης.
whole disk to-become having-run-under it the moon
καὶ οἱ μὲν Σκύθαι τηνικαῦτα ἔκθαμβοι γεγόνασιν, ὁ δέ
and the indeed Scythians then astounded became the and
γε αὐτοκράτωρ παραδίδωσιν αὐτοὺς Λέοντι τῷ Νικερίτῃ
at-least autocrat hands-over them to-Leo the Nikerites
(ἐκτομίας δὲ οὗτος καὶ τοῖς στρατιωτικοῖς νηπιόθεν
a-eunuch and this-one also in-the military-affairs from-childhood
ἐνδιατρίψας καὶ ἀναφανεὶς δοκιμώτατος) ἐπισκήψας μεθ'
having-spent-time and having-appeared most-approved having-enjoined with
ἱκανῶν διασῶσαι τούτους μέχρι τῆς βασιλίδος τῶν
considerable(-men) to-bring-safely them as-far-as the queen of-the
πόλεων. ὁ δὲ μάλα προθύμως τῆς πρὸς τὴν
cities he and very eagerly the(-road) to the(-city)
Κωνσταντίνου ἥψατο. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι διὰ παντὸς τῆς
of-Constantine took the and barbarians through all the

ἑαυτῶν φροντίζοντες ἐλευθερίας, ἐπὰν τὴν μικρὰν Νίκαιαν
own caring-for freedom when the Little Nicaea
ἔφθασαν, νυκτὸς ἀναιροῦσι τοὺς φύλακας ἀμελῶς περὶ τὴν
they-reached at-night kill the guards carelessly about the
αὐτῶν διατεθέντας φυλακὴν καὶ διά τινων σκολιωτέρων
their disposed guard and through some more-crooked
ἀτραπῶν ἐπαναστρέφουσι πρὸς τοὺς πέμψαντας. ὁ δὲ
paths return to those having-sent — and
Νικερίτης μετὰ τριῶν μόγις σωθεὶς καταλαμβάνει τὸν
Nikerites with three hardly saved reaches the
αὐτοκράτορα εἰς Γολόην.
autocrat at Goloe

XXVI · DEFEAT AT DRISTRA

Alexios marches through the Sidera to Pliskoba and takes Dristra but not its two citadels. Against advice he offers battle, his kin about him and six picked men guarding his person. Leo Diogenes falls charging the wagons, and Adrian barely escapes. Scythian reinforcements break the Romans. Alexios, holding the omophorion of the Mother of God as a standard, cuts down his attackers, refuses to flee with the rout, and breaks through the Scythian line. Wounded, he hides the omophorion and escapes to Goloe and Beroe.

Ταῦτα μεμαθηκὼς ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ πτοηθείς, μὴ
these(-things) having-learned the emperor and having-been-frightened lest
οἱ πρέσβεις ἅπαν τὸ Σκυθικὸν στράτευμα κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ
the envoys all the Scythian army against him
ἐρεθίσαντες ἐπεισπέσωσιν αὐτῷ, οὐκ ὀνείρου δεηθεὶς πρὸς
having-provoked should-fall-upon him not of-a-dream having-needed to
μάχην αὐτὸν ἐποτρύνοντος καθάπερ ποτὲ τὸν Ἀτρέως
battle him urging as once the of-Atreus

Ἀγαμέμνονα, ἀλλ᾽ ἀναζέσας πρὸς μάχην καὶ τὴν Σιδηρᾶν
Agamemnon but having-boiled-up for battle also — Sidera
μετὰ τῶν ταγμάτων διελθὼν τὸν χάρακα περὶ τὴν
with the units having-passed-through the palisade about the
Βιτζίναν ἐπήξατο· ποταμὸς δὲ οὗτος ἀπὸ τῶν παρακειμένων
Bitzina pitched a-river and this from the neighboring
ὀρῶν ῥέων. πολλοὶ δὲ τηνικαῦτα χορταγωγίας χάριν
mountains flowing many and then of-foraging for-the-sake
τοῦ χάρακος πορρωτέρω γενόμενοι ἀνῃρέθησαν, πολλοὶ
from-the palisade farther having-gone were-killed many
δὲ καὶ κατεσχέθησαν. ὁ δὲ αὐτοκράτωρ κατὰ τὸ
and also were-captured the and autocrat at the
περίορθρον ταχὺ καταλαμβάνει τὴν Πλίσκοβαν κἀκεῖθεν
early-dawn quickly reaches — Pliskoba and-from-there
εἰς ἀκρολοφίαν τινὰ τοῦ Συμεῶνος καλουμένην ἄνεισιν,
to hill-top a-certain — of-Symeon called goes-up
ἣ καὶ Βουλευτήριον τῶν Σκυθῶν ἐγχωρίως ὠνομάζετο.
which also Council-House of-the Scythians locally was-named
τὰ αὐτὰ δὲ πάλιν τοῖς τῶν χρειωδῶν συγκομιδῆς
the same-things and again to-those of-the necessities collection
χάριν τῆς παρεμβολῆς μακρὰν γενομένοις συνέβαινε.
for-the-sake from-the camp far having-gone happened
τῇ δὲ μετ᾽ αὐτὴν παρά τινα ποταμὸν ἔρχεται ἀγχοῦ
on-the and after it by some river he-comes near
τῆς Δρίστρας ῥέοντα καὶ ὡσεὶ σταδίους εἴκοσι πρὸς τοῖς
— Dristra flowing and about stades twenty besides the
τέσσαρσιν ἀπέχοντα κἀκεῖσε τὰς σκευὰς καταθέμενος τὸν
four distant and-there the baggage having-laid-up the
χάρακα πήγνυται. ἐπεισπεσόντες δὲ ἀθρόον οἱ Σκύθαι
palisade pitches having-fallen-upon and in-a-body the Scythians
τῇ τοῦ βασιλέως σκηνῇ ἐξ ἑτέρου ἀνεῖλον μὲν τῶν
on-the of-the emperor tent from the-other-side killed indeed of-the

ψιλῶν τοῦ στρατοῦ ἱκανούς, κατέσχον δὲ καί τινας
light-armed of-the army a-good-number held and also some
τῶν ἐκθυμότερον ἀγωνισαμένων Μανιχαίων. καὶ θόρυβος
of-the more-passionately having-contended Manichaeans and uproar
ἐπὶ τούτοις τοῦ στρατεύματος ἦρτο πολὺς καὶ σύγχυσις,
at these-things of-the army arose great and confusion
ὡς καὶ τὴν βασιλικὴν καταπεσεῖν σκηνὴν ἐξ αἰτίας τῶν
so-that also the imperial to-fall-down tent from cause of-the
ἀτάκτως θεόντων ἱππέων. ὅπερ τοῖς μὴ εὔνως πρὸς τὸν
disorderly running horsemen which to-those not well toward the
αὐτοκράτορα διακειμένοις κακὸς οἰωνὸς ἔδοξεν. ἀλλ' ὁ
autocrat disposed an-evil omen seemed but the
μὲν βασιλεὺς τοὺς ἐπεισπεσόντας βαρβάρους διά τινος
indeed emperor the having-fallen-upon barbarians through some
στρατιᾶς ἐξελάσας πόρρω που τῆς σκηνῆς, ὅπως μὴ
force having-driven-off far somewhere from-the tent so-that not
θορυβοῖεν, εὐθὺς ἐποχηθεὶς ἐκεῖθεν καὶ καταστείλας τὸν
they-might-disturb at-once having-mounted from-there and having-calmed the
θόρυβον σὺν αὐταῖς δυνάμεσι μετ' εὐταξίας τὴν πορείαν
uproar with the-very forces with good-order the march
ποιησάμενος καταλαμβάνει τὴν Δρίστραν (πόλις δὲ αὕτη
having-made reaches — Dristra city and this
τῶν περὶ τὸν Ἴστρον διακειμένων περιφανής) πολιορκήσων
of-the about the Ister lying conspicuous going-to-besiege
ταύτην δι' ἑλεπόλεων. καὶ δῆτα ἔργου ἁψάμενος καὶ
it with siege-engines and indeed work having-taken-up and
πανταχόθεν ταύτην πολιορκῶν καὶ καταρράξας μίαν τῶν
from-all-sides it besieging and having-broken-down one of-the
ταύτης πλευρῶν εἰσῄει μετὰ παντὸς τοῦ στρατεύματος.
its sides he-entered with all the army
αἱ δὲ δύο ἀκροπόλεις τῆς ῥηθείσης πόλεως ἔτι παρὰ
the and two citadels of-the said city still by

τῶν συγγενῶν κατείχοντο τοῦ καλουμένου Τατοῦ, ἐκείνου
the kinsmen were-held of-the called Tatos that-man
προφθάσαντος ἀπελθεῖν ἐφ' ᾧ ἐπενδύσασθαι Κομάνους καὶ
having-been-first to-go-away for which to-put-on Cumans and
ἐπαναστρέψαι εἰς ἀρωγὴν τῶν Σκυθῶν. ὃς ἐν τῷ ἐκεῖθεν
to-return for aid of-the Scythians who in the from-there
ὑποχωρεῖν συντασσόμενος τοῖς ἰδίοις ἔφη ὡς "ἐγὼ μὲν
withdrawing taking-leave-of the own he-said that I indeed
ἀκριβῶς οἶδα τὸν βασιλέα τουτὶ τὸ κάστρον πολιορκῆσαι
exactly know the emperor this-here the fortress to-besiege
μέλλοντα. ἐπὰν οὖν αὐτοὶ τοῦτον θεάσησθε τὴν πεδιάδα
being-about when then you him see the plain
ταύτην καταλαβόντα, σπεύσατε ὑμεῖς προκαταλαβεῖν εἰς
this having-reached hasten you to-seize-first to
τὸν ὑπερκείμενον αὐχένα ἐπικαιρότατον ὄντα τῶν ἄλλων
the overlying ridge most-advantageous being of-the others
κἀκεῖσε τὸν χάρακα πήξασθαι, ὡς μὴ ἐκεχειρίαν ἔχειν τὸν
and-there the palisade to-pitch so-that not respite to-have the
αὐτοκράτορα πολιορκεῖν τὸ φρούριον, ἀλλὰ καὶ ὄπισθεν
autocrat to-besiege the fort but also behind
ὅμως ἔχειν τὸν νοῦν τὴν ἐξ ὑμῶν ὑφορώμενον βλάβην.
nevertheless to-have the mind the from you suspecting harm
ὑμεῖς δὲ πανήμεροι καὶ παννύχιοι κατ' αὐτοῦ πέμποντες
you and all-day and all-night against him sending
ἀμοιβαδὸν στρατιώτας μὴ ἐνδίδοτε". ὁ δὲ αὐτοκράτωρ
in-turn soldiers not cease the and autocrat
στοχασάμενος τοῦ δέοντος καταλιπὼν τὴν τῶν ἀκροπόλεων
having-guessed the needful having-left the of-the citadels
πολιορκίαν κἀκεῖθεν ἐξελθὼν περί τινα ῥύακα ἀγχοῦ
siege and-from-there having-gone-out about some stream near
τοῦ Ἴστρου διακείμενον τὸν χάρακα ἐπήξατο βουλευόμενος
the Ister lying the palisade pitched deliberating

εἰ χρὴ προσβαλεῖν τοῖς Σκύθαις. ὁ μὲν οὖν
whether it-is-needful to-attack the Scythians — indeed then
Παλαιολόγος καὶ ὁ Μαυροκατακαλὼν Γρηγόριος τὸν μετὰ
Palaiologos and — Maurokatakalon Gregory the with
τῶν Πατζινάκων ἀνεβάλλοντο πόλεμον, ὁπλισαμένους δὲ
the Patzinaks were-putting-off war armed and
συνεβούλευον τὴν μεγάλην Πρισθλάβαν καταλαβεῖν. "οἱ
they-advised the Great Pristhlava to-reach the
γὰρ Σκύθαι οὕτω πορευομένους ἡμᾶς καθωπλισμένους μετ'
for Scythians thus marching us armed with
εὐταξίας θεώμενοι οὐδαμῶς τὸν καθ' ἡμῶν ἀποθαρρήσουσι
good-order seeing in-no-way the against us will-dare
πόλεμον" ἔλεγον. "εἰ δὲ καὶ οἱ ἱππεῖς ἄτερ τῶν ἁμαξῶν
war they-said if and also the horsemen without the wagons
τοῦ πολέμου κατατολμήσειαν, εὖ ἴσθι, ἡττηθήσονται καὶ
the war should-dare well know they-will-be-defeated and
ἡμεῖς τοῦ λοιποῦ ὀχύρωμα ἐρυμνότατον τὴν μεγάλην
we for-the rest a-stronghold most-strongly-fortified the Great
ἕξομεν Πρισθλάβαν." πόλις δὲ αὕτη περιφανὴς περὶ
we-will-have Pristhlava city and this conspicuous about
τὸν Ἴστρον διακειμένη, ποτὲ μὲν οὔτ' οὔνομα τοῦτο
the Ister lying once indeed not name this
ἔχουσα τὸ βαρβαρικόν, ἀλλ' Ἑλληνίζουσα περὶ τὴν
having the barbarian but being-Greek in the
προσηγορίαν, μεγάλη πόλις καὶ οὖσα καὶ λεγομένη· ἀφ'
name great city both being and being-called from
οὗ δὲ Μόκρος ὁ τῶν Βουλγάρων βασιλεὺς καὶ οἱ ἐξ
when and Mokros the of-the Bulgarians king and those from
ἐκείνου γενόμενοι καὶ προσέτι γε Σαμουὴλ ὁ τελευταῖος
him born and moreover at-least Samuel the last
τῆς Βουλγαρικῆς δυναστείας, καθάπερ ὁ Σεδεκίας τῶν
of-the Bulgarian dynasty as — Zedekiah of-the

Ἰουδαίων, τῆς ἑσπέρας κατέδραμον, σύνθετον ἐκτήσατο
Jews of-the west overran compound acquired
τὴν προσηγορίαν ἀπό τε τῆς Ἑλληνικῆς σημασίας
the name from both the Greek meaning
μεγάλη ἐπονομαζομένη καὶ τὴν ἀπὸ τῶν Σθλαβογενῶν
Great being-named and the from the Slav-born
ἐπισυρομένη λέξιν, μεγάλη Πρισθλάβα πανταχόθεν τούτοις
dragging-in word Great Pristhlava everywhere by-these
φημιζομένη. "ταύτην τοίνυν κρησφύγετον ἔχοντες" οἱ
being-called it therefore as-refuge having those
ἀμφὶ τὸν Μαυροκατακαλὼν ἔλεγον "καὶ ὁσημέραι δι'
about — Maurokatakalon said and daily through
ἀκροβολισμῶν τοῖς Σκύθαις προσβάλλοντες οὐ παυσόμεθα
skirmishes the Scythians attacking not we-shall-cease
ζημιοῦντες αὐτοὺς μηδ' ὅλως τούτους τῆς οἰκείας
harming them not-even at-all them from-the own
παρεμβολῆς χορταγωγίας χάριν ἢ τῆς τῶν χρειωδῶν
camp of-foraging for-the-sake or of-the of-the necessities
συγκομιδῆς συγχωροῦντες ἐξεληλυθέναι". τούτων οὖν τῶν
collection allowing to-have-gone-out these then the
λόγων τριβομένων ἀποβάντες οἱ τοῦ Διογένους υἱοὶ τῶν
words being-spent having-dismounted the — of-Diogenes sons from-the
σφετέρων ἵππων, οἷα νέοι καὶ τῆς τῶν μόθων κακότητος
own horses as young and of-the of-the turmoils evil
ἄγευστοι, ὅ τε Νικηφόρος καὶ ὁ Λέων, τοὺς χαλινοὺς
untasted — both Nikephoros and — Leo the bridles
ἀφελόμενοι πλήξαντές τε αὐτοὺς κατὰ τῶν κέγχρων
having-taken-off having-struck and them into the millet
ἐξήλασαν ἐπειπόντες "μὴ δέδιθι, βασιλεῦ· αὐτοὶ γὰρ
drove-out having-said not fear emperor we for
τοὺς ἀκινάκεις σπασάμενοι διαμελίσομεν αὐτούς." ὁ δὲ
the scimitars having-drawn will-cut-to-pieces them the and

βασιλεὺς φιλοκινδυνότατος ὢν καὶ προαρπάζειν πεφυκὼς
emperor most-fond-of-danger being and to-snatch-first being-inclined
τὰς μάχας οὐδ᾽ εἰς νοῦν ὅλως τῶν ἀπειργόντων αὐτὸν
the battles not-even into mind at-all of-those restraining him
τοὺς λόγους ἐβάλετο, ἀλλὰ τὴν βασιλικὴν σκηνὴν καὶ
the words cast but the imperial tent and
τὰς σκευὰς ἁπάσας ἀναθέμενος τῷ Κουτζομίτῃ Γεωργίῳ
the baggage all having-entrusted — to-Koutzomites George
πρὸς τὸ Βέτρινον ἐξέπεμψε, τὸ δὲ στράτευμα ἐπέταξε μὴ
to — Betrinon sent-off the and army he-ordered not
λύχνον μηδὲ πῦρ ἀνάψαι τὸ παράπαν κατὰ τὴν ἑσπέραν
lamp nor fire to-light the at-all on the evening
ἐκείνην, ἀλλὰ τοὺς ἵππους κατέχοντας ἐγρηγορέναι μέχρις
that but the horses holding to-keep-awake until
ἡλίου ἀνατολῆς. αὐτὸς δὲ κατὰ τὸ περίορθρον ἔξεισι τῆς
of-sun rising he and at the early-dawn goes-out from-the
παρεμβολῆς καὶ τὰς δυνάμεις διελὼν καὶ τὰς φάλαγγας
camp and the forces having-divided and the phalanxes
εἰς πολέμου καταστησάμενος σχῆμα παραθέων ἐθεᾶτο
into of-war having-set form running-alongside he-viewed
τὸ στράτευμα. εἶτα τὴν μέσην τῆς παρατάξεως χώραν
the army then the middle of-the battle-line place
εἶχεν αὐτὸς συμπληρουμένην ἀπό τε τῶν ἐξ αἵματος καὶ
held he filled from both those of blood and
ἀγχιστείας προσηκόντων αὐτῷ συγγενῶν καὶ τἀδελφοῦ
marriage related to-him kinsmen and of-his-brother
Ἀδριανοῦ τῶν Λατίνων τῷ τότε ἡγεμονεύοντος καὶ
Adrian of-the Latins at-the then(-time) commanding and
ἑτέρων γενναίων ἀνδρῶν. τοῦ δέ γε ἀριστεροῦ κέρως
other noble men the and at-least left wing
κατῆρχε Νικηφόρος Καῖσαρ ὁ Μελισσηνὸς ὁ ἐπ᾽ ἀδελφῇ
commanded Nikephoros Caesar the Melissenos the on sister

γαμβρὸς αὐτοῦ· κατὰ δὲ τὸ δεξιὸν ἡγεμόνες ἵσταντο ὅ
brother-in-law his on and the right leaders stood —
τε Κασταμονίτης καὶ ὁ Τατίκιος· τῶν δὲ ἐθνικῶν ὅ τε
both Kastamonites and — Tatikios of-the and foreigners — both
Οὐζᾶς καὶ ὁ Καρατζᾶς οἱ Σαυρομάται. ἐξ δὲ τὸν ἀριθμὸν
Ouzas and — Karatzas the Sauromatai six and the number
διελόμενος τὴν αὐτοῦ φυλακὴν ἐπέτρεψε πρὸς αὐτόν τε
having-picked the his guard he-entrusted to him both
ὁρᾶν παραγγείλας καὶ μηδενὶ τὸ παράπαν προσεσχηκέναι
to-look having-ordered and to-no-one the at-all to-have-paid-attention
ἑτέρῳ, τούς τε δύο υἱούς φημι Ῥωμανοῦ τοῦ Διογένους
other the both two sons I-mean of-Romanos the Diogenes
καὶ Νικόλαον τὸν Μαυροκατακαλὼν πολλὴν ἐκ μακροῦ
and Nicholas the Maurokatakalon much from long
πεῖραν τῶν πολέμων ἐσχηκότα καὶ τὸν Ἰωαννάκην καὶ
experience of-the wars having-had and — Ioannakes and
τὸν ἄρχοντα Βαραγγίας Ναμπίτην καὶ Γουλήν τινα
the archon of-Varangia Nampites and Goules a-certain
καλούμενον πατρῷον θεράποντα. ἀλλὰ καὶ οἱ Σκύθαι σχῆμα
called paternal servant but also the Scythians form
πολέμου διατυπώσαντες ἐκ φυσικῆς ἐπιστήμης πολεμεῖν
of-war having-drawn from natural knowledge to-make-war
εἰδότες καὶ κατὰ φάλαγγα ἵστασθαι καὶ λόχους καθίσαντες
knowing and in phalanx to-stand and ambushes having-set
καὶ τὰς τάξεις τοῖς τακτικοῖς δεσμήσαντες σφίγμασι καὶ
and the ranks with-the tactical having-bound fastenings and
καταπυργώσαντες οἱονεὶ ταῖς ἁρμαμάξαις τὸ στράτευμα
having-towered as-it-were with-the covered-wagons the army
ἰλαδὸν κατὰ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος ἤεσαν καὶ ἠκροβολίζοντο
by-squadrons against the autocrat went and skirmished
πόρρωθεν. ὁ δὲ αὐτοκράτωρ συναρμόσας ταῖς ἴλαις
from-afar the and autocrat having-fitted-together with-the squadrons

τὸ στρατόπεδον τῶν ὁπλιτῶν οὐδενὶ προπηδᾶν ἐνετέλλετο
the camp of-the hoplites to-no-one to-leap-forward enjoined
οὐδὲ τὸν συνασπισμὸν λύειν, μέχρις ἂν ἀγχέμαχοι τοῖς
nor the locking-of-shields to-break until — hand-to-hand with-the
Σκύθαις γένωνται· εἶτ' ἐπειδὰν τὸ μεσαίχμιον ἀποχρῶν
Scythians they-should-become then when the no-man's-land sufficient
πρὸς χαλινὸν ἕνα ἀμφοτέρων τῶν στρατευμάτων κατ'
for bridle one of-both the armies against
ἀλλήλων ἰεμένων θεάσοιντο, ὁμόσε κατὰ τῶν ἐναντίων
each-other rushing they-should-see together against the opponents
χωρῆσαι. οὕτω τοίνυν τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος ἑτοιμαζομένου
to-advance thus therefore the autocrat preparing
πόρρωθεν ἀνεφάνησαν οἱ Σκύθαι σὺν αὐταῖς ἁρμαμάξαις
from-afar appeared the Scythians with the-very covered-wagons
καὶ γυναιξὶ καὶ παισὶν ἐρχόμενοι. συρραγέντος δὲ τοῦ
and women and children coming having-broken-out and the
πολέμου ἀπὸ πρωΐας μέχρι δείλης ἑσπέρας ἀνδροκτασία
war from morning until late-afternoon evening slaughter
γέγονε πολλὴ ἐξ ἑκατέρων τῶν μερῶν πιπτόντων συχνῶν.
became great from both the sides falling many
ὁπηνίκα καὶ Λέων ὁ τοῦ Διογένους υἱὸς σφοδρότερον
when also Leo the — of-Diogenes son more-violently
κατὰ τῶν Σκυθῶν ἐξιππασάμενος καὶ πλέον τοῦ
against the Scythians having-ridden-out and more than-the
δέοντος πρὸς τὰς ἁμάξας παρασυρεὶς καιρίαν πληγεὶς
needful to the wagons carried-away mortally struck
πέπτωκεν. Ἀδριανὸς δὲ ὁ τοῦ κρατοῦντος ἀδελφός,
fell Adrian and the of-the ruler brother
ὁ καὶ τὴν τῶν Λατίνων ἡγεμονίαν ἐμπεπιστευμένος
the(-one) also the of-the Latins command entrusted
τότε, τὴν τῶν Σκυθῶν ὁρμὴν ἀνύποιστον θεασάμενος
then the of-the Scythians onset unbearable having-beheld

ὅλους ῥυτῆρας ἐνδοὺς καὶ μέχρι τῶν ἁμαξῶν ἑαυτὸν
whole reins having-given and as-far-as the wagons himself
ἐμβαλὼν ἔπειτα γενναίως ἀγωνισάμενος μετὰ ἑπτὰ καὶ
having-thrown then nobly having-contended with seven and
μόνων ἐπανέστρεψε τῶν ἄλλων ἁπάντων παρὰ τῶν
only returned of-the others all by the
Σκυθῶν ἀποσφαγέντων, τῶν δὲ κατασχεθέντων. τῆς δὲ
Scythians slaughtered of-those and held of-the and
μάχης ἐπὶ τρυτάνης ἱσταμένης ἔτι ἐκθύμως ἄμφω τῶν
battle on balance standing still passionately both the
στρατευμάτων μαχομένων, ἐπεὶ λοχαγοί τινες τῶν Σκυθῶν
armies fighting since captains some of-the Scythians
μετὰ τριάκοντα πρὸς ταῖς ἓξ χιλιάδων πόρρωθεν ἐρχόμενοι
with thirty besides the six thousands from-afar coming
ἀνεφάνησαν, οὐκέτι στέγειν πρὸς τοσούτους οἱ Ῥωμαῖοι
appeared no-longer to-hold-out against so-many the Romans
ἔχοντες τὰ νῶτα τηνικαῦτα διδόασιν. ὁ μέντοι βασιλεὺς
being-able the backs then give the however emperor
προβέβλητο τῆς οἰκείας δυνάμεως καὶ ξιφηφόρος εἱστήκει·
stood-before of-the own force and sword-bearing stood
τῇ ἑτέρᾳ δὲ τῶν χειρῶν τῆς τοῦ λόγου μητρὸς τὸ
with-the other and of-the hands of-the of-the Word mother the
ὠμόφορον σημαίαν κατέχων ἵστατο μεθ' ἱππέων γενναίων
omophorion standard holding stood with horsemen noble
ἀνδρῶν εἴκοσι καταλειφθείς, Νικηφόρου φημὶ τοῦ υἱοῦ
men twenty left Nikephoros I-mean the son
τοῦ Διογένους καὶ Μιχαὴλ πρωτοστράτορος τοῦ Δούκα
— of-Diogenes and Michael protostrator the Doukas
καὶ ἀδελφοῦ τῆς Αὐγούστης, συμπαρόντων καὶ πατρῴων
and brother of-the Augusta being-present-with-him and paternal
θεραπόντων. εἰσπηδήσαντες δέ τινες πεζοὶ Σκύθαι τρεῖς
servants having-leapt and some foot Scythians three

οἱ μὲν αἱροῦσιν αὐτὸν ἑκατέρωθεν τοῦ χαλινοῦ,
the(-ones) indeed seize him from-either-side of-the bridle
ὁ δ' ἀπὸ τῆς κνήμης τῆς δεξιᾶς. ὁ δὲ τοῦ ἑνὸς τὴν
the(-other) and by the shin the right he and of-the one the
χεῖρα εὐθὺς ἀποτέμνει, ἕτερον δὲ τὸν ἀκινάκην ἀνατείνας
hand at-once cuts-off the-other and the scimitar having-raised
καὶ ἐμβριμησάμενος ὀπισθόρμητον ἐποίησε· τὸν δὲ τῆς
and having-roared turned-to-flight made the and by-the
κνήμης τοῦτον κατέχοντα πλήττει κατὰ τῆς κόρυθος. τὴν
shin him holding he-strikes on the helmet the
δὲ φορὰν τοῦ ξίφους ἐλαφροτέραν ἐπήνεγκεν οὐδ' ὅλῃ
and stroke of-the sword lighter he-brought nor with-whole
χειρὶ τὴν πληγὴν ἐποίει πτοούμενος μὴ δυεῖν θάτερον αὐτῷ
hand the blow he-made fearing lest of-two one to-him
συμβαίη τῆς σφοδροτέρας φορᾶς τῶν ξιφῶν ὡς ἐπίπαν
might-happen the more-violent stroke of-the swords as on-the-whole
διολισθαινούσης καὶ ἢ τὸν ἑαυτοῦ πόδα πλήξῃ
slipping-off and either the own foot he-should-strike
ἢ τὸν ἵππον, ἐν ᾧ ἐπωχεῖτο, καὶ οὕτως ἁλώσιμος
or the horse on which he-rode and thus capturable
τοῖς ἐχθροῖς γένηται. διὰ τοῦτο καὶ δευτέραν αὐτῷ
to-the enemies he-should-become because-of this also a-second on-him
γοργῶς ἐπάγει πληγὴν μετὰ νουνεχείας τὰς τῆς χειρὸς
swiftly brings blow with sense the of-the hand
κινήσεις ποιούμενος. ἐν πάσαις γὰρ ταῖς πράξεσι καὶ τοῖς
movements making in all for the deeds and the
λόγοις καὶ τοῖς κινήμασι τὸν λόγον εἶχεν ἐπιστατοῦντα
words and the motions the reason he-had presiding
οὔθ' ὑπὸ θυμοῦ ἐκφερόμενος οὔτ' ἐπιθυμίαις ὑποσυρόμενος.
neither by anger carried-away nor by-desires drawn-on
τῆς κόρυθος δὲ προαναδραμούσης τῇ προτέρᾳ πληγῇ
of-the helmet and having-run-up-first at-the former blow

τῇ τοῦ Σκύθου κεφαλῇ ψιλῇ τὸ ξίφος προσέπαισεν.
on-the of-the Scythian head bare the sword struck
ὁ δ' εὐθὺς ἄφωνος κατὰ γῆς ἔκειτο. τὴν οὖν ἄμετρον
he and at-once speechless on ground lay the then measureless
φυγὴν τῶν ταγμάτων θεασάμενος ὁ πρωτοστράτωρ (αἱ
flight of-the units having-beheld the protostrator the
φάλαγγες γὰρ ἤδη διεσπάσθησαν φευγόντων ἀκρατῶς)
phalanxes for already were-torn-apart fleeing headlong
"ἵνα τί", φησι "βασιλεῦ, τοῦ λοιποῦ ἐνταῦθα πειρᾷ σὺ
that what he-says emperor for-the rest here do-you-try you
ἐγκαρτερεῖν; ἵνα τί τὴν ζωὴν προδίδως ἀφειδήσας
to-hold-out that what the life do-you-betray having-spared-nothing
παντάπασι τῆς ἑαυτοῦ σωτηρίας"; ὁ δὲ βέλτιον γενναίως
entirely of-the own safety he and better nobly
μαχομένους ἀποθανεῖν ἔφη ἢ ἀγεννές τι πεποιηκότας
fighting to-die he-said than ignoble something having-done
σωθῆναι. ὁ δὲ πρωτοστράτωρ "εἰ μὲν τῶν κοινῶν
to-be-saved the and protostrator if indeed of-the commoners
εἷς τις ὢν ταῦτ' ἔλεγες, ἐπαίνου ἦς ἄξιος·
one someone being these(-things) you-said of-praise you-would-be worthy
εἰ δὲ ὁ σὸς θάνατος κοσμικὸν ἐπάγει τὸν κίνδυνον,
if and the your death universal brings the danger
ἵνα τί μὴ τὸ βέλτιον αἱρῇ; εἰ γὰρ σωθείης,
that what not the better do-you-choose if for you-should-be-saved
καὶ αὖθις πολεμήσων νικήσεις". τὸν οὖν κίνδυνον ὑπὲρ
also again going-to-fight you-will-conquer the then danger over
κεφαλῆς ἤδη ἱστάμενον ὁρῶν ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ ἀναισχύντως
head already standing seeing the autocrat shamelessly
τῶν Σκυθῶν αὐτῷ προσβαλόντων καὶ τὰς σῳζούσας
the Scythians him attacking and the saving
ἀπεγνωκὼς ἐλπίδας "καιρὸς ἤδη τῆς ἑαυτῶν σὺν θεῷ
having-despaired-of hopes time already of-the own with God

πεφροντικέναι σωτηρίας", εἶπε "πλὴν ἀλλ' οὐ τὴν
to-have-taken-thought-for safety he-said only but not the
αὐτὴν τοῖς φεύγουσι πορεύεσθαι δεῖ, ὅπως μὴ οἱ
same-road as-the fleeing to-go it-is-necessary so-that not those
τοὺς ἡμετέρους διώκοντες ἐν τῷ ἐπανέρχεσθαι συναντῶσιν
the ours pursuing in the returning meet
ἡμῖν, ἀλλὰ χρὴ" ὑποδείξας τῇ χειρὶ τοὺς κατὰ τὸ
us but it-is-needful having-pointed with-the hand the at the
ἄκρον τῆς παρατάξεως ἱσταμένους Σκύθας "κατ' αὐτῶν
tip of-the battle-line standing Scythians against them
ἐξιππάσασθαι ὡς σήμερον γεννηθέντας καὶ τεθνηξομένους,
to-ride-out as today born and going-to-die
καὶ οὕτως ὄπισθεν θεοῦ ἐπαρήγοντος τῆς τῶν Σκυθῶν
and thus behind God helping of-the of-the Scythians
γεγονότες παρατάξεως ἐφ' ἑτέραν ἅτραπον βαδιούμεθα".
having-become battle-line onto other path we-shall-go
ταῦτ' εἰπὼν καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ἐποτρύνας πρῶτος αὐτὸς
these(-things) having-said and the others having-urged first he
ὡς πῦρ κατὰ τῶν Σκυθῶν ἴεται καὶ τὸν συναντήσαντα
like fire against the Scythians rushes and the having-met-him
παίει· ὁ δ' εὐθὺς ἐξεκυλίσθη τῆς ἕδρας. καὶ οὕτω τοῦ
strikes he and at-once rolled-off from-the seat and thus of-the
Σκυθικοῦ συνασπισμοῦ διασχισθέντος μετὰ τῶν ἀμφ' αὐτὸν
Scythian locked-shields having-been-split with those about him
τὴν ὄπισθεν τῶν Σκυθῶν κατέλαβε χώραν. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα
the behind the Scythians reached place but these(-things)
μὲν ὁ βασιλεύς· τὸν δὲ πρωτοστράτορα ὀλισθήσαντος
indeed the emperor the and protostrator having-slipped
αὐτῷ τοῦ ἵππου κατενεχθῆναι συμβέβηκεν. εἷς δέ τις
for-him the horse to-be-brought-down it-happened one and someone
τῶν αὐτοῦ θεραπόντων παραχρῆμα τὸν ἴδιον αὐτῷ
of-the his servants immediately the own to-him

δίδωσιν ἵππον. ἐφθακὼς δὲ τὸν αὐτοκράτορα οὐκέτι
gives horse having-overtaken and the autocrat no-longer
αὐτοῦ χωρίζεται οὐδὲ βῆμα ποδὸς ἐξόχως τοῦτον ποθῶν.
from-him is-separated not-even a-step of-foot exceedingly him longing-for
συγχύσεως δὲ πολλῆς οὔσης τῶν μὲν φευγόντων, τῶν
confusion and much being of-some indeed fleeing of-others
δὲ διωκόντων φθάνουσιν αὖθις ἕτεροι Σκύθαι τὸν βασιλέα.
and pursuing reach again other Scythians the emperor
καὶ ὃς παραχρῆμα ἐπιστραφεὶς πλήττει τὸν διώκοντα,
and he immediately having-turned strikes the pursuer
οὐκ αὐτὸν δὲ μόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἄλλους, ὡς οἱ τότε
not him and only but also others as those then
συμπαρόντες διενίσταντο, ἀνεῖλεν. εἷς δέ τις Σκύθης
present-with-him affirmed killed one and a-certain Scythian
Νικηφόρον τὸν Διογένην ἐξ ὀπισθίων φθάσας πλήττειν
Nikephoros the Diogenes from behind having-come-first to-strike
ἔμελλεν. ὃν ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ θεασάμενος πρὸς τὸν Διογένην
was-about whom the autocrat having-beheld to — Diogenes
ἐφώνει "ὅρα καὶ ὄπισθεν, Νικηφόρε". ὁ δὲ γοργῶς
called-out see also behind Nikephoros he and swiftly
ἐπιστραφεὶς πλήττει αὐτὸν κατὰ τῆς ὄψεως. καὶ ὡς
having-turned strikes him in the face and as
τοῦ βασιλέως ἐν ὑστέροις χρόνοις διηγουμένου ἠκούομεν,
the emperor in later times narrating we-heard
οὐδέποτε τάχος τοιοῦτον ἢ περιδεξιότητα ἀνδρὸς ἐθεάσατο.
never speed such or dexterity of-man he-saw
καὶ ὡς "εἰ μή" φησιν "ἐγὼ τὴν σημαίαν κατεῖχον κατ'
and how if not he-says I the standard was-holding on
ἐκείνην τὴν ἡμέραν, ὑπὲρ τὰς ἰδίας τρίχας πλήξας ἂν
that the day more-than the own hairs having-struck —
Σκύθας ἀνεῖλον" οὐ περιαυτολογῶν. τίς γὰρ τοσοῦτον
Scythians I-would-have-killed not boasting who for so-much

εἰς ἔσχατον ταπεινότητος ἤλασεν; ἀλλὰ γὰρ ὁ λόγος καὶ
to the-utmost of-humility drove but for the account and
τῶν πραγμάτων ἡ φύσις αὐτὸν ἠνάγκαζε καὶ τὰ
of-the affairs the nature him compelled also the(-things)
κατ᾽ αὐτὸν πρὸς ἡμᾶς κυκλόθεν τοὺς οἰκείους αὐτῷ
concerning him to us around the own to-him
ἐνίοτε ἐκλαλεῖν καὶ ταῦτα παρ᾽ ἡμῶν πολλὰ βιαζόμενον·
sometimes to-speak-out and these(-things) by us much forced
πρὸς δὲ τοὺς ἔξωθεν οὐδεὶς τῶν ἁπάντων ἤκουσεν
to and those outside no-one of-the all heard
ὑπέρκομπόν τι τὸν αὐτοκράτορα διηγούμενον. ἀνέμου δὲ
boastful anything the autocrat narrating of-wind and
σφοδροῦ πνεύσαντος καὶ τῶν Πατζινάκων προσβαλόντων
violent having-blown and the Patzinaks having-attacked
οὐκέτι εὐτόνως εἶχε τὴν σημαίαν κατέχειν. ἐπεὶ δέ τις
no-longer vigorously could the standard to-hold since and some
Σκύθης μεταχειρισάμενος δόρυ μακρὸν δι᾽ ἀμφοτέρων τῶν
Scythian having-handled spear long with both the
χειρῶν ἔπληξεν αὐτὸν κατὰ τοῦ γλουτοῦ, διέτρησε μὲν
hands struck him on the buttock pierced indeed
τὸν χρῶτα οὐδαμῶς, ὀδύνην δὲ ἐνεποίησεν ἀνήκεστον,
the skin in-no-way pain and caused incurable
ἥτις καὶ ἐπὶ πολλοῖς διέμεινεν αὐτῷ ἔτεσι. διὰ τοῦτο
which also for many lasted to-him years because-of this
ἐπὶ τοσοῦτον βιασθεὶς τὴν σημαίαν περιστείλας ἔν τινι
to so-much hard-pressed the standard having-wrapped-up in some
τῶν χαμαιδρύων κατατίθησιν, ὡς μηκέτι ὁρᾶσθαι παρά
of-the ground-oaks deposits so-that no-longer to-be-seen by
του· αὐτὸς δὲ διὰ τῆς νυκτὸς διεσώθη εἰς Γολόην. καὶ
anyone he and through the night was-saved to Goloe and

μεθ᾽ ἡμέρας καταλαβὼν τὴν Βερόην διεκαρτέρει πρίασθαι
by day having-reached — Beroe persevered to-ransom
τοὺς δορυαλώτους ἐθέλων.
the spear-captives wishing

XXVII · PALAIOLOGOS IN THE MOUNTAINS

In the rout Palaiologos loses his horse and takes one from Leo of Chalcedon, who then vanishes, a vision Anna leaves unexplained. With a hundred and fifty soldiers he charges the Patzinaks, loses his horse again, and wanders eleven days in the mountains until a soldier's widow shelters him and her sons show him the way. The Scythian leaders want to kill their prisoners, but the commons want to sell them, and Melissenos, a captive himself, sends Alexios word; Alexios ransoms them with money brought from the capital.

Ὁ δὲ Παλαιολόγος ἐν τῷ φεύγειν τῶν ταγμάτων
— and Palaiologos in the fleeing the units
ἡττηθέντων κατὰ τὴν ἡμέραν ἐκείνην κατενεχθεὶς τοῦ
having-been-defeated on the day that having-been-thrown from-the
ἵππου ἀπώλεσε τοῦτον· ἐν ἀμηχανίᾳ δὲ ὢν καὶ τὸν
horse lost it in helplessness and being and the
κίνδυνον ἱστάμενον ὑπὲρ κεφαλῆς ὁρῶν περιαθρήσας, εἴ
danger standing over head seeing having-looked-around if
που γένοιτό οἱ τοῦτον θεάσασθαι, ὁρᾷ τὸν τῆς
somehow it-might-be-granted to-him it to-see sees the —
Χαλκηδόνος πρόεδρον Λέοντα, περὶ οὗ ἄνωθεν ἐμνήσθημεν,
of-Chalcedon president Leo about whom above we-made-mention
τὴν ἱερατικὴν στολὴν ἠμφιεσμένον ἵππον ἐπιδιδόντα αὐτῷ, ἐν
the priestly robe clothed a-horse giving to-him on
ᾧ ἐπιβὰς εἴχετο τῆς φυγῆς· τὸν δὲ ἱεροπρεπῆ ἐκεῖνον
which having-mounted he-held-to the flight the and holy that

ἄνδρα οὐκέτι τεθέαται. ἦν δ' ἄρα οὗτος παρρησιαστικὸς
man no-longer he-saw was and after-all this-one outspoken
τὴν ψυχὴν καὶ ἀληθῆ χαρακτῆρα ἐμφαίνων ἀρχιερέως,
in-the soul and true character showing of-a-high-priest
φρονήματος μέντοι ἁπλοωτέρου καὶ τὸν ζῆλον ἔστιν οὗ
of-mind however more-simple and the zeal there-is where
οὐ κατ' ἐπίγνωσιν ἐνδεικνύμενος καὶ οὐδὲ τῶν ἱερῶν
not according-to knowledge showing and not-even of-the sacred
κανόνων ἀκριβῆ γνῶσιν εἶχε. διὸ καὶ ἅπερ ἄνωθεν
canons exact knowledge had wherefore also the-things-which above
εἴρηται συνεπεπτώκει αὐτῷ λυπηρὰ καὶ τοῦ θρόνου
has-been-said befell him grievous and from-the throne
ἐξέπεσεν. ἐξείχετο δὲ τοῦ ἀνδρὸς ὁ Παλαιολόγος ἀεὶ καὶ
he-fell clung and to-the man — Palaiologos always and
διαφερόντως ἐτίμα διὰ τὸ περιὸν αὐτῷ τῆς ἀρετῆς.
exceedingly honored-him because-of the superabundance in-him of-the virtue
εἴτε οὖν διὰ τὴν θερμοτάτην πίστιν τὴν εἰς τὸν ἄνδρα
whether then because-of the most-fervent faith the toward the man
τοῦτον ὁ Παλαιολόγος θείας ἔτυχεν ἐπιφανείας, εἴτ' ἄλλο
this — Palaiologos divine obtained manifestation or other
τι ἦν τῆς προνοίας ἀπόρρητον κατὰ τουτονὶ τὸν
something was of-the providence secret concerning this-here the
ἀρχιερέα τὸ φαινόμενον, οὐκ ἔχω λέγειν. διωκόμενος δὲ ὑπὸ
high-priest the appearance not I-can say being-pursued and by
τῶν Πατζινάκων εἰς ἑλώδη τόπον καὶ συνηρεφῆ εἰσελθὼν
the Patzinaks into marshy place and overgrown having-entered
περιτυγχάνει στρατιώταις τὸν ἀριθμὸν ἑκατὸν πρὸς τοῖς
meets soldiers the number hundred besides the
πεντήκοντα. περικυκλούντων δὲ αὐτοὺς τῶν Σκυθῶν, ὡς
fifty surrounding and them the Scythians as
ἐν ἀμηχανίᾳ τὰ κατ' αὐτοὺς ἑώρων πρὸς τοσούτους
in helplessness the(-affairs) concerning them they-saw against so-many

ἀντέχειν μὴ ἐξισχύοντες, τῆς τοῦ Παλαιολόγου ἐξήρτηντο
to-hold-out not being-able on-the — of-Palaiologos hung
γνώμης πάλαι τούτου τὸ γενναῖον καὶ ἀκατάσειστον τῆς
counsel long-ago his the nobility and unshakableness of-the
γνώμης γινώσκοντες. αὐτὸς δὲ κατὰ τῶν Σκυθῶν ὁρμῆσαι
counsel knowing he and against the Scythians to-rush
συνεβούλευε τῆς κατ᾽ αὐτοὺς παντάπασιν ἀφειδήσαντας
advised of-the concerning them wholly having-spared-nothing
σωτηρίας κἀντεῦθεν οἶμαι ταύτην ὠνήσασθαι. "χρὴ
safety and-thence I-think it to-buy it-is-needful
δὲ δι᾽ ὅρκων ταυτηνὶ τὴν βουλὴν ἐμπεδῶσαι, ὡς
and through oaths this-here the counsel to-confirm so-that
τηνικαῦτα μιᾶς γνώμης ἁπάντων γεγονότων τῆς κατὰ
then of-one mind all having-become of-the against
τῶν Σκυθῶν ὁρμῆς μηδένα ἀπολειφθῆναι τὴν σωτηρίαν
the Scythians onset no-one to-be-left-behind the safety
καὶ τὸν κίνδυνον ἴδιον ἑκάστου λογισαμένου." ὁ μὲν οὖν
and the danger own of-each reckoning — indeed then
Παλαιολόγος σφοδρὰν τὴν ἵππασίαν ποιησάμενος παίει τὸν
Palaiologos violent the charge having-made strikes the
αὐτῷ πρώτως ὑπαντιάσαντα· ὁ δ᾽ εὐθὺς σκοτοδινιάσας
him first having-met he and at-once having-grown-dizzy
κατὰ γῆς ἔκειτο. τῶν δὲ λοιπῶν μετὰ διψυχίας τὴν
on earth lay of-the and rest with doublemindedness the
ἵππασίαν ποιησαμένων οἱ μὲν πεπτώκασιν, οἱ δὲ αὖθις
charge having-made some indeed fell others and again
ὡς εἰς φωλεὸν τῷ συνηρεφεῖ ἄλσει παλινοστήσαντες
as into a-lair to-the overgrown grove having-returned
ἑαυτοὺς ἔσωσαν κρυπτόμενοι. ἐν δὲ τῷ τὸν Παλαιολόγον
themselves saved hiding in and the — Palaiologos
ἀκρολοφίαν τινὰ καταλαμβάνειν ὑπὸ τῶν Πατζινάκων
hill-top a-certain reaching by the Patzinaks

αὖθις διωκόμενον συνέβη τὸν ἵππον πληγέντα καταπεσεῖν,
again being-pursued it-happened the horse struck to-fall-down
αὐτὸν δὲ τηνικαῦτα εἰς τὸ παρακείμενον ὄρος εἰσδῦναι.
him and then into the nearby mountain to-slip-into
ἀναζητῶν δὲ τὴν σῴζουσαν ὁδόν, ἐπεὶ ῥᾳδίως μὴ
seeking and the saving road since easily not
ἐξῆν αὐτῷ ταύτην εὑρηκέναι, ἐπὶ ἕνδεκα ἡμέραις
it-was-possible for-him it to-have-found for eleven days
πλανώμενος περιτυγχάνει γυναικί τινος στρατιώτου
wandering he-meets a-wife of-a-certain soldier
χήρᾳ καὶ ἐπιξενίζεται παρ᾽ αὐτῆς ἐφ᾽ ἡμέραις τισί·
a-widow and is-entertained by her for days some
σωθέντες δὲ τοῦ κινδύνου οἱ ταύτης υἱεῖς τὴν σῴζουσαν
saved and from-the danger the her sons the saving
τούτῳ ὁδὸν ὑποδεικνύουσιν. ἀλλὰ τοιαῦτα μὲν τὰ τῷ
to-him road point-out but such indeed the(-things) —
Παλαιολόγῳ συμπεσόντα· οἱ δέ γε τῶν Σκυθῶν λογάδες
to-Palaiologos having-befallen the and at-least of-the Scythians picked-men
οὓς κατεῖχον δορυαλώτους ἀποκτεῖναι ἐβουλεύοντο, τὸ
whom they-held spear-captive to-kill were-planning the
δὲ πλῆθος τοῦ κοινοῦ τὸ παράπαν τοῦτο οὐ συνεχώρει
and multitude of-the commons the at-all this not allowed
βουλόμενοι ἀπεμπολῆσαι τούτους τιμῆς. ταύτης γοῦν
wishing to-sell them for-a-price this at-any-rate
τῆς βουλῆς κυρωθείσης δίδοται γνῶσις τῷ βασιλεῖ διὰ
the counsel having-been-ratified is-given knowledge to-the emperor through
γραμμάτων τοῦ Μελισσηνοῦ, ὃς πολλὰ πρὸς τοῦτο, κἂν
letters — of-Melissenos who much to this even-if
δορυάλωτος ἦν, τοὺς Σκύθας ἠρέθιζεν. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς
spear-captive he-was the Scythians urged the and emperor

εἰς Βερόην ἔτι ἐνδιατρίβων τῆς βασιλίδος τῶν πόλεων
in Beroe still staying from-the queen of-the cities
χρήματα ἱκανὰ μετακομίσας ἐπρίατο τοὺς δορυαλώτους.
money considerable having-brought bought the spear-captives

XXVIII · OZOLIMNE

Tatos returns with Cumans, who demand a share of the booty. When the Scythians refuse, the Cumans defeat them and shut them up at Ozolimne, a vast lake above the Hundred Hills. Anna explains the name: Huns, called Ouzoi, once camped there, and Ouzolimne became Ozolimne. She compares her father's naming of places to Alexander's Alexandrias and Lysimachos' Lysimacheia. The Cumans go home for supplies, meaning to return.

Καταλαμβάνει δὲ τηνικαῦτα καὶ ὁ Τατοὺ τὸν Ἴστρον
reaches and then also — Tatos the Ister
μεθ' ὧν ὑπεποιήσατο Κομάνων, οἳ τὴν τοσαύτην
with those-whom he-won-over Cumans who the so-great
λείαν καὶ τὸ πλῆθος τῶν δορυαλώτων θεασάμενοι τοῖς
booty and the multitude of-the spear-captives having-beheld to-the
ἡγεμόσι τῶν Σκυθῶν ἔφασαν ὡς "ἡμεῖς μὲν τὰ οἴκοι
leaders of-the Scythians said that we indeed the(-things) at-home
καταλιπόντες εἰς ὑμετέραν ἤλθομεν βοήθειαν τὴν τοσαύτην
having-left to your came help the so-great
ὁδὸν διηνυκότες ἐφ' ᾧ καὶ τοῦ κινδύνου καὶ τῆς
road having-accomplished for which both of-the danger and of-the
νίκης συγκοινωνοὶ γενήσεσθαι. τὸ γοῦν ἡμέτερον ἅπαν
victory partners to-become the at-any-rate our-part all
συνεισενεγκόντας οὐ χρὴ κενοὺς αὖθις ἀποπεμφθῆναι.
having-contributed not it-is-right empty again to-be-sent-away
οὐ γὰρ ἐκ προαιρέσεως τοῦ πολέμου κατόπιν καιροῦ
not for from choice of-the war after time

ἔφθημεν ἐληλυθότες οὐδὲ αὐτοὶ τούτου αἴτιοί ἐσμεν,
we-have-already having-come nor ourselves of-this responsible are
ἀλλ᾽ ὁ προαρπάσας τὸν πόλεμον βασιλεύς. ἢ γοῦν
but the having-snatched-first the war emperor either at-any-rate
κοινῇ μεθ᾽ ἡμῶν τὴν λείαν πᾶσαν διαμερίσασθε ἢ ἀντὶ
in-common with us the booty all divide or instead-of
συμμάχων πολεμίους ἡμᾶς ἕξετε.” πρὸς τοῦτο ἀνένευσαν
allies enemies us you-will-have to this refused
οἱ Σκύθαι. τῶν δὲ Κομάνων τοῦτο μὴ φερόντων σφοδρὸς
the Scythians the and Cumans this not bearing violent
ἀνὰ μέσον αὐτῶν ἀναρρήγνυται πόλεμος καὶ κατὰ κράτος
among (the)-midst of-them breaks-out war and by force
οἱ Σκύθαι ἡττηθέντες εἰς τὴν καλουμένην Ὀζολίμνην
the Scythians defeated into the called Ozolimne
μόλις ἐσώθησαν. στενούμενοι δὲ παρὰ τῶν Κομάνων ἐφ᾽
hardly were-saved being-hemmed and by the Cumans for
ἱκανὸν ἐκεῖσε διέτριβον τὴν μετάβασιν μὴ ἀποθαρροῦντες.
a-good-while there spent the crossing not daring
ἡ δὲ νῦν παρ᾽ ἡμῖν Ὀζολίμνη κατονομαζομένη μεγίστη
the and now among us Ozolimne named very-great
μέν ἐστι καὶ τὴν διάμετρόν τε καὶ περίμετρον καὶ τῶν
indeed is both in-the diameter both and circumference and of-the
ὅπου δήποτε φημιζομένων παρὰ τοῖς γεωγράφοις λιμνῶν
where ever being-famed among the geographers lakes
μηδεμιᾶς εἰς μεγέθους λόγον ἐλλείπουσα· κεῖται δὲ τῶν
of-none in of-size account falling-short it-lies and of-the
Ἑκατὸν Βουνῶν ὕπερθεν καὶ εἰς αὐτὴν μέγιστοί τε καὶ
Hundred Hills above and into it very-great both and
κάλλιστοι συρρέουσι ποταμοί· καὶ κατὰ νότον πολλάς τε
most-beautiful flow rivers and toward south many both
καὶ μεγάλας καὶ φορτηγούς ἐστιν ἀνέχουσα νῆας, ὡς
and great and cargo-carrying it-is bearing ships so-that

εἶναι κἀντεῦθεν δῆλον τὸ βάθος τῆς λίμνης ὁπόσον τί
to-be also-thence plain the depth of-the lake how-great something
ἐστιν. Ὀζολίμνη δὲ κατωνόμασται, οὐχ ὅτι κακοῦ τινος
it-is Ozolimne and has-been-named not that of-bad something
καὶ βαρυόδμου ἀναδίδωσιν ἀποφοράν, ἀλλ' ὅτι Οὐννικῆς
and heavy-smelling it-sends-up exhalation but that Hunnic
ποτε στρατιᾶς ἐπιφοιτησάσης τῇ λίμνῃ (τούτους δὲ τοὺς
once army having-visited the lake these and the
Οὔννους Οὔζους ἡ ἰδιῶτις ἀπεκάλεσε γλῶττα) καὶ περὶ τοὺς
Huns Ouzoi the common called tongue and about the
ὄχθους τῆς λίμνης αὐλισαμένης Οὐζολίμνην τὴν τοιαύτην
banks of-the lake having-camped Ouzolimne the such
προσηγορεύκασι λίμνην μετὰ προσθήκης οἶμαι καὶ τοῦ υ
they-have-called lake with addition I-think also of-the υ
φωνήεντος. καὶ ἀπὸ μὲν τῶν παλαιῶν συγγραμμάτων οὐχ
vowel and from indeed the ancient writings not
εὕρηταί πω συνελαθὲν ἐνταῦθα Οὐννικὸν στράτευμα, ἐπὶ
it-has-been-found yet driven-together here Hunnic army under
δὲ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος Ἀλεξίου τότε πάντες ἁπανταχόθεν
but the autocrat Alexios then all from-all-sides
ἐκεῖσε συνερρωγότες τῷ τόπῳ δεδώκασι τοὔνομα. τὰ
there having-burst-together to-the place have-given the-name the(-things)
μὲν οὖν περὶ τῆς λίμνης ὧδέ πη ἐχέτω, παρ' ἡμῶν νῦν
indeed then about the lake thus somehow let-them-be by us now
πρώτως ἱστορούμενα, ἵν' ἐνδειξαίμεθα, ὅτι τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος
first recorded that we-might-show that of-the autocrat
Ἀλεξίου ταῖς πολλαῖς καὶ πανταχοῦ στρατηγίαις νῦν
Alexios with-the many and everywhere campaigns now
μὲν ἀφ' ἑαυτοῦ, νῦν δὲ ἀπὸ τῶν ἐπισυρρυέντων ἐχθρῶν
indeed from himself now and from the having-flowed-in enemies
πολλὰς ἐλάμβανον οἱ τόποι προσηγορίας· τοιοῦτον δέ
many took the places names such and

τι καὶ ἐπὶ Ἀλεξάνδρου τοῦ τῶν Μακεδόνων
something also in-the-time-of Alexander the of-the Macedonians
βασιλέως καταμανθάνω. καὶ γὰρ ὅπου μὲν Ἀλεξάνδρεια
king I-learn and for where indeed Alexandria
ἡ κατ᾽ Αἴγυπτον, ὅπου δὲ Ἀλεξάνδρεια ἡ κατ᾽ Ἰνδοὺς
the in Egypt where and Alexandria the among Indians
ἀπ᾽ ἐκείνου ὠνόμασται, ἴσμεν δὲ καὶ ἀπὸ Λυσιμάχου ἑνὸς
from that-one has-been-named we-know and also from Lysimachos one
τῶν ἀμφ᾽ αὐτὸν στρατιωτῶν Λυσιμαχίαν κατονομάζεσθαι.
of-the about him soldiers Lysimacheia to-be-named
οὐκ ἂν οὖν θαυμασαίμην, εἰ καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς Ἀλέξιος
not — then I-would-wonder if also the emperor Alexios
ζῆλον Ἀλεξάνδρειον ἀναλαβὼν ὅπου μὲν ἐξ ἐθνῶν ἢ
zeal Alexandrian having-taken-up where indeed from nations either
συρραγέντων ἢ προσκεκλημένων παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ περιῆψε τοῖς
having-broken-in or having-been-summoned by him attached to-the
τόποις ὀνομάτων καινότητας ἢ ἀφ᾽ ὧν αὐτὸς κατεπράξατο
places of-names novelties or from what he accomplished
τῆς ἑαυτοῦ προσηγορίας τοῖς τόποις μετέδωκε. τοσαῦτα
of-the own name to-the places imparted so-much
μὲν περὶ τῆς ἄνωθεν εἰρημένης Ὀζολίμνης ἐπερρίφθω
indeed about the above mentioned Ozolimne let-be-thrown-in
ἱστορικώτερον· οἱ δὲ Κόμανοι, ἐπεὶ σπάνιν τῶν χρειωδῶν
more-historically the and Cumans since scarcity of-the necessities
εἶχον, παλινδρομοῦσιν εἰς τὰ ἴδια ἐφ᾽ ᾧ τὰ χρειώδη
they-had run-back to the own for which the necessities
συγκομισάμενοι αὖθις κατὰ τῶν Σκυθῶν ὑπαναστρέψαι.
having-collected again against the Scythians to-return

XXIX · TREATIES BROKEN

At Beroe the count of Flanders, returning from Jerusalem, swears the Latin oath and promises five hundred horsemen. The Scythians camp at Markella. Alexios makes a treaty with them through Synesios and refuses the Cumans passage, but the Scythians break it and plunder. Too weak to fight, Alexios shadows them to Kypsella and makes peace again, and Neantzes deserts to him. A Scythian woman hooks Migidenos' son into the wagons, where he is beheaded, and his father dies of grief. The peace soon breaks, and the Scythians winter at Taurokomos.

Συνάγεται ἐν τῷ μεταξὺ ὁ βασιλεὺς κείμενος εἰς
gathers in the meantime the emperor lying at
Βερόην, ἐξοπλίζει τοὺς αἰχμαλώτους καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν ἅπαν
Beroe arms the captives and the remaining all
ὁπλιτικόν. τότε καὶ ὁ Φλάντρας κόμης ἐξ Ἱεροσολύμων
heavy-armed-force then also the Flanders count from Jerusalem
ἐπανερχόμενος ἐκεῖσε καταλαμβάνει τὸν αὐτοκράτορα καὶ
returning there reaches the autocrat and
τὸν συνήθη τοῖς Λατίνοις ἀποδίδωσιν ὅρκον ὑποσχόμενος
the customary for-the Latins renders oath having-promised
ἅμα τῷ τὰ οἴκοι καταλαβεῖν συμμάχους ἀποστεῖλαί οἱ
together — the at-home to-reach as-allies to-send to-him
ἱππεῖς πεντακοσίους. φιλοτιμησάμενος τοίνυν τὸν τοιοῦτον
horsemen five-hundred having-treated-generously therefore the such-man
ὁ βασιλεὺς πρὸς τὰ σφέτερα χαίροντα προέπεμψεν.
the emperor to the own rejoicing sent-on
ἀπάρας οὖν ἐκεῖθεν ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ μεθ' ὧν αὖθις
having-set-out then from-there the autocrat with which again
συνελέξατο δυνάμεων καταλαμβάνει τὴν Ἀδριανούπολιν.
he-collected forces reaches — Adrianople
οἱ δὲ Σκύθαι διεληλυθότες τὰ μεταξὺ τέμπη μέσον
the and Scythians having-passed-through the intervening valleys between

Γολόης καὶ Διαμπόλεως κατὰ τὴν λεγομένην Μαρκέλλαν
Goloe and Diampolis at the called Markella
τὸν χάρακα ἐπήξαντο. ὁ δέ γε αὐτοκράτωρ τὰ
the palisade pitched the and at-least autocrat the(-affairs)
κατὰ τοὺς Κομάνους μεμαθηκώς, ἐπεὶ προσδόκιμοι
concerning the Cumans having-learned since expected
ἐπαναστρέψαι ἦσαν, ἐδεδίει τὴν ἐκείνων ἔλευσιν ὑφορώμενος.
to-return they-were feared the their coming suspecting
μεταπεμψάμενος τοίνυν τὸν Συνέσιον καὶ τοῖς πρὸς
having-summoned therefore — Synesios and with-the to
τοὺς Σκύθας χρυσοβούλλοις λόγοις ἐφοδιάσας ἐκπέμπει
the Scythians chrysobull words having-furnished sends-out
παραγγείλας, ὡς εἰ μὲν πεισθεῖεν σπείσασθαι καὶ
having-instructed that if indeed they-should-be-persuaded to-make-a-treaty and
δοῖεν ὁμήρους, ἀναχαιτίσαι αὐτοὺς τῆς ἐπὶ τὸ πρόσω
give hostages to-check them from-the toward the forward
φορᾶς καὶ παρασκευάσαι μένειν ἐν ᾧ προκατέλαβον τόπῳ
movement and to-arrange to-stay in which they-had-occupied place
καὶ οὕτω χορηγεῖν αὐτοῖς δαψιλῆ τὰ χρειώδη· ἐσκόπει
and thus to-supply to-them abundantly the necessities he-considered
γὰρ τούτοις κατὰ τῶν Κομάνων χρήσασθαι, εἰ τὸν Ἴστρον
for them against the Cumans to-use if the Ister
αὖθις καταλαβόντες πρὸς τὰ πρόσω χωρεῖν ἐπιχειρήσαιεν·
again having-reached to the forward to-advance they-should-attempt
εἰ δέ γε οἱ Σκύθαι μὴ πείθονται, αὐτοῦ που καταλιπεῖν
if and at-least the Scythians not are-persuaded there somewhere to-leave
αὐτοὺς καὶ ὑποστρέψαι. κατέλαβε τούτους ὁ ῥηθεὶς
them and to-return reached them the said
Συνέσιος καὶ τὰ εἰκότα προσομιλήσας ἔπεισεν ὑποσπόνδους
Synesios and the likely-things having-addressed persuaded under-treaty
γενέσθαι τῷ βασιλεῖ. κἀκεῖσε προσκαρτερῶν πάντας αὐτοὺς
to-become to-the emperor and-there persevering all them

θεραπείας ἠξίου πᾶσαν περιαιρῶν σκανδάλου πρόφασιν.
of-care deemed-worthy every removing of-offense pretext
ἐπαναστρέψαντες δὲ αὖθις οἱ Κόμανοι παρεσκευασμένοι
having-returned and again the Cumans prepared
πρὸς τὸν κατὰ τῶν Σκυθῶν πόλεμον καὶ μὴ ἐντυχόντες
for the against the Scythians war and not having-met
αὐτοῖς, ἀλλὰ μεμαθηκότες τὴν τούτων διὰ τῶν κλεισουρῶν
them but having-learned the their through the passes
ἔλευσιν, καὶ ὅτι τὴν Μαρκέλλαν καταλαβόντες εἰς εἰρηνικὰς
coming and that — Markella having-reached to peaceful
ἦλθον μετὰ τοῦ βασιλέως σπονδάς, ἐξαιτοῦνται διελθεῖν
came with the emperor treaties ask to-pass-through
τὰς κλεισούρας καὶ προσβαλεῖν τοῖς Σκύθαις. ὁ δὲ
the passes and to-attack the Scythians he and
πρὸς τοῦτο ἀνένευσε προεφθακὼς σπείσασθαι μετὰ τῶν
to this refused having-been-first to-make-a-treaty with the
Σκυθῶν εἰπὼν ὡς "οὐ χρεία τὸ παρὸν βοηθείας ἡμῖν·
Scythians having-said that not need the present of-help for-us
λαβόντες ἱκανὰ ἐπαναστρέψατε." καὶ φιλοφρονησάμενος
having-received enough return and having-treated-kindly
τοὺς πρέσβεις δῶρά τε ἱκανὰ ἐπιδοὺς μετ' εἰρήνης
the envoys gifts and considerable having-given with peace
ἀπέστειλε. τοῦτο θάρσος τοῖς Σκύθαις ἐνέβαλε καὶ
sent-away this boldness into-the Scythians threw and
παρασπονδήσαντες τῆς προτέρας ἀπανθρωπίας εἴχοντο
having-broken-the-treaty to-the former inhumanity held
λῃζόμενοι τὰς παρακειμένας πόλεις καὶ χώρας. ἀστατεῖ
plundering the neighboring cities and lands is-unstable
γὰρ ὡς ἐπίπαν ἅπαν τὸ βάρβαρον καὶ σπονδὰς φυλάττειν
for as on-the-whole all the barbarian and treaties to-keep
οὐ πέφυκε. τοῦτο θεασάμενος ὁ Συνέσιος ἐπανέρχεται
not is-inclined this having-beheld — Synesios returns

πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα αὐτάγγελος μηνυτὴς γεγονὼς τῆς τῶν
to the emperor own-messenger informer having-become of-the of-the
Σκυθῶν ἀγνωμοσύνης καὶ παραβάσεως. τὴν Φιλιππούπολιν
Scythians senselessness and transgression — Philippopolis
δὲ τούτων καταλαβόντων τοῦτο μεμαθηκὼς ὁ βασιλεὺς
and these having-reached this having-learned the emperor
ἐν ἀμηχανίᾳ καθίστατο ἀποχρώσας πρὸς τοσαῦτα πλήθη
in helplessness was-set sufficient against so-great multitudes
μὴ ἔχων δυνάμεις, ὥστε ὅλως τὴν μετ᾽ αὐτῶν μάχην
not having forces so-as at-all the with them battle
ἀναδέξασθαι. ὁποῖος δὲ ἐκεῖνος ἐν ἀμηχάνοις πόρους
to-take-up such but that-man in difficulties ways
εὑρίσκων καὶ μηδ᾽ ὁπωσοῦν καταπίπτειν ἐν περιστάσεσιν
finding and not-even in-any-way to-lose-heart in crises
εἰωθώς, δεῖν ἔγνω δι᾽ ἀκροβολισμῶν καὶ λόχων
wont to-be-needful he-knew through skirmishes and ambushes
τὴν τούτων μελετῆσαι καθαίρεσιν. καὶ οὕτως στοχαζόμενος
the their to-plan destruction and thus guessing
τῶν τόπων καὶ τῶν πόλεων, ἔνθα καταλαμβάνειν
the places and the cities where to-reach
ἐκεῖνοι πρωΐας ἔμελλον, αὐτὸς ἑσπέρας τὴν τούτων
those in-the-morning were-about he in-the-evening the their
προκατελάμβανεν ἔλευσιν· εἰ δὲ ἑσπέρας τούτους μεμαθήκοι
anticipated coming if and in-the-evening them he-learned
τόπον τινὰ καταλαμβάνειν, ἐκεῖνος τὸν τοιοῦτον πρωΐας
place some to-reach that-man the such in-the-morning
προκατελάμβανε. καὶ ὡς δύναμις δι᾽ ἀκροβολισμῶν καὶ
seized-first and as power through skirmishes and
λόχων πόρρωθεν πρὸς αὐτοὺς ἀπεμάχετο, ὡς μὴ ἐγκρατεῖς
ambushes from-afar against them fought so-that not masters
αὐτοὺς γίνεσθαι τῶν φρουρίων. καταλαμβάνουσι τοίνυν
them to-become of-the forts reach therefore

ἄμφω οἵ τε Σκύθαι καὶ ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ τὰ Κύψελλα. ἐπεὶ
both the both Scythians and the autocrat — Kypsella since
δὲ τὸ ἐλπιζόμενον μισθοφορικὸν οὔπω κατέλαβε, γινώσκων
and the expected mercenary-force not-yet had-arrived knowing
ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ τὸ ὀξυκίνητον τῶν Σκυθῶν καὶ ὁρῶν
the autocrat the swift-moving of-the Scythians and seeing
αὐτοὺς ἤδη καὶ αὐτὴν τὴν βασιλίδα καταλαμβάνοντας
them already also itself the queen reaching
τῶν πόλεων ξὺν τάχει πολλῷ ἐν ἀμηχανίᾳ ἦν. καὶ
of-the cities with speed much in helplessness was and
μὴ ἀποχρώσας δυνάμεις πρὸς τοσαῦτα πλήθη ἔχων τὸ
not sufficient forces against so-great multitudes having the
μὴ χεῖρον, ὅ φασι, βέλτιον λογισάμενος πρὸς εἰρηνικὰς
not worse as they-say better having-reckoned to peaceful
αὖθις ἀπεῖδε σπονδάς. ἐρωτᾷ γοῦν πρέσβεις ἀποστείλας
again looked treaties asks at-any-rate envoys having-sent
πρὸς αὐτοὺς τὰ περὶ εἰρήνης· οἱ δ' εὐθὺς τῷ
to them the(-terms) about peace they and at-once to-the
τοῦ βασιλέως ὑπεῖξαν θελήματι. προέφθασε δὲ πρὸ τῶν
of-the emperor yielded will had-been-first and before the
εἰρηνικῶν σπονδῶν αὐτόμολος παραγενέσθαι ὁ Νεάντζης.
peaceful treaties as-a-deserter to-come — Neantzes
πέμπεται τοίνυν ὁ Μιγιδηνός, ὥστε πανηγύρεις ἐξάγειν ἐκ
is-sent therefore — Migidenos so-as markets to-bring-out from
τῶν παρακειμένων χωρῶν· οὗ ὁ υἱὸς εἰς τὸν γεγονότα
the neighboring lands whose the son in the having-happened
πόλεμον ὕστερον κατὰ τὸν *** τόπον ὀξέως κατὰ
war later at the (lacuna) place swiftly against
τῶν Πατζινάκων ὁρμήσας καὶ παρασυρεὶς παρὰ γυναικὸς
the Patzinaks having-rushed and dragged-off by a-woman
Σκυθίδος ἑάλω διὰ σιδηρᾶς ἅρπης εἴσω τῶν ἁμαξῶν
Scythian was-caught by iron hook inside the wagons

ἑλκυσθείς. οὗ τὴν κεφαλὴν ἀποτμηθεῖσαν ἐπρίατο ὁ
having-been-dragged whose the head cut-off bought the
βασιλεὺς ἐξ αἰτήσεως τοῦ πατρὸς αὐτοῦ· ὑπὸ δὲ τῆς
emperor from request of-the father his from and the
ἀφορήτου θλίψεως ἐπὶ τρισὶ νυχθημέροις διὰ χερμάδος λίθου
unbearable grief for three nights-and-days with a-hand-sized stone
τύπτων τὸ στέρνον ὁ πατὴρ τελευτᾷ. οὐκ ἐπὶ πολὺ δὲ
beating the breast the father dies not for long and
τὰ τῆς εἰρήνης τῶν Σκυθῶν διήρκει, ἀλλ᾽ αὖθις πρὸς
the(-terms) of-the peace of-the Scythians lasted but again to
τὸν ἴδιον ἔμετον ὡς κύνες ἐστράφησαν. ἀπάραντες οὖν ἀπὸ
the own vomit like dogs they-turned having-set-out then from
τῶν Κυψέλλων καταλαμβάνουσι τὸν Ταυρόκωμον κἀκεῖ
— Kypsella they-reach — Taurokomos and-there
παραχειμάσαντες ἐλῄζοντο τὰς παρακειμένας κωμοπόλεις.
having-wintered plundered the neighboring country-towns

XXX · THE ARCHONTOPOULOI

In spring the Scythians reach Charioupolis. Alexios sends the archontopouloi against them, two thousand sons of fallen soldiers whom he had trained and named, like the Spartans' sacred band, and three hundred of them fall. The emperor weeps for them by name. The Scythians move on to Apros, where Tatikios surprises their foragers, kills four hundred, and takes many alive. Five hundred horsemen from Flanders arrive and are sent to guard Nikomedeia against Apelchasem.

Ἔαρος δὲ ἤδη ἀναφανέντος ἐκεῖθεν εἰς Χαριούπολιν
spring and already having-appeared from-there to Charioupolis
ἔρχονται. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς εἰς τὸ Βουλγαρόφυγον διατρίβων
they-come the and emperor at — Boulgarophygon staying
οὐκέτι ἐν ἀναβολαῖς ἦν, ἀλλὰ μέρος τοῦ στρατοῦ
no-longer in delays was but part of-the army

ἀποτεμνόμενος ἱκανὸν λογάδας ἅπαντας καὶ αὐτοὺς δὴ
cutting-off considerable picked-men all and themselves indeed
τοὺς ἀρχοντοπούλους καλουμένους νέους, ἀρτιφυεῖς πάντας
the archontopouloi called young newly-grown all
τὸ γένειον, τὴν ὁρμὴν ἀνυποστάτους προσέταξεν ἐξ
in-the beard in-the onset irresistible ordered from
ὀπισθίων τοῖς κατὰ τὸ ἄκρον τῶν ἁμαξῶν ἱσταμένοις
behind those at the tip of-the wagons standing
προσβαλεῖν. τὸ δὲ τῶν ἀρχοντοπούλων τάγμα παρὰ
to-attack the and of-the archontopouloi unit by
Ἀλεξίου πρώτως ἐφεύρητο. ἀστρατίαν γὰρ ἐχούσης
Alexios first had-been-invented lack-of-army for having
τῆς τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῆς διὰ ῥᾳθυμίαν τῶν ἀνέκαθεν
the of-the Romans rule because-of sloth of-the from-of-old
αὐτοκρατόρων συλλεξάμενος ἁπανταχόθεν τοὺς τῶν
autocrats having-collected from-everywhere the of-the
ἀποπεπτωκότων στρατιωτῶν υἱεῖς ἐγύμνασέ τε πρὸς
fallen soldiers sons trained both for
ὅπλα καὶ πόλεμον καὶ ἀρχοντοπούλους ὠνόμασεν
arms and war and archontopouloi named
ὡσανεὶ ἐξ ἀρχόντων υἱοὺς γεγονότας, ἵνα διὰ τοῦ
as-if from archons sons born that through the
ὀνόματος εἰς τὴν τῶν γονέων εὐγένειάν τε καὶ ἀνδρείαν
name to the of-the parents nobility both and courage
ἀναφερόμενοι καὶ οὗτοι θούριδος ἀλκῆς μνήσαιντό τε καὶ
referring also these of-impetuous valor might-remember both and
ἀνδρειότεροι γένοιντο τοῦ καιροῦ τούτοις τόλμαν καὶ ῥώμην
braver might-become the occasion to-them daring and strength
ὑπαγορεύοντος. τοιοῦτον δὴ τὸ τῶν ἀρχοντοπούλων
suggesting such indeed the of-the archontopouloi
τάγμα, ὡς ἐν ὀλίγῳ εἰπεῖν, εἰς δύο χιλιάδας συμποσούμενον,
unit as in little to-say to two thousands numbering

ὥσπερ ποτὲ καὶ τοῖς Λάκωσιν ἐφεύρητο ὁ ἱερὸς
as once also for-the Laconians had-been-invented the sacred
λεγόμενος λόχος. οὗτοι τοίνυν οἱ νεόλεκτοι ἀρχοντόπουλοι
called band these therefore the newly-enlisted archontopouloi
ἐσταλμένοι πολεμικῶς ᾔεσαν. οἱ δὲ κάτωθεν τοῦ αὐχένος
equipped warlike went the and below the ridge
προλοχίζοντες Σκύθαι τὰς τούτων ἐφόδους ἐπετήρουν·
lying-in-ambush Scythians the their attacks watched
καὶ θεασάμενοι τούτους κατὰ τῶν ἁμαξῶν ἀφωρμηκότας
and having-beheld them against the wagons having-rushed
ἀσχέτῳ ῥύμῃ κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ἴενται. καὶ ἀγχεμάχου τῆς
with-unchecked impetus against them rush and hand-to-hand the
συμπλοκῆς καταστάσης πίπτουσι τῶν ἀρχοντοπούλων
engagement having-become fall of-the archontopouloi
ὡσεὶ τριακόσιοι ἐκθύμως μαχόμενοι. περὶ ὧν ἐπὶ πολὺν
about three-hundred passionately fighting about whom for long
χρόνον βύθιον ἔστενεν ὁ βασιλεὺς δάκρυα θερμὰ ἐκχέων
time deep groaned the emperor tears hot pouring
καὶ ὀνομαστὶ ἕκαστον καθαπερεὶ ἀπόδημον ἀνακαλούμενος.
and by-name each as-if abroad calling-back
ἡττήσαντες οὖν οἱ Πατζινάκοι τοὺς ἀντιτεταγμένους
having-defeated then the Patzinaks the opponents
διὰ τῆς Χαριουπόλεως διελθόντες ἀπονενεύκασι πρὸς
through — Charioupolis having-passed turned toward
τὸν Ἄπρων ἅπαντα λῃζόμενοι. τῇ γοῦν προτέρᾳ
— Apros all plundering the at-any-rate former
μεθόδῳ χρησάμενος αὖθις ὁ βασιλεὺς προκαταλαμβάνει
method having-used again the emperor anticipates
τούτους καὶ εἴσεισιν εἰς τὸν Ἄπρων· οὐ γὰρ προσῆσαν
them and enters into — Apros not for were-present
αὐτῷ ἀποχρῶσαι δυνάμεις, καθάπερ πολλάκις εἴρηται,
to-him sufficient forces as many-times has-been-said

πρὸς μάχην τοῖς ἀντικαθισταμένοις. τοιγαροῦν γινώσκων
for battle with-the opponents accordingly knowing
αὐτοὺς κατὰ τὰς αὐγὰς ἡλίου εἰς προνομὴν ἐξερχομένους
them at the rays of-sun to foraging going-out
μετακαλεσάμενος τὸν Ταtίκιον, οὗ ὁ λόγος ἐν πολλοῖς
having-summoned — Tatikios of-whom the account in many-places
ἐμέμνητο, ἐνετείλατο συμπαραλαβεῖν μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ τούς τε
made-mention he-enjoined to-take-along with himself the both
καλουμένους ἠνδρειωμένους τῶν ἀγούρων καὶ τῶν περὶ
called brave of-the youths and of-those about
τὴν θεραπείαν αὐτοῦ οἰκειοτέρων τοὺς λογάδας καὶ τοὺς
the service his more-intimate the picked-men and the
Λατίνους ἅπαντας καὶ κατὰ τὸ περίορθρον τὰς Σκυθικὰς
Latins all and at the early-dawn the Scythian
ἐκδρομὰς διυπνισθέντας τηρεῖν, ὥσθ' ὁπηνίκα τοὺς Σκύθας
sallies having-awoken to-watch so-that when the Scythians
εἰς προνομὴν ἐξιόντας τῆς ἰδίας πόρρω γενέσθαι
to foraging going-out from-the own far to-become
παρεμβολῆς στοχάσοιντο, κατ' αὐτῶν τηνικαῦτα ὅλους
camp they-should-guess against them then whole
ῥυτῆρας ἐνδοῦναι. ὁ δὲ κατὰ τὸ ἐντεταλμένον πεποιηκὼς
reins to-give he and according-to the command having-done
κτείνει μὲν τετρακοσίους, ἱκανοὺς δὲ καὶ ζωγρίαν ἄγει.
kills indeed four-hundred considerable and also alive leads
τί τὸ ἐντεῦθεν; καταλαμβάνουσιν οἱ παρὰ τοῦ
what the(-thing) thereupon arrive the by —
Φλάντρα ἀποσταλέντες ἱππεῖς ἔκκριτοι ὡσεὶ πεντακόσιοι
Flanders sent horsemen picked about five-hundred
χάρισμα κομίζοντες τούτῳ ἵππους ἐκκρίτους τὸν ἀριθμὸν
as-a-gift bringing to-him horses picked in-the number
ἑκατὸν πρὸς τοῖς πεντήκοντα· ἀλλὰ καὶ ὅσους τῆς
hundred besides the fifty but also as-many-as of-the

προκειμένης αὐτοῖς χρείας εἶχον ἐπέκεινα, ἀποδεδώκασι
proposed for-them need they-had beyond sold
τούτῳ τιμῆς. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς ἀξίως δεξιωσάμενος τούτους
to-him at-a-price the and emperor worthily having-welcomed them
ἱκανὰς ἀπεδίδου τὰς χάριτας. ἀγγελίας δὲ ἐκ τῆς
considerable returned the thanks news and from the
ἑῴας καταλαβούσης, ὅσον ἤδη ὁπλίζεσθαι τὸν τὴν
east having-reached all-but already to-be-arming the —
Νίκαιαν φρουροῦντα, ὃν ἡ συνήθεια μὲν τῶν Περσῶν
Nicaea guarding whom the custom indeed of-the Persians
σατράπην ἀποκαλεῖ, οἱ δὲ νῦν τὰ Περσῶν φρονοῦντες
satrap calls the and now the(-ways) of-Persians thinking
Τοῦρκοι ἀμηρὰν ὀνομάζουσι, τὸν Ἀπελχασὴμ κατὰ τῆς
Turks amir name — Apelchasem against the(-city)
Νικομήδους, ἀποστέλλει τούτους πρὸς φυλακὴν τῆς χώρας.
of-Nikomedes sends them for guard of-the land

XXXI · TZACHAS AT CHIOS

Tzachas, with a fleet built by a Smyrnaean, takes Klazomenai, Phokaia, Mitylene, and Chios, and defeats Niketas Kastamonites. Constantine Dalassenos breaches the wall of Chios, but halts his men when the Turks call out the emperor's name. Tzachas comes with a chained fleet, and Opos flees from it. At a parley Tzachas, once Botaneiates' protonobelissimos, offers a marriage-alliance. Dalassenos defers to John Doukas, sent from Dyrrachion as grand duke. Tzachas slips away, and Dalassenos takes the city.

Τότε δὴ καὶ ὁ Τζαχᾶς τὴν τοῦ βασιλέως περὶ τὴν
then indeed also — Tzachas the of-the emperor about the
δύσιν πολυσχιδῆ ὄχλησιν καὶ τοὺς τῶν Πατζινάκων μετ᾽
west many-branched trouble and the of-the Patzinaks with

αὐτοῦ συχνοὺς πολέμους βεβαιωθεὶς εὐκαιρίαν εὑρὼν
him frequent wars having-been-assured opportunity having-found
δέον ἐλογίσατο στόλον κτήσασθαι. Σμυρναίῳ δέ τινι
needful he-reckoned a-fleet to-acquire to-a-Smyrnaean and a-certain
ἐντυχὼν τὴν κτίσιν αὐτῷ τῶν λῃστρικῶν ἀνέθετο πλοίων
having-met the building to-him of-the pirate he-entrusted boats
ὡς περὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα ἐμπειρίαν πολλὴν ἔχοντι. αὐτοῦ
as about the such-things experience much having there
που δὲ πολλὰς κατασκευάσας ναῦς, πρὸς δὲ καὶ
somewhere and many having-built ships besides and also
τεσσαράκοντα ἀγράρια σκεπαστὰ καὶ ἐν αὐτοῖς ἄνδρας
forty cutters covered and in them men
εἰσαγαγὼν ἐμπείρους λύσας τὰ πρυμνήσια προσώρμισε
having-put experienced having-loosed the stern-cables he-put-in
ταῖς Κλαζομεναῖς καὶ ἐξ ἐφόδου ταύτας κατέσχεν. ἐκεῖθεν
— at-Klazomenai and by assault them held from-there
δὲ εἰς Φώκαιαν ἀπελθὼν εἶλε καὶ ταύτην ἐξ ἐπιδρομῆς.
and to Phokaia having-gone took also it by raid
κἀκεῖθεν ἀποστείλας πρὸς τὸν τὴν διοίκησιν Μιτυλήνης
and-from-there having-sent to the the administration of-Mitylene
ἐμπεπιστευμένον κουράτωρα τὸν Ἀλωπὸν πάνδεινα
entrusted curator — Alopos all-terrible-things
ἠπειλήσατο, εἰ μὴ θᾶττον ἐκεῖθεν ἀπέλθοι, κήδεσθαί τε
threatened if not more-quickly from-there he-should-depart to-care-for both
αὐτοῦ λέγων καὶ διὰ τοῦτο προμηνύειν, τὰ μέλλοντα
him saying and because-of this to-forewarn the future
τούτῳ ἔσεσθαι δεινά, εἰ μὴ ἐκεῖθεν ἐκσταίη. ὁ
for-him to-be terrible-things if not from-there he-should-withdraw he
δὲ ὑπὸ τῶν τοῦ Τζαχᾶ ἀπειλῶν ἐκδειματωθεὶς νυκτὸς
and by the — of-Tzachas threats terrified at-night
εἰς ναῦν εἰσελθὼν τὴν βασιλεύουσαν ἀνεζήτησε. τοῦτο
into a-ship having-entered the reigning(-city) sought this

δὲ μεμαθηκὼς ὁ Τζαχᾶς οὐκέτ᾽ ἐν ἀναβολαῖς ἦν, ἀλλὰ
and having-learned — Tzachas no-longer in delays was but
παραχρῆμα ἀπελθὼν ἐξ ἐφόδου τὴν Μιτυλήνην κατέσχεν.
immediately having-gone by assault — Mitylene held
ἐπεὶ δ᾽ ἡ Μήθυμνα περὶ τὸ ἄκρον ταυτησὶ τῆς νήσου
since and — Methymna about the tip of-this-here the island
διακειμένη οὐ προσεληλύθει τῷ Τζαχᾷ, ὁ βασιλεὺς περὶ
lying not had-gone-over — to-Tzachas the emperor about
τούτου πυθόμενος παραχρῆμα διὰ πλοίων ἀποστείλας
this having-learned immediately through boats having-sent
ἀποχρῶσαν δύναμιν κατωχυρώσατο ταύτην. ὁ μέντοι
sufficient force fortified it — however
Τζαχᾶς οὐδένα λόγον τῆς Μηθύμνης ἐποιήσατο, ἀλλ᾽
Tzachas no account — of-Methymna made but
εὐθὺ τῆς Χίου τὸν ἀπόπλουν ποιησάμενος ἐξ ἐφόδου
straight-for — Chios the sailing having-made by assault
κατέσχε καὶ ταύτην. ὅπερ ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ μεμαθηκὼς
held also it which the autocrat having-learned
πέμπει κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ στόλον ἀποχρῶντα μετὰ στρατιωτῶν
sends against him a-fleet sufficient with soldiers
ἱκανῶν ἡγεμόνα τούτων καταστησάμενος Νικήταν τὸν
considerable as-leader of-them having-set Niketas the
Κασταμονίτην. ὁ δὲ ἀπελθὼν καὶ τὸν μετὰ τοῦ Τζαχᾶ
Kastamonites he and having-gone and the with — Tzachas
συνάρας πόλεμον ἡττᾶται παραχρῆμα, καὶ πολλὰς τῶν
having-joined war is-defeated immediately and many of-the
συνεπαγομένων αὐτῷ νηῶν ὁ Τζαχᾶς ἀφείλετο. τοῦ
brought-along with-him ships — Tzachas took-away of-the
συμβάντος δὲ τῷ Κασταμονίτῃ ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐν εἰδήσει
having-happened and — to-Kastamonites the emperor in knowledge
γενόμενος ἕτερον ἐξοπλίζει στόλον ἐπιστήσας δοῦκα τούτῳ
having-come another equips fleet having-set-over as-duke to-it

Κωνσταντῖνον τὸν Δαλασσηνόν, ἄνδρα μαχιμώτατον καὶ
Constantine the Dalassenos a-man most-warlike and
μητρόθεν τούτῳ προσήκοντα. ὃς κατὰ τὴν ᾐόνα τῆς
on-the-mother's-side to-him related who on the shore —
Χίου γενόμενος παραχρῆμα τῆς τοῦ κάστρου πολιορκίας
of-Chios having-come immediately to-the of-the fortress siege
εἶχετο ἐκθύμως μαχόμενος καὶ σπεύδων τὴν πόλιν ἑλεῖν
held passionately fighting and hastening the city to-take
πρὸ τοῦ τὸν Τζαχᾶν ἀπὸ τῆς Σμύρνης καταλαβεῖν. διὰ
before the — Tzachas from — Smyrna to-arrive with
πολλῶν οὖν ἑλεπόλεων καὶ πετροβόλων ὀργάνων πλήξας
many then siege-engines and stone-throwing engines having-struck
τὰ τείχη καθαιρεῖ τὸ μεταξὺ τεῖχος τῶν δυεῖν πύργων. οἱ
the walls he-pulls-down the between wall of-the two towers the
δὲ ἐντὸς Τοῦρκοι θεασάμενοι τὸ γεγονὸς καὶ ἐγνωκότες,
and inside Turks having-beheld the event and having-known
ὡς ἀνυπόστατοι ταῖς ὁρμαῖς οἱ Ῥωμαῖοί εἰσιν, εἰς ἔλεον
that irresistible in-the onsets the Romans are for mercy
τὸν τῶν ἁπάντων ἐπεκαλοῦντο κύριον Ῥωμαΐζοντες. οἱ
the of-the all invoked lord speaking-the-Roman-tongue those
δ' ἀμφὶ τὸν Δαλασσηνὸν καὶ τὸν Ὦπον ἀκάθεκτοι ἦσαν
and about — Dalassenos and — Opos unrestrainable were
σπεύδοντες εἴσω τοῦ κάστρου εἰσελθεῖν, κἂν παρ' αὐτῶν
hastening inside the fortress to-enter even-if by them
διεκωλύοντο δεδιότων, μή πως τὴν προαποτεθεῖσαν παρὰ
were-prevented fearing lest somehow the laid-up-beforehand by
τοῦ Τζαχᾶ λείαν ἅπασαν καὶ τὰ χρήματα εἰσελθόντες
— Tzachas booty all and the money having-entered
ἀναλάβωνται, καὶ λεγόντων ὡς "τῆς εὐφημίας τοῦ
they-should-take and saying that the acclamation of-the
αὐτοκράτορος λαμπρᾶς ἤδη παρὰ τῶν Τούρκων γινομένης
autocrat brilliant already by the Turks happening

ἀκούετε καὶ ὡς ὑπόσπονδοι ἡμῶν γεγόνασιν. οὐ χρὴ
you-hear and that under-treaty to-us they-have-become not it-is-right
τοίνυν εἰσελθόντας ἀπηνῶς τούτους κατασφάττειν." ἐπεὶ
therefore having-entered harshly them to-slaughter since
δὲ τὸ πᾶν τῆς ἡμέρας ἤδη παρῳχήκει καὶ νὺξ
and the whole of-the day already had-passed and night
παρῆν, οἱ Τοῦρκοι ἕτερον τεῖχος ἀντὶ τοῦ ἐριπωθέντος
was-present the Turks another wall instead-of the demolished
ἀνοικοδομήσαντες ἀπῃώρησαν τούτου ἔξωθεν στιβάδας
having-built hung of-it outside mattresses
καὶ βύρσας καὶ πᾶν τὸ παρατυχὸν πέπλον, ὡς ἂν ἡ
and hides and every the at-hand cloth so-that — the
σφοδρότης τῶν πεμπομένων λίθων ἐντεῦθεν ὑποχαλῶσα
violence of-the sent stones thereby slackening
ποσῶς ἐνδίδωσι. καὶ ὁ μὲν Τζαχᾶς τὸν προσόντα στόλον
somewhat might-give-way and — indeed Tzachas the present fleet
αὐτοῦ ἐξοπλίσας καὶ διὰ τῆς ἠπείρου ὡσεὶ ὀκτὼ χιλιάδας
his having-equipped and through the mainland about eight thousands
στρατεύσας Τούρκους τὴν πρὸς Χίον φέρουσαν ἐβάδιζεν· ὁ
having-marched Turks the toward Chios leading(-road) went the
δέ γε στόλος αὐτῷ ἐπηκολούθει παραθέων τὴν ἠόνα.
and at-least fleet him followed running-alongside the shore
ὁ δὲ Δαλασσηνὸς τοῦτο μεμαθηκὼς λῦσαι τὰ πρυμνήσια
— and Dalassenos this having-learned to-loose the stern-cables
τοὺς ναυάρχας τοῦ στόλου παρεκελεύσατο ἀποχρῶντας
the admirals of-the fleet ordered sufficient
εἰσαγαγὼν ἐν αὐτῷ στρατιώτας καὶ ἡγεμόνα τὸν Ὦπον,
having-put in it soldiers and as-leader — Opos
βουλόμενος, εἴ που τούτῳ συναντήσει διαπλῳζομένῳ
wishing if somehow him he-will-meet sailing
κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ, συμμίξαι πρὸς πόλεμον. ὁ δὲ Τζαχᾶς τὴν
against him to-engage in war — and Tzachas the

ἤπειρον καταλιπὼν κατευθὺ Χίου τὸν ἀπόπλουν ἐποιεῖτο.
mainland having-left straight-for Chios the sailing made
καὶ συναντήσας αὐτῷ περὶ μέσας νύκτας ὁ Ὦπος,
and having-met him about middle nights — Opos
ὡς εἶδε καινήν τινα τὴν ναυλοχίαν ποιούμενον (καὶ
when he-saw new some the mooring making and
γὰρ ἅλυσιν κατασκευάσας παμμεγέθη ἅπαντα τὰ αὐτοῦ
for a-chain having-made very-great all the his
ἐδέσμησε πλοῖα, ὡς μήτε τοὺς τρεπομένους ἀποδιδράσκειν
he-bound boats so-that neither those turning to-run-away
δύνασθαι μήτ' αὖ πάλιν τοὺς προεκτρέχειν ἐθέλοντας
to-be-able nor in-turn again those to-run-ahead wishing
τῆς ναυτικῆς συντάξεως διακόπτεσθαι), ἐκδειματωθεὶς καὶ
from-the naval array to-be-cut-off terrified and
μηδὲ προσπελάσαι τούτῳ θαρρήσας ὅλως στρέψας τοὺς
not-even to-approach him having-dared at-all having-turned the
οἴακας τὴν Χίον αὖθις ἀνεζήτει. ὁ δέ γε Τζαχᾶς σὺν
helms — Chios again sought — and at-least Tzachas with
ἐπιστήμῃ ἀκολουθῶν αὐτῷ οὐκ ἐνεδίδου τῆς εἰρεσίας.
skill following him not ceased from-the rowing
ἐπὰν δὲ τῇ Χίῳ προσπελάζειν ἔμελλον, ὁ μὲν Ὦπος
when and — Chios to-approach they-were-about — indeed Opos
τῷ λιμένι πρῶτος τὰς ναῦς προσώρμισε τῆς Χίου
into-the harbor first the ships moored — of-Chios
(προεφθάκει γὰρ τοῦτον κατασχεῖν ὁ Δαλασσηνός), ὁ δὲ
had-been-first for it to-seize — Dalassenos — and
Τζαχᾶς παραπλεύσας τουτονὶ τὸν ἤδη ῥηθέντα τῆς Χίου
Tzachas having-sailed-past this-here the already mentioned — of-Chios
ὅρμον τῷ τείχει τοῦ κάστρου τὰς ἰδίας προσεπέλασε
anchorage to-the wall of-the fortress the own brought-near
ναῦς. τετρὰς δὲ τῆς ἑβδομάδος ἦν. τῇ δὲ μετ'
ships (the)-fourth-day and of-the week it-was on-the and after

αὐτὴν ἐξελάσας τῶν νηῶν ἅπαντας ἠρίθμει τε καὶ
it having-driven-out from-the ships all counted both and
ἀπεγράφετο. ὁ δέ γε Δαλασσηνὸς πολίχνιόν τι
registered — and at-least Dalassenos little-town a-certain
ἀγχοῦ τοῦ λιμένος εὑρηκὼς ἠφάνισε μὲν τὸν χάρακα,
near the harbor having-found obliterated indeed the palisade
ὃν προφθάσας διώρυξε, κεῖθι δὲ κατελθὼν καὶ ἄλλην
which beforehand he-had-dug there and having-gone-down and another
διώρυχα ποιήσας εἰς ἀποχρῶντα τάφρον αὐτοῦ που
ditch having-made into sufficient trench there somewhere
τὸ ὁπλιτικὸν κατέθετο. τῇ δὲ μετ᾽ αὐτὴν ἄμφω τὰ
the heavy-armed-force laid on-the and after it both the
στρατεύματα ἐξοπλισάμενα κατ᾽ ἀλλήλων παρεσκευάζοντο.
armies having-armed against each-other prepared
ἀλλὰ τὸ μὲν Ῥωμαϊκὸν ἀτρεμοῦν ἵστατο τοῦ Δαλασσηνοῦ
but the indeed Roman unmoving stood — Dalassenos
κελεύσαντος μηδένα τὸν συνασπισμὸν λύειν. ὁ δέ
having-ordered no-one the locking-of-shields to-break — and
γε Τζαχᾶς τὸ πλεῖστον τῆς βαρβαρικῆς παρατάξεως
at-least Tzachas the greater-part of-the barbarian battle-line
κατὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἰέναι παρέθηξεν, ὀλιγοστοὺς δὲ
against the Romans to-go spurred-on very-few and
καὶ ἱππαζομένους συνέπεσθαι τούτοις. τοῦτο οἱ Λατῖνοι
also riding to-follow them this the Latins
θεασάμενοι δόρατα μακρὰ ἐναγκαλισάμενοι κατὰ τῶν
having-beheld spears long having-couched against the
βαρβάρων ἐξιππάσαντο. οἱ δὲ οὐ κατὰ τῶν Κελτῶν,
barbarians rode-out they and not against the Celts
ἀλλὰ κατὰ τῶν ἵππων τὰς βολὰς πέμποντες καὶ διὰ
but against the horses the shots sending and with
τῶν δοράτων δέ τινας πλήξαντες πλείστους ἀνεῖλον καὶ
the spears also some having-struck very-many killed and

εἴσω τοῦ χάρακος τετραμμένους οὕτω συνήλασαν. οἱ δ'
inside the palisade routed so drove they and
ἐκεῖθεν ἐνέπιπτον εἰς τὰς ναῦς ἀλογίστῳ φορᾷ. τοὺς δὲ
from-there fell into the ships with-irrational rush the and
Κελτοὺς προτροπάδην φεύγοντας οἱ Ῥωμαῖοι θεασάμενοι
Celts headlong fleeing the Romans having-beheld
καὶ ἐκδειματωθέντες μικρόν τι ἀναποδίσαντες παρὰ
and terrified a-little something having-retreated by
τὸ τεῖχος τοῦ ῥηθέντος ἔστησαν πολιχνίου. κᾆθ' οὕτως
the wall of-the mentioned stood little-town and-then thus
οἱ βάρβαροι εἰς τὴν ᾐόνα κατελήλυθότες τινὰς τῶν νηῶν
the barbarians to the shore having-come-down some of-the ships
ἀφείλοντο. τοῦτο οἱ ναυτικοὶ θεασάμενοι λύσαντες τὰ
took-away this the sailors having-beheld having-loosed the
πρυμνήσια ἀπέρραξαν τῆς χέρσου καὶ τὰς ἀγκύρας
stern-cables broke-off from-the dry-land and the anchors
χαλάσαντες ἵσταντο καραδοκοῦντες τὸ μέλλον. ὁ μέντοι
having-lowered stood awaiting the future — however
Δαλασσηνὸς παραπεπλευκέναι τὰς περὶ τὸ δυτικώτερον
Dalassenos to-have-sailed-past the about the more-western
μέρος ἀκτὰς τῆς νήσου καὶ τὴν Βολισσὸν καταλαβεῖν
part shores of-the island and — Bolissos to-reach
παρεκελεύσατο καὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ ἀπεκδέχεσθαι ἔλευσιν· ἡ
ordered and the his to-await coming —
δὲ Βολισσὸς πολίχνιον κατὰ τὸ ἀκρωτήριον ταυτησὶ τῆς
and Bolissos a-little-town at the cape of-this-here the
νήσου διακείμενον. Σκύθαι δέ τινες προσεληλυθότες τῷ
island lying Scythians and some having-come —
Τζαχᾷ τὴν τοῦ Δαλασσηνοῦ βουλὴν προκατήγγειλαν. ὁ
to-Tzachas the — of-Dalassenos plan announced-beforehand he
δὲ ἔνθεν μὲν τηνικαῦτα πεντήκοντα σκοποὺς ἐπαφῆκε
and hence indeed then fifty scouts let-go

θᾶττον αὐτῷ διαμηνύσασθαι, ὁπηνίκα τὸ ναυτικὸν τοῦ
more-quickly to-him to-report when the fleet —
Δαλασσηνοῦ τὰ πρυμνήσια λύειν ἐπείγεται, ἐκεῖθεν δὲ τὸν
of-Dalassenos the stern-cables to-loose hastens from-there and —
Δαλασσηνὸν μετεπέμπετο, ὡς τάχα τὰ περὶ εἰρήνης
Dalassenos he-summoned as perhaps the(-terms) about peace
βουλόμενος ἐπερωτῆσαι, ἀπεγνωκὼς οἶμαι παντάπασι πρὸς
wishing to-ask having-despaired I-think entirely at
τὸ τοῦ Δαλασσηνοῦ γενναῖον καὶ φιλοκίνδυνον ἀφορῶν. ὁ
the — of-Dalassenos nobility and love-of-danger looking he
δὲ ἐς νέωτα κατὰ τὸ ἄκρον τῆς παρεμβολῆς ἐξεληλυθέναι
and for tomorrow at the tip of-the camp to-have-come-out
τῷ Τζαχᾷ ἐπηγγείλατο καὶ ἀκοῦσαί τε καὶ εἰπεῖν,
— to-Tzachas promised and to-hear both and to-say
ὁπόσα ἄμφω τούτοις συνδόξειεν. οὐδ' ὁ βάρβαρος πρὸς
as-much-as both to-them might-seem-good nor the barbarian to
τοῦτο ἀνένευσεν, ἀλλὰ πρωΐας ἄμφω τὼ στρατηγὼ
this refused but in-the-morning both the two-generals
κατὰ ταὐτὸν ἐληλυθέτην καὶ τῆς ὁμιλίας ὁ Τζαχᾶς
at the-same-place came and the conversation — Tzachas
κατῆρχεν ὀνομαστὶ τοῦτον καλέσας "ἴσθι ἐμὲ εἶναι τὸ
began by-name him having-called know me to-be the
μειράκιον ἐκεῖνο, ὅπερ πάλαι τὴν Ἀσίαν κατατρέχον καὶ
youth that which long-ago — Asia overrunning and
ἐκθύμως μαχόμενον ἐξ ἀπειρίας ἀπατηθὲν ἑάλων παρὰ
passionately fighting from inexperience deceived I-was-captured by
τοῦ Καβαλίκα ἐκείνου Ἀλεξάνδρου. κἀντεῦθεν ζωγρία
— Kabalikas that Alexander and-thence alive
παρ' αὐτοῦ τῷ αὐτοκράτορι Νικηφόρῳ τῷ Βοτανειάτῃ
by him to-the autocrat Nikephoros the Botaneiates
προσενεχθὲν παραχρῆμα τῇ τῶν πρωτονωβελλισίμων
brought immediately with-the of-the protonobelissimoi

ἀξίᾳ τετίμημαι καὶ δωρεῶν μεγάλων ἀξιωθεὶς
rank I-have-been-honored and of-gifts great having-been-deemed-worthy
ὑπεσχόμην δουλείαν αὐτῷ. ἐξ ὅτου δὲ τὰς τῆς βασιλείας
I-promised service to-him from when and the of-the empire
ἡνίας ὁ Κομνηνὸς Ἀλέξιος περιεζώσατο, ἐκκέκοπται
reins — Komnenos Alexios girded-on have-been-cut-off
ἅπαντα. κἀγὼ μὲν οὖν ἤδη τὸ τῆς ἔχθρας αἴτιον
all-things and-I indeed then now the of-the enmity cause
ἀπαγγέλλων ἥκω. μαθέτω δὲ ταῦτα καὶ ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ
announcing come let-learn and these(-things) also the autocrat
καὶ εἴπερ βουληθῇ τὴν ἀναφυεῖσαν ἔχθραν διαλυθῆναι,
and if he-wishes the having-sprung-up enmity to-be-dissolved
ὁπόσα λαβεῖν ὀφείλων ἐστέρημαι, ἀνελλιπῶς ἀποδοθήτω
as-much-as to-receive owing I-have-been-deprived fully let-be-given-back
μοι ἅπαντα. εἰ δέ σοι δοκεῖ καὶ τὰ τέκνα ἡμῶν
to-me all-things if and to-you it-seems also the children our
συναφθῆναι, προβεβλήσθω μέσον ἡμῶν ἔγγραφος ἡ περὶ
to-be-joined let-be-set-forth between us written the about
τούτου συμφωνία, ὡς ἔθος τοῖς Ῥωμαίοις καὶ ἡμῖν τοῖς
this agreement as custom for-the Romans and for-us the
βαρβάροις ἐστί. κᾆθ' οὕτω τῶν ἁπάντων τῶν ἤδη
barbarians is and-then thus of-the all the already
ῥηθέντων πέρας ἐσχηκότων ἁπάσας τὰς νήσους, ἃς
said end having-had all the islands which
αὐτὸς καταδραμὼν τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς ἐξουσίας ἀφειλόμην,
myself having-overrun from-the Roman authority took-away
διὰ σοῦ ἀντιτρέψω πρὸς τὸν αὐτοκράτορα καὶ τὰς μετ'
through you I-will-turn-back to the autocrat and the with
αὐτοῦ σπονδὰς ἀποπληρώσας πρὸς τὴν ἐμὴν ἐπαναστρέψω
him treaties having-fulfilled to the my I-will-return
πατρίδα." ταῦτα δὲ ὁ Δαλασσηνὸς σκῆψιν λογισάμενος
homeland these(-things) and — Dalassenos a-pretext having-reckoned

ὡς ἅτε τὸ τῶν Τούρκων ἦθος δολερὸν πάλαι
as inasmuch-as the of-the Turks character crafty long-ago
γινώσκων ἀνεβάλλετο τέως τὴν τῶν αἰτουμένων
knowing put-off for-the-time the of-the requests
ἐκπλήρωσιν παραγυμνώσας ἅμα καὶ ἣν ἔσχε περὶ αὐτοῦ
fulfillment having-laid-bare together also which he-had about him
ὑπόληψιν καὶ φάμενος ὡς "οὔτε σύ, ὡς ἔφησθα, τὰς
suspicion and having-said that neither you as you-said the
νήσους πρὸς ἐμὲ παραδώσεις οὔτε ἐγὼ βουλῆς ἄτερ τοῦ
islands to me will-hand-over nor I counsel without of-the
αὐτοκράτορος πρὸς ἅπερ αὐτὸς ἐκεῖθεν ἐξ ἐκείνου
autocrat to which-things yourself from-there from that-one
καὶ ἐμοῦ ἐπιζητεῖς καταθέσθαι δύναμαι. ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ δοὺξ
and from-me seek to-agree can but since duke
μέγας ὁ Ἰωάννης καὶ γυναικάδελφος τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος
grand — John and brother-in-law of-the autocrat
ὅσον ἤδη μετὰ παντὸς καταλαμβάνει τοῦ στόλου ἐξ
all-but already with all arrives the fleet from
ἠπείρου τε καὶ θαλάττης δυνάμεις πολλὰς συνεπαγόμενος,
mainland both and sea forces many bringing
ἐκεῖνος ἀκουσάτω τῶν παρὰ σοῦ λεγομένων. καὶ
that-one let-hear the(-things) by you said and
οὕτως, εὖ ἴσθι, αἱ μετὰ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος σπονδαὶ αὐτοῦ
thus well know the with the autocrat treaties he
τὴν εἰρήνην μεσάζοντος πέρας λάβοιεν." καὶ γὰρ τουτονὶ
the peace mediating end might-receive and for this-here
τὸν Δούκαν Ἰωάννην εἰς Ἐπίδαμνον ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ μετὰ
— Doukas John to Epidamnos the autocrat with
στρατιᾶς ἀξιομάχου ἐξέπεμψεν ἅμα μὲν καὶ περὶ τὴν
army a-match-for-battle sent-out at-once indeed also about the
τοῦ Δυρραχίου φρουρὰν ἐπιμελῶς διαπονεῖσθαι, ἅμα δὲ
— of-Dyrrachion guard carefully to-labor at-once and

καὶ τὴν μετὰ τῶν Δαλματῶν ἀναδήσασθαι μάχην. ὁ γὰρ
also the with the Dalmatians to-take-up battle the for
οὕτω καλούμενος Βοδῖνος μαχιμώτατος ὢν καὶ ῥᾳδιουργίας
so called Bodinos most-warlike being and of-knavery
πλήρης οὐ μέχρι τῶν ἰδίων ὅρων ἑστάναι ἠβούλετο, ἀλλ'
full not as-far-as the own bounds to-stand wished but
ὁσημέραι τὰς ἔγγιστα Δαλματίας κωμοπόλεις κατατρέχων
daily the nearest of-Dalmatia country-towns overrunning
τοῖς ἰδίοις προσετίθει ὁρίοις. ὁ δὲ Δούκας Ἰωάννης
to-the own added bounds — and Doukas John
ἐνιαυτοὺς πρὸς τῷ ἑνὶ δέκα εἰς τὸ Δυρράχιον ἐνδιατρίψας
years besides the one ten at — Dyrrachion having-spent
πολλὰ μὲν τῶν ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν Βολκάνου ἀφῃρεῖτο
many indeed of-the under the authority of-Bolkanos took-away
φρούρια, πολλοὺς δὲ καὶ ζωγρίαν Δαλμάτας πρὸς τὸν
forts many and also alive Dalmatians to the
αὐτοκράτορα ἐξαπέστειλε καὶ τέλος καρτερὰν μετὰ τοῦ
autocrat sent-off and finally strong with —
Βοδίνου μάχην συναρράξας καὶ αὐτὸν κατέσχεν. ἄνδρα δὲ
Bodinos battle having-joined also him seized a-man and
τὸν Δούκαν τοῦτον Ἰωάννην μαχιμώτατον ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ
— Doukas this John most-warlike the autocrat
ἐκ πολλῶν ἐγνωκὼς καὶ περὶ τὰ πολεμικὰ ἐπιτήδειον καὶ
from many-things having-known and about the warlike-things fit and
μηδ' ὁπωσοῦν τὰ παρ' αὐτοῦ ἐντεταλμένα ἀθετεῖν
not-even in-any-way the(-things) by him enjoined to-set-aside
ἐθέλοντα, ἐπεὶ τοιούτου ἀνδρὸς κατὰ τὸν Τζαχᾶν ἐδέετο,
wishing since such a-man against — Tzachas he-needed
μεταπεμψάμενος αὐτὸν ἐκεῖθεν ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ μετὰ πολλῶν
having-summoned him from-there the autocrat with many
δυνάμεων ἐξ ἠπείρου καὶ θαλάττης κατὰ τοῦ Τζαχᾶ
forces from mainland and sea against — Tzachas

ἐξέπεμψε δοῦκα τοῦ στόλου μέγιστον κατονομάσας. ὁπόσας
sent-out duke of-the fleet greatest having-named how-many
δὲ μετ᾽ αὐτοῦ μάχας συνῆψε καὶ ἐν ὅσοις κινδύνοις
and with him battles he-joined and into how-many dangers
ἑαυτὸν ἐπιρρίψας νικητὴς ἀνεφάνη, ὁ λόγος ἐν ὑστέροις
himself having-thrown victor appeared the account in later-times
δηλώσειε. τοῦτον προσδόκιμον ὁ Δαλασσηνὸς ἔχων ἐν
may-show him expected — Dalassenos having in
τῇ πρὸς τὸν Τζαχᾶν ὁμιλίᾳ τὸ πᾶν εἰς τὸν ἐρχόμενον
the with — Tzachas conversation the whole to the coming
Δούκαν ἐφαίνετο ἀνατιθέμενος. ὁ δὲ Τζαχᾶς τὸ Ὁμηρικὸν
Doukas appeared referring — and Tzachas the Homeric
ἐκεῖνο ἔπος ἐδόκει λέγειν "νὺξ ἤδη τελέθει, ἀγαθὸν καὶ
that saying seemed to-say night already comes good also
νυκτὶ πιθέσθαι." αὐγαζούσης δὲ τῆς ἡμέρας πολλὰ τῶν
to-night to-yield dawning and the day many of-the
χρειωδῶν κομίσαι ὑπέσχετο. ἅπαντα δὲ δόλος ἦν καὶ
necessities to-bring he-promised all and deceit was and
ἀπάτη, καὶ ὁ Δαλασσηνὸς οὐ πόρρω σκοποῦ ἔβαλλε.
fraud and — Dalassenos not far-from (the)-mark shot
κατὰ γὰρ τὸ περίορθρον λαθὼν ὁ Τζαχᾶς καὶ περὶ
at for the early-dawn having-escaped-notice — Tzachas and about
τὴν ᾐόνα τῆς Χίου κατελήλυθὼς οὐρίου τυχὼν πνεύματος
the shore — of-Chios having-come-down fair having-got wind
τὴν Σμύρνην κατέλαβεν, ἐφ᾽ ᾧ πλείονας συναγηοχέναι
— Smyrna reached for which more to-have-collected
δυνάμεις καὶ αὖθις ἐπαναστρέψας ἐν Χίῳ καταλαβεῖν.
forces and again having-returned to Chios to-arrive
ἀλλ᾽ οὐδ᾽ ὁ Δαλασσηνὸς δεύτερος πρὸς τὰς τοῦ Τζαχᾶ
but not-even — Dalassenos second to the — of-Tzachas
μηχανὰς ἐφαίνετο. εἰσελθὼν γὰρ ἐν τοῖς παρατυχοῦσι
devices appeared having-embarked for in the at-hand

πλοίοις μετὰ τῶν ὑπ᾽ αὐτὸν τὴν Βολισσὸν κατέλαβε
boats with those under him — Bolissos reached
καὶ τάς τε ναῦς περιποιησάμενος καὶ ἑλεπόλεις ἑτέρας
and the both ships having-secured and siege-engines other
παρασκευασάμενος τούς τε στρατιώτας διαναπαύσας καὶ
having-prepared the both soldiers having-rested and
πλείονας τούτων συμπαραλαβὼν αὖθις ὅθεν ἐξῄει
more of-them having-taken-along again whence he-had-gone-out
ἐπανέστρεψε. καὶ καρτερὸν μετὰ τῶν βαρβάρων συνήρασσε
returned and strong with the barbarians joined
πόλεμον καὶ καθελὼν τὰ τείχη ἐχειρώσατο τὴν πόλιν
war and having-pulled-down the walls subdued the city
τοῦ Τζαχᾶ τὴν Σμύρνην ἔτι περινοστοῦντος. κἀκεῖθεν
— Tzachas — Smyrna still going-about and-from-there
λειοκύμονα τὴν θάλασσαν εὑρηκὼς εὐθυπλοήσας μετὰ τοῦ
calm-waved the sea having-found having-sailed-straight with the
στόλου παντὸς κατέλαβε τὴν Μιτυλήνην.
fleet all reached — Mitylene

XXXII · NEANTZES BETRAYS

The Scythians camp at Polybotos; Alexios reaches Rousion, where the Maniakatai Latins join him. Neantzes, pretending to scout, tells the Scythians in their own tongue that the emperor is beaten, and kills the half-barbarian who exposes him. Alexios holds his anger, since the battle hangs on a razor's edge. Given a horse, Neantzes turns his spear back and counsels the Scythians, who rout the Romans. Alexios, sick with quartan fever, rallies the stragglers and holds the river till evening.

Οὕτω δὲ ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ τὰ κατὰ τὸν Τζαχᾶν
thus and the autocrat the(-affairs) concerning — Tzachas
διαθέμενος, ἐπεὶ τοὺς Σκύθας αὖθις τὸ Ῥούσιον
having-arranged since the Scythians again — Rousion

καταλαμβάνειν μεμαθήκοι καὶ κατὰ τὸ Πολυβοτὸν
to-be-reaching he-had-learned and at — Polybotos
τὸν χάρακα πήξασθαι, ἐξεληλυθὼς ὡς εἶχε τῆς
the palisade to-have-pitched having-gone-out as he-was from-the(-city)
Κωνσταντίνου τὸ Ῥούσιον κατέλαβε. συνείπετο δὲ τούτῳ
of-Constantine — Rousion reached followed and him
καὶ ὁ αὐτόμολος Νεάντζης δεινήν τινα καὶ βύθιον μελέτην
also the deserter Neantzes terrible some and deep plan
κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ τεκταινόμενος· συμπαρῆν δὲ καὶ ὁ Καντζοὺς
against him contriving was-present and also — Kantzous
καὶ ὁ Κατράνης ἄνδρες πολέμων μεμνημένοι καὶ ζέοντα
and — Katranes men of-wars mindful and seething
πρὸς τὸν αὐτοκράτορα πόθον ἔχοντες. ἀπόμοιραν δὲ
toward the autocrat longing having detachment and
ἱκανὴν τῶν Σκυθῶν πόρρω θεασάμενος τὴν μετ᾽ αὐτῶν
considerable of-the Scythians far-off having-beheld the with them
ἐναποδύεται μάχην. πολλοὶ μὲν οὖν τῶν Ῥωμαίων
strips-for battle many indeed then of-the Romans
ἐν τῷ μάχεσθαι πίπτουσι, τινὲς δὲ καὶ ζωγρηθέντες
in the fighting fall some and also taken-alive
παρὰ τῶν Σκυθῶν κτείνονται, ἱκανοὶ δὲ καὶ μέχρις
by the Scythians are-killed considerable and also as-far-as
αὐτοῦ Ῥουσίου κομίζονται. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν τὰ
itself Rousion are-carried but these(-things) indeed the(-affairs)
κατὰ τοὺς προνομεῖς τῶν Σκυθῶν· ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς
concerning the foragers of-the Scythians the and emperor
τῶν καλουμένων Μανιακατῶν Λατίνων καταλαβόντων
the called Maniakatai Latins having-arrived
θαρσήσας ἐβουλεύετο τῇ μετ᾽ αὐτὴν τὸν μετὰ τῶν
having-taken-courage planned on-the after it the with the
Σκυθῶν κατασυστάδην ἀναδέξασθαι πόλεμον. ἐπεὶ δ᾽ οὐ
Scythians in-close-combat to-take-up war since and not

πολὺ τὸ μεταίχμιον ἀμφοῖν τοῖν στρατευμάτοιν ἔτυχεν ὄν,
great the no-man's-land of-both the two-armies happened being
τὴν ἐνυάλιον οὐκ ἀπεθάρρησεν ἠχῆσαι σάλπιγγα θέλων
the warlike not he-dared to-sound trumpet wishing
προαρπάσαι τὴν μάχην. μεταπεμψάμενος οὖν τὸν περὶ
to-snatch-first the battle having-summoned then the about
τὴν τῶν βασιλικῶν ἱεράκων θεραπείαν διαπονούμενον
the of-the imperial hawks care laboring
Κωνσταντῖνον προστάττει τύμπανον ἑσπέρας ἀναλαβόμενον
Constantine he-orders a-drum in-the-evening having-taken-up
τύπτειν δι' ὅλης νυκτὸς περινοστοῦντα τὸ στράτευμα
to-beat through whole night going-round the army
καὶ διακηρυκεύειν ἑτοιμάζεσθαι, ὅτιπερ αὐγαζούσης τῆς
and to-proclaim to-get-ready that dawning the
αὔριον ἀπερισαλπίγκτως τὸν μετὰ τῶν Σκυθῶν ὁ
morrow without-trumpet-call the with the Scythians the
αὐτοκράτωρ βούλεται συνάψαι πόλεμον. οἱ δὲ Σκύθαι
autocrat wishes to-join war the and Scythians
τοῦ Πολυβοτοῦ ἀπάραντες προκαταλαμβάνουσι τόπον
— from-Polybotos having-set-out seize-first a-place
καλούμενον Ἅδην κἀκεῖθι τὸν χάρακα πήγνυνται. οὕτω
called Hades and-there the palisade pitch thus
μὲν οὖν ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ ἐξ ἑσπέρας αὐτῆς παρεσκευάζετο·
indeed then the autocrat from evening itself was-preparing
αὐγαζούσης δὲ ἡμέρας διελὼν τὸ στράτευμα καὶ εἰς
dawning and day having-divided the army and into
φάλαγγας καταστήσας ἴεται κατ' αὐτῶν. οὔπω δὲ τῆς
phalanxes having-set rushes against them not-yet and the
συμβολῆς τοῦ πολέμου γενομένης, ἀλλ' ἑκάστου τῶν
encounter of-the war having-happened but each of-the
ταγμάτων ἔτι καθισταμένου ὁ Νεάντζης κατά τινα
units still being-set — Neantzes on some

παρακειμένην ἀκρολοφίαν ἀνελθὼν ἐφ᾽ ᾧ κατασκοπῆσαι
nearby hill-top having-gone-up for which to-spy-out
μὲν τὰς Σκυθικὰς παρατάξεις, ὡς ἔλεγεν, ἀγγελίαν δὲ
indeed the Scythian battle-lines as he-said news and
τῷ αὐτοκράτορι τῆς αὐτῶν καταστάσεως συγκομίσαι,
to-the autocrat of-the their disposition to-bring
ἅπαν τοὐναντίον ἐποίει. καὶ τῇ ἰδίᾳ διαλέκτῳ τοῖς
all the-opposite he-did and in-the own tongue to-the
Σκύθαις τηνικαῦτα συνεβούλευε τὰς ἁμάξας μὲν στοιχηδὸν
Scythians then advised the wagons indeed in-rows
καταστῆσαι, αὐτοὺς δὲ μὴ δεδιέναι τὸν αὐτοκράτορα
to-set them and not to-fear the autocrat
τετραμμένον τε ὄντα ἤδη ἐκ τῆς προτεραίας ἥττης
routed both being already from the previous-day's defeat
καὶ πρὸς φυγὴν ἕτοιμον σπάνιν τῶν στρατευμάτων καὶ
and for flight ready lack of-the armies and
τῶν συμμάχων ἔχοντα. ταῦτ᾽ εἰπὼν κάτεισι πρὸς
of-the allies having these(-things) having-said he-goes-down to
τὸν αὐτοκράτορα. μιξοβάρβαρος δέ τις εἰδήμων τῆς
the autocrat a-half-barbarian and a-certain knowing of-the
Σκυθικῆς διαλέκτου συνεὶς τὰ πρὸς τοὺς Σκύθας
Scythian tongue having-understood the(-things) to the Scythians
παρὰ τοῦ Νεάντζη λεχθέντα ἀπαγγέλλει πάντα τῷ βασιλεῖ.
by — Neantzes said announces all to-the emperor
ἐν αἰσθήσει δὲ τούτου γενόμενος ὁ Νεάντζης ἀνεζήτει
in perception and of-this having-come — Neantzes demanded
τὸν ἔλεγχον· ἀναισχύντως δ᾽ ὁ μιξοβάρβαρος ἐς μέσον
the proof shamelessly and the half-barbarian into the-midst
ἐλθὼν ἤλεγχεν. ἐκεῖνος δὲ ἀθρόον τὸ ξίφος σπασάμενος
having-come convicted that-one and suddenly the sword having-drawn
ἀπέκοψε τἀνθρώπου τὴν κεφαλὴν αὐτοῦ τε τοῦ βασιλέως
cut-off of-the-fellow the head himself both the emperor

ὁρῶντος καὶ ἑκατέρωθεν τῶν φαλάγγων ἱσταμένων. καὶ
seeing and on-both-sides the phalanxes standing and
οἶμαι τὴν ὑποψίαν τῆς συκοφαντίας ὁ Νεάντζης ἐκκλίνων
I-think the suspicion of-the slander — Neantzes avoiding
ἐκ τῆς σφαγῆς τοῦ συκοφαντοῦντος ὕποπτον μᾶλλον ἑαυτὸν
by the slaughter of-the slanderer suspect rather himself
καθιστᾷ. τί γὰρ μὴ τὸν ἔλεγχον περιέμενεν; ἀλλ', ὡς
makes why for not the proof he-waited-for but as
ἔοικε, γλῶτταν ἐθέλων προαναιρεῖν ἐξορχουμένην τὰς
it-seems a-tongue wishing to-make-away-with-first divulging the
κατ' αὐτὸν δολιότητας τολμᾷ τι καὶ παραβολώτερον
concerning him treacheries he-dares something also more-reckless
πρᾶγμα ποιήσας βαρβαρικῆς μὲν ψυχῆς ἄξιον, ὕποπτον
a-deed having-done of-barbarian indeed soul worthy suspect
δὲ τοσοῦτον, ὅσον καὶ τόλμης ἐφίκετο. οὐ μὴν ὁ
and so-much as also of-daring it-attained not indeed the
βασιλεὺς εὐθὺς ἐπεπορεύσατο τὸν βάρβαρον οὐδὲ ἐπεξῆλθε
emperor at-once proceeded-against the barbarian nor prosecuted
δέον ὄν, ἀλλὰ τὴν μὲν καρδίαν παλλομένην εἰς θυμὸν
needful being but the indeed heart quivering into anger
καὶ ὀργὴν ἐπέσχεν αὐτίκα, ἵνα μὴ προσοβήσῃ τὴν θήραν
and wrath he-checked at-once that not he-might-scare-off the game
καὶ ταράξῃ τὰς φάλαγγας. ἐταμιεύετο δὲ καὶ ὑπώρυττε
and confound the phalanxes he-was-reserving and also was-undermining
τὴν ὀργὴν τῷ Νεάντζῃ τούτου προδοσίαν τοῦ ἀνδρὸς καὶ
the anger — for-Neantzes of-this treachery of-the man and
τὴν ἀποστασίαν καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν προειργασμένων καὶ ἐξ
the rebellion both from the previous-deeds and from
ἄλλων προμαντευόμενος· ἐπὶ ξυροῦ γὰρ ἀκμῆς εἱστήκει
other-things foreboding on razor's for edge stood
τὰ τοῦ πολέμου· καὶ διὰ τοῦτο περιυλακτοῦντα
the(-affairs) of-the war and because-of this barking-round

τὸν θυμὸν ὁ βασιλεὺς τέως ἐπεῖχεν ἀπορῶν τὸ
the anger the emperor for-the-time held-back being-at-a-loss the
τηνικαῦτα, ὅ τι καὶ δράσειεν. ὁ μέντοι Νεάντζης μετὰ
then what — also he-might-do — however Neantzes after
μικρὸν προσελθὼν καὶ τοῦ σφετέρου ἀποβὰς ἵππου
a-little having-come and from-the own having-dismounted horse
ἄλλον ᾐτεῖτο τὸν βασιλέα. καὶ δίδωσιν αὐτῷ παραχρῆμα
another asked the emperor and he-gives him immediately
ἵππον τῶν ἐκκρίτων μετὰ τῆς βασιλικῆς ἐφεστρίδος. εἰς
a-horse of-the picked with the imperial saddle-cloth onto
ὃν ἀναβάς, ἐπεὶ τὰ τάγματα κατ᾽ ἀλλήλων διὰ τοῦ
which having-mounted since the units against each-other through the
μεσαιχμίου ἤδη ᾔεσαν, σχῆμα κατὰ τῶν Σκυθῶν ἱππασίας
no-man's-land already went form against the Scythians of-a-charge
ποιησάμενος τὴν ἀκωκὴν τοῦ δόρατος ὄπισθεν στρέψας
having-made the point of-the spear behind having-turned
πρὸς τοὺς ὁμογενεῖς φοιτᾷ πολλὰ κατὰ τῆς βασιλικῆς
to the kinsmen goes much against the imperial
παρατάξεως αὐτοῖς παραινῶν. οἱ δὲ ταῖς ὑποθημοσύναις
battle-line them advising they and the suggestions
αὐτοῦ χρώμενοι καρτερὸν τὸν μετὰ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος
his using strong the with the autocrat
συνάψαντες πόλεμον τρέπουσι κατὰ κράτος. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς
having-joined war rout by force the and emperor
διασπασθείσας τὰς φάλαγγας ὁρῶν καὶ φεύγοντας ἅπαντας
torn-apart the phalanxes seeing and fleeing all
ἐν ἀμηχανίᾳ γενόμενος παρακινδυνεύειν ἀλόγως οὐκ ἤθελεν.
in helplessness having-become to-run-risks irrationally not wished
ἔνθεν τοι καὶ τὰς ἡνίας στρέψας μέχρι τοῦ ῥέοντος
whence surely also the reins having-turned as-far-as the flowing
ποταμοῦ ἐγγὺς τοῦ Ῥουσίου καταλαμβάνει. κἀκεῖθεν τὸν
river near — Rousion reaches and-from-there the

χαλινὸν ἀνασειράσας μετά τινων λογάδων ὡς ἐνὸν
bridle having-pulled-up with some picked-men as being-possible
πρὸς τοὺς διώκοντας ἀπεμάχετο ἱππασίας κατ᾽ αὐτῶν
against the pursuers fought charges against them
ποιούμενος, πολλοὺς δὲ καὶ κτείνων, ἔστιν οὗ καὶ αὐτὸς
making many and also killing there-is where also he
πληττόμενος. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐξ ἑτέρου μέρους καὶ Γεώργιος
being-struck since and from other side also George
ὁ Πύρρος καλούμενος φεύγων τὸν ποταμὸν κατελάμβανεν,
the Pyrrhos called fleeing the river was-reaching
ἐμβριμησάμενος τοῦτον ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ μετεκαλέσατο πρὸς
having-roared him the autocrat summoned to
ἑαυτόν. ὡς δὲ τὸ ἰταμὸν τῶν Σκυθῶν ἑώρα καὶ ὅτι
himself as and the recklessness of-the Scythians he-saw and that
ὅσαι ὧραι πληθύνουσι καὶ ἄλλων ἐρχομένων εἰς
as-many-as hours they-grow-in-number and others coming to
τὴν αὐτῶν ἀρωγήν, τὸν μὲν Γεώργιον αὐτοῦ που
the their help — indeed George there somewhere
καταλέλοιπε μετὰ τῶν λοιπῶν παραγγείλας μετὰ φειδοῦς
left with the rest having-ordered with sparing
ἀντικαθίστασθαι τοῖς Σκύθαις, μέχρις ἂν αὐτὸς ἐπανέλθοι.
to-stand-against the Scythians until — he should-return
γοργῶς δὲ τοῦ ἵππου τὸ ψάλλιον περιστρέψας τὴν
swiftly and of-the horse the curb having-turned the
περαίαν τοῦ ποταμοῦ καταλαβὼν εἴσεισιν εἰς τὸ Ῥούσιον,
far-bank of-the river having-reached enters into — Rousion
καὶ ὅσους τῶν φευγόντων στρατιωτῶν κεῖθι κατέλαβε,
and as-many-as of-the fleeing soldiers there he-found
καὶ τοὺς αὐτόχθονας ἅπαντας ὁπόσοι στρατεύσιμον τὴν
and the natives all as-many-as military the
ἡλικίαν εἶχον, ἀλλὰ καὶ αὐτοὺς δὴ τοὺς ἀγρότας μετὰ
age had but also themselves indeed the rustics with

τῶν ἰδίων ἁμαξῶν παρεκελεύσατο θᾶττον ἐξεληλυθότας
the own wagons ordered more-quickly having-gone-out
παρὰ τῷ χείλει τοῦ ποταμοῦ καταστῆναι. τούτου δὲ
by the lip of-the river to-be-set this and
θᾶττον ἢ λόγος γεγονότος καὶ κατὰ στοίχους τινὰς
more-quickly than word having-happened and in rows some
καταστήσας αὐτοὺς αὖθις πρὸς τὸν Γεώργιον διαπεράσας
having-set them again to — George having-crossed
ἀναδεδραμήκει, καίτοι ὑπὸ τεταρταϊκοῦ ῥίγους πιεζόμενος,
ran-back although by quartan shivering pressed
ὡς καὶ τοὺς ὀδόντας ὑπὸ τῆς φρίκης προσαράσσειν.
so-that even the teeth from the shuddering to-chatter
ἐπισυναχθὲν δὲ καὶ τὸ ἅπαν Σκυθικὸν στράτευμα ὡς
having-been-gathered and also the whole Scythian army when
τὴν διττὴν ἐθεάσαντο παράταξιν καὶ τὸν αὐτοκράτορα
the double they-saw battle-line and the autocrat
τοσοῦτον ἀγωνιζόμενον, τὸ φιλοκίνδυνον αὐτοῦ ἐπεγνωκότες
so-much contending the love-of-danger his having-recognized
καὶ ὅτι ὁ αὐτὸς κἀν ταῖς νίκαις κἀν ταῖς ἥτταις ἐστί,
and that the same both-in the victories and-in the defeats he-is
τὴν ἀνύποιστον τούτου ἐπεγνωκότες ὁρμὴν ἑστήκεσαν
the unbearable his having-recognized onset stood
μὴ ἀποθαρροῦντες τὴν μετ᾽ αὐτοῦ συμπλοκήν. ὁ δὲ
not daring the with him engagement the and
αὐτοκράτωρ τὸ μέν τι ὑπὸ τοῦ ῥίγους συνεχόμενος,
autocrat partly indeed somewhat by the shivering gripped
τὸ δὲ πλεῖστον ὅτι οὔπω οἱ σκεδασθέντες ἅπαντες
the and most that not-yet the scattered all
ἔφθασαν συνεληλυθέναι, ἵστατο καὶ αὐτὸς παραθέων καὶ
had-managed to-have-come-together stood also he running-alongside and
μετρίως ἱππαζόμενος καὶ κατ᾽ αὐτῶν θάρσος ἐνδεικνύμενος.
moderately riding and against them boldness showing

συνέβαινεν οὖν ἄμφω τὰ στρατεύματα ἀτρεμοῦντα μέχρις
it-happened then both the armies unmoving until
ἑσπέρας ἑστάναι. ἐπεὶ δ' ἡ νὺξ ἤδη προῄει, ἀμαχητὶ πρὸς
evening to-stand since and the night already advanced without-battle to
τὰς ἰδίας ἐπανέστρεψαν παρεμβολάς. ἐδεδίεσαν γὰρ καὶ
the own returned camps they-feared for also
ἀποθαρρεῖν οὐκ εἶχον τὸν πόλεμον. οἱ δέ γε κατὰ τὴν
to-dare not could the war those and at-least in the
πρώτην μάχην ἄλλοσε ἀλλαχῆ σκεδασθέντες κατὰ μικρὸν
first battle elsewhere one-way having-been-scattered by little
αὖθις πρὸς τὸ Ῥούσιον ἐπανήρχοντο· οἱ πλείους δὲ τούτων
again to — Rousion were-returning the most and of-them
καὶ μάχης παντελῶς ἄγευστοι. ὁ δέ γε Μοναστρᾶς καὶ
also of-battle entirely untasted — and at-least Monastras and
Οὐζᾶς καὶ ὁ Συνέσιος, ἄνδρες Ἀρηΐφιλοι καὶ μαχιμώτατοι,
Ouzas and — Synesios men dear-to-Ares and most-warlike
διὰ τοῦ Ἄσπρου καλουμένου τῷ τότε διελθόντες
through the Aspron called at-the then(-time) having-passed
χωρίου ἀπόμαχοι καὶ αὐτοὶ τὸ Ῥούσιον καταλαμβάνουσιν.
place out-of-the-fight also themselves — Rousion reach

Tatranes, a Scythian who had often deserted and been pardoned, warns that the Scythians mean to surround them, then tells the Scythian leaders that the emperor is invincible and that great reinforcements are coming. Alexios sends Ouzas and Monastras to seize their horses and spends the night training his archers. At dawn the Scythians cross the river. The archers advance on foot, the cavalry follows, and the Scythians are routed into the river, many drowning. Alexios returns victorious.

Ὁ δὲ αὐτοκράτωρ ὑπὸ τοῦ συνέχοντος αὐτόν, ὡς ἔφην,
the and autocrat by the gripping him as I-said
ῥίγους βιαζόμενος κατεκλίθη μικρὸν ἑαυτὸν ἀνακτησόμενος.
shivering forced lay-down a-little himself going-to-recover
ἀλλ᾽ ὅμως οὐδ᾽ οὕτως ἠρέμει σκεπτόμενος, τί ἂν
but nevertheless not-even thus he-was-quiet considering what —
χρὴ τὴν αὔριον ποιῆσαι. προσελθὼν δ᾽ ὁ Τατράνης
it-is-needful the morrow to-do having-come and — Tatranes
(Σκύθης δὲ οὗτος ὁ ἀνὴρ πολλάκις αὐτομολήσας πρὸς
a-Scythian and this-one the man many-times having-deserted to
τὸν αὐτοκράτορα καὶ παλινδρομήσας αὖθις οἴκαδε καὶ
the autocrat and having-run-back again homeward and
τοσαυτάκις παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ συμπαθείας ἀξιωθεὶς καὶ πολὺν
so-many-times by him of-sympathy deemed-worthy and much
τὸν πόθον εἰς αὐτὸν διὰ τὴν τοσαύτην ἀνεξικακίαν
the longing toward him because-of the so-great forbearance
ἐσχηκὼς τὰ ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ τοῦ λοιποῦ ὅλῃ ψυχῇ
having-had the(-things) on-behalf-of him for-the rest with-whole soul
καὶ φρονῶν καὶ πραγματευόμενος) ἔφη "ἐλπίς ἐστί μοι,
both thinking and doing he-said hope is to-me
βασιλεῦ, κατὰ τὴν αὔριον τοὺς Σκύθας κυκλῶσαι ἡμᾶς
emperor on the morrow the Scythians to-encircle us
καὶ οὕτως τὸν μεθ᾽ ἡμῶν ἀναζητῆσαι πόλεμον. χρὴ
and thus the with us to-seek war it-is-needful

τοίνυν προλαβόντας ἔξω τῶν τειχῶν αὐγαζούσης ἡμέρας
therefore having-anticipated outside the walls dawning day
παρατάξασθαι." ἐπαινέσας δὲ τοῦτον ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ
to-array-ourselves having-praised and him the emperor and
ἀποδεξάμενος τῆς βουλῆς συνέθετο ἡλίου ἀνίσχοντος πέρας
having-accepted the counsel agreed (the)-sun rising end
ταύτην λαβεῖν. ὁ δὲ ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ἀπελθὼν τοιαῦτα
it to-receive he and these(-things) having-said having-gone-away such-things
πρὸς τοὺς ἡγεμόνας ἀπεστομάτισε τῶν Σκυθῶν "μὴ
to the leaders recited of-the Scythians not
ἐπαίρεσθε διὰ τὰς προγεγενημένας ἥττας τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος
be-elated by the previous defeats of-the autocrat
μηδὲ ὀλιγοστοὺς ὁρῶντες ἡμᾶς τὴν μεθ' ἡμῶν ἐπ' ἀγαθαῖς
nor very-few seeing us the with us on good
ἐλπίσι θαρρεῖτε μάχην. ἄμαχος τὴν ἰσχύν ἐστιν ὁ κρατῶν
hopes be-confident-of battle invincible in-the strength is the ruler
καὶ πολὺ μισθοφορικὸν ὅσον ἤδη ἐλπίζεται καταλαβεῖν.
and much mercenary-force all-but already is-expected to-arrive
καὶ εἰ μὴ τὴν μετ' αὐτοῦ εἰρήνην ἀσπάσεσθε, τὰ σώματα
and if not the with him peace you-will-embrace the bodies
ὑμῶν οἰωνοὶ ἔδονται." τοιαῦτα μὲν τὰ τοῦ Τατράνη
your birds will-eat such indeed the(-words) — of-Tatranes
πρὸς τοὺς Σκύθας· ὁ δέ γε αὐτοκράτωρ μελετήσας
to the Scythians the and at-least autocrat having-planned
τοὺς κατὰ πεδιάδα νεμομένους ἵππους αὐτῶν ἀναλαβέσθαι
the on plain grazing horses their to-take-up
(ἦσαν γὰρ παμπληθεῖς) λῃζομένων ὁσημέραι τε καὶ
there-were for very-many plundering daily both and
νύκτες τὴν ἡμεδαπὴν χώραν μεταπεμψάμενος τόν τε Οὐζᾶν
nightly the our-own land having-summoned — both Ouzas
καὶ τὸν Μοναστρᾶν ἐπέσκηψε μεθ' ἱππέων ἐκκρίτων ἐξ
and — Monastras he-enjoined with horsemen picked from

ὀπισθίων τῶν Σκυθῶν διελθόντας κατὰ τὸ περίορθρον
behind the Scythians having-passed-through at the early-dawn
τὰς πεδιάδας καταλαβεῖν καὶ τοὺς ἵππους ἅπαντας καὶ
the plains to-reach and the horses all and
τἆλλα κτήνη σὺν αὐτοῖς νομεῦσιν ἀναλαβέσθαι καὶ μὴ
the-other beasts with the-very herdsmen to-take-up and not
δεδιέναι παρεκελεύετο. "ἡμῶν γάρ, φησι, κατὰ πρόσωπον
to-fear he-ordered we for he-says in face
μετ' αὐτῶν μαχομένων ὑμεῖς ῥᾳδίως τὸ κελευσθὲν
with them fighting you easily the(-thing) ordered
ἐκπληρώσετε." οὐδαμῶς δὲ τοῦ σκοποῦ διημάρτηκεν. ὁ
will-fulfill in-no-way and the aim he-missed the
γὰρ λόγος ἔργον εὐθὺς ἐγεγόνει. αὐτὸς δὲ τὴν κατ' αὐτοῦ
for word deed at-once had-become he and the against him
τῶν Σκυθῶν ἐπέλευσιν προσδόκιμον ἔχων οὐκ ἐδίδου
of-the Scythians attack expected having not he-gave
ὕπνον τοῖς ὀφθαλμοῖς οὐδ' ἐπινυστάζων ὅλως ἦν, ἀλλὰ
sleep to-the eyes nor dozing at-all was but
μεταπεμπόμενος δι' ὅλης νυκτὸς τοὺς στρατιώτας καὶ
summoning through whole night the soldiers and
μᾶλλον τοὺς τῆς τοξείας εἰδήμονας πολλὰ περὶ τῶν Σκυθῶν
rather those of-the archery skilled much about the Scythians
ὡμίλει ἐπαλείφων οἷον αὐτοὺς καὶ τὰ συνοίσοντα
he-conversed anointing as-it-were them and the(-things) going-to-help
πρὸς τὴν ἐλπιζομένην ἐς νέωτα μάχην ξυμβουλεύων, ὅπως
for the expected for tomorrow battle advising how
δεῖ τόξον τείνειν καὶ βέλη πέμπειν, ἔστιν οὗ καὶ
it-is-necessary bow to-stretch and missiles to-send there-is where also
τοὺς ἵππους ἀνασειράζειν καὶ αὖθις ἐνδιδόναι τὸν χαλινὸν
the horses to-rein-in and again to-give the bridle
καὶ ἀποβαίνειν τῶν ἵππων, εἰ καὶ τοῦτο χρή. ἀλλὰ
and to-dismount from-the horses if also this is-needful but

ταῦτα μὲν τὰ τῆς νυκτὸς ἔργα· μικρὸν δὲ ὑπνώσας,
these(-things) indeed the of-the night works a-little and having-slept
ἐπεὶ τῆς ἡμέρας ἤδη ἐπιφωσκούσης οἱ λογάδες ἅπαντες
when the day already dawning the picked-men all
τῶν Σκυθῶν διαπεραιωθέντες τὸν ποταμὸν τὸν πόλεμον
of-the Scythians having-crossed the river the war
ἀναζητεῖν ἐῴκεσαν καὶ ἤδη πέρας ὁ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος
to-seek seemed and already end the of-the autocrat
ἐλάμβανε στοχασμός (δεινὸς γὰρ ἦν προϊδέσθαι τὸ
was-receiving guess skilled for he-was to-foresee the
μέλλον ἐμπειρίαν πολλὴν τῇ πυκνότητι τῶν ὁσημέραι
future experience much by-the frequency of-the daily
κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ ἐπανισταμένων πολέμων λαβών), ἐπιβὰς
against him rising wars having-taken having-mounted
παραχρῆμα τοῦ ἵππου τὴν ἐνυάλιον ἠχῆσαι προσέταττε
immediately the horse the warlike to-sound he-ordered
σάλπιγγα καὶ τὰς φάλαγγας καταστησάμενος αὐτὸς ἐπὶ
trumpet and the phalanxes having-set he at
τοῦ μετώπου εἱστήκει. ὁρῶν δὲ τοὺς Σκύθας ἰταμώτερον
the front stood seeing and the Scythians more-recklessly
ἢ πρότερον ἐπικαταλαμβάνοντας παραχρῆμα τοὺς τῆς
than before arriving immediately those of-the
τοξείας εἰδήμονας ἀποβῆναι τῶν ἵππων καὶ βάδην κατ᾽
archery skilled to-dismount from-the horses and at-a-walk against
αὐτῶν ἰέναι ἐπέσκηψε καὶ συνεχῆ τὰ τόξα τείνειν· τὸ δέ
them to-go enjoined and continuously the bows to-stretch the and
γε λοιπὸν τῆς παρατάξεως κατόπιν τούτων ἵετο καὶ
at-least rest of-the battle-line behind these went also
αὐτὸς ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ τὸ μέσον διέπων τοῦ στρατεύματος.
himself the autocrat the middle managing of-the army
οἱ δὲ τοῖς Σκύθαις μετὰ τόλμης προσέβαλον. καρτερᾶς δὲ
they and the Scythians with daring attacked strong and

τῆς μάχης γεγονυίας τὸ μὲν τῇ πυκνότητι τῶν βελῶν,
the battle having-become partly indeed by-the thickness of-the missiles
τὸ δὲ καὶ τὸν τοῦ Ῥωμαϊκοῦ συντάγματος συνασπισμὸν
partly and also the of-the Roman formation locking-of-shields
ὁρῶντες καὶ αὐτὸν δὴ τὸν αὐτοκράτορα ἐκθύμως
seeing and himself indeed the autocrat passionately
μαχόμενον ἐκδειματωθέντες παλιμπόρευτοι γεγόνασι τὸν
fighting terrified turned-back became the
ποταμὸν εἰς τοὐπίσω σπεύδοντες διαπερᾶν πρὸς τὰς
river to the-rear hastening to-cross to the
σφῶν ἁρμαμάξας τὴν φυγὴν ποιούμενοι. ἐδίωκον γὰρ
their covered-wagons the flight making pursued for
ὅλους ῥυτῆρας ἀφέντες οἱ τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς φάλαγγος, οἱ
whole reins having-let-go those of-the Roman phalanx some
μὲν τοῖς δόρασι κατὰ τὰ μετάφρενα παίοντες, οἱ δὲ
indeed with-the spears on the backs striking others and
τοῖς βέλεσι τούτους βάλλοντες. πολλοὶ μὲν οὖν πρὸ
with-the missiles them shooting many indeed then before
τοῦ παρὰ τὸ χεῖλος ἐφθακέναι τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἀναιρεθέντες
the to the lip to-have-reached of-the river killed
πίπτουσι, πολλοὶ δὲ καὶ ἀνὰ κράτος φεύγοντες ταῖς δίναις
fall many and also at full-speed fleeing into-the eddies
ἐμπίπτοντες τοῦ ποταμοῦ παρασυρόμενοι ἐναπεπνίγοντο.
falling of-the river swept-away were-drowned
ἐκθυμότερον δὲ ἁπάντων κατὰ τὴν ἡμέραν ἐκείνην οἱ περὶ
most-passionately and of-all on the day that the about
τὸν αὐτοκράτορα διαπονούμενοι θεράποντες ἠγωνίσαντο.
the autocrat laboring servants contended
ἦσαν γὰρ ἀκμῆτες ἅπαντες. ὁ δέ γε αὐτοκράτωρ
they-were for fresh all the and at-least autocrat

ἔκδηλος ἀριστεὺς καὶ κατὰ ταυτηνὶ τὴν ἡμέραν ἀναδειχθεὶς
conspicuous champion also on this-here the day having-been-shown
νικητὴς πρὸς τὴν ἰδίαν παρεμβολὴν ἐπανέστρεψεν.
victor to the own camp returned

XXXIV · THE WHEELS OF TZOUROULOS

Shut in at Tzouroulos, Alexios hangs the townsmen's wagon wheels from the battlements. His men advance on foot, then part as the Scythians charge, and the wheels, cut loose, roll down among the horsemen and break their horses' legs. Many Scythians drown in the river. The next day he routs them again. With winter coming he leaves Ioannakes and Nicholas Maurokatakalon to garrison the towns and gather foot soldiers, wagons, and oxen for spring, and returns to Byzantium.

Ἐπὶ τρισὶ γοῦν ἡμέραις αὐτοῦ που διαναπαυσάμενος
for three at-any-rate days there somewhere having-rested
ἐκεῖθεν ἀπάρας καταλαμβάνει τὴν Τζουρουλόν. σκοπήσας
from-there having-set-out reaches — Tzouroulos having-considered
δέ, ὡς χρὴ μὴ ταχέως ἐκεῖθεν μεταστῆναι, τάφρον
and that it-is-needful not quickly from-there to-move a-trench
ἀποχρῶσαν πρὸς τὸ ἀνατολικώτερον μέρος τοῦ πολιχνίου
sufficient toward the more-eastern part of-the little-town
ταῖς προσούσαις αὐτῷ δυνάμεσι διορύξας τήν τε
with-the present to-him forces having-dug the both
βασιλικὴν σκηνὴν καὶ τὰς σκευὰς ἁπάσας εἴσω τούτου
imperial tent and the baggage all inside it
κατέθετο. οἱ δὲ Σκύθαι ἐπιόντες καὶ οὗτοι κατὰ τῆς
laid the and Scythians coming-on also these against —
Τζουρουλοῦ, ἐπειδὴ προκαταλαβεῖν τὸν αὐτοκράτορα ταύτην
Tzouroulos since to-seize-first the autocrat it
ἠκηκόεισαν, διαβεβηκότες τὸν ἀνὰ τὴν πεδιάδα ῥέοντα
they-had-heard having-crossed the along the plain flowing

ποταμὸν ἀγχοῦ που τοῦ πολιχνίου τούτου (Ξηρόγυψον
river near somewhere the little-town this Xerogypsos
τοῦτον ἐγχωρίως κατονομάζουσι) τὸν χάρακα ἐπήξαντο
this locally they-name the palisade pitched
μεταξὺ ὄντες τοῦ τε ποταμοῦ καὶ τοῦ πολιχνίου. καὶ οἱ
between being the both river and the little-town and they
μὲν ἦσαν ἔξωθεν τὴν πόλιν ταύτην κυκλώσαντες· ὁ δὲ
indeed were outside the city this having-encircled the and
βασιλεὺς ἔνδον ἐναπείληπτο καθάπερ πολιορκούμενος. ἀλλ᾽
emperor inside had-been-shut-in as-if besieged but
ἐπεὶ νὺξ κατέλαβεν, ἄλλοι μέν ῥα θεοί τε καὶ ἀνέρες
when night overtook others indeed then gods both and men
ἱπποκορυσταί, τοῦτο δὴ τὸ τῆς Καλλιόπης Ὁμήρου,
chariot-fighters this indeed the(-thing) — of-Calliope of-Homer
εὗδον· τὸν δὲ αὐτοκράτορα Ἀλέξιον οὐκ ἔχε νήδυμος
slept the but autocrat Alexios not held sweet
ὕπνος, ἀλλὰ διηγρύπνει τε καὶ ἀνείλιττε λογισμούς, ὅπως
sleep but he-kept-awake both and turned-over reasonings how
τὸ θράσος τῶν βαρβάρων τέχνῃ καταγωνίσηται. ἰδὼν
the boldness of-the barbarians by-art he-might-defeat having-seen
τοίνυν ὡς τὸ πολίχνιον τοῦτο ἡ Τζουρουλὸς ἐπὶ λόφου
therefore that the little-town this — Tzouroulos on a-hill
ἀνεστηκότος τετείχιστο, τὸ δὲ βάρβαρον ἅπαν κάτω
rising had-been-walled the and barbarian all below
που περὶ τὴν πεδιάδα ηὐλίσατο, ἐπεὶ μὴ ἀποχρῶσαν
somewhere about the plain camped since not sufficient
πρὸς τοσαῦτα πλήθη δύναμιν εἶχεν, ὥστε τὴν μετ᾽ αὐτῶν
against so-great multitudes force he-had so-as the with them
ἀποθαρρῆσαι κατασυστάδην μάχην, ἐπινοεῖταί τι καὶ
to-dare close-combat battle he-devises something also
μάλα εὐμήχανον. ἀναλαβόμενος τὰς τῶν οἰκητόρων ἁμάξας
very ingenious having-taken-up the of-the inhabitants wagons

καὶ ταύτας ἀφελὼν ἀπὸ τῶν ἐπικραββάτων τούς τε
and them having-removed from the bodies the both
τροχοὺς καὶ τοὺς ἄξονας ἄνω κατέσχε κᾆθ' οὕτως ἔξω
wheels and the axles above held and-then thus outside
τοῦ τείχους ἐπὶ τῶν κρηδέμνων ἐφεξῆς ἀπαιωρεῖ διά
the wall on the battlements in-a-row suspends by
τινων καλῳδίων ἐναποδεσμουμένων ταῖς ἐπάλξεσι τῶν
some ropes being-tied-on to-the parapets of-the
τειχῶν. καὶ ἅμα τε τοῦτο ἐνενόησε καὶ εἰργάσατο. καὶ
walls and at-once both this he-thought and did and
μιᾶς ὥρας ἐναπεκρέμαντο κύκλῳ οἱ τροχοὶ μετὰ τῶν
in-one hour were-hanging in-a-circle the wheels with the
ἀξόνων ὥσπερ τινὲς ἐφεξῆς κύκλοι κείμενοι καὶ ἀλλήλοις
axles as-if some in-a-row circles lying and to-one-another
ἐγγίζοντες καὶ τοῖς ἄξοσιν αὐτῶν ξυνδεσμούμενοι. πρωΐθεν
approaching and to-the axles their being-bound-together early
δὲ ἀναστὰς καὶ αὐτός τε ὁπλισάμενος καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους
and having-risen and he both having-armed and the others
ὁπλίσας ἐξάγει τοῦ τείχους ἀντιμετώπους στήσας τοὺς
having-armed leads-out from-the wall face-to-face having-set the
στρατιώτας τοῖς βαρβάροις. συνέβαινε δέ, ἐφ' ἃ μέρη
soldiers to-the barbarians it-happened and on which parts
τὰ κύκλα τῶν τροχῶν ἀπῃώρηντο, ἐπ' ἐκεῖνα καὶ τοὺς
the circles of-the wheels had-been-hung on those also the
ἡμετέρους στρατιώτας ἵστασθαι καὶ ἀντικρὺ κεῖσθαι κατὰ
our soldiers to-stand and opposite to-lie on
μίαν γραμμὴν τὸ ἀντίθετον. καὶ τὸ ἐντεῦθεν αὐτὸς
one line the opposite and the thence he
μέσον τῆς ἀμφ' αὐτὸν παρατάξεως ἑστηκὼς συνεβούλευεν,
middle of-the about him battle-line standing advised
ἐπὰν ἡ σάλπιγξ τὸ ἐνυάλιον ἐμβοήσειεν, ἀποβάντας
when the trumpet the war-cry should-shout having-dismounted

τῶν ἵππων τοὺς στρατιώτας σχολῇ καὶ βάδην κατὰ
from-the horses the soldiers at-leisure and at-a-walk against
τῶν ἐναντίων χωρεῖν τόξοις τὰ πολλὰ χρωμένους καὶ
the opponents to-advance with-bows the most(-part) using and
ἀκροβολισμοῖς καὶ τὴν φάλαγγα τῶν Σκυθῶν εἰς ἑαυτοὺς
skirmishes and the phalanx of-the Scythians to themselves
προκαλεῖσθαι· ἐπὰν δὲ τούτους παρασυρέντας καὶ ἐπ᾽
to-call-out when and them carried-away and on
αὐτοὺς ἐγκεκραγότας τοὺς ἵππους θεάσαιντο, προτροπάδην
them having-shouted the horses they-should-see headlong
ὀπισθορμήτους γενομένους ὀλίγον διαιρεθῆναι τηνικαῦτα
turned-in-flight having-become a-little to-be-divided then
διχῇ εἰς δεξιόν τε καὶ εὐώνυμον μέρος καὶ χώραν δοῦναι
in-two into right both and left part and room to-give
τοῖς ἐναντίοις ἐς τοσοῦτον, ἕως ἂν τοῦ τείχους πλησίον
to-the opponents to so-much until — the wall near
γένοιντο. τούτου δὲ γεγονότος παρήγγελτο τοῖς ἄνωθεν
they-should-come this and having-happened it-had-been-ordered to-those above
ἑστηκόσιν ἀπὸ τοῦ τείχους, ὁπηνίκα τὴν σχίζαν τῶν
standing from the wall when the split of-the
φαλάγγων θεάσαιντο, ξίφεσι τὰ καλῴδια διακόπτειν
phalanxes they-should-see with-swords the ropes to-cut
καὶ ἀφεῖναι τοὺς τροχοὺς μετὰ τῶν ἀξόνων ἄνωθεν
and to-let-go the wheels with the axles from-above
κάτω κατακρημνίζεσθαι. ἐγένετο ταῦτα κατὰ τὸ τοῦ
down to-be-hurled happened these(-things) according-to the of-the
βασιλέως παράγγελμα. καὶ ἀθρόοι μὲν ἐπαρράξαντες
emperor order and in-a-body indeed having-dashed-in
ἦσαν οἱ Σκύθαι σὺν ἀλαλαγμῷ βαρβαρικῷ ἱππόται κατὰ
were the Scythians with war-cry barbarian horsemen against
τῆς ἡμεδαπῆς παρατάξεως πεζῇ καὶ βάδην κατ᾽ αὐτῶν
the our battle-line on-foot and at-a-walk against them

ἰεμένων πάντων, μόνου δὲ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος ἐπόχου
going all only and the autocrat mounted
συγκατιόντος αὐτοῖς. οἱ δὲ κατὰ τὴν τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος
coming-down-with them they and according-to the of-the autocrat
Ἀλεξίου τέχνην ὀλίγον γόνυ γουνὸς ἀμείψαντες καὶ οἷον
Alexios art a-little knee for-knee having-exchanged and as-it-were
ἀναποδίσαντες διεσχίσθησαν ἀπ᾽ ἀλλήλων, ὡς οὐκ ἄν τις
having-retreated split from each-other as not — anyone
ἤλπισεν, ὥσπερ θύραν τοῖς βαρβάροις πλατυτάτην εἰς
would-have-expected as-if a-door to-the barbarians very-wide into
τὴν εἴσοδον ἀνεῴξαντες. καὶ ἅμα οἱ μὲν Σκύθαι εἴσω
the entrance having-opened and at-once the indeed Scythians inside
τοῦ στομίου τῶν ἑκατέρωθεν φαλάγγων ἐγεγόνεισαν, οἱ
the mouth of-the on-both-sides phalanxes had-come the
δὲ τροχοὶ μετά τινος ῥοίζου καὶ καταφορᾶς ἐνεχθέντες
and wheels with some whizzing and downrush borne
ὑπὲρ πῆχυν ἀπὸ τοῦ τείχους ἕκαστος ἐφαλλόμενοι ἅτε
over a-cubit from the wall each leaping inasmuch-as
τῶν κυρτοτήτων ἑκάστου τροχοῦ ἀποκρουσθεισῶν ἐκ τοῦ
the curvatures of-each wheel having-been-struck-off from the
τείχους καὶ οἷον ἀποσφενδονηθεισῶν εἰς μέσους τοὺς
wall and as-it-were having-been-slung into the-midst the
τῶν βαρβάρων ἱππότας ἐξεκυλίσθησαν ῥύμην λαβόντες
of-the barbarians horsemen rolled impetus having-taken
σφοδροτέραν. τὸ μὲν καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς ἀθρόας καταφορᾶς
more-violent partly indeed also from the sudden downrush
τῷ φυσικῷ πειθόμενοι βάρει, τὸ δὲ καὶ ῥοπὴν λαβόντες
to-the natural obeying weight partly and also momentum having-taken
ἀκάθεκτον ἀπὸ τοῦ κατάντους τοῦ τόπου σφοδρῶς τε τοῖς
unrestrainable from the slope of-the place violently both on-the
βαρβάροις ἐνέπιπτον καὶ πανταχόθεν αὐτοὺς περιέθλιβον
barbarians fell and from-all-sides them crushed

τὰ σκέλη τῶν ἵππων· ὥσπερ θερίζοντες καὶ ἀμφότερα
the legs of-the horses as-if reaping and both
ἑκατέρωθεν ἀπό τε τῶν ἐμπροσθίων καὶ ὀπισθίων
on-both-sides from both the front and back
μερῶν διατεμόμενοι ὀκλάσαι τοὺς ἵππους, ἐφ' ἃ μέρη
parts having-cut to-sink-down the horses on which parts
τὴν πληγὴν ἐδέξαντο, κατηνάγκασαν καὶ τοὺς ἱππότας
the blow they-received compelled and the horsemen
συγκαταβαλεῖν. ὧν ἐπαλλήλων καὶ συχνῶν πιπτόντων, ἐξ
to-throw-down-with whom successive and frequent falling from
ἑκατέρου δὲ καὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν κατ' αὐτῶν ἰεμένων καὶ
each-side and also the soldiers against them rushing and
δεινῆς τῆς μάχης τοῖς Σκύθαις πανταχόθεν ἐφισταμένης
terrible the battle on-the Scythians from-all-sides pressing
οἱ μὲν τοῖς πεμπομένοις ἀνῃροῦντο βέλεσιν, οἱ δὲ διὰ
some indeed by-the sent were-killed missiles others and with
τῶν δοράτων ἐπλήττοντο, τῶν δὲ λοιπῶν οἱ πλείους ὑπὸ
the spears were-struck of-the and rest the most by
τῶν τροχῶν σφοδρῶς καταφερομένων συνωθούμενοι πρὸς
the wheels violently rushing-down pushed to
τὸ ῥεῦμα τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἀπεπνίγησαν. τῇ δὲ μετ' αὐτήν,
the stream of-the river were-drowned on-the and after it
ἐπεὶ πάλιν τοὺς καταλειφθέντας Σκύθας πρὸς πόλεμον
since again the left Scythians to war
ὁρμῶντας ἑώρα, τοὺς ὑπ' αὐτὸν ἅπαντας τεθαρρηκότας
rushing he-saw those under him all having-taken-courage
κατανοήσας ὁπλίσασθαι παρεκελεύσατο. σιδηροφορήσας
having-perceived to-arm ordered having-armed-in-iron
δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς καὶ πολέμου σχῆμα διατυπώσας πρὸς τὸ
and also he and of-war form having-drawn to the
πρανὲς κάτεισιν. εἶτα δὴ τὰς φάλαγγας ἐπιστρέψας κατὰ
downward goes-down then indeed the phalanxes having-turned in

πρόσωπον τοῖς Σκύθαις ἵστατο, ἐφ' ᾧ τὸν μετ' αὐτῶν
face to-the Scythians stood for which the with them
ὡς ἐνὸν συνάψαι πόλεμον. αὐτὸς μὲν οὖν τὴν μέσην
as being-possible to-join war he indeed then the middle
τῶν ταγμάτων εἶχε χώραν· μάχης δὲ καρτερᾶς γενομένης
of-the units held place battle and strong having-happened
τὴν νικῶσαν τηνικαῦτα παρ' ἐλπίδας αἱ Ῥωμαϊκαὶ εἶχον
the victory then beyond hopes the Roman held
φάλαγγες καὶ ἐδίωκον τούτους ἀκρατῶς· ἐπεὶ δ' ἱκανὸν
phalanxes and pursued them headlong when and considerable
διάστημα τούτους ἑώρα διώκοντας ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ, δεδιὼς
distance them he-saw pursuing the autocrat fearing
μὴ λοχῶντές τινες αἰφνιδίως ἐπεισπεσόντες τοῖς Ῥωμαίοις
lest lying-in-ambush some suddenly having-fallen-upon the Romans
παλίντροπον τὴν τῶν Σκυθῶν φυγὴν ἀπεργάσωνται καὶ
turned-back the of-the Scythians flight might-make and
προστεθέντες τούτοις καὶ οἱ φεύγοντες μέγα τὸ δεινὸν τῇ
having-been-added to-them also the fleeing great the terror on-the
Ῥωμαϊκῇ στρατιᾷ ἐπάξωσιν, ἱππασίας πυκνὰς ποιούμενος
Roman army might-bring charges frequent making
ἀνασειράζειν τοὺς χαλινοὺς καὶ τοὺς ἵππους ἀναψύχειν
to-rein-in the bridles and the horses to-refresh
τοῖς στρατιώταις ἐκέλευεν. οὕτω γοῦν κατὰ τὴν ἡμέραν
the soldiers he-ordered thus at-any-rate on the day
ἐκείνην ἄμφω διαστήτην τὰ στρατεύματα. οἱ μὲν
that both separated the armies the(-ones) indeed
γὰρ φυγάδες, ὁ δὲ λαμπρὸς νικητὴς χαίρων πρὸς
for fugitives the(-other) and brilliant victor rejoicing to
τὴν ἰδίαν παρεμβολὴν ἐπάνεισιν. οἱ δὲ Σκύθαι κατὰ
the own camp returns the and Scythians by
κράτος ἡττηθέντες μεταξὺ τοῦ Βουλγαροφύγου καὶ τῆς
force defeated between — Boulgarophygon and the

μικρᾶς Νικαίας τὰς σκηνὰς ἐπήγνυντο. χειμῶνος δὲ ἤδη
Little Nicaea the tents pitched winter and already
ἐπικαταλαβόντος δεῖν ἔγνω ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ εἰς τὴν
having-come-on to-be-needful knew the autocrat to the
βασιλεύουσαν ἐπανελθεῖν, ἐφ᾽ ᾧ ἑαυτόν τε καὶ τὸ πλέον
reigning(-city) to-return for which himself both and the greater-part
τοῦ στρατοπέδου τῶν πολλῶν ἀγώνων ἐπανακτήσασθαι.
of-the army from-the many contests to-recover
διελόμενος οὖν τὰς δυνάμεις καὶ εἰς ἀντίπαλον μοῖραν
having-divided then the forces and into a-match portion
ἀποκρίνας, ὁπόσοι εὐψυχότεροι τοῦ παντὸς ἦσαν
having-separated as-many-as more-courageous of-the whole were
στρατεύματος, ἡγεμόνας τούτων τόν τε Ἰωαννάκην καὶ
army as-leaders of-them — both Ioannakes and
τὸν Μαυροκατακαλὼν Νικόλαον προὐβάλλετο, περὶ ὧν
— Maurokatakalon Nicholas he-put-forward about whom
πολλάκις φθάσας ὁ λόγος ἐδήλωσεν, ἐντειλάμενος αὐτοῖς
many-times having-been-first the account showed having-enjoined them
ἐν ἑκάστῳ μὲν τῶν πολιχνίων ἀποχρῶντας εἰσαγαγεῖν
in each indeed of-the little-towns sufficient to-put-in
στρατιώτας εἰς τὴν αὐτῶν φρουράν, πεζοὺς δὲ ἐξ ἁπάσης
soldiers for the their guard foot and from all
τῆς χώρας μετὰ ἁμαξῶν καὶ τῶν ταύτας ἑλκόντων βοῶν
the land with wagons and the them drawing oxen
ἐξελάσαι. βουλόμενος γὰρ ἔαρος ἐφισταμένου τῆς κατὰ
to-drive-out wishing for spring coming-on the against
τῶν Σκυθῶν καρτερώτερον ἀνθέξεσθαι μάχης προεμελέτα
the Scythians more-strongly to-hold-out battle he-planned
τε καὶ ηὐτρέπιζε τὰ συνοίσοντα. οὕτω γοῦν ἅπαντα
both and prepared the(-things) going-to-help thus at-any-rate all
διαθέμενος ἐπανέρχεται πρὸς τὸ Βυζάντιον.
having-arranged returns to — Byzantium

XXXV · CHOIROBAKCHOI

Hearing that a Scythian detachment is coming against Choirobakchoi, Alexios leaves the palace within a week with five hundred men, telling his kin to join him in Cheesefare week. He shuts himself in the town and watches from the walls. When six thousand Scythians scatter to forage as far as Dekaton, he attacks those left by the ridge and kills or captures them. Then, dressing his men in Scythian clothes, he waits by the river and takes the returning foragers by surprise.

Μεμαθηκὼς ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ, ὡς ἀπόμοιράν τινα οἱ τῶν
having-learned the autocrat that detachment some the of-the
Σκυθῶν ἡγεμόνες ἀπολεξάμενοι κατὰ τῶν Χοιροβάκχων
Scythians leaders having-selected against — Choirobakchoi
ἐξέπεμψαν καὶ προσδόκιμος ἡ τούτων ἄφιξις ἦν, ὁποῖος
sent-out and expected the their arrival was such
ἐκεῖνος θερμουργὸς περὶ τὰς ἐγχειρήσεις κἀν τοῖς αἰφνιδίοις
that-man hot-in-action about the undertakings and-in the sudden-things
ἀεὶ ὡς προπαρεσκευασμένος δεικνύμενος, μήπω ἑβδόμην
always as prepared-beforehand showing-himself not-yet (the)-seventh
ἡμέραν ἑαυτὸν ἐν τοῖς βασιλείοις διαναπαυσάμενος μηδὲ
day himself in the palace having-rested nor
βαλανείου τυχὼν μηδὲ τὸν ἐκ τοῦ πολέμου κονιορτὸν
bath having-obtained nor the from the war dust
ἀποτιναξάμενος παραχρῆμα τοὺς ἐπὶ τῆς φρουρᾶς τῆς
having-shaken-off immediately those on the guard of-the
πόλεως τεταγμένους καὶ ὁπόσοι νεόλεκτοι ἀναλαμβάνεται
city stationed and as-many-as newly-enlisted takes
ὡσεὶ πεντακοσίους τὸν ἀριθμὸν καὶ ὁπλίσας δι᾽
about five-hundred the number and having-armed through
ὅλης νυκτὸς κατὰ τὸ περίορθρον ἔξεισι. τηνικαῦτα δὲ
whole night at the early-dawn goes-out then and

δήλην καθίστησι τὴν αὐτοῦ πρὸς τοὺς Σκύθας ἐξέλευσιν
plain makes the his against the Scythians departure
τοῖς τε ἐξ αἵματος καὶ ἀγχιστείας προσήκουσιν αὐτῷ
to-the both by blood and marriage related to-him
συγγενέσι καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις, ὁπόσοι τῆς μείζονος τύχης
kinsmen and to-the others as-many-as of-the greater fortune
ἦσαν καὶ τῷ στρατιωτικῷ συντάγματι συγκατειλεγμένοι
were and in-the military body enrolled
(παρασκευὴ δὲ ἦν ἡ τῆς ἀπόκρεω) ταυτὶ διὰ τῶν
Friday and it-was the of-the Meatfare this-here through the
ἀποστολέων παρακελευσάμενος ὡς ἄρα γοῦν "ἐγὼ μὲν
messengers having-ordered that after-all at-any-rate I indeed
ἄπειμι τὴν τῶν Σκυθῶν κατὰ τῶν Χοιροβάκχων ὀξεῖαν
go-away the of-the Scythians against — Choirobakchoi swift
μεμαθηκὼς κίνησιν, ὑμεῖς δὲ ἀλλὰ κατὰ τὴν ἑβδομάδα τῆς
having-learned movement you and but in the week of-the
τυροφάγου στρατεύσατε πρὸς ἡμᾶς. τὰς γὰρ μεταξὺ τῆς
Cheesefare march to us the for between the
τε παρασκευῆς τῆς ἀπόκρεω καὶ τῆς τυροφάγου δευτέρας
both Friday of-the Meatfare and of-the Cheesefare second
ἡμέρας ὑμῖν ἐφίημι εἰς μικράν τινα ῥᾳστώνην, ὡς μὴ
day to-you I-grant for small some relief so-that not
βαρύς τις καὶ ἀδιάκριτος δόξαιμι." ἐκεῖνος μὲν οὖν
burdensome someone and indiscriminate I-might-seem that-man indeed then
παραχρῆμα κατευθὺ Χοιροβάκχων ἤλαυνε καὶ εἰσελθὼν
immediately straight-for Choirobakchoi drove and having-entered
κλείει τὰς πύλας· τὰς δὲ κλεῖς αὐτὸς ἀναλαμβάνεται. εἶτα
shuts the gates the and keys he takes then
τοὺς εὔνους ἅπαντας τῶν θεραπόντων περὶ τὰ κρήδεμνα
the loyal all of-the servants about the battlements
καθίστησι τοῦ τείχους παραγγείλας μὴ ἀναπεπτωκέναι,
sets of-the wall having-ordered not to-slacken

ἀλλ᾽ ἐπαγρυπνοῦντας περιαθρεῖν τὰ τείχη, μή πού
but keeping-awake to-survey the walls lest somewhere
τις ἀνελθὼν καὶ προκύψας ὁμιλήσειε τοῖς Σκύθαις.
anyone having-gone-up and having-leaned-out might-converse with-the Scythians
ἀνίσχοντος δὲ τοῦ ἡλίου καὶ οἱ ἐλπιζόμενοι τῶν Σκυθῶν
rising and the sun also the expected of-the Scythians
καταλαβόντες κατὰ τὸν συγκεκολλημένον τῷ τείχει
having-arrived at the joined to-the wall
τῶν Χοιροβάκχων αὐχένα ἔστησαν. ἐξ ὧν τηνικαῦτα
of-the Choirobakchoi ridge stood from whom then
ἀποκριθέντες ὡσεὶ ἓξ χιλιάδες εἰς προνομὴν διεσκεδάσθησαν
having-separated about six thousands for foraging scattered
ἐφθακότες μέχρις αὐτοῦ Δεκάτου ὡσεὶ δέκα σταδίους τῶν
having-reached as-far-as itself Dekaton about ten stades from-the
τειχῶν ἀπέχοντος τῆς βασιλίδος τῶν πόλεων· ἐξ οὗ
walls distant of-the queen of-the cities from which
οἶμαι καὶ τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν ἐκτήσατο. οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ αὐτοῦ
I-think also the name it-acquired the and rest there
που διαμεμενήκεσαν. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς ἀνελθὼν διὰ
somewhere remained the and emperor having-gone-up through
τοῦ τείχους εἰς τὰς ἐπάλξεις περιεσκόπει τὰς πεδιάδας
the wall onto the parapets surveyed the plains
καὶ τοὺς βουνούς, εἴ που καὶ ἑτέρα δύναμις τούτοις
and the hills whether somewhere also another force on-them
ἔπεισιν ἢ εἴ που λόχους καθίσαντες μελετῶσι τὸν
comes-on or whether somewhere ambushes having-set they-plan the(-one)
τούτοις ἴσως προσβαλεῖν ἐπιχειρήσοντα κατασχεῖν. ὡς δ᾽
on-them perhaps to-attack going-to-attempt to-seize as and
οὐδέν τι τοιοῦτον ἐθεάσατο, περὶ δευτέραν τῆς ἡμέρας
nothing any such he-saw about second of-the day
ὥραν ὁρᾷ τούτους οὐ πρὸς μάχην ἠὐτρεπισμένους, ἀλλὰ
hour he-sees them not for battle prepared but

πρὸς τροφὴν καὶ ἀνάπαυσιν ἀποκλίναντας· πλῆθος δὲ
to food and rest having-turned multitude and
πολὺ τούτους ὁρῶν καὶ τοῦ μετ᾽ αὐτῶν κατασυστάδην
great them seeing and the with them in-close-combat
μὴ κατατολμῶν πολέμου ἐν δεινῷ ἐποιεῖτο, εἰ τὴν
not daring war in danger he-considered-it if the
ἅπασαν λῃσάμενοι χώραν καὶ αὐτοῖς τοῖς τείχεσι τῆς
whole having-plundered land also to-the-very the walls of-the
βασιλευούσης τῶν πόλεων προσπελάσαιεν καὶ ταῦτα αὐτοῦ
reigning of-the cities they-should-approach and this him
ἐκεῖθεν ἐξεληλυθότος ἐφ᾽ ᾧ τούτους ἀποσοβῆσαι
from-there having-gone-out for which-purpose them to-scare-off
τῆς χώρας. μετακαλεσάμενος οὖν τηνικαῦτα τοὺς ὑπ᾽
from-the land having-summoned then at-that-time the under
αὐτὸν στρατιώτας καὶ τὴν γνώμην αὐτῶν δοκιμάσαι
him soldiers and the mind their to-test
βουλόμενος ἔφη "οὐ χρὴ ἀποδειλιᾶν πρὸς τὸ πλῆθος
wishing he-said not it-is-needful to-be-cowardly at the multitude
τῶν Σκυθῶν ἀφορῶντας, ἀλλ᾽ εἰς θεὸν ἠλπικότας τὸν μετ᾽
of-the Scythians looking but in God having-hoped the with
αὐτῶν συνάψαι πόλεμον, καὶ εἰ μόνον ὁμογνωμονήσαιμεν,
them to-join war and if only we-should-be-of-one-mind
πέποιθα ὡς ἡττήσομεν αὐτοὺς κατὰ κράτος". τῶν δὲ
I-am-confident that we-shall-defeat them by force they and
ἀπαναινομένων πάντῃ καὶ πρὸς τὸν λόγον ἀναβαλλομένων
refusing wholly and at the word putting-off
ἐκεῖνος εἰς φόβον ἐμβάλλων πλείονα τοὺς αὐτοῦ καὶ
that-man into fear throwing more those his and
ἀνεγείρων εἰς κίνδυνόν φησιν "ἐὰν οἱ εἰς προνομὴν
rousing to danger says if those for foraging
ἀπελθόντες ἐπανέλθοιεν αὖθις καὶ μετὰ τῶν παρόντων
having-gone-away should-return again and with those present

ἑνωθεῖεν, προῦπτος ὁ κίνδυνος. ἢ γὰρ καὶ τὸ κάστρον
be-united foreseen the danger either for also the fortress
παρ᾽ αὐτῶν κατασχεθήσεται καὶ ἡμεῖς παρανάλωμα φόνου
by them will-be-seized and we a-casualty of-slaughter
γενησόμεθα ἢ παρ᾽ οὐδὲν ἡμᾶς λογισάμενοι ἴσως τοῖς
we-shall-become or for nothing us having-reckoned perhaps to-the
τείχεσι τῆς πόλεως προσπελάσαντες οὐκ ἐγχωρήσουσιν
walls of-the city having-approached not they-will-allow
ἡμῖν εἰς τὴν βασιλίδα πόλιν εἰσελθεῖν αὐτοῦ που περὶ
us into the queen city to-enter there somewhere about
τὰς πύλας αὐτῆς αὐλισάμενοι. λοιπὸν κινδυνεῦσαι ἡμᾶς χρὴ
the gates of-it having-camped for-the-rest to-run-risk we must
καὶ μὴ ἀνάνδρως ἀποθανεῖν. ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν ἤδη ἔξειμι καὶ
and not unmanfully to-die I indeed then now go-out and
ὁπόσοι βούλεσθε, προεκδραμόντος ἐμοῦ καὶ ἐς μέσον τῶν
as-many-as wish having-run-out-first me and into the-midst of-the
Σκυθῶν εἰσπηδήσαντος συνέψεσθε, ὁπόσοι δὲ τοῦτο οὐ
Scythians having-leapt you-will-follow as-many-as and this not
δύνασθε ἢ οὐ βούλεσθε, μηδὲ τῶν πυλῶν ἐκτὸς γένοισθε.”
can or not wish not-even of-the gates outside may-you-come
παραχρῆμα γοῦν διὰ τῆς ἀπονενευκυίας ὡς πρὸς τὴν
immediately at-any-rate through the turning as toward the
λίμνην πύλης ὁπλισάμενος ἔξεισι. καὶ παραδραμὼν τὰ τείχη
lake gate having-armed goes-out and having-run-past the walls
καὶ μικρὸν παρεγκλίνας ἐξ ὀπισθίων τοῦ αὐχένος ἄνεισιν.
and a-little having-turned-aside from behind the ridge goes-up
οὐδὲ γὰρ συνέψεσθαι τούτῳ διέγνω τοὺς μετ᾽ αὐτοῦ πρὸς
not-even for to-follow him he-judged those with him to
τὸν κατασυστάδην μετὰ τῶν Σκυθῶν πόλεμον. καὶ πρῶτος
the in-close-combat with the Scythians war and first
αὐτὸς δόρυ σπασάμενος ἐς μέσους Σκύθας ἑαυτὸν ὤθησε
he a-spear having-drawn into the-midst Scythians himself thrust

παίσας τὸν πρώτως αὐτῷ ὑπαντιάσαντα. ἀλλ' οὐδ' οἱ
having-struck the first him meeting but not-even the
σὺν αὐτῷ στρατιῶται τῆς μάχης ἀπελείφθησαν κἀντεῦθεν
with him soldiers from-the battle were-left-behind and-thence
τοὺς μὲν πλείους ἔκτειναν, τοὺς δὲ καὶ ζωγρίαν ἦγον.
the indeed most they-killed others and also alive led
εἶτα ὁποῖα ἐκεῖνος μηχανᾶσθαι εἰώθει, τὰς τῶν Σκυθῶν
then such-things that-man to-contrive was-wont the of-the Scythians
ἐσθῆτας τοὺς στρατιώτας ἀμφιέννυσι καὶ τῶν Σκυθικῶν
clothes the soldiers he-clothes and on-the Scythian
ἵππων ἐπιβῆναι κελεύει, τοὺς δὲ ἵππους τῶν στρατιωτῶν
horses to-mount orders the and horses of-the soldiers
καὶ τὰς τούτων σημαίας καὶ τὰς ἀποτμηθείσας τῶν
and the their standards and the cut-off of-the
Σκυθῶν κεφαλὰς παραδούς τισι τῶν εὐνουστέρων
Scythians heads having-handed-over to-some of-the more-loyal
παραλαβόντας προσέταξεν εἴσω τοῦ κάστρου γενέσθαι
having-taken-them ordered inside the fortress to-be
ἀπεκδεχομένους αὐτόν. ταῦτα τοίνυν οὕτως οἰκονομήσας
awaiting him these(-things) therefore thus having-arranged
ἐκεῖνος μετὰ τῶν Σκυθικῶν σημαιῶν καὶ τῶν τὰ Σκυθικὰ
that-man with the Scythian standards and the the Scythian
ἀμφία περιβεβλημένων στρατιωτῶν κάτεισιν ὡς πρὸς τὸν
garments having-put-on soldiers goes-down as toward the
ἀγχοῦ Χοιροβάκχων ῥέοντα ποταμόν, ὅπου καὶ τοὺς ἀπὸ
near Choirobakchoi flowing river where also the from
τῆς προνομῆς ὑποστρέφοντας Σκύθας ἐνόμιζε διελθεῖν.
the foraging returning Scythians he-thought to-pass-through
οἱ δὲ προνομεῖς ἐκεῖνοι θεασάμενοι τούτους ἱσταμένους
the and foragers those having-beheld them standing
ἐκεῖσε καὶ νομίσαντες Σκύθας καὶ αὐτοὺς εἶναι ἀφυλάκτως
there and having-thought Scythians also them to-be unguardedly

τούτοις προσπίπτοντες οἱ μὲν ἀνῃροῦντο, ἄλλοι δὲ καὶ
on-them falling-upon some indeed were-killed others and also
κατείχοντο.
were-held

XXXVI · THE DISGUISED ARMY

Alexios marches back with the Scythian standards and severed heads in front and his own men behind. Palaiologos, riding out ahead of the kinsmen, hears from his scouts of Scythians with Roman standards behind them and at once recognizes one of Alexios' devices. The kinsmen, who had come too late for the battle, hardly believe that the emperor won so quickly until they see the heads on spears. Palaiologos regrets missing the glory of the victory. Anna applies the song of Deuteronomy, where one man chases a thousand.

Ἑσπέρας δὲ καταλαβούσης (σάββατον δὲ ἦν) ἐπανέρχεται
evening and having-come Saturday and it-was he-returns
μετὰ τῶν δορυαλώτων. καρτερήσας δὲ καὶ τὴν ἐπιοῦσαν
with the spear-captives having-held-out and also the following
αὐγαζούσης ἤδη τῆς δευτέρας ἐξῆλθε τοῦ κάστρου καὶ
dawning already the second-day he-went-out from-the fortress and
διελὼν τοὺς ὑπ' αὐτὸν ἔμπροσθεν μὲν εἰσήγαγε τοὺς
having-divided those under him in-front indeed he-put those
τὰς τῶν Σκυθῶν σημαίας κατέχοντας, ὄπισθεν δὲ τοὺς
the of-the Scythians standards holding behind and the
δορυαλώτους τῶν Σκυθῶν, παρὰ χωριτῶν ἕκαστον τούτων
spear-captives of-the Scythians by villagers each of-them
κατεχομένους· τὰς δὲ ἀποτμηθείσας κεφαλὰς δόρασι
held the and cut-off heads on-spears
περιπείρας παρ' ἑτέρων αὖθις ἐν τούτοις ἀπαιωρουμένας
having-fixed by others again on them being-hung-up

παρεκελεύσατο οὕτως τὴν ὁδοιπορίαν ποιεῖσθαι. τούτων δὲ
he-ordered thus the march to-make them and
ὄπισθεν ἐκ διαστήματος μετρίου ἀπέχων μετὰ τῶν ὑπ᾽
behind at a-distance moderate being-distant with those under
αὐτὸν καὶ τῶν συνήθων τοῖς Ῥωμαίοις σημαιῶν ἑπόμενος
him and the customary for-the Romans standards following
ἦν. αὐγαζούσης δὲ τῆς ἀπόκρεω κυριακῆς ὁ Παλαιολόγος
he-was dawning and the Meatfare Sunday — Palaiologos
θερμουργὸς ὢν περὶ τὰς πολεμικὰς πράξεις πρὸ τῶν
hot-in-action being about the warlike deeds before the
ἄλλων ἐξεληλύθει τοῦ Βυζαντίου. τὸ δὲ ὀξύρροπον τῶν
others had-gone-out — from-Byzantium the and swift-turning of-the
Σκυθῶν ἐπιστάμενος οὐκ ἀπερισκέπτως τὴν ὁδοιπορίαν
Scythians knowing not carelessly the march
ἐποιεῖτο, ἀλλ᾽ ἀποδιελὼν τῶν συνεφεπομένων αὐτῷ
made but having-separated of-the following him
θεραπόντων ὀλίγους παρεκελεύσατο αὐτοῦ προεκτρέχειν
servants few ordered of-him to-run-ahead
διάστημα καὶ τὰς πεδιάδας καὶ τὰ ἄλση καὶ τὰς
a-distance and the plains and the groves and the
ὁδοὺς περιαθρεῖν, ἵν᾽ εἴ πού τινες τῶν Σκυθῶν
roads to-survey that if somewhere any of-the Scythians
ἀναφανεῖεν, ταχὺ ὑποστρέψαντες ἀπαγγείλωσιν αὐτῷ. οὕτω
should-appear quickly having-returned they-might-report to-him thus
γοῦν πορευόμενοι, ἐπεὶ κατὰ τὴν πεδιάδα τὴν οὕτω
at-any-rate going when on the plain the so
καλουμένην Διμυλίαν τοὺς τὰ Σκυθικὰ περιβεβλημένους
called Dimylia those the Scythian having-put-on
ἀμφία καὶ Σκυθικὰς σημαίας ἐθεάσαντο, εἰς τοὐπίσω
garments and Scythian standards they-saw to the-rear
ἀναστρέψαντες τοὺς Σκύθας ἤδη καταλαμβάνειν ἔφασαν.
having-turned-back the Scythians already to-be-arriving said

ὁ δὲ παραχρῆμα ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις ἦν. κατὰ πόδας δὲ καὶ
he and immediately in the arms was at heels and also
ἕτερος ἐλθὼν διενίστατο λέγων, ὡς ὄπισθεν τῶν τάχα
another having-come affirmed saying that behind the perhaps
Σκυθῶν ἐξ ἱκανοῦ διαστήματος Ῥωμαϊκαὶ ἀνεφάνησαν
Scythians from considerable distance Roman appeared
σημαῖαι καὶ στρατιῶται κατόπιν θέοντες. οἱ μὲν οὖν
standards and soldiers behind running they indeed then
ταῦτα ἀπαγγέλλοντες τὸ μέν τι καὶ ἐστοχάζοντο
these(-things) announcing partly indeed somewhat also guessed
τῆς ἀληθείας, τὸ δὲ καὶ παρεστοχάζοντο. τὸ μὲν γὰρ
the truth partly and also missed the indeed for
κατόπιν ἐλαῦνον στράτευμα ὡς ἀληθῶς καὶ Ῥωμαϊκὸν
behind driving army as truly also Roman
ἦν καὶ τοῖς σχήμασι καὶ τοῖς πράγμασι καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς
was both in-the forms and in-the deeds and the emperor
αὐτῶν ἡγεμόνευε, τὸ δὲ προπορευόμενον καὶ Σκυθικῶς
them led the and going-ahead and Scythian-fashion
ἐσταλμένον τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς μὲν ἦσαν ἅπαντες στρατιᾶς,
equipped of-the Roman indeed were all army
Σκυθικὰς δὲ στολὰς ἠμφιέννυντο, τοῦτο μὲν καὶ οὕτως
Scythian and robes wore this indeed also thus
ἐσχηκότες, ὥσπερ ἦσαν ἀμφιασάμενοι ταύτας κατὰ
having-had as they-were having-put-on them according-to
τὸ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος παράγγελμα, ὁπόταν ὡς φαινόμενοι
the of-the autocrat order when as appearing
Σκύθαι τοὺς ὄντως Σκύθας ἐξηπατήκασιν, ὡς φθάσας
Scythians the real Scythians they-have-deceived as having-been-first
ὁ λόγος ἐδήλωσε, τοῦτο δὲ καὶ ἀπεχρήσατο τηνικαῦτα ὁ
the account showed this and also used then the
βασιλεὺς τῇ σκευῇ τῶν Σκυθῶν πρὸς τὴν τῶν ἡμεδαπῶν
emperor the gear of-the Scythians for the of-the our-people

ἐξαπάτην τε καὶ φενάκην, ἵνα οἱ προεντυγχάνοντες
deception both and trickery that those meeting-first
αὐτοῖς ὀρρωδοῖεν ὥσπερ Σκύθαις τοῖς στρατιώταις
them might-be-frightened as-if on-Scythians on-the soldiers
ἡμῶν ἐμπίπτοντες καὶ ἅμα παρέχοι στρατηγικόν
our falling and at-the-same-time might-provide generalship-like
τε καὶ ἥπιον γέλωτα φόβῳ ξυμμεμιγμένον· πρὶν ἢ
both and gentle laughter with-fear mixed before than
γὰρ φοβηθῆναι σαφῶς, ἐθάρρουν τὸν βασιλέα κατόπιν
for to-be-frightened clearly they-took-courage the emperor behind
θεώμενοι. οὕτως ἀφόβως ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ τοὺς ὑπαντῶντας
seeing thus fearlessly the autocrat those meeting
ἐμορμολύττετο. ἀλλὰ πρὸς μὲν τοὺς ἄλλους ὁ φόβος ἦν
frightened but to indeed the others the fear was
ἐκ τῶν φαινομένων, ὁ δέ γε Παλαιολόγος πολυπειρίᾳ
from the appearances — and at-least Palaiologos in-much-experience
τοὺς ἅπαντας ὑπερβάλλων καὶ εἰδώς, ὁποῖός ἐστιν
the all surpassing and knowing of-what-sort is
Ἀλέξιος περὶ τὰς μηχανὰς ποριμώτατος, ἐγνώρισεν αὐτίκα,
Alexios about the devices most-resourceful recognized at-once
ὅτι Ἀλεξίου τοῦτο μηχάνημα, καὶ ἑαυτόν τε θαρρεῖν
that of-Alexios this device and himself both to-take-courage
ἀνέπειθε καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ἐκέλευεν. ἤδη δὲ καὶ τὸ πλῆθος
persuaded and the others ordered already and also the multitude
ἅπαν τὸ κατόπιν συνέρρωγεν ἐκ τῶν συγγενῶν καὶ τῶν
all the behind had-burst-together from the kinsmen and those
καθ᾽ αἷμα προσηκόντων ξυγκείμενον. ἔσπευδον γάρ, ὡς
by blood related composed they-hastened for as
ᾤοντο, φθάσαι τὸν αὐτοκράτορα κατὰ τὰ πρὸς
they-thought to-overtake the autocrat according-to the(-things) with
τοῦτον συγκείμενα. φθάσαι γὰρ τοῦτον συνέθεντο μετὰ τὴν
him agreed to-overtake for him they-had-agreed after the

ἀπόκρεω, καθάπερ εἴρηται πρότερον, ἐν τῇ τυροφάγῳ. οὐ
Meatfare as has-been-said before in the Cheesefare not
μὴν ἔφθησαν ἐκεῖνοι ἐξεληλυθότες τῆς πόλεως καὶ ὁ
indeed they-had-been-first those having-gone-out from-the city and the
βασιλεὺς τροπαιοῦχος ἐπάνεισι. καὶ κατὰ τοῦτο συμμίξαντες
emperor trophy-bearing returns and on this having-met
αὐτῷ οὐκ ἂν ἐπείσθησαν, ὅτι ὁ βασιλεὺς αὐτός ἐστι
him not — would-have-believed that the emperor himself is
τροπαιοφορῶν οὕτω τὴν νίκην ὀξέως ἐξεργασάμενος, εἰ
bearing-trophies thus the victory swiftly having-accomplished if
μὴ τὰς κεφαλὰς τῶν Σκυθῶν ἐμπεπηγμένας ἑώρων ἐπ᾽
not the heads of-the Scythians fixed they-saw on
ἄκρων δοράτων καὶ τοὺς ἐπιλοίπους, οὓς τὸ ξίφος οὔπω
tips of-spears and the remaining whom the sword not-yet
ἐξέτεμε, δεσμώτας ἠγμένους καὶ ἐξηγκωνισμένους καὶ
had-cut-off as-prisoners led and with-arms-bound and
ἄλλον ἐπ᾽ ἄλλῳ ἀγόμενον καὶ συρόμενον. τὸ γὰρ τάχος
one upon another led and dragged the for speed
τῆς στρατηγίας τὸ θαῦμα ἐποίει· πλὴν τοσοῦτον μανθάνω
of-the generalship the wonder made except so-much I-learn
περὶ Γεωργίου τοῦ Παλαιολόγου (οἱ γὰρ συμπαρόντες
about George the Palaiologos those for present-with
ἡμῖν διηγοῦντο), ὡς ἐσχετλίαζέ τε καὶ τοῦ καθυστερῆσαι
us narrated that he-complained both and for-the to-have-come-late
τοῦ πολέμου ἑαυτὸν ἐμέμφετο καὶ ὅτι μὴ συμπαρῆν τῷ
to-the war himself blamed and that not he-was-present-with the
αὐτοκράτορι κλέος τοσοῦτον ἀραμένῳ ἐπὶ τῇ ἀπροσδοκήτῳ
autocrat glory so-great having-won for the unexpected
νίκῃ τῶν βαρβάρων τούτων. συμμετασχεῖν γὰρ κἀκεῖνος
victory over-the barbarians these to-share for also-that-man
εὐκλείας τοσαύτης καὶ πάνυ ἐβούλετο. περὶ δὲ τοῦ
of-glory so-great and very wished about and the

αὐτοκράτορος ἐκεῖνο ἄν τις εἴποι τὸ ᾄσμα τοῦ
autocrat that — anyone would-say the song of-the
Δευτερονομίου τότε καὶ τελούμενον καὶ ὁρώμενον "πῶς
Deuteronomy then both being-fulfilled and being-seen how
διώξεται εἷς χιλίους καὶ δύο μετακινήσουσι μυριάδας;"
will-pursue one a-thousand and two will-move ten-thousands
μονονουχὶ γὰρ κατ' ἐκεῖνο καιροῦ ὁ βασιλεὺς Ἀλέξιος
all-but for at that of-the-time the emperor Alexios
πρὸς τοσοῦτον βαρβάρων πλῆθος ἑαυτὸν ἀντικαταστήσας
against so-great of-barbarians multitude himself having-set-against
τὸ βάρος ὅλον τοῦ πολέμου μέχρι καὶ τῆς νίκης
the weight whole of-the war up-to even the victory
αὐτῆς καλῶς διῳκονομήσατο. εἰ γάρ τις τοὺς συνόντας
itself well managed if for anyone those with-him
λογίσαιτο, ὁπόσοι τε ἦσαν καὶ ποδαποί, κἄθ' οὕτως
should-reckon how-many both they-were and of-what-country and-then thus
ἀντιπαραβάλοι τὰ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος μηχανήματα καὶ τὸ
should-compare the of-the autocrat devices and the
τούτου πολύτροπον μετὰ τῆς ῥώμης καὶ τῆς τόλμης πρὸς
his versatility with the strength and the daring against
τὸ βαρβαρικὸν ἅπαν πλῆθος καὶ τὴν ἰσχύν, μόνον ἂν
the barbarian whole multitude and the might alone —
ἐφεύροι τοῦτον τὰ τῆς νίκης καταπραξάμενον.
he-would-find him the(-things) of-the victory having-accomplished

The city rejoices, though Melissenos calls the victory a joy without profit. The Scythians plunder the west to the Deep Stream, where the faithful can no longer visit Saint Theodore's church. Tzachas builds another fleet and urges the Scythians to seize the Chersonese, and tries to lure away the Turkish mercenaries. After an unprecedented snowfall, Alexios summons Melissenos to Ainos with new levies of Bulgarians and Vlachs. He surveys the river from a boat and camps the army at Choirenoi, between the river and a marsh.

Οὕτω μὲν οὖν τηνικαῦτα θεὸς τὴν παράδοξον ταύτην τῷ
thus indeed then at-that-time God the unexpected this to-the
κρατοῦντι δέδωκε νίκην. εἰσερχόμενον δὲ αὐτὸν ὁρῶντες
ruler gave victory entering and him seeing
οἱ Βυζάντιοι ἔχαιρον ἐκπληττόμενοι τὸ τάχος, τὴν τόλμαν,
the Byzantines rejoiced astounded-at the speed the daring
τὴν περιδεξιότητα τοῦ ἐπιχειρήματος καὶ τὸ ἐξ ὑπογύου
the dexterity of-the undertaking and the from improvised
τρόπαιον, ἐπαιάνιζον, ἐσκίρτων, θεὸν ἀνύμνουν σωτῆρα καὶ
trophy sang-paeans leapt God hymned as-savior and
εὐεργέτην τοιοῦτον αὐτοῖς δεδωκότα. ὁ δὲ Μελισσηνὸς
benefactor such to-them having-given — and Melissenos
Νικηφόρος δακνόμενος ἐπὶ τούτοις καὶ μὴ φέρων, ὁποῖα
Nikephoros being-stung at these-things and not bearing such-as
τὰ ἀνθρώπινα, ἔφη "ἡ νίκη αὕτη χαρὰ μὲν ἀκερδής,
the human-things he-said the victory this a-joy indeed without-profit
λύπη δὲ ἀζήμιος". οἱ μέντοι Σκύθαι ἀπειροπληθεῖς ὄντες
a-grief and without-loss the however Scythians infinitely-numerous being
ἁπανταχοῦ τῆς ἑσπέρας διασπαρέντες ἐλῄζοντο ἅπαντα
everywhere of-the west scattered plundered all
καὶ οὐδὲν τὸ παράπαν τῶν συμπεσόντων αὐτοῖς
and nothing the at-all of-the(-things) befalling them

τὴν ἐκείνων ἀκάθεκτον ἀνέκοπτε τόλμαν. ἐνιαχοῦ δὲ
the their unrestrainable checked daring in-some-places and
τῆς ἑσπέρας καὶ πολίχνιά τινα κατεῖχον μηδὲ τῶν
of-the west also little-towns some they-held not-even the
ἀγχοῦ τῆς βασιλίδος τῶν πόλεων κωμοπόλεων φειδόμενοι,
near the queen of-the cities country-towns sparing
παραγενόμενοι καὶ μέχρις αὐτοῦ τοῦ οὕτω καλουμένου
having-come even as-far-as itself the so called
Βαθέος ῥύακος, ἐν ᾧ καὶ τὸ ἐπ᾽ ὀνόματι τοῦ ἐν
Deep Stream at which also the in name of-the among
μάρτυσι μεγίστου Θεοδώρου τέμενος ἵδρυται. πολλοὶ μὲν
martyrs greatest Theodore precinct is-founded many indeed
γὰρ καὶ ἐφοίτων ἐντεύξεως τοῦ ἁγίου χάριν καθ᾽
for even went of-meeting the saint for-the-sake by
ἑκάστην· ὁπηνίκα δ᾽ ἡ κυριακὴ παρῆν, πάνδημον οἱ
each(-day) when and the Sunday was-present all-the-people the
εὐσεβεῖς ἐποιοῦντο τὴν πρὸς τὸ ἱερὸν τοῦτο τέμενος
pious made the to the sacred this precinct
ἔλευσιν παννύχιοι καὶ πανημέριοι κύκλῳ τε καὶ κατὰ
coming all-night and all-day in-a-circle both and along
τὸν πρόδομον καὶ ὀπισθόδομον τοῦ νεὼ προσμένοντες.
the vestibule and back-chamber of-the church staying
ἀλλὰ τοσοῦτον ὑπερίσχυσεν ἡ τῶν Σκυθῶν ἀκάθεκτος
but so-much prevailed the of-the Scythians unrestrainable
ὁρμή, ὡς μηδὲ τὰς πύλας ὑπανοῖξαι τοῦ Βυζαντίου
onset so-that not-even the gates to-open — of-Byzantium
τολμᾶν τοὺς εἰς τὸν μάρτυρα φοιτᾶν βουλομένους διὰ
to-dare those to the martyr to-go wishing because-of
τὰς ἀθρόας ἐφόδους τῶν Σκυθῶν. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν τὰ
the massed attacks of-the Scythians but these(-things) indeed the
ἐξ ἠπείρου τῆς ἑσπέρας προσπεσόντα τῷ αὐτοκράτορι
from mainland of-the west having-befallen the autocrat

δεινά· οὐ μέντοι γε οὐδὲ τὰ κατὰ θάλατταν
terrors not however at-least nor the(-affairs) at sea
ἀνέτως εἶχεν, ἀλλὰ καὶ λίαν ἐπικινδύνως τοῦ Τζαχᾶ αὖθις
at-ease were but also very dangerously — Tzachas again
στόλον κτησαμένου καὶ τὰ παρὰ θάλατταν ἅπαντα
a-fleet having-acquired and the(-places) by sea all
κατατρέχοντος. ἐπὶ τούτοις οὖν ὁ βασιλεὺς ἠνιᾶτο καὶ
overrunning at these-things then the emperor was-grieved and
ἤσχαλλεν ἀπανταχόθεν βαλλόμενος ταῖς φροντίσιν. ἐπεὶ
was-vexed from-everywhere pelted with-the cares since
δ' ἀνηγγέλη τούτῳ, ὡς ἤδη καὶ πλείονα στόλον ἐκ
and it-was-announced to-him that already also larger fleet from
τῶν παραλίων κτησάμενος ὁ Τζαχᾶς καὶ τὰς ἐπιλοίπους,
the coastal-places having-acquired — Tzachas and the remaining
ὧν προφθάσας κατέσχε νήσων, πορθήσας καὶ κατὰ
of-which beforehand he-held islands having-sacked also against
τῶν ἑσπερίων χωρῶν διανοεῖσθαι ἐπικεχείρηκε καὶ πρὸς
the western lands to-think had-attempted and to
τοὺς Σκύθας διαπεμπόμενος συνεβούλευε τὴν Χερρόνησον
the Scythians sending advised the Chersonese
καταλαβεῖν· οὐ μὴν οὐδὲ τὸ ἐκ τῆς ἑῴας προσεληλυθὸς
to-seize not indeed nor the from the east having-come
τῷ αὐτοκράτορι μισθοφορικόν, τῶν Τούρκων φημί,
to-the autocrat mercenary-force of-the Turks I-mean
συνεχώρει τὰς πρὸς αὐτὸν σπονδὰς ἀρραγεῖς τηρεῖν
he-allowed the to him treaties unbroken to-keep
ὑποσχέσεσι χρησταῖς ὑποσαίνων, εἰ τὸν αὐτοκράτορα
with-promises good fawning if the autocrat
καταλιπόντες αὐτῷ προσχωρήσαιεν, ὁπηνίκα τὰς κριθὰς
having-left to-him they-should-go-over when the barley
καταλάβοι· ταῦτα γνοὺς ὁ βασιλεύς, ἐπεὶ τά
it-should-reach these(-things) having-known the emperor since the(-things)

τε κατὰ θάλατταν τά τε κατὰ τὴν ἤπειρον λίαν
both at sea the(-things) both on the mainland very
κακῶς αὐτῷ διετίθετο καὶ ὁ χειμὼν σφοδρῶς ἐπικείμενος
badly for-him were-disposed and the winter violently pressing
τὰς ἐξόδους παντάπασιν ἔκλειεν, ὥστε μηδ' ἀποζυγοῦσθαι
the exits entirely shut so-that not-even to-be-unbarred
τὰς τῶν οἰκημάτων θύρας διὰ τὸ τῆς χιόνος ἐπιβριθές
the of-the dwellings doors because-of the of-the snow weight
(συνέβη γὰρ τότε πολλὴν ἐπιφορηθῆναι καὶ ὅσην οὐδείς
it-happened for then much to-fall and as-much-as no-one
πω πρότερον ἔγνωκεν), ὡς ἐνὸν διὰ γραμμάτων
ever before knew as being-possible through letters
ἁπανταχόθεν ἔσπευδε μισθοφορικὸν μετακαλέσασθαι. τοῦ
from-everywhere he-hastened mercenary-force to-summon the
ἡλίου δὲ τὴν ἐαρινὴν τροπὴν ἀπάρτι καταλαμβάνοντος,
sun and the vernal turning by-now reaching
ἐπεὶ καὶ ὁ ἐκ τῶν νεφῶν ἀπειλούμενος πόλεμος ᾤχετο
since also the from the clouds threatened war went
καὶ ἡ θάλαττα τοῦ θυμοῦ μετεβέβλητο, δεῖν
and the sea from-the anger had-changed to-be-needful
ἐλογίσατο ἑκατέρωθεν τῶν ἐναντίων ἐπικειμένων τὰ
he-reckoned on-both-sides the opponents pressing the(-parts)
κατὰ θάλατταν μᾶλλον καταλαβεῖν, ἵν' ὁμοῦ καὶ τοῖς
by sea rather to-seize that together both with-the
ναυσιπόροις ἐχθροῖς ῥᾳδίως ἔχοι ἀντικαθίστασθαι
sea-going enemies easily he-might-be-able to-stand-against
καὶ πρὸς τοὺς ἐξ ἠπείρου εὐχερῶς μάχεσθαι. παραχρῆμα
and against those from mainland readily to-fight immediately
τοίνυν τὸν καίσαρα Νικηφόρον τὸν Μελισσηνὸν ἀποστείλας
therefore the caesar Nikephoros the Melissenos having-sent
μετεκαλεῖτο θᾶττον ἢ λόγος τὴν Αἶνον καταλαβεῖν.
he-summoned more-quickly than word — Ainos to-reach

ἔφθασε γὰρ διὰ γραμμάτων δηλώσας συλλέξασθαι
he-had-been-first for through letters having-made-known to-collect
ὁπόσους ἂν δυνηθείη οὐκ ἀπὸ τῶν ἤδη ἐστρατευμένων
as-many-as — he-could not from those already enlisted
(ἐκείνους γὰρ φθάσας εἰς τὰς πόλεις ἁπανταχῆ τῆς
those for having-been-first in the cities everywhere of-the
ἑσπέρας διέσπειρεν ἐφ' ᾧ φρουρεῖν τὰ κυριώτερα τῶν
west he-had-scattered for which to-guard the more-important of-the
πολιχνίων), ἀλλὰ κατὰ μέρος νεολέκτους καταλέγων,
little-towns but by part newly-enlisted enrolling
ὁπόσοι τε ἐκ Βουλγάρων καὶ ὁπόσοι τὸν νομάδα βίον
as-many-as both from Bulgarians and as-many-as the nomad life
εἵλοντο (Βλάχους τούτους ἡ κοινὴ καλεῖν οἶδε διάλεκτος)
chose Vlachs them the common to-call knows tongue
καὶ τοὺς ἄλλοθεν ἐξ ἁπασῶν τῶν χωρῶν ἐρχομένους
and those from-elsewhere from all the lands coming
ἱππέας τε καὶ πεζούς. αὐτὸς δὲ τοὺς τοῦ Φλάντρα
horse both and foot he and the — of-Flanders
πεντακοσίους Κελτοὺς ἐκ Νικομηδείας μεταπεμψάμενος
five-hundred Celts from Nikomedeia having-summoned
μετὰ τῶν συγγενῶν αὐτοῦ ἐξεληλυθὼς τῆς Βυζαντίδος
with the kinsmen his having-gone-out — from-Byzantis
θᾶττον τὴν Αἶνον καταλαμβάνει. καὶ τηνικαῦτα ἐν
more-quickly — Ainos reaches and then in
ἀμφιρύκῳ εἰσελθὼν καὶ παραδραμὼν τὴν τοῦ ὅλου
a-two-oared-boat having-embarked and having-run-past the of-the whole
ποταμοῦ θέσιν καὶ τὴν ὅλην αὐτοῦ κοίτην κατασκεψάμενος
river position and the whole its bed having-surveyed
ἑκατέρωθεν καὶ διαγνούς, ὅποι τὸ στρατιωτικὸν καταθεῖναι
on-both-sides and having-discerned where the military-force to-set
βέλτιον, ὑπέστρεψε. καὶ διὰ τῆς νυκτὸς τοὺς λογάδας
better he-returned and through the night the picked-men

συναγαγὼν τοῦ στρατεύματος τὰ κατὰ τὸν ποταμὸν
having-gathered of-the army the(-things) about the river
καὶ τὰ τούτου παρ᾽ ἑκάτερα διηγεῖτο καὶ ὡς "χρὴ
and the(-things) of-it on both-sides he-narrated and how it-is-needful
τὴν αὔριον διαπεράσαντας καὶ ὑμᾶς τὴν ὅλην περιαθρῆσαι
the morrow having-crossed also you the whole to-survey
πεδιάδα. καὶ ἴσως οὐκ ἀδόκιμος ὃν αὐτὸς ὑμῖν ὑποδείξω
plain and perhaps not unapproved which I to-you I-shall-show
τόπον φανεῖται, οὗ χρὴ τὰς σκηνὰς πήξασθαι." τούτου
place will-appear where it-is-needful the tents to-pitch this
δὲ πᾶσι συνδόξαντος αὐγαζούσης ἡμέρας πρῶτος αὐτὸς τὴν
and to-all having-been-agreed dawning day first he the
περαίαν κατέλαβε κᾆθ᾽ οὕτως ἅπαν αὐτῷ συνείπετο τὸ
far-bank reached and-then thus all him followed the
στρατιωτικόν. καὶ μετὰ τῶν λογάδων αὖθις κατασκοπήσας
military-force and with the picked-men again having-surveyed
τὰς ὄχθας τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τὴν ὑπερκειμένην πεδιάδα
the banks of-the river and the overlying plain
καὶ τὸν ἀρέσκοντα τόπον αὐτῷ ὑποδείξας αὐτοῖς (ἀγχοῦ
and the pleasing place to-him having-shown to-them near
δὲ ἦν πολιχνίου τινὸς τοῦ οὑτωσὶ Χοιρηνοὺς ἐγχωρίως
and it-was a-little-town some of-the thus Choirenoi locally
ὀνομαζομένου ἐξ ἑνὸς μὲν μέρους ἔχων τὸν ποταμόν, ἐξ
named from one indeed side having the river from
ἑτέρου δὲ βαλτώδης ὤν), ἐπεὶ ἱκανὸν ὀχύρωμα καὶ πᾶσιν
other and marshy being since sufficient stronghold also to-all
ὁμοῦ τοῖς στρατιώταις ἐφαίνετο, θᾶττον τάφρον διορύξας
together the soldiers it-appeared more-quickly a-trench having-dug
ἅπαν ἐκεῖ τὸ στράτευμα κατατίθησιν. αὐτὸς δὲ αὖθις μεθ᾽
all there the army he-sets he and again with

ἱκανῶν πελταστῶν πρὸς τὴν Αἶνον ἐπάνεισιν ἐφ' ᾧ τὰς
considerable peltasts to — Ainos returns for which the
τῶν Σκυθῶν ὁρμὰς ἐς ἡμᾶς ἐκεῖθεν ἐρχομένων ἀναστέλλειν.
of-the Scythians onsets to us from-there coming to-check

XXXVIII · THE CUMANS ARRIVE

Countless Scythians gather against Alexios at Choirenoi. About forty thousand Cumans under Togortak and Maniak appear, and Alexios, fearing they will join the Scythians, feasts their leaders and takes oaths and hostages, granting them ten days to fight the Patzinaks. He bridges the river and crosses, and Melissenos arrives with his levies. Alexios defeats a Scythian force at the ford of Philokalos and entrenches below the hill of Lebounes. Neantzes deserts again and is put in irons.

Πυθόμενοι δὲ οἱ κατὰ τὴν γενομένην εἰς Χοιρηνοὺς
having-learned and those at the made at Choirenoi
ταφρείαν ἀμυθήτων Σκυθικῶν στρατευμάτων ἔλευσιν
entrenchment of-countless Scythian armies coming
δηλοῦσι περὶ τούτων τῷ αὐτοκράτορι περὶ τὴν Αἶνον
make-known about these to-the autocrat about — Ainos
ἔτι ἐνδιατρίβοντι. ὁ δὲ παραχρῆμα ἐν ἀμφιρύκῳ πλοίῳ
still staying he and immediately in a-two-oared boat
εἰσελθὼν καὶ παραπλεύσας τὸν ποταμὸν διὰ τοῦ
having-embarked and having-sailed-along the river through the
στομίου διελθὼν ἡνώθη μετὰ παντὸς τοῦ στρατεύματος.
mouth having-passed was-united with all the army
τὰς δὲ ἰδίας ὁρῶν δυνάμεις μηδὲ τὸ πολλοστημόριον
the and own seeing forces not-even the smallest-part
τοῦ Σκυθικοῦ σῳζούσας στρατεύματος ἐν ἀμηχανίᾳ καὶ
of-the Scythian keeping army in helplessness and
φόβῳ ἦν μὴ ἔχων τὸν ἐπαρήγοντα κατὰ ἄνθρωπον.
fear was not having the helper according-to man

οὐκ ἀνέπιπτε δὲ ὅμως οὐδὲ ἐμαλακίζετο, ἀλλὰ πολλοὺς
not he-lost-heart and nevertheless nor grew-weak but many
τοὺς παρ᾽ ἑαυτῷ κυμαινομένους εἶχε λογισμούς. μετὰ
the in himself surging he-had reasonings after
γοῦν τετάρτην ἡμέραν ἐκ τοῦ ἑτέρου μέρους πόρρωθεν
at-any-rate fourth day from the other side from-afar
ὁρᾷ Κομανικὸν στράτευμα ὡσεὶ τεσσαράκοντα χιλιάδας
he-sees a-Cuman army about forty thousands
ἐπικαταλαμβάνον ἤδη. σκεψάμενος δὲ μὴ καὶ αὐτοὶ τοῖς
arriving already having-considered and lest also they to-the
Σκύθαις προστεθέντες δεινὸν τὸν κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ ποιήσωνται
Scythians added terrible the against him might-make
πόλεμον (καὶ οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἐντεῦθεν τὸ ἐλπιζόμενον ἢ
war and nothing other thence the expected than
πανωλεθρία) δεῖν ἐλογίσατο ὑποποιήσασθαι αὐτούς·
utter-ruin to-be-needful he-reckoned to-win-over them
καὶ γὰρ προέφθη τούτους μετακαλέσασθαι. τοῦ δὲ
and for he-had-been-first them to-summon of-the and
Κομανικοῦ στρατεύματος πολλοὶ μὲν καὶ ἄλλοι ἡγεμόνες
Cuman army many indeed also other leaders
κατέστησαν, προαγοὶ δὲ πάντων ὁ Τογορτάκ, ὁ Μανιὰκ
were-set chiefs and of-all — Togortak — Maniak
καὶ ἕτεροι ἄνδρες μαχιμώτατοι. τὴν δὲ πληθὺν τῶν
and other men most-warlike the and multitude of-the
ἐπικαταλαμβανόντων ἤδη Κομάνων ὁρῶν ἐδεδίει τὸ
arriving already Cumans seeing he-feared the
εὐάγωγον πάλαι γινώσκων τῆς αὐτῶν γνώμης, μὴ οἱ
easily-led long-ago knowing of-the their mind lest the
σύμμαχοι ἐχθροὶ καὶ πολέμιοι γεγονότες μεγίστην βλάβην
allies enemies and foes having-become greatest harm
αὐτῷ προξενήσειαν. ἀσφαλέστερον δὲ λογισάμενος ἐκεῖθεν
to-him might-procure safer and having-reckoned from-there

ἀπάραντα μετὰ τοῦ ὁπλιτικοῦ παντὸς διαπερᾶσαι
having-set-out with the heavy-armed-force all to-cross
αὖθις τὸν ποταμὸν δεῖν ἐλογίσατο πρότερον τοὺς
again the river to-be-needful he-reckoned first the
ἡγεμόνας τῶν Κομάνων μετακαλέσασθαι. οἱ δὲ παραχρῆμα
leaders of-the Cumans to-summon they and immediately
προσέρχονται τῷ βασιλεῖ καὶ αὐτὸς ὁ Μανιὰκ κἂν
come to-the emperor and himself — Maniak even-if
ὀψιαίτερον τῶν ἄλλων, πρότερον ἀναβαλλόμενος. δαψιλῆ
later than-the others before putting-off abundant
τοίνυν τράπεζαν αὐτοῖς παρατεθῆναι τοῖς ὀψοποιοῖς ἐπέταξε.
therefore a-table for-them to-be-set-before the cooks he-ordered
καλῶς οὖν εὐωχηθέντας μετὰ ταῦτα φιλοφρονησάμενος
well then feasted after these(-things) having-treated-kindly
αὐτοὺς καὶ παντοίων δωρεῶν ἀξιώσας ὅρκον καὶ ὁμήρους
them and with-every-kind gifts having-honored oath and hostages
ἐξ αὐτῶν ἠτεῖτο ὑποπτεύων τὸ τῆς αὐτῶν γνώμης
from them he-asked suspecting the of-the their mind
εὐεξαπάτητον. οἱ δ' ἑτοίμως τὸ προσταχθὲν ἐπλήρουν
easily-deceived they and readily the(-thing) ordered fulfilled
τὰς πίστεις παρασχόμενοι, αἰτησάμενοι παραχωρηθῆναι
the pledges having-furnished having-asked to-be-granted
τὸν μετὰ τῶν Πατζινάκων πόλεμον συνάψασθαι ἐπὶ
the with the Patzinaks war to-join for
τρισὶν ἡμέραις· καὶ εἰ τὴν νίκην αὐτοῖς δοίη θεός,
three days and if the victory to-them should-give God
διχῇ τὴν ἐπιλαχοῦσαν αὐτοῖς ἅπασαν λείαν διελόντας
in-two the having-fallen-to them all booty having-divided
θάτερον μέρος ἀφορίσαι τῷ βασιλεῖ ὑπισχνοῦντο. ὁ
the-other part to-set-apart for-the emperor they-promised he
δὲ οὐκ ἐπὶ τρισὶ μόναις ἡμέραις, ἀλλ' ἐπὶ ὅλαις δέκα
and not for three only days but for whole ten

μετελεύσεσθαι τοὺς Σκύθας κατὰ τὸ αὐτοῖς βουλητὸν
to-pursue the Scythians according-to the for-them wish
ἄδειαν ἐδεδώκει καὶ τὴν ἐκεῖθεν ἅπασαν ἀφαιρεθησομένην
license had-given and the from-there all going-to-be-taken
λείαν, εἴ γε τέως τὴν νίκην αὐτοῖς παράσχοι θεός,
booty if at-least meanwhile the victory to-them should-provide God
ἀποχαρισάμενος. ἦσαν μὲν οὖν ἐπὶ ταὐτοῦ τέως μένοντα
having-made-a-gift-of were indeed then on the-same for-the-time staying
τὰ Σκυθικὰ καὶ Κομανικὰ στρατεύματα τῶν Κομάνων
the Scythian and Cuman armies the Cumans
δι' ἀκροβολισμῶν πειρωμένων τῆς Σκυθικῆς στρατιᾶς.
through skirmishes testing the Scythian army
τριῶν δὲ ἡμερῶν οὔπω διελθουσῶν μεταπεμψάμενος ὁ
three and days not-yet having-passed having-summoned the
βασιλεὺς τὸν Ἀντίοχον (ἀνὴρ δὲ οὗτος τῶν εὐγενῶν καὶ
emperor — Antiochos a-man and this-one of-the nobles and
δραστηριότητι γνώμης τῶν πολλῶν διαφέρων) ἐπισκήπτει
in-energy of-mind the many surpassing enjoins
αὐτῷ γέφυραν κατασκευάσαι. θᾶττον δὲ διὰ πλοίων
him a-bridge to-build more-quickly and through boats
ἐπιζευχθέντων μακροτάτοις ξύλοις κατασκευασθείσης
yoked with-very-long timbers having-been-built
γεφύρας μεταπεμψάμενος τόν τε πρωτοστράτορα Μιχαὴλ
bridge having-summoned the both protostrator Michael
τὸν Δούκαν καὶ γυναικάδελφον αὐτοῦ καὶ τὸν ἴδιον ἀδελφὸν
the Doukas and brother-in-law his and the own brother
Ἀδριανὸν καὶ μέγαν δομέστικον παρεκελεύσατο παρὰ τῷ
Adrian and grand domestic he-ordered by the
χείλει τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἑστάναι καὶ μὴ συγχωρεῖν συμμίγδην
brink of-the river to-stand and not to-allow pell-mell
διαπερᾶν πεζούς τε καὶ ἱππότας, ἀλλὰ τοὺς πεζοὺς τῶν
to-cross foot both and horse but the foot from-the

ἱππέων πρότερον διακρινομένους καὶ τὰς ἁμάξας μετὰ τῶν
horse first being-separated and the wagons with the
σκευῶν καὶ τὰς φορταγωγοὺς ἡμιόνους. διαπερασάντων
baggage and the pack mules having-crossed
οὖν τῶν πεζῶν δεδιὼς τὰς Σκυθῶν καὶ Κομάνων δυνάμεις
then the foot fearing the of-Scythians and of-Cumans forces
καὶ τὰς λαθραίας τούτων ὑποπτεύων ἐφόδους θᾶττον
and the secret their suspecting attacks more-quickly
ἢ λόγος τάφρον πεποιηκὼς ἐντὸς τούτου εἰσήγαγεν
than word a-trench having-made inside it he-brought
ἅπαντας, εἶτα καὶ τοὺς ἱππότας παρεκελεύσατο διαπερᾶν.
all then also the horsemen he-ordered to-cross
καὶ αὐτὸς δὲ παρὰ τῷ χείλει τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἱστάμενος
and he too by the lip of-the river standing
τοὺς διαπερῶντας ἐώρα. ὁ δὲ Μελισσηνὸς καθ' ἣν
those crossing watched — and Melissenos according-to which
φθάσας ἐδέξατο γραφὴν τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος πεποιηκὼς
having-been-first he-received letter of-the autocrat having-done
καὶ συλλεξάμενος δυνάμεις ἁπανταχόθεν, ἀπὸ δὲ τῶν
and having-collected forces from-everywhere from and those
ἐγγὺς καὶ πεζοὺς ἐξελάσας ἐπισάξαντας ἐν ἁμάξαις ὑπὸ
near also foot having-driven-out having-loaded on wagons by
βοῶν ἑλκομέναις τὰς ἰδίας σκευὰς καὶ τὰ πρὸς χρείαν
oxen drawn the own baggage and the(-things) for use
ἅπαντα σπουδαίως πρὸς τὸν αὐτοκράτορα ἐξέπεμψεν. οἱ
all zealously to the autocrat sent-out they
δὲ φθάσαντες ἤδη ἐκ διαστήματος, καθ' ὅσον ὀφθαλμὸς
and having-arrived already from a-distance as far-as eye
ἐξικνεῖται περιαθρεῖν τὸ ὁρώμενον, ἀποσπὰς τῶν
reaches to-survey the(-thing) seen a-detachment of-the
Σκυθῶν ἐδόκουν τοῖς πλείστοις κατὰ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος
Scythians seemed to-the most against the autocrat

ἰέναι. ἤδη δὲ καί τις τεθαρρηκὼς καὶ τῷ δακτύλῳ
to-come already and also someone having-taken-courage and with-the finger
ὑποδεικνὺς τῷ αὐτοκράτορι Σκύθας διενίστατο εἶναι. ὁ
pointing to-the autocrat Scythians affirmed to-be he
δ' ἀληθὲς τὸ ῥηθὲν οἰηθεὶς καὶ πρὸς τοσούτους
and true the(-thing) said having-thought and against so-many
μὴ ἐξισχύων ἐν ἀμηχανίᾳ καθειστήκει. μεταπεμψάμενος
not being-strong in helplessness was-set having-summoned
οὖν τὸν Ῥοδομηρὸν τηνικαῦτα (ἀνὴρ δὲ οὗτος ἐκ
then — Rhodomeros then a-man and this-one from
Βουλγάρων ὁρμώμενος εὐγενὴς καὶ μητρόθεν συγγενὴς
Bulgarians sprung noble and on-the-mother's-side kinsman
τῆς Αὐγούστης καὶ μητρὸς ἡμετέρας) τοῦτον ἀποστείλας
of-the Augusta and mother our him having-sent
ἐπέσκηψε κατασκοπῆσαι τοὺς ἐρχομένους. ὁ δὲ ταχὺ τὸ
enjoined to-spy-out those coming he and quickly the(-thing)
κελευσθὲν διηνυκὼς ὑποστρέψας τοὺς ἐκ τοῦ Μελισσηνοῦ
ordered having-done having-returned those from — Melissenos
πεμφθέντας εἶναι ἔλεγεν. ὁ δέ γε αὐτοκράτωρ περιχαρὴς
sent to-be said the and at-least autocrat overjoyed
γεγονὼς καὶ μικρὸν ἐγκαρτερήσας φθασάντων διαπερᾷ σὺν
having-become and a-little having-waited they-having-arrived crosses with
αὐτοῖς καὶ παραχρῆμα τὴν γενομένην ταφρείαν ἐπὶ πλέον
them and immediately the made entrenchment on more
ἐπαυξήσας ἥνωσε τούτους μετὰ τοῦ λοιποῦ στρατεύματος.
having-enlarged united them with the rest army
οἱ δὲ Κόμανοι παραχρῆμα τὴν τάφρον καταλαμβάνουσιν,
the and Cumans immediately the trench reach
ὅθεν ὁ βασιλεὺς μετὰ τοῦ ὁπλιτικοῦ παντὸς ἀπάρας
whence the emperor with the heavy-armed-force all having-set-out
διεπέρασεν, αὐτοῦ που κατασκηνώσαντες. τῇ γοῦν
crossed there somewhere having-encamped on-the at-any-rate

μετ᾽ αὐτὴν ἐκεῖθεν ἀπάρας ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ καταλαμβάνειν
after it from-there having-set-out the autocrat to-reach
ἔμελλε τὸν κάτωθεν τοῦ ποταμοῦ πόρον τοῦ Φιλοκάλου
was-about the below the river ford — of-Philokalos
ἐγχωρίως καλούμενον· ἱκανοῖς δὲ τῶν Σκυθῶν ἐντυχὼν καὶ
locally called considerable and of-the Scythians having-met and
τηνικαῦτα προσβαλὼν αὐτοῖς καρτερὸν συνῆψε πόλεμον.
then having-attacked them strong joined war
κτείνονται μὲν οὖν ἐν τῷ μάχεσθαι ἐξ ἑκατέρων πολλοί·
are-killed indeed then in the fighting from both-sides many
ὅμως δὲ τὴν νικῶσαν εἶχεν ὁ βασιλεὺς ἡττήσας τοὺς
nevertheless and the victory held the emperor having-defeated the
Σκύθας κατὰ κράτος. οὕτω γοῦν τῆς μάχης διαλυθείσης
Scythians by force thus at-any-rate the battle having-been-dissolved
καὶ τῶν στρατευμάτων διακριθέντων πρὸς τὰς οἰκείας
and the armies having-been-separated to the own
παρεμβολὰς αὐτοῦ που τὸ Ῥωμαϊκὸν προσέμεινε
camps there somewhere the Roman stayed
στράτευμα δι᾽ ὅλης τῆς τότε νυκτός. αὐγαζούσης δὲ
army through all the then night dawning and
τῆς ἡμέρας ἐκεῖθεν ἀπάραντες καταλαμβάνουσι τόπον
the day from-there having-set-out they-reach place
τινὰ καλούμενον τοῦ Λεβούνη· βουνὸς δὲ τῆς πεδιάδος
a-certain called — of-Lebounes a-hill and the plain
ὑπερκείμενος. ἄνεισι μὲν οὖν ἐκεῖσε ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ. ἐπεὶ
overlying goes-up indeed then there the autocrat since
δὲ μὴ τὸ πᾶν τοῦ στρατεύματος ὁ ὑπερκείμενος ἐχώρει
and not the whole of-the army the overlying held
τόπος, περὶ τοὺς πρόποδας αὐτοῦ διώρυχα ποιήσας καὶ
place about the foothills of-it a-ditch having-made and
τάφρον ἀποχρῶσαν τῷ παντὶ στρατεύματι ἐκεῖ τούτους
a-trench sufficient for-the whole army there them

κατατίθησι. πρόσεισι δὲ τηνικαῦτα τῷ αὐτοκράτορι αὖθις
he-sets comes and then to-the autocrat again
αὐτόμολος ὁ Νεάντζης καὶ σὺν αὐτῷ ὀλίγοι Σκύθαι.
as-a-deserter — Neantzes and with him few Scythians
ὃν θεασάμενος ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ τῆς προτέρας αὐτοῦ
whom having-beheld the emperor and of-the former his
ἀγνωμοσύνης ἀναμνήσας καὶ ἄλλα τινὰ προσθέμενος
ingratitude having-reminded and other some having-added
ἔμφρουρον αὐτὸν μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων καὶ σιδηρόδετον εἶχεν.
under-guard him with the others and iron-bound he-held

XXXIX · LEBOUNION

The Cumans threaten that they will not wait past sunrise, and Alexios fixes battle for the next day. Five thousand mountaineers join him. At night the army prays by torchlight, the lights on its spears like stars. At dawn the Romans charge in a crescent with the Cumans. When a Scythian chief deserts to the Cumans, Alexios, fearing they will be turned against him, sends the imperial standard to stand with them. A whole nation, women and children with it, perishes on the twenty-ninth of April: the Scythians did not see May.

Οὕτω μὲν οὖν ὁ βασιλεύς· οἱ δέ γε Σκύθαι κατὰ τὸν
thus indeed then the emperor the and at-least Scythians at the
ῥύακα τοῦ καλουμένου Μαυροποτάμου κείμενοι ὑπεποιοῦντο
stream of-the called Mauropotamos lying were-winning-over
λαθραίως τοὺς Κομάνους συμμάχους προσκαλούμενοι. ἀλλ᾽
secretly the Cumans as-allies calling but
οὐδὲ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα πέμποντες ἠρέμουν τὰ περὶ
not-even to the emperor sending they-were-quiet the(-terms) about
εἰρήνης ἐρωτῶντες. ὁ δὲ τοῦ δολεροῦ τῆς γνώμης αὐτῶν
peace asking he and the crafty of-the mind their

στοχαζόμενος προσηκούσας καὶ τὰς ἀποκρίσεις αὐτοῖς
guessing fitting also the answers to-them
ἐπεποίητο ἀπαιωρεῖν ἐθέλων τοὺς αὐτῶν λογισμούς, εἴ
made to-keep-in-suspense wishing the their reasonings if
που καὶ τὸ ἐκ τῆς Ῥώμης προσδοκώμενον μισθοφορικὸν
somehow also the from — Rome expected mercenary-force
καταλάβοι. οἱ δὲ Κόμανοι ἀμφιβόλους ἔχοντες τὰς τῶν
should-arrive the and Cumans doubtful holding the of-the
Πατζινάκων ὑποσχέσεις οὐ πάνυ τι αὐτοῖς προσετίθεντο,
Patzinaks promises not very at-all to-them they-attached-themselves
ἀλλ' ἑσπέρας μηνύουσι τῷ βασιλεῖ· "μέχρι πόσου τὴν
but in-the-evening send-word to-the emperor until how-long the
μάχην ἀναβαλώμεθα; ἴσθι τοίνυν, ὡς ἐπὶ πλέον οὐκ
battle shall-we-put-off know therefore that for more not
ἐγκαρτερήσομεν, ἀλλ' ἡλίου ἀνατέλλοντος λύκου ἢ ἀρνειοῦ
we-shall-wait but sun rising of-wolf or of-lamb
κρέας ἐδόμεθα". ταῦτα ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀκούσας καὶ τὸ
meat we-shall-eat these(-things) the emperor having-heard and the
ὀξὺ τῆς τῶν Κομάνων γνώμης διαγνοὺς οὐκέτι ἐν
sharpness of-the of-the Cumans mind having-discerned no-longer in
ἀναβολαῖς τοῦ μάχεσθαι ἦν, ἀλλὰ τὴν ἡμέραν ἐκείνην
delays of-the fighting was but the day that
κρίσιν τοῦ πολέμου δημοτελῆ θέμενος ἐκείνοις μὲν κατὰ
judgment of-the war public having-set to-those indeed on
τὴν ἐπιοῦσαν τὸν μετὰ τῶν Σκυθῶν ὑπέσχετο πόλεμον,
the following the with the Scythians promised war
αὐτὸς δὲ παραχρῆμα μετακαλεσάμενος τοὺς ἡγεμόνας καὶ
he and immediately having-summoned the leaders and
πεντηκοντάρχας καὶ λοιποὺς προσέταξε διὰ παντὸς τοῦ
commanders-of-fifty and rest ordered through all the
φοσσάτου διακηρυκεῦσαι τὸν ἐς τὴν αὔριον ταμιευθέντα
fossaton to-proclaim the for the morrow reserved

πόλεμον. ἀλλὰ κἂν τοιαῦτα ἐσκέπτετο, ἐδεδίει ὅμως τὰ
war but even-if such-things he-considered he-feared nevertheless the
ἄπειρα πλήθη τῶν Πατζινάκων καὶ Κομάνων ὑποπτεύων
countless multitudes of-the Patzinaks and Cumans suspecting
τὴν ἀμφοτέρων σύμβασιν. ταῦτα γοῦν διασκοπουμένου
the of-both agreement these(-things) at-any-rate considering
τοῦ βασιλέως κατέλαβον πρὸς αὐτὸν τῶν ὀρεινοτέρων
the emperor reached to him from-the more-mountainous
μερῶν ἄνδρες τολμητίαι καὶ Ἀρειμάνιοι αὐτόμολοι πρὸς
parts men daring and Warlike deserters for
συνασπισμὸν αὐτοῦ εἰς χιλιάδας ποσούμενοι πέντε. ἐπεὶ δ'
locking-shields-with him to thousands numbering five since and
ἀναβολὴν ἔτι τὰ τῆς μάχης οὐκ εἶχε, θεὸν ἀρωγὸν
delay still the(-affairs) of-the battle not had God as-helper
ἐπεκαλεῖτο. δύνοντος δὲ τοῦ ἡλίου πρῶτος αὐτὸς κατῆρχε
he-invoked setting and the sun first he began
τῆς πρὸς θεὸν παρακλήσεως λαμπράν τε δᾳδουχίαν
the to God supplication brilliant both torch-bearing
ποιούμενος καὶ προσήκοντας ὕμνους ᾄδων αὐτῷ. οὐ μὴν
making and fitting hymns singing to-him not indeed
οὐδὲ τὸ ἅπαν φοσσάτον ἠρεμεῖν συνεχώρει, ἀλλὰ τὰ αὐτὰ
nor the whole fossaton to-be-quiet he-allowed but the same-things
ἑκάστῳ μὲν τῶν συνετωτέρων πράττειν συνεβούλευε,
to-each indeed of-the more-sensible to-do he-advised
τοῖς δὲ ἀγροικοτέροις ἐπέσκηπτε. τηνικαῦτα γοῦν τὸν
to-the and more-rustic he-enjoined then at-any-rate the
μὲν ἥλιον ἦν ὁρᾶν τοῦ ὁρίζοντος δύνοντα, τὸν δὲ
indeed sun it-was to-see from-the horizon setting the and
ἀέρα πεφωτισμένον οὐχ ἑνὸς ὥσπερ ἡλίου λάμποντος,
air illuminated not by-one as-if sun shining
ἀλλὰ καὶ πολλῶν ἄλλων ἀστέρων λαμπρὰν τὴν φαῦσιν
but also of-many other stars brilliant the light

παρεχομένων. ἅπαντες γὰρ τοῖς ἰδίοις δόρασι πήξαντες
providing all for on-the own spears having-fixed
λαμπάδας καὶ κηρούς, ὡς ἕκαστος δυνάμεως εἶχεν, ἀνῆψαν.
torches and candles as each of-means had lit
αἱ δέ γε παρὰ τοῦ στρατεύματος ἀναπεμπόμεναι φωναὶ
the and at-least from the army sent-up voices
μέχρις οἶμαι τῶν οὐρανίων ἀντύγων ἔφθανον, μᾶλλον δ',
as-far-as I-think the heavenly vaults reached rather but
εἰ χρὴ τἀληθὲς εἰπεῖν, εἰς αὐτὸν τὸν δεσπότην θεὸν
if it-is-needful the-truth to-say to himself the master God
ἀνεφέροντο. ἐκ τούτου δ' οἶμαι τεκμαίρεσθαι χρὴ
were-borne-up from this and I-think to-infer it-is-needful
τὴν τοῦ βασιλέως εὐσέβειαν, ὡς ἄρα τὰς πρὸς ἐχθροὺς
the of-the emperor piety that after-all the against enemies
προσβολὰς οὐκ ἐδόκει ποιεῖν ἄνευ τῆς ἐκεῖθεν ἐπαρωγῆς.
attacks not he-thought-fit to-make without the from-there help
οὐ γὰρ ἐν ἀνδράσι καὶ ἵπποις καὶ στρατηγικαῖς μηχαναῖς
not for in men and horses and generalship devices
καὶ οὗτος ἐθάρρει, ἀλλὰ τὸ πᾶν τῇ ἄνω ῥοπῇ
and this-one trusted but the whole to-the from-above inclination
ἐδίδου. καὶ ταῦτα μὲν μέχρι μέσης ἐτελεῖτο νυκτός·
gave and these(-things) indeed until middle was-performed night
μικρὸν δὲ τοῦ λοιποῦ τὸ σῶμα διαναπαύσας ἀνέθορε
a-little and of-the rest the body having-rested he-leapt-up
τοῦ ὕπνου καὶ τοὺς ψιλοὺς τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὥπλιζε
from-the sleep and the light-armed of-the soldiers armed
καρτερῶς, ἔστιν οὗ καί τινας ἀμφία καὶ περικεφαλαίας
strongly there-is where and some garments and helmets
ἐκ σηρικῶν πέπλων ὁμοχρόων κατασκευάσας περιέβαλεν,
from silken cloths of-like-color having-made he-clothed
ἐπεὶ μὴ ἀπέχρη τούτῳ πρὸς πάντας ὁ σίδηρος. ἡμέρας
since not sufficed for-him for all the iron of-day

δὲ ἀπάρτι διαγελώσης καρτερῶς ὁπλισάμενος τῆς
and by-now smiling strongly having-armed from-the
φάραγγος ἔξεισι τὸ ἐνυάλιον ἠχῆσαι κελεύσας. καὶ κάτωθεν
ravine goes-out the war-cry to-sound having-ordered and below
τοῦ καλουμένου Λεβουνίου (τόπος δὲ οὗτος ***) τὸ
the called Lebounion place and this (lacuna) the
στράτευμα διελὼν τὰς φάλαγγας ἰλαδὸν ἵστησιν.
army having-divided the phalanxes by-squadrons sets
αὐτὸς δὲ ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ προμετώπιος ἵστατο δριμὺ
he and the autocrat at-the-front stood keen
μένος πνέων. τοῦ μέντοι δεξιοῦ καὶ εὐωνύμου κέρως
strength breathing of-the however right and left wing
ὁ Παλαιολόγος Γεώργιος καὶ Κωνσταντῖνος κατῆρχον
— Palaiologos George and Constantine commanded
ὁ Δαλασσηνός. ἐξ ὑπερδεξίων δὲ τῶν Κομάνων ὁ
— Dalassenos from on-the-right and of-the Cumans —
Μοναστρᾶς ὁπλισάμενος μετὰ τῶν ὑπ᾽ αὐτὸν ἵστατο·
Monastras having-armed with those under him stood
ἤδη γὰρ κἀκεῖνοι τὰς Ῥωμαϊκὰς φάλαγγας καθιστῶντα
already for also-they the Roman phalanxes setting
τὸν αὐτοκράτορα ὁρῶντες τὰς σφῶν ὥπλιζον δυνάμεις καὶ
the autocrat seeing the own armed forces and
κατὰ τὸ δοκοῦν πολέμου διετύπουν σχῆμα· ἐξ εὐωνύμου
according-to the seeming of-war drew form from left
δὲ τούτων ὁ Οὐζᾶς καλούμενος, τὸ δέ γε πρὸς
and of-them — Ouzas called the and at-least toward
δύσιν ὁρῶν ὁ Οὐμπερτόπουλος μετὰ τῶν Κελτῶν. οὕτω
west looking — Houmbertopoulos with the Celts thus
γοῦν ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ ταῖς φάλαγξι πυργώσας οἷον τὸ
at-any-rate the autocrat with-the phalanxes having-towered as-it-were the
στράτευμα καὶ ταῖς ἴλαις περισφίγξας τὴν ἐνυάλιον αὖθις
army and with-the squadrons having-girded the martial again

ἐκέλευσεν ἠχῆσαι σάλπιγγα. οἱ δὲ Ῥωμαῖοι δεδιότες τὸ
he-ordered to-sound trumpet the and Romans fearing the
ἀπειροπληθὲς τῶν Σκυθῶν καὶ τὰς ἀμυθήτους ἁρμαμάξας
infinite-multitude of-the Scythians and the countless covered-wagons
τειχῶν ὥσπερ παρεχομένας αὐτοῖς χρείαν τὸν ὅλων
of-walls as-if providing to-them need the of-all
κύριον εἰς ἔλεον μιᾷ φωνῇ ἐπικαλεσάμενοι ὅλας ἡνίας
Lord for mercy with-one voice having-invoked whole reins
χαλάσαντες τὴν μετὰ τῶν Σκυθῶν μάχην ἐπέσπευδον τοῦ
having-slackened the with the Scythians battle hastened the
αὐτοκράτορος ἁπάντων προπάροιθεν θέοντος. μηνοειδοῦς
autocrat of-all in-front running crescent-shaped
δὲ τῆς παρατάξεως γεγονυίας, ἐν ταὐτῷ καὶ ὥσπερ
and the battle-line having-become at the-same-time and as-if
ἐξ ἑνὸς συνθήματος παντὸς τοῦ στρατοῦ καὶ αὐτῶν
from one signal all the army and of-the-very
δὴ τῶν Κομάνων τὴν κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ποιησαμένων ὁρμήν,
indeed the Cumans the against them having-made onset
στοχασάμενος τοῦ μέλλοντος Σκύθης τις τῶν ἐκκρίτων
having-guessed the future Scythian a-certain of-the picked
ἡγεμὼν τηνικαῦτα καθεστὼς προηρπάκει τὴν σωτηρίαν
leader then set had-snatched-first the safety
καὶ ὀλίγους συμπαραλαβὼν πρόσεισι τοῖς Κομάνοις ὡς
and few having-taken-along goes to-the Cumans as
ὁμογλώττοις. κἂν γὰρ κατὰ τῶν Σκυθῶν ἐκθύμως
fellow-tongued even-if for against the Scythians passionately
καὶ οὗτοι ἐμάχοντο, ἀλλὰ θαρρήσας μᾶλλον ἢ τοῖς
also these fought but having-trusted rather than to-the
Ῥωμαίοις αὐτοῖς προσεληλύθει ἐφ᾽ ᾧ μεσίταις τούτοις
Romans to-them he-had-come for which as-intermediaries them
πρὸς τὸν αὐτοκράτορα χρήσασθαι. τοῦτο ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ
toward the autocrat to-use this the autocrat

θεασάμενος καὶ πτοηθεὶς μὴ τούτοις καὶ ἕτεροι
having-beheld and having-been-frightened lest to-them also others
τῶν Σκυθῶν προσχωρήσαντες ἀναπείσωσι τοὺς Κομάνους
of-the Scythians having-gone-over might-persuade the Cumans
τὰ ὑπὲρ αὐτῶν φρονήσαντας κατὰ τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς
the(-things) for them having-thought against the Roman
φάλαγγος στρέψαι μετὰ τῆς γνώμης καὶ τὰς ἡνίας,
phalanx to-turn with the mind and the reins
παραχρῆμα, ὁποῖος ἐκεῖνος δραστήριος ἐν ὀξείᾳ ῥοπῇ
immediately such that-man energetic in sharp turn
τοῦ συνοίσοντος καταστοχάσασθαι, τῷ τὴν βασιλικὴν
of-the advantageous to-guess to-the(-man) the imperial
σημαίαν κατέχοντι ἐπέταξε ταύτην ἐν χεροῖν φέροντι
standard holding ordered it in both-hands carrying
μετὰ τῆς τῶν Κομάνων στῆναι παρεμβολῆς. τῆς Σκυθικῆς
with the of-the Cumans to-stand camp the Scythian
δὲ ὁμαιχμίας διασπασθείσης ἤδη καὶ προσχωρησάντων
and battle-array having-been-torn-apart already and having-come-together
ἀλλήλοιν τοῖν στρατοπέδοιν ἀνδροκτασίαν ἦν θεᾶσθαι
to-each-other the two-armies slaughter it-was to-see
τηνικαῦτα, ὁποίαν οὐδείς πω ἐθεάσατο. τῶν δὲ Σκυθῶν
then such-as no-one ever saw of-the and Scythians
δεινῶς ἀποσφαττομένων ὡς ἐγκαταλειφθέντων ἤδη ὑπὸ
terribly being-slaughtered as abandoned already by
τῆς θείας δυνάμεως κεκοπιακότες οἱ σφάττοντες τῇ
the divine power having-toiled the slaughterers with-the
σφοδρᾷ καὶ πυκνῇ κινήσει τῶν ξιφῶν λειποθυμοῦντες
violent and frequent motion of-the swords fainting
ἀνεκόπτοντο τῆς ὁρμῆς. ὁ δὲ αὐτοκράτωρ ἐν μέσοις
were-checked from-the onset the and autocrat in the-midst
τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐξιππαζόμενος ὅλας συνετάραττε φάλαγγας
the enemies riding-out whole confounded phalanxes

πλήττων μὲν τοὺς ἀντικαθισταμένους, καταπτήσσων δὲ
striking indeed the opponents terrifying and
καὶ τοὺς πόρρω τοῖς ἐμβοήμασιν. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὸν ἥλιον ὑπὲρ
also those far-off with-the shouts since and the sun over
κεφαλῆς τὰς ἀκτῖνας βάλλοντα ἑώρα μεσημβρίας ἀπάρτι
head the rays casting he-saw midday by-now
οὔσης, προμηθεύεταί τι τοιοῦτον. μεταπεμψάμενός τινας
being provides something such having-summoned some
ἀποστέλλει ἐφ' ᾧ ἀγρότας ἀσκοὺς πλήσαντας ὕδατος
sends for which rustics skins having-filled with-water
καὶ ταῖς ἰδίαις ἐπισάξαντας ἡμιόνοις ἐξελάσαντας ἀγαγεῖν.
and on-the own having-loaded mules having-driven-out to-bring
τούτους δὲ ἤδη θεασάμενοι καὶ οἱ μὴ προσκληθέντες
them and already having-beheld also those not summoned
τῶν πλησιοχώρων τὸ αὐτὸ τοῦτ' ἐποίουν τοὺς τῆς
of-the neighbors the same this did those from-the
δεινῆς τῶν Σκυθῶν χειρὸς αὐτοὺς ἀπαλλάττοντας ὁ
terrible of-the Scythians hand them freeing the(-one)
μὲν δι' ἀμφορέως, ὁ δὲ δι' ἀσκοῦ, ὁ δὲ δι'
indeed with a-jar the(-other) and with a-skin the(-other) and with
ὁποίου τύχοιεν ἄγγους ἀναψύχοντες ὕδατι. οἱ δὲ
whatever they-might-chance vessel refreshing with-water they and
μικρὸν τοῦ ὕδατος σπώμενοι αὖθις τῆς μάχης ἀντείχοντο.
a-little of-the water drinking again to-the battle held
καὶ ἦν ἰδεῖν θέαμα καινόν, ἔθνος ὅλον, οὐ μυριάνθρωπον,
and it-was to-see a-sight new a-nation whole not ten-thousand-manned
ἀλλ' ἀριθμὸν ἅπαντα ὑπερβαῖνον, σὺν γυναιξὶ καὶ τέκνοις
but number all exceeding with women and children
ἄρδην κατὰ ταυτηνὶ τὴν ἡμέραν ἀπολωλός. ἦν δὲ
utterly on this-here the day having-perished it-was and
μηνὸς Ἀπριλλίου εἰκοστὴ πρὸς τῇ ἐννάτῃ ἡμέρᾳ,
of-the-month April twentieth besides the ninth day

τρίτη δὲ τῆς ἑβδομάδος. ἔνθεν τοι καὶ παρῳδιόν τι οἱ
third and of-the week whence surely also parody a the
Βυζάντιοι ἐπῇδον φάσκοντες "διὰ μίαν ἡμέραν οἱ Σκύθαι
Byzantines sang saying through one day the Scythians
τὸν Μάϊον οὐκ εἶδον". ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ ἥλιος πρὸς δυσμαῖς
the May not saw since and the sun to setting
ἤδη ἦν καὶ ἅπαντες μὲν ξιφῶν ἔργον γεγόνασι, καὶ
already was and all indeed of-swords a-work became both
τὰ τέκνα φημὶ καὶ αἱ μητέρες, πολλοὶ δὲ καὶ ζωγρία
the children I-mean and the mothers many and also alive
ἐλήφθησαν, τὸ ἀνακλητικὸν ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ κελεύσας
were-taken the recall the autocrat having-ordered
ἠχῆσαι πρὸς τὴν ἰδίαν ἐπάνεισι παρεμβολήν. καὶ ἦν
to-sound to the own returns camp and it-was
τῷ κατανοοῦντι θαῦμα ἰδέσθαι, πῶς οἱ πάλαι κατὰ τῶν
for-the observer a-wonder to-see how those long-ago against the
Σκυθῶν ἐξερχόμενοι τοῦ Βυζαντίου καλῴδια ἐξωνούμενοι
Scythians going-out — from-Byzantium ropes buying
καὶ ἱμάντας, δι' ὧν δεσμώτας ἄγοιεν τοὺς τῶν
and thongs through which as-prisoners they-might-lead those of-the
Σκυθῶν ἑαλωκότας, τοὐναντίον πεπόνθασιν αὐτοί τε
Scythians captured the-opposite suffered themselves both
παρὰ τῶν Σκυθῶν ἑαλωκότες καὶ δεσμῶται γενόμενοι.
by the Scythians captured and prisoners having-become
ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν τότε, ὁπηνίκα κατὰ τὴν Δρίστραν ὁ
but these(-things) indeed then when at — Dristra the
μετὰ τῶν Σκυθῶν γέγονε πόλεμος· καὶ γὰρ τὸ φρύαγμα
with the Scythians happened war and for the arrogance
τότε τῶν Ῥωμαίων καθεῖλε θεός. ἐν ὑστέροις δέ, καθ'
then of-the Romans brought-down God in later-times but at
ὃν ὑφηγοῦμαι καιρόν, ὁπηνίκα περιδεεῖς τούτους ἔγνω
which I-am-narrating time when very-afraid them he-knew

καὶ τὰς σῳζούσας ἀπολωλεκότας ἐλπίδας πρὸς τοσαῦτα
and the saving having-lost hopes against so-great
πλήθη μὴ ἐξισχύοντας, τὴν νίκην παραδόξως ἐχαρίσατο
multitudes not being-strong the victory unexpectedly granted
τούτοις, ὡς καὶ δεσμεῖν καὶ σφάττειν καὶ ζωγρίαν ἄγειν
them so-that both to-bind and to-slaughter and alive to-lead
τοὺς Σκύθας, οὐ τοῦτο δὲ μόνον (τάχα γάρ τι
the Scythians not this and only perhaps for something
τοιοῦτον κἀν τοῖς μερικοῖς τῶν πολέμων πολλάκις εἴωθε
such even-in the partial of-the wars often is-wont
γίνεσθαι), ἀλλὰ καὶ ὅλον ἔθνος μυρίανδρον κατὰ μίαν
to-happen but also whole nation of-ten-thousand-men in one
καὶ μόνην ἀφανίσαι ἡμέραν.
and only to-make-disappear day

XL · MERCY AND THE MASSACRE

Synesios urges Alexios to kill the many prisoners, but he refuses, saying that Scythians are still men. In the night the soldiers kill nearly all of them, and Alexios suspects Synesios. The Cumans, fearing a plot, flee with their booty, and Alexios sends their promised share after them to the Danube, since he will not even seem to lie. He pays the Cumans who stayed with him more than he promised. He sends the Cumans home under Ioannakes and returns to Byzantium in May.

Τῶν ταγμάτων δὲ τοῦ τε Κομανικοῦ καὶ Ῥωμαϊκοῦ ἀπ'
of-the units and the both Cuman and Roman from
ἀλλήλων διακριθέντων καὶ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος περὶ λύχνων
each-other having-separated and the autocrat about of-lamps
ἁφὰς πρὸς δεῖπνον ἀπιδόντος δυσχεραίνων εἱστήκει ὁ
lightings to dinner having-gone-off displeased stood the
καλούμενος Συνέσιος "τί τὸ γινόμενον καὶ τίς αὕτη ἡ
called Synesios what the(-thing) happening and what this the

καινὴ οἰκονομία;" λέγων πρὸς τὸν αὐτοκράτορα. "ἕκαστος
new management saying to the autocrat each
τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἀνὰ τριάκοντα καὶ πλείω δεσμώτας ἔχει
of-the soldiers apiece thirty and more prisoners has
Σκύθας. ἡ τῶν Κομάνων πληθὺς ἐγγὺς ἡμῶν ἐστιν. εἰ
Scythians the of-the Cumans multitude near us is if
γοῦν ὑπνώσαιεν οἱ στρατιῶται, καθά γε καὶ δεῖ,
at-any-rate should-sleep the soldiers as at-least also it-is-needful
τοσοῦτον κεκοπιακότες καὶ οἱ Σκύθαι ἄλλος ἄλλον λύσαντες
so-much having-toiled and the Scythians one another having-loosed
καὶ τοὺς ἀκινάκεις σπασάμενοι ἀναιρήσουσιν αὐτούς, τί
and the scimitars having-drawn will-kill them what
τὸ λοιπὸν ἔσται; ἀλλὰ κέλευσον ἀναιρεθῆναι θᾶττον τοὺς
the rest will-be but order to-be-killed more-quickly the
πλείονας." ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς δριμὺ πρὸς αὐτὸν ἐνιδὼν ἔφη
most the and emperor keenly at him having-looked he-said
"κἂν Σκύθαι, ἀλλὰ πάντως ἄνθρωποι, κἂν ἐχθροί, ἀλλ'
even-if Scythians but surely men even-if enemies but
ἐλέους ἄξιοι· αὐτὸς δ' οὐκ οἶδα τί φρονήσας ταῦτα
of-mercy worthy you and not I-know what having-thought these(-things)
ληρεῖς", τὸν δ' ἐνιστάμενον μετ' ὀργῆς ἀπεπέμψατο.
talk-nonsense the and objecting with anger sent-away
προσέταξε δὲ τηνικαῦτα διαλαλιὰν εἰς ἅπαν τὸ στράτευμα
ordered and then a-proclamation into all the army
γενέσθαι, ἅπαντα τὰ τῶν Σκυθῶν ἀναλαβομένους ὅπλα εἰς
to-be-made all the of-the Scythians having-taken-up arms into
ἕνα καταθέσθαι τόπον, τοὺς δὲ δεσμώτας παραφυλάττειν.
one to-lay-down place the and prisoners to-guard
ταῦτα κελεύσας ἐν ἀμεριμνίᾳ τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς νυκτὸς
these(-things) having-ordered in freedom-from-care the rest of-the night
ἦν. περὶ μέσην δὲ φυλακὴν τῆς νυκτὸς εἴτ' ἐκ θείας

ὀμφῆς εἴτε καὶ ὅπως οὐκ οἶδα, ὅμως δ' οὖν ὡς ἐξ
voice or also how not I-know nevertheless but then as from
ἑνὸς συνθήματος μικροῦ πάντας οἱ στρατιῶται ἀπέκτειναν.
one signal almost all the soldiers killed
τοῦτο ὁ βασιλεὺς αὐγαζούσης ἡμέρας ἀκηκοὼς ὕποπτον
this the emperor dawning day having-heard suspect
εὐθὺς τὸν Συνέσιον εἶχε. μετακαλεῖται τοίνυν παραχρῆμα
at-once — Synesios held summons therefore immediately
τοῦτον. καὶ αἰτιώμενος σφοδρῶς ἠπειλεῖτο λέγων "τοῦτο
him and accusing violently threatened saying this
τὸ ἔργον σόν". τοῦ δὲ ἐπομνυμένου μὴ εἰδέναι ἐπέταξε
the work yours he and swearing not to-know ordered
δεσμηθέντα τοῦτον κατασχεθῆναι "γνώτω," λέγων "ὁποῖον
bound him to-be-held let-him-know saying what-sort
καὶ μόνον ὁ δεσμὸς κακόν ἐστιν, ὡς μηκέτι κατὰ
also alone the bond evil is so-that no-longer against
ἀνθρώπων τοιαύτας ἀποφάσεις ποιεῖσθαι". τάχα δὲ ἂν
men such sentences to-make perhaps and —
καὶ ἐκόλασε τοῦτον, εἰ μὴ προσελθόντες οἱ καθ'
also he-would-have-punished him if not having-come those by
αἷμα καὶ ἐξ ἀγχιστείας προσήκοντες τῷ αὐτοκράτορι
blood and from marriage related to-the autocrat
μεγιστᾶνες κοινὴν τὴν ὑπὲρ τοῦ Συνεσίου ἱκετηρίαν
magnates common the on-behalf-of — Synesios supplication
ἐποιοῦντο. τῶν δὲ Κομάνων οἱ πλείους πτοηθέντες,
made of-the and Cumans the most having-been-frightened
μή τι δεινὸν καὶ κατ' αὐτῶν ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ νυκτὸς
lest something terrible also against them the autocrat at-night
μελετήσειε, τὴν λείαν πᾶσαν ἀναλαβόμενοι νυκτὸς ᾤχοντο
might-plan the booty all having-taken-up at-night went
τὴν πρὸς τὸν Δάνουβιν φέρουσαν ὁδεύοντες. αὐτὸς δὲ
the to the Danube leading(-road) traveling he and

αὐγαζούσης ἡμέρας φεύγων τὴν τῶν νεκρῶν σωμάτων
dawning day fleeing the of-the dead bodies
δυσωδίαν ἀπάρας ἐκεῖθεν ἔρχεται ἐπί τινα τόπον Καλὰ
stench having-set-out from-there comes to some place Fair
Δένδρα καλούμενον σταδίους δέκα πρὸς τοῖς ὀκτὼ ἀπέχοντα
Trees called stades ten besides the eight distant
τῶν Χοιρηνῶν. ἀπερχόμενον δὲ ἐκεῖσε κατέλαβεν ὁ
from-the Choirenoi going and there reached —
Μελισσηνός. οὐ γὰρ ἔφθασε παραγενέσθαι ἐν τῷ
Melissenos not for he-had-been-first to-be-present in the
καιρῷ τῆς μάχης ἀσχολούμενος τὴν πληθὺν ἐκείνην τῶν
time of-the battle being-busy the multitude that of-the
νεολέκτων ἀποστεῖλαι πρὸς τὸν αὐτοκράτορα. ἀλλήλους
newly-enlisted to-send to the autocrat each-other
τοίνυν ἀσπασάμενοι καὶ συγχαρέντες, ὡς εἰκός, τὸ
therefore having-greeted and having-rejoiced-together as is-likely the
λοιπὸν τῆς ὁδοιπορίας περὶ τῶν συμπεσόντων ἐπὶ τῇ
rest of-the journey about the(-things) having-happened at the
τῶν Σκυθῶν ἥττῃ ὡμίλουν. μεμαθηκὼς δὲ ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ,
of-the Scythians defeat they-conversed having-learned and the autocrat
ὁπηνίκα τὰ Καλὰ Δένδρα κατέλαβε, τὸν δρασμὸν τῶν
when the Fair Trees he-reached the flight of-the
Κομάνων, ὁπόσα τούτοις ἀνῆκε πρὸς λόγον τῶν
Cumans as-much-as to-them belonged in proportion of-the(-things)
συμφωνηθέντων αὐτοῖς, ἐπισάξας ἐν ἡμιόνοις ἀπέστειλε
agreed with-them having-loaded on mules sent
πρὸς αὐτοὺς ἐντειλάμενος σπεῦσαι καταλαβεῖν αὐτοὺς καὶ
to them having-enjoined to-hasten to-overtake them even
πέραθεν εἰ δυνηθεῖεν Δανούβεως καὶ δοῦναι τὰ
beyond if they-should-be-able (the)-Danube and to-give the(-things)
ἀποσταλέντα. βαρὺ γὰρ ἦν αὐτῷ διὰ παντὸς μὴ μόνον
sent heavy for was to-him through all not only

ψεύσασθαι, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ δόξαι ψεύσασθαι ὁμιλίαν ἱκανὴν
to-lie but also the to-seem to-lie discourse considerable
πρὸς ἅπαντας περὶ ψεύδους ποιουμένῳ. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν
to all about lying making but these(-things) indeed
περὶ τῶν πεφευγότων· τοὺς δέ γε λοιποὺς ἑφεπομένους
about those having-fled the and at-least rest following
αὐτῷ εἱστία τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας δαψιλῶς. δέον δὲ
him he-feasted the rest of-the day abundantly needful and
ἐλογίσατο μὴ τηνικαῦτα τοὺς ἀνήκοντας δοῦναι μισθούς,
he-reckoned not then the due to-give pay
ἀλλὰ μεθεῖναι τοὺς εἰς ὕπνον τραπέντας καταπέψαι τὸν
but to-let those to sleep having-turned to-digest the
οἶνον καὶ οὕτω τὸ φρονοῦν τῆς ψυχῆς συλλεξαμένους ἐν
wine and thus the thinking-part of-the soul having-collected in
ἐπιγνώσει γενέσθαι τοῦ πραττομένου. τῇ μετ' αὐτὴν
recognition to-become of-the(-thing) being-done on-the after it
οὖν μετακαλεσάμενος ἅπαντας οὐ τὰ προϋπεσχημένα
then having-summoned all not the(-things) promised-before
δίδωσι μόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ πολλῷ πλείονα. σκεψάμενος δέ,
he-gives only but also much more having-considered and
ἐπεὶ ἀπολύειν τούτους οἴκαδε ἐβούλετο, μὴ ἐν τῷ ἀπιέναι
since to-release them homeward he-wished lest in the going-away
εἰς προνομὴν σκεδασθέντες οὐ μικρὰν ταῖς κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν
for foraging scattered not small to-the along the road
παρακειμέναις κωμοπόλεσι τὴν βλάβην ἐπάξωσιν, ὁμήρους
lying-near country-towns the harm they-might-bring hostages
ἐξ αὐτῶν λαμβάνει. αἰτησαμένων δὲ καὶ αὐτῶν τὰ
from them he-takes having-asked and also they the(-things)
κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν αὐτοῖς ἀσφαλίσασθαι δίδωσιν αὐτοῖς τὸν
along the road for-them to-secure he-gives them —
Ἰωαννάκην (ἀνὴρ δὲ οὗτος ἀνδρείᾳ καὶ φρονήσει διαφέρων)
Ioannakes a-man and this-one in-courage and prudence excelling

τὴν τῶν ἁπάντων οἰκονομίαν ἀναθέμενος καὶ τὴν μέχρις
the of-the all management having-entrusted and the as-far-as
αὐτοῦ τοῦ Ζυγοῦ τῶν Κομάνων εὐθέτησιν. τοιαῦτα μὲν
itself the Zygos of-the Cumans safe-conduct such indeed
οὖν τὰ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος θείᾳ πάντως προνοίᾳ.
then the(-affairs) of-the autocrat by-divine surely providence
πάντα γοῦν κατὰ τὸ πλῆρες τελέσας τροπαιοφόρος
all at-any-rate in the full having-accomplished trophy-bearing
αὐτὸς νικητὴς πρὸς τὸ Βυζάντιον ἐπανέρχεται Μαΐου
he victor to — Byzantium returns May
παριππεύοντος μηνός. ἀλλὰ τὰ μὲν τῶν Σκυθῶν
riding-by month but the(-affairs) indeed of-the Scythians
ὧδέ πη πέρας ἐχέτω, κἂν ἐκ πολλῶν ὀλίγα μοι
thus somehow end let-them-have even-if from many few by-me
εἴρηται ἄκρῳ δακτύλῳ τοῦ Ἀδριαντικοῦ ἁψαμένη
have-been-said with-the-tip finger of-the Adriatic having-touched
πελάγους. τὰς γὰρ λαμπρὰς τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος νίκας,
sea the for brilliant of-the autocrat victories
τὰς μερικὰς τῶν πολεμίων ἥττας, τὰς καθ' ἕνα τούτου
the partial of-the enemies defeats the one-by one his
ἀνδραγαθίας, τὰ ἐν τῷ μεταξὺ συμπίπτοντα τοῖς
feats-of-valor the(-things) in the meantime happening at-the
τότε καιροῖς καὶ ὅπως πρὸς ἅπαντα ἐποικίλλετό τε καὶ
then times and how toward all-things he-varied-himself both and
διὰ παντοίας μεθόδου διέλυε τὰ συμπίπτοντα δεινά,
through every-kind method dissolved the befalling terrors
οὐδ' ἂν Δημοσθένης ἄλλος ἢ καὶ ὁ ἅπας τῶν ῥητόρων
nor — Demosthenes another or even the whole of-the orators
χορός, οὐδ' ἂν ἡ Ἀκαδημία πᾶσα καὶ ἡ Στοὰ εἰς
chorus nor — the Academy all and the Stoa into

ταὐτὸν συνεληλυθέτην καὶ προὔργου παντὸς τὰς Ἀλεξίου
the-same had-come-together and of-first-importance of-all the of-Alexios
πράξεις ἐποιήσαντο, τούτων ἐφικέσθαι ἐξίσχυσαν.
deeds they-made these to-reach would-have-been-able

XLI · JOHN SUSPECTED

Ariebes the Armenian and the Celt Houmbertopoulos are caught plotting and exiled. Alexios marches west against Bodinos and the Dalmatians and reaches Philippopolis. There a letter from the archbishop of Bulgaria warns that John, duke of Dyrrachion and son of the sebastokrator Isaac, plans rebellion. Torn between love for his brother and fear, Alexios sends Argyros Karatzas with two letters: one summoning John, the other naming Karatzas duke, to be read to the leading men of Dyrrachion so that they help seize John if he refuses.

Οὐ πολλαὶ διῆλθον ἡμέραι τῆς τοῦ βασιλέως εἰς τὰ
not many passed days from-the of-the emperor into the
ἀνάκτορα εἰσελεύσεως, καὶ ὁ Ἀριέβης Ἀρμένιος καὶ
palace entrance and — Ariebes an-Armenian and
ὁ Κελτὸς Οὐμπερτόπουλος (λογάδες οὗτοι ἄνδρες τῶν
the Celt Houmbertopoulos picked-men these men of-the
ἐπιφανῶν Ἀρειμάνιοι) κατὰ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος μελετήσαντες
illustrious Warlike against the autocrat having-plotted
ἐφωράθησαν πλῆθος οὐκ ἀγεννὲς πρὸς ταυτηνὶ τὴν
were-detected a-multitude not ignoble to this-here the
βουλὴν ἐπισυρόμενοι. καὶ οἱ ἔλεγχοι παρῆσαν καὶ ἡ
plot drawing-in and the proofs were-present and the
ἀλήθεια ἐπαρρησιάζετο. κατάκριτοι δὲ ἤδη καταστάντες οἱ
truth spoke-freely condemned and already having-become the
ἐπίβουλοι δήμευσιν τηνικαῦτα καὶ ὑπερορίαν κατεκρίθησαν
plotters confiscation then and exile were-sentenced

τῶν ἐκ τῶν νόμων ποινῶν τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος σχολὴν
the from the laws penalties the autocrat remission
παντελῆ καταψηφισαμένου. λογοποιουμένην δὲ Κομάνων
complete having-voted being-rumored and of-Cumans
ἔφοδον μανθάνων ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ, ἐκεῖθεν δὲ καὶ τὸν
attack learning the autocrat from-there and also —
Βοδῖνον καὶ αὐτοὺς Δαλμάτας παρασπονδῆσαί τε καὶ
Bodinos and themselves Dalmatians to-break-the-treaty both and
κατὰ τῆς ἡμεδαπῆς χωρῆσαι βουλομένους ἐμερίζετο
against the our-land to-advance wishing he-was-divided
τοῖς λογισμοῖς, πρὸς ὁπότερον ἂν ἀπονεύσειε τῶν
in-the reasonings toward which-of-the-two — he-should-incline of-the
ἐχθρῶν. δέον οὖν αὐτῷ ἐδόκει κατὰ τῶν Δαλματῶν
enemies needful then to-him it-seemed against the Dalmatians
πρώτως ἐξοπλίσασθαι καὶ προκαταλαβεῖν τὰ ἀναμεταξὺ
first to-arm and to-seize-first the between
τῆς ἡμεδαπῆς καὶ αὐτῶν διακείμενα τέμπη καὶ ὡς
the our-land and them lying valleys and as
ἐνὸν ἀσφαλίσασθαι. συναγαγὼν τοίνυν ἅπαντας καὶ
being-possible to-secure having-gathered therefore all and
ἀνακοινωσάμενος τὸ σκοπούμενον, ἐπεὶ συνοῖσον ἅπασι
having-communicated the plan since advantageous to-all
τοῦτ᾽ ἐδόκει, ἔξεισι τῆς μεγαλοπόλεως τὰ κατὰ τὴν
this seemed goes-out from-the great-city the(-affairs) in the
ἑσπέραν προμηθευσόμενος. καὶ ταχὺ τὴν Φιλιππούπολιν
west going-to-provide-for and quickly — Philippopolis
καταλαβὼν καὶ γράμματα δεξάμενος τοῦ τηνικαῦτα
having-reached and letters having-received of-the then
ἀρχιεπισκόπου Βουλγαρίας χρηματίζοντος περὶ τοῦ δουκὸς
archbishop of-Bulgaria being about the duke
Δυρραχίου Ἰωάννου τοῦ υἱοῦ τοῦ σεβαστοκράτορος
of-Dyrrachion John the son of-the sebastokrator

διαβεβαιούμενα ἀποστασίαν ἐκεῖνον ὠδίνειν ἀθυμῶν διὰ
affirming rebellion that-one to-travail-with despondent through
πάσης νυκτὸς καὶ ἡμέρας ἦν πὴ μὲν διὰ τὸν
all night and day he-was in-one-way indeed because-of the
ἐκείνου πατέρα ἀναβαλλόμενος τὴν τῆς ὑποθέσεως ἐξέτασιν,
of-that-one father putting-off the of-the matter examination
πὴ δὲ καὶ δεδιώς, μὴ ἅπερ ἡ φήμη λέγει οὐ ψεύσεται.
in-another and also fearing lest what the rumor says not will-prove-false
καὶ ἐπεὶ μειράκιον ἦν ὁ Ἰωάννης, ὡς ἐπίπαν τὰς τῶν
and since a-youth was — John as on-the-whole the of-the
τοιούτων ὁρμὰς ἀκαθέκτους γινώσκων ἐδεδίει, μή τι
such impulses unrestrainable knowing he-feared lest something
νεωτερίσειε καὶ λύπης ἀφορήτου ἀμφοῖν τῷ τε πατρὶ καὶ
he-might-innovate and of-grief unbearable to-both the both father and
θείῳ πρόξενος γένοιτο. δεῖν οὖν ἐλογίσατο διὰ πάσης
uncle causer might-become to-be-needful then he-reckoned through every
μεθόδου σπεῦσαι τὴν ἐκείνου σφῆλαι βουλήν. ἐκήδετο
method to-hasten the of-that-one to-trip plan he-cared
γὰρ τούτου, ὁπόσον ἄν τις εἴποι. μεταπεμψάμενος οὖν
for for-him as-much-as — anyone might-say having-summoned then
τὸν τότε μέγαν ἑταιρειάρχην Ἀργυρὸν τὸν Καρατζάν,
the then great betaireiarch Argyros the Karatzas
Σκύθην μὲν ὄντα, φρονιμώτατον δὲ καὶ ἀρετῆς καὶ
a-Scythian indeed being most-prudent but both of-virtue and
ἀληθείας ἐπιμελούμενον, διττὰς ἐπιδίδωσιν αὐτῷ γραφάς,
truth caring double gives him letters
τὴν μὲν πρὸς τὸν Ἰωάννην τοιαῦτα διαλαμβάνουσαν
the(-one) indeed to — John such-things comprising
“ἡ μὲν βασιλεία μου βαρβαρικὴν διὰ τῶν κλεισουρῶν
the indeed majesty my barbarian through the passes
ἔλευσιν κατ’ αὐτῆς μεμαθηκυῖα ἐξεληλύθει τῆς
coming against it having-learned had-gone-out from-the(-city)

Κωνσταντίνου ἐφ' ᾧ τὰ μεσαίχμια τῆς Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῆς
of-Constantine for which the borderlands of-the of-Romans rule
ἀσφαλίσασθαι. δέον οὖν ἐστι καὶ αὐτόν σε παραγενέσθαι
to-secure needful then it-is also yourself you to-come
τὰ κατὰ τὴν ὑπό σε ἀρχὴν ἀναδιδάξοντα (δέδια
the(-affairs) concerning the under you rule going-to-inform I-fear
γὰρ καὶ τὸν Βολκάνον, μὴ καὶ αὐτὸς ἐναντία καθ'
for also — Bolkanos lest also he contrary-things against
ἡμῶν φρονήσας μελετήσῃ), πρὸς δὲ καὶ τὰ κατὰ
us having-thought might-plan besides and also the(-affairs) concerning
τὴν Δαλματίαν ἀναγγελεῖν πρὸς ἡμᾶς καὶ περὶ αὐτοῦ
— Dalmatia to-report to us and about himself
τοῦ Βολκάνου, εἰ ταῖς εἰρηνικαῖς ἐμμένει σπονδαῖς (καὶ
— Bolkanos whether in-the peaceful he-abides treaties and
γὰρ οὐκ ἀγαθαί μοι περὶ αὐτοῦ ἀγγελίαι καθ' ἑκάστην
for not good to-me about him reports by each(-day)
κομίζονται), ἵνα σαφέστερόν τι μεμαθηκότες καὶ πρὸς
are-brought that clearer something having-learned also against
τὰς αὐτοῦ ἐπὶ πλέον παρασκευασώμεθα μηχανὰς καί σοι
the his on more prepare-ourselves devices and to-you
τὸ δέον ὑποθέμενοι αὖθις πρὸς τὸ Ἰλλυρικὸν ἐκπέμψωμεν,
the needful having-suggested again to — Illyricum we-may-send-out
ὅπως ἐξ ἑκατέρου τοῖς ἐχθροῖς μαχόμενοι τὴν νικῶσαν
so-that from each-side the enemies fighting the winning(-vote)
θεοῦ ἐπαρήγοντος σχοίημεν." ταῦτα μὲν ἡ πρὸς τὸν
God helping we-may-have these(-things) indeed the to —
Ἰωάννην γραφὴ διελάμβανεν· ἡ δέ γε πρὸς τοὺς
John letter comprised the and at-least to the
λογάδας τῶν ἐποίκων Δυρραχίου τοιαῦθ' ὑπηγόρευεν "ἐπεὶ
picked-men of-the settlers of-Dyrrachion such-things dictated since
καθ' ἡμῶν μελετᾶν τὸν Βολκάνον αὖθις μεμαθηκότες
against us to-plot — Bolkanos again having-learned

τῆς Βυζαντίδος ἐξεληλύθειμεν κατασφαλισόμενοί τε τὰ
— *from-Byzantis we-had-gone-out going-to-secure both the*
ἐν μεσαιχμίῳ τῆς τε ἡμεδαπῆς καὶ τῶν Δαλματῶν
in between of-the both our-land and the Dalmatians
διακείμενα τέμπη, ἅμα δὲ καὶ τὰ κατ᾽ αὐτὸν
lying valleys together and also the(-affairs) concerning him
καὶ τοὺς Δαλμάτας ἀκριβώσασθαι, διά τοι ταῦτα
and the Dalmatians to-ascertain because-of surely these(-things)
δέον κρίναντες μετακαλέσασθαι τὸν ὑμέτερον δοῦκα καὶ
needful having-judged to-summon the your duke and
ποθούμενον ἀνεψιὸν τοῦ κράτους ἡμῶν τουτονὶ τὸν τὴν
beloved nephew of-the sovereignty our this-man the(-one) the
ἡμετέραν ἐγχειρίζοντα ὑμῖν γραφὴν ἐξαπεστείλαμεν δοῦκα
our handing to-you letter we-have-sent-off as-duke
τοῦτον προχειρισάμενοι. δέξασθε αὐτὸν καὶ ὑμεῖς καὶ εἰς
him having-appointed receive him both you and in
πᾶν τὸ παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ προσταττόμενον ὑπείκετε.” ταύτας οὖν
all the by him ordered yield these then
τὰς γραφὰς ἐγχειρίσας τῷ Καρατζᾷ ἐνετείλατο ἀπελθόντα
the letters having-handed — to-Karatzas he-enjoined having-gone
πρῶτα μὲν ἐγχειρίσαι τῷ Ἰωάννῃ τὴν πρὸς αὐτὸν γραφὴν
first indeed to-hand — to-John the to him letter
καὶ εἰ μὲν αὐθαιρέτως ἕπεται, ἐκεῖνον μὲν ἐκεῖθεν μετ᾽
and if indeed of-his-own-accord he-follows that-one indeed from-there with
εἰρήνης προπέμψαι, αὐτὸν δὲ τὴν φρουρὰν τῆς χώρας
peace to-send-off he and the guard of-the land
ἀναδέξασθαι, μέχρις ἂν ἐκεῖνος αὖθις ἐπανέλθοι· εἰ δὲ
to-take-up until — that-one again should-return if and
ἀντιτείνει καὶ μὴ πείθεται, μεταπέμψασθαι τοὺς ὑπερέχοντας
he-resists and not is-persuaded to-summon the leading

τῶν Δυρραχιτῶν καὶ τὴν ἑτέραν ὑπαναγνῶναι γραφὴν ἐφ᾽
of-the Dyrrachians and the other to-read letter for
ᾧ συνάρασθαι αὐτῷ ἐπὶ τὸ τὸν Ἰωάννην κατασχεῖν.
which to-help him for the — John to-seize

XLII · THE BROTHERS RECONCILED

Isaac rides from Constantinople and arrives while Alexios sleeps. When the letter-carrier announces that John is coming, Isaac, freed of his suspicion, turns on Adrian, whom he blames for the slander, and threatens to strip his beard. John arrives and hears the charges, but Alexios refuses to examine him for his father's sake. He sends Isaac home to their mother, and John back to Dyrrachion.

Ταῦτα ἐνωτισθεὶς Ἰσαάκιος ὁ σεβαστοκράτωρ ἐν
these(-things) having-heard Isaac the sebastokrator in
Κωνσταντινουπόλει διατρίβων σπουδαίως ἐξῄει καὶ
Constantinople staying zealously went-out and
ἐπὶ δυσὶ νυχθημέροις καταλαμβάνει τὴν Φιλιππούπολιν.
in two nights-and-days reaches — Philippopolis
ὑπνώττοντος δὲ τοῦ βασιλέως εἴσω τῆς βασιλικῆς σκηνῆς
sleeping and the emperor inside the imperial tent
ἀψοφητὶ εἰσελθὼν εἰς τὴν ἑτέραν κλίνην τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ
noiselessly having-entered onto the other couch of-the brother
καὶ βασιλέως κατακλιθεὶς καὶ αὐτὸς ὕπνωττε τοὺς
and emperor having-lain-down also he slept those
κατευνάζοντας τὸν αὐτοκράτορα διὰ τῆς χειρὸς ἡσυχάζειν
lulling the autocrat with the hand to-keep-quiet
ἐπιτάξας. ὡς γοῦν ὁ βασιλεὺς τοῦ ὕπνου ἀνέθορε καὶ
having-ordered when at-any-rate the emperor from-the sleep leapt-up and
τὸν ἀδελφὸν παρ᾽ ἐλπίδας ἐθεάσατο, ἡσυχάζων τέως
the brother beyond hopes saw keeping-quiet for-the-time

ἦν καὶ τοὺς παρατυχόντας αὐτὸ τοῦτο ποιεῖν καὶ αὐτὸς
he-was and those present itself this to-do also he
ἐκέλευεν. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ ὁ σεβαστοκράτωρ ἔξυπνος γενόμενος
ordered since and also the sebastokrator awake having-become
τὸν ἀδελφὸν καὶ βασιλέα γρηγοροῦντα ἐθεάσατο κἀκεῖνος
the brother and emperor awake saw and-that-one
ἐνιδὼν αὐτόν, προσελθόντες ἀμφότεροι ἀλλήλους
having-looked-at him having-approached both each-other
κατησπάζοντο. εἶτα ὁ μὲν βασιλεὺς ἐπυνθάνετο, τί ποτε
embraced then the indeed emperor asked what ever
ἄρα καὶ βούλοιτο καὶ τίς ἡ αἰτία τῆς αὐτοῦ ἐλεύσεως.
after-all also he-might-want and what the cause of-the his coming
ἐκεῖνος δὲ "σοῦ ἕνεκα" ἔφη. καὶ ὃς "μάτην ἑαυτὸν
he and of-you for-the-sake he-said and he in-vain yourself
συντείνας τοσοῦτον κεκοπίακας". ὁ δὲ σεβαστοκράτωρ
having-strained so-much have-toiled the and sebastokrator
τέως οὐκ ἀντεφθέγξατο, ἀλλ' ὀνειρώττων ἦν τὰ
for-the-time not answered but dreaming was the(-things)
ἀπὸ τοῦ Δυρραχίου μετὰ τοῦ προπεμφθέντος παρ' αὐτοῦ
from — Dyrrachion with the sent-ahead by him
κομισθησόμενα μηνύματα. καὶ γὰρ ἅμα τῷ ἐνωτισθῆναι
going-to-be-brought messages and for as-soon-as the to-hear
τὰ θρυλλούμενα περὶ τοῦ υἱοῦ αὐτοῦ δισύλλαβον
the(-things) noised about the son his a-two-syllable
ἐγχαράξας πρὸς αὐτὸν γράμμα παρεκελεύσατο θᾶττον
having-written to him letter he-ordered more-quickly
πρὸς τὸν αὐτοκράτορα φοιτῆσαι, ὡς καὶ αὐτὸν ἐπ' αὐτῷ
to the autocrat to-go as also himself for itself
τούτῳ τοῦ Βυζαντίου ἐξεληλυθότα πρὸς Φιλιππούπολιν
this — from-Byzantium having-gone-out to Philippopolis
ἐπείγεσθαι ἐφ' ᾧ τὰ κατ' αὐτοῦ πρὸς τὸν
to-hasten for which the(-things) against him to the

αὐτοκράτορα εἰσηγηθέντα κατασεῖσαι τὰ εἰκότα πρὸς τὸν
autocrat reported to-shake the likely-things to the
ἀδελφὸν καὶ βασιλέα ὁμιλήσαντα, ἅμα δὲ καὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ
brother and emperor having-spoken together and also the his
πρὸς αὐτὸν ἐγκαρτερῆσαι ἄφιξιν. ὑποχωρήσας δὲ ἀπὸ τοῦ
to him to-await arrival having-withdrawn and from the
βασιλέως εἰς τὴν ἀποτεταγμένην αὐτῷ σκηνὴν ἄπεισιν.
emperor to the assigned to-him tent goes-away
παραχρῆμα δὲ καὶ ὁ πρὸς τὸν Ἰωάννην ἀποσταλεὶς
immediately and also the to — John sent
γραμματοκομιστὴς δρομαῖος εἴσεισιν ἐκεῖθεν ἐπανελθὼν
letter-carrier running enters from-there having-returned
τὴν τοῦ Ἰωάννου ἀπαγγέλλων ἔλευσιν. τῆς ὑποψίας οὖν
the — of-John announcing coming from-the suspicion then
τηνικαῦτα ὁ σεβαστοκράτωρ ἀπαλλαγεὶς καὶ κρείττοσιν
at-that-time the sebastokrator having-been-freed and with-better
ἀναρρώσας ἑαυτὸν λογισμοῖς θυμοῦ πλησθεὶς κατὰ τῶν
having-encouraged himself reasonings with-anger filled against those
πρώτως εἰσηγησαμένων τὰ κατὰ τοῦ υἱοῦ αὐτοῦ
first having-reported the(-things) against the son his
τεταραγμένος πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα εἰσῄει. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς
troubled to the emperor went-in the and emperor
τοῦτον θεασάμενος ἐγνώκει μὲν παρευθὺ τὴν αἰτίαν, ἠρώτα
him having-beheld knew indeed at-once the cause he-asked
δ' ὅμως, ὅπως ἔχοι. ὁ δὲ "κακῶς" ἔφη "ἐξ αἰτίας σῆς".
but nevertheless how he-was he and badly he-said from cause yours
οὐδὲ γὰρ ὅλως τὸν θυμὸν περιυλακτοῦντα χαλιναγωγεῖν
not for at-all the anger barking-round to-rein
ἠπίστατο, παρεφέρετο δὲ καὶ ὑπὸ ψιλοῦ, εἰ ἔτυχε,
he-knew-how he-was-carried-away and even by bare if it-happened
ῥήματος. ἐπὶ τούτοις δὲ καὶ ἄλλο τι προσέθετο λέγων
word on these-things and also another something he-added saying

"οὐ τοσοῦτον κατὰ τῆς σῆς λελύπημαι βασιλείας, ὅσον
not so-much against the your I-am-grieved majesty as
κατὰ τουτουὶ" τὸν Ἀδριανὸν τῷ δακτύλῳ ὑποδείξας
against this-here — Adrian with-the finger having-pointed
"καταψευδομένου". πρὸς ταῦτα ὁ πραΰς ἐκεῖνος καὶ ἡδὺς
slandering to these(-things) the gentle that and sweet
βασιλεὺς οὐδ' ὁτιοῦν ἐφθέγξατο. ἐγίνωσκε γάρ, ὅπως
emperor not-even anything-whatever uttered he-knew for how
ζέοντα τὸν θυμὸν τἀδελφοῦ καταπαύσει. συγκαθεσθέντες
seething the anger of-the-brother he-will-calm having-sat-together
οὖν ἄμφω μετὰ τοῦ Μελισσηνοῦ Νικηφόρου τοῦ καίσαρος
then both with — Melissenos Nikephoros the caesar
καί τινων τῶν ἐξ αἵματος καὶ ἀγχιστείας προσηκόντων
and some of-those of blood and marriage related
αὐτοῖς μόνοι πρὸς ἀλλήλους ὡμίλουν περὶ τῶν κατὰ τοῦ
to-them alone to each-other conversed about the(-things) against —
Ἰωάννου ῥηθέντων. ὡς δὲ τὸν Μελισσηνὸν καὶ τὸν ἴδιον
John said as and — Melissenos and the own
ἀδελφὸν Ἀδριανὸν κατατρέχοντας ἐσχηματισμένως τοῦ ἰδίου
brother Adrian running-down in-a-veiled-way of-the own
υἱοῦ ἑώρα, αὖθις τὸν θυμὸν παφλάζοντα μὴ δυνηθεὶς
son he-saw again the anger seething not having-been-able
κατασχεῖν δριμὺ πρὸς τὸν Ἀδριανὸν ἀτενίσας ψιλῶσαι
to-check keenly at — Adrian having-gazed to-strip
τὸν αὐτοῦ πώγωνα ἠπειλήσατο καὶ διδάξαι μὴ προφανῶς
the his beard he-threatened and to-teach not openly
ψευδόμενον τοιούτων συγγενῶν ἀποστερῆσαι τὸν βασιλέα
lying of-such kinsmen to-deprive the emperor
ἐπιχειρεῖν. ἐν τούτοις ὁ Ἰωάννης κατέλαβε καὶ παραχρῆμα
to-attempt in these-things — John arrived and immediately
εἴσω τῆς βασιλικῆς σκηνῆς εἰσάγεται καὶ πάντων τῶν
inside the imperial tent is-brought and all the(-things)

κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ λαληθέντων ἀκούει. οὐ μέντοι γε εἰς ἐξέτασιν
against him spoken hears not however at-least to examination
ὅλως ἄγεται, ἀλλ᾽ ὁ κατάκριτος ἐλεύθερος ἵσταται τοῦ
at-all is-led but the condemned free stands the
βασιλέως πρὸς αὐτὸν εἰπόντος "πρὸς τὸν σὸν πατέρα
emperor to him having-said to the your father
καὶ ἀδελφὸν ἐμὸν ἀφορῶν οὐδ᾽ ἀκοῦσαι τῶν κατὰ
and brother my looking not-even to-hear the(-things) against
σοῦ λαληθέντων ἀνέχομαι. ἔσο τοίνυν ἀμερίμνως διάγων
you spoken I-endure be therefore free-from-care living
ὡς τὸ πρότερον." ταῦτα μὲν οὖν ἅπαντα ἐντὸς τῆς
as the before these(-things) indeed then all inside the
βασιλικῆς ἐρρήθη σκηνῆς μόνων τῶν συγγενῶν, ὀθνείου
imperial were-said tent only the kinsmen stranger
δὲ οὐδενὸς παρόντος. οὕτω γοῦν τῶν λαληθέντων ἢ
and none being-present thus at-any-rate the(-things) spoken or
καὶ μελετηθέντων ἴσως κατευνασθέντων τὸν ἴδιον ἀδελφόν,
also plotted perhaps having-been-lulled the own brother
τὸν σεβαστοκράτορά φημι Ἰσαάκιον, μετακαλεσάμενος
the sebastokrator I-mean Isaac having-summoned
σὺν αὐτῷ τῷ Ἰωάννῃ καὶ υἱῷ αὐτοῦ πολλὰ πρότερον
with him — John and son his much first
ὁμιλήσας ἔφη πρὸς τὸν σεβαστοκράτορα "σὺ μὲν
having-conversed he-said to the sebastokrator you indeed
χαίρων ἄπιθι πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν τὰ καθ᾽
rejoicing go-away to the reigning(-city) the(-affairs) concerning
ἡμᾶς τῇ μητρὶ ἀνακοινωσόμενος. ἐγὼ δὲ τουτονὶ" τὸν
us to-the mother going-to-communicate I and this-here —
Ἰωάννην φησὶν ὑποδείξας "αὖθις, ὡς ὁρᾷς, ἐκπέμπω πρὸς
John he-says having-pointed again as you-see send-out to
τὸ Δυρράχιον ἐφ᾽ ᾧ τὰ τῆς ἰδίας ἀρχῆς ἐπιμελῶς
— Dyrrachion for which the(-affairs) of-the own rule carefully

ἐνεργεῖν.” οὕτως οὖν ἀπ᾽ ἀλλήλων διακριθέντες ὁ μὲν
to-carry-out thus then from each-other having-separated the(-one) indeed
τῆς πρὸς τὸ Βυζάντιον τῇ μετ᾽ αὐτὴν εἶχετο,
to-the(-road) to — Byzantium on-the(-day) after it held
ὁ δὲ πρὸς τὸ Δυρράχιον στέλλεται.
the(-other) and to — Dyrrachion is-dispatched

XLIII · GABRAS AND THE HOLY NAIL

Alexios makes Theodore Gabras duke of Trebizond, which Gabras had won from the Turks. His son Gregory's betrothal to a daughter of Isaac is broken off on grounds of kinship, but Alexios keeps the boy, intending him for one of Anna's sisters. Gabras abducts Gregory at the Pharos, but is persuaded to give him back. Gregory, resenting his tutor, plots to flee with George of Dekanos and Kamytzes and steals the holy nail to swear by. He is betrayed and imprisoned at Philippopolis.

Οὐ μέχρι δὲ τούτου τὰ κατὰ τὸν αὐτοκράτορα
not as-far-as and this the(-affairs) concerning the autocrat
ἔστη. ἀλλ᾽ ἐπεὶ Θεόδωρος ὁ Γαβρᾶς ἐνδημήσας ἦν ἐν τῇ
stood but since Theodore the Gabras having-come-home was in the
βασιλευούσῃ, γινώσκων τὸ τούτου ὀμβριμοεργὸν καὶ περὶ
reigning(-city) knowing the his vigor and about
τὰς πράξεις ὀξὺ βουλόμενος τοῦτον ἀπελάσαι τῆς
the deeds sharpness wishing him to-drive-out from-the
πόλεως δοῦκα Τραπεζοῦντος προὐβάλλετο πάλαι ταύτην
city as-duke of-Trebizond he-put-forward long-ago it
ἀπὸ τῶν Τούρκων ἀφελόμενον. ὥρμητο μὲν γὰρ οὗτος
from the Turks having-taken had-come indeed for this-man
ἐκ Χαλδίας καὶ τῶν ἀνωτέρω μερῶν, στρατιώτης δὲ
from Chaldia and the higher parts a-soldier and
περιφανὴς γενόμενος ἐπί τε φρονήσει καὶ ἀνδρείᾳ ὑπερέχων
conspicuous having-become in both prudence and courage surpassing

ἁπάντων, μικροῦ καὶ μηδέποτε ἔργου ἀψάμενος καὶ
all almost also never a-task having-undertaken and
ἀτυχήσας, ἀλλὰ πάντων ἀεὶ τῶν πολεμίων κρατῶν καὶ
having-failed but all always the enemies mastering and
αὐτὴν δὴ τὴν Τραπεζοῦντα ἑλὼν καὶ ὡς ἴδιον λάχος
itself indeed — Trebizond having-taken and as own allotment
ἑαυτῷ ἀποκληρωσάμενος ἄμαχος ἦν. τούτου τὸν υἱὸν
for-himself having-allotted invincible was his the son
Γρηγόριον ὁ σεβαστοκράτωρ Ἰσαάκιος ὁ Κομνηνὸς εἰς
Gregory the sebastokrator Isaac the Komnenos to
μίαν τῶν θυγατέρων αὐτοῦ εἰσῳκίσατο. ἀνήβων δὲ ἄμφω
one of-the daughters his took-into-his-house under-age and both
τῶν παίδων ὄντων γαμήλια μόνα σύμφωνα ἀναμεταξὺ
the children being marriage only agreements between
προέβησαν. εἶτα τὸν υἱὸν αὐτοῦ Γρηγόριον εἰς χεῖρας
went-forward then the son his Gregory into hands
τοῦ σεβαστοκράτορος παραθέμενος, ἵν', ὁπηνίκα νομίμου
of-the sebastokrator having-entrusted that when lawful
ἅψωνται οἱ παῖδες ἡλικίας, καὶ ἡ μνηστεία τελεσθῇ,
should-touch the children age and the betrothal should-be-completed
αὐτὸς συνταξάμενος τῷ βασιλεῖ εἰς τὴν ἰδίαν ἐπανῄει
he having-taken-leave of-the emperor to the own returned
χώραν. τῆς δὲ ὁμευνέτιδος αὐτοῦ μετ' οὐ πολὺ τὸ κοινὸν
land the and bed-partner his after not long the common
ἀποδεδωκυίας χρέος ἄλλην αὖθις ἐξ Ἀλανῶν ἠγάγετο
having-paid debt another again from Alans he-married
εὐγενεστάτην. ἔτυχε δὲ τήν τε τοῦ σεβαστοκράτορος
most-noble it-happened and the both of-the sebastokrator
ὁμευνέτιν καὶ ἣν ὁ Γαβρᾶς ἔλαβε δυεῖν ἀδελφοῖν
bed-partner and the-one-whom — Gabras took of-two brothers
θυγατέρας εἶναι. τούτου δήλου γεγονότος, ἐπεὶ ἀπό τε
daughters to-be this plain having-become since from both

τῶν νόμων ἀπό τε τῶν κανόνων ἡ τῶν παίδων ἐκωλύετο
the laws from and the canons the of-the children was-prevented
συνάφεια, διεσπάσθη τὸ τοιοῦτον συνάλλαγμα. γινώσκων
union was-torn-apart the such agreement knowing
δὲ ὁ βασιλεύς, ὁποῖος ὁ Γαβρᾶς στρατιώτης ἐστὶ
and the emperor of-what-sort — Gabras a-soldier is
καὶ ὁπόσα πράγματα συνταράττειν δύναται, οὐκ ἤθελε
and how-many affairs to-confound can not wished
τὸν υἱὸν αὐτοῦ Γρηγόριον διασπασθέντος τοῦ τοιούτου
the son his Gregory having-been-torn-apart the such
συναλλάγματος παλινδρομῆσαι πρὸς αὐτόν, ἀλλὰ κατέχειν
agreement to-run-back to him but to-keep
τοῦτον εἰς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν δυεῖν ἕνεκα, ἵν' ἅμα μὲν
him in the reigning(-city) of-two for-the-sake that at-once indeed
ὡς ὅμηρον αὐτὸν παρακατέχοι, ἅμα δὲ καὶ τὴν τοῦ
as hostage him he-might-detain at-once and also the —
Γαβρᾶ εὔνοιαν ἐπισπάσαιτο, κἀντεῦθεν, ἐὰν πονηρόν τι
of-Gabras goodwill he-might-draw and-thence if wicked something
βούληται, ἀπόσχηται τοῦ τοιούτου. μιᾷ γοῦν τῶν
he-wishes he-might-abstain from-the such to-one at-any-rate of-the
ἐμῶν ἀδελφῶν τὸν Γρηγόριον συνάψαι ἐβούλετο. διά
my sisters — Gregory to-join he-wished because-of
τοι ταῦτα ὑπερετίθετο τὴν τοῦ παιδὸς ἀποστολήν.
surely these(-things) he-put-off the of-the boy sending
καταλαβὼν δὲ αὖθις ὁ Γαβρᾶς τὴν βασιλίδα τῶν πόλεων
having-reached and again — Gabras the queen of-the cities
καὶ μηδὲν τῶν παρὰ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος μελετωμένων
and nothing of-the(-things) by the autocrat planned
συνεὶς ἐσκόπει τὸν ἴδιον υἱὸν λεληθότως ἀναλαβέσθαι.
having-understood considered the own son secretly to-take-up
εἶχε δὲ τέως τὸ βεβουλευμένον ἀνέκφορον, κἂν ὁ
he-held and for-the-time the plan unspoken even-if the

αὐτοκράτωρ παρῃνίσσετό τι καὶ παρενέφαινε αὐτῷ
autocrat hinted something and indicated to-him
περὶ τοῦ σκοπουμένου. ὁ δὲ εἴτε μὴ γνοὺς εἴτε καὶ
about the aim he and whether not having-known or also
ἀκηδιάσας διὰ τὴν πρὸ μικροῦ γεγονυῖαν τοῦ τοιούτου
having-been-vexed because-of the before a-little having-happened of-the such
κήδους διάζευξιν οὐκ οἶδ' ὅπως ᾐτεῖτο τὸν υἱὸν
marriage-alliance separation not I-know how asked the son
δοθῆναί οἱ ἐπαναστρέφοντι. ὁ δὲ αὐτοκράτωρ ἀνένευε
to-be-given to-him returning the and autocrat refused
πρὸς τοῦτο. σχηματιζόμενος δὲ ὁ Γαβρᾶς ἑκοντὶ τοῦτον
to this pretending and — Gabras willingly him
καταλιμπάνειν καὶ τῇ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος τὰ κατὰ
to-leave and to-the of-the autocrat the(-affairs) concerning
τὸ παιδίον ἀναθέσθαι γνώμῃ, ἐπεὶ συνταξάμενος αὐτῷ τοῦ
the child to-entrust mind since having-taken-leave of-him —
Βυζαντίου ἀπάρτι ἐξιέναι ἔμελλεν, ὑπεδέχθη παρὰ τοῦ
from-Byzantium forthwith to-go-out he-was-about he-was-received by the
σεβαστοκράτορος διὰ τὸ παρακολουθῆσαν κῆδος
sebastokrator because-of the ensuing marriage-alliance
καὶ ἣν πρὸς αὐτὸν ἐκ ταυτησὶ τῆς αἰτίας ἔσχε συνήθειαν,
and which toward him from this-here the cause he-had intimacy
ἔνθα τὸ τοῦ μεγαλομάρτυρος Φωκᾶ τέμενος ἵδρυται·
where the of-the great-martyr Phokas precinct is-founded
προάστειόν τι τοῦτο περὶ τὴν Προποντίδα διακείμενον
a-suburb some this about the Propontis lying
περικαλλές. δαψιλῶς οὖν αὐτοῦ που εὐωχηθέντες ὁ μὲν
very-beautiful abundantly then there somewhere having-feasted the indeed
σεβαστοκράτωρ πρὸς τὸ Βυζάντιον ἐπανῄει, ὁ δὲ τὸν υἱὸν
sebastokrator to — Byzantium returned he and the son
αὐτοῦ ᾐτεῖτο παραχωρηθῆναί οἱ καὶ τῇ μετ' αὐτὴν
his asked to-be-granted to-him also on-the after it

συνεῖναι αὐτῷ. ὁ δ' εὐθὺς κατένευεν. ὁ δὲ πολλάκις
to-be-with him he and at-once assented — and many-times
ῥηθεὶς Γαβρᾶς, ἐπεὶ τῇ μετ' αὐτὴν χωρίζεσθαι ἤδη
mentioned Gabras since on-the after it to-be-parted already
τοῦ παιδὸς ἔμελλε, τοὺς παιδαγωγοὺς ἠξίου συνέψεσθαί
from-the boy he-was-about the tutors he-asked to-follow
οἱ μέχρι Σωσθενίου· κεῖθι γὰρ ἔμελλε κατασκηνοῦν. οἱ
him as-far-as Sosthenion there for he-was-about to-encamp they
δὲ κατανεύσαντες συναπῄεσαν μετ' αὐτοῦ κᾆθ' οὕτως
and having-assented went-off-with with him and-then thus
καὶ ἐν τῷ μέλλειν αὖθις ἐκεῖθεν ἀπαίρειν τὸ αὐτὸ τοὺς
also in the being-about again from-there to-set-out the same the
παιδαγωγοὺς ἠτεῖτο συνέψεσθαι τούτῳ τὸν υἱὸν καὶ μέχρι
tutors he-asked to-follow-with him the son also as-far-as
τοῦ Φάρου. οἱ δὲ ἀνένευον. ὁ δὲ σπλάγχνα τε πατρικὰ
— Pharos they and refused he and bowels both paternal
προεβάλλετο καὶ ἀποδημίαν μακρὰν καὶ ἄλλα τινὰ
put-forward and departure long and other some-things
συνείρων τούτοις κατέκλασε τὰς τῶν παιδαγωγῶν
stringing-together to-these broke the of-the tutors
καρδίας, καὶ πεισθέντες τοῖς αὐτοῦ λόγοις συνείποντο αὐτῷ.
hearts and persuaded by-the his words they-followed him
τὸν Φάρον τοίνυν καταλαβὼν εἰς φῶς τὴν σκῆψιν προήγαγε
— Pharos therefore having-reached into light the pretext he-brought
καὶ ἀναλαβόμενος τὸ παιδίον καὶ ἐμβαλὼν εἰς ὁλκάδα
and having-taken-up the child and having-put into a-merchant-ship
τῷ τοῦ Πόντου ῥοθίῳ ἑαυτόν τε καὶ τὸν υἱὸν ἐπαφῆκε.
to-the of-the Pontus surge himself both and the son let-go
μεμαθηκὼς δὲ τοῦτο ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ θᾶττον ἢ λόγος
having-learned and this the autocrat more-quickly than word
δρομάδας νῆας κατ' αὐτοῦ ἐξέπεμψεν ἐντειλάμενος τοῖς
swift ships against him sent-out having-enjoined those

ἀπερχομένοις τῷ μὲν Γαβρᾷ τὰς πρὸς αὐτὸν ἐγχειρίσαι
going-off — indeed to-Gabras the to him to-hand
γραφάς, τὸ δὲ παιδίον σπεῦσαι μετὰ τῆς ἐκείνου γνώμης
letters the and child to-hasten with the of-that-one consent
ἀναλαβέσθαι, εἰ μὴ ἄρα ἐχθρὸν τὸν αὐτοκράτορα βούλοιτο
to-take-back if not after-all enemy the autocrat he-should-wish
ἐσχηκέναι. καταλαμβάνουσι τοίνυν αὐτὸν οἱ ἀπελθόντες
to-have overtake therefore him those having-gone-off
ἔνθεν τῆς Αἰγίνου πόλεως κατὰ τὴν πόλιν τὴν οὑτωσὶ
thence of-the of-Aiginos city at the city the thus
ἐγχωρίως Κάραμβιν καλουμένην καὶ δὴ τὰς βασιλικὰς
locally Karambis called and indeed the imperial
ἐγχειρίσαντες γραφάς, δι᾽ ὧν ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ ἐνέφαινε
having-handed letters through which the autocrat showed
μιᾷ τῶν ἐμῶν ἀδελφῶν τὸ παιδίον βούλεσθαι συναρμόσαι,
to-one of-the my sisters the child to-wish to-join
καὶ πολλὰ ἄττα πρὸς αὐτὸν ὡμιληκότες πείθουσιν
and many some-things to him having-spoken they-persuade
ἐκπέμψαι τὸν υἱόν. ὅνπερ θεασάμενος ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ
to-send-out the son whom having-beheld the autocrat
καὶ διὰ τῶν συνήθων ἐγγράφων μόνων τάχα τὸ
and through the customary written-documents only perhaps the
συνάλλαγμα ἐμπεδώσας παιδαγωγῷ παραδέδωκεν ἑνὶ τῶν
agreement having-confirmed to-a-tutor handed-over one of-the
τῆς βασιλίδος θεραπόντων, Μιχαὴλ τῷ ἐκτομίᾳ, κᾆθ᾽
of-the empress servants Michael the eunuch and-then
οὕτως περὶ τὰ ἀνάκτορα ἐνδιατρίβοντα πολλῆς ἐπιμελείας
thus about the palace spending-time of-much care
ἠξίου τά τε ἤθη διορθούμενος καὶ πᾶσαν παιδείαν
deemed-him-worthy the both manners correcting and every education
στρατιωτικὴν ἐκδιδάσκων. ὁποῖα δὲ τὰ τῶν νέων, μὴ
military teaching such-as and the(-ways) of-the young not

βουλόμενος ὅλως ὑποτάσσεσθαί τινι ἠνιᾶτο ὡς μὴ
wishing at-all to-be-subject to-anyone he-was-grieved as not
προσηκούσης δῆθεν ἀξιούμενος τιμῆς. δυσαρεστῶν δὲ
fitting supposedly being-deemed-worthy of-honor being-displeased and
ἅμα καὶ πρὸς τὸν παιδαγωγὸν ἐσκέπτετο πρὸς τὸν
at-the-same-time also with the tutor he-considered to the
ἴδιον φοιτῆσαι πατέρα, δέον μᾶλλον εὐχαριστεῖν ἐπιμελείας
own to-go father needful rather to-be-grateful of-care
τοσαύτης ἀξιούμενον. οὐ μέχρι δὲ τούτου περιίστατο
so-great being-deemed-worthy not as-far-as and this went-round
τούτῳ τὸ βούλευμα, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἔργου ἥπτετο. προσελθὼν
for-him the plan but also work he-took-up having-gone
οὖν ἀνακοινοῦται τισι τὸ ἀπόρρητον. ἦσαν δὲ ὅ τε
then communicates to-some the secret they-were and — both
Γεώργιος τοῦ Δεκανοῦ, Εὐστάθιος ὁ Καμύτζης καὶ Μιχαὴλ
George — of-Dekanos Eustathios the Kamytzes and Michael
ὁ οἰνοχόος, ὃν καὶ πιγκέρνην συνήθως οἱ τῆς βασιλικῆς
the cupbearer whom also pinkernes customarily those of-the imperial
αὐλῆς ὀνομάζουσιν. ἄνδρες δὲ οὗτοι μαχιμώτατοί τε καὶ
court name men and these most-warlike both and
τῶν λίαν προσῳκειωμένων τῷ βασιλεῖ. τούτων ὁ Μιχαὴλ
of-the very intimate with-the emperor of-these — Michael
προσελθὼν ἀπαγγέλλει πάντα πρὸς τὸν αὐτοκράτορα. ὁ
having-gone reports all to the autocrat he
δὲ οὐ πάνυ πιστεύειν ἔχων ἀνένευε πρὸς τὰ ῥηθέντα.
and not very to-believe being-able refused at the(-things) said
ἐπικειμένου δὲ τοῦ Γαβρᾶ καὶ τὸν δρασμὸν ἐπείγοντος
pressing and — Gabras and the flight hastening
οἱ εὐνούστερον πρὸς τὸν αὐτοκράτορα διακείμενοι ἔφασαν
those more-loyally toward the autocrat disposed said
“εἰ μὴ δι’ ὅρκου ἡμῖν τὸ βεβουλευμένον πιστώσειας,
if not through oath to-us the plan you-should-confirm

οὐ συνεψόμεθά σοι". τοῦ δὲ κατανεύσαντος τὸν ἅγιον
not we-shall-follow you he and having-assented the holy
ἦλον, δι' οὗ τὴν τοῦ ἐμοῦ σωτῆρος πλευρὰν οἱ ἄνομοι
nail by which the of-the my savior side the lawless
ἔνυξαν, ὑπεδείκνυον οὗ ἔκειτο βουλευσάμενοι ἀναλαβέσθαι
pierced they-pointed-out where it-lay having-planned to-take
καὶ ἐξαγαγεῖν, ὥστε εἰς τὸν δι' αὐτοῦ τρωθέντα
and to-bring-out so-that by the(-one) through it wounded
ἐπομόσασθαι. πείθεται τούτοις ὁ Γαβρᾶς καὶ εἰσελθὼν
to-swear is-persuaded by-them — Gabras and having-entered
ἀναλαμβάνεται λαθραίως τὸν ἅγιον ἦλον. εἷς δέ τις
takes secretly the holy nail one and someone
τῶν προκαταγγειλάντων τῷ αὐτοκράτορι τὴν βουλὴν
of-those having-reported-beforehand to-the autocrat the plan
δρομαῖος εἰσελθὼν ἔφη ὡς "ἴδε καὶ ὁ Γαβρᾶς καὶ ὁ
running having-entered he-said that see both — Gabras and the
ἦλος ἐγκόλπιος αὐτῷ". καὶ παραχρῆμα ἐπισκήψαντος τοῦ
nail in-his-bosom to-him and immediately having-ordered the
αὐτοκράτορος καὶ ὁ Γαβρᾶς εἰσήγετο καὶ ὁ ἦλος εὐθὺς
autocrat both — Gabras was-brought-in and the nail at-once
τοῦ κόλπου ἐξήγετο. ἐρωτηθεὶς δὲ ἀπήγγειλε πάντα
from-the bosom was-brought-out having-been-asked and he-reported all
ἐκ ψιλῆς ἐπερωτήσεως τούς τε συνίστορας ὁμολογήσας καὶ
from bare questioning the both accomplices having-confessed and
τὰ βεβουλευμένα ἅπαντα. αὐτοῦ μὲν οὖν καταψηφισάμενος
the plans all of-him indeed then having-condemned
παραδίδωσι πρὸς τὸν δοῦκα Φιλιππουπόλεως Γεώργιον τὸν
he-hands-over to the duke of-Philippopolis George the
Μεσοποταμίτην, ὥστε ἔμφρουρον τοῦτον τηρεῖν δεσμώτην
Mesopotamites so-that under-guard him to-keep a-prisoner
ἐν τῇ ἀκροπόλει. Γεώργιον δὲ τὸν τοῦ Δεκανοῦ μετὰ
in the citadel George and the(-son) — of-Dekanos with

γραμμάτων πρὸς Λέοντα τὸν Νικερίτην δοῦκα τῷ τότε
letters to Leo the Nikerites duke at-the then(-time)
τοῦ Παραδανουβίου τυγχάνοντα πέπομφεν, ὡς δῆθεν καὶ
of-the Paradanoubion being sent as supposedly also
αὐτὸν σὺν ἐκείνῳ τὰ περὶ τὸν Δάνουβιν φυλάττειν,
him with that-one the(-parts) about the Danube to-guard
τὸ δὲ πᾶν, ἵνα μᾶλλον ἐκεῖνος παρὰ τοῦ Νικερίτου
the but whole that rather that-one by — Nikerites
ἐπιτηροῖτο. ἐμφρούρους δὲ καὶ αὐτὸν Εὐστάθιον τὸν
might-be-watched under-guard and also himself Eustathios the(-one)
τοῦ Καμύτζη καὶ τοὺς λοιποὺς περιορίσας εἶχεν.
— of-Kamytzes and the rest having-confined he-held

BOOK IX

XLIV · TZACHAS AT MITYLENE

Alexios fortifies the passes of the Zygos on foot, building towers and felling trees. Tzachas, calling himself emperor, prepares a fleet at Smyrna. John Doukas marches by land against Mitylene and Dalassenos sails along the coast. For three months John fights at dawn without success, until Alexios learns that his men face the rising sun and tells him to attack after midday. Tzachas then asks only to sail home. Dalassenos, who had sworn nothing, pursues him and takes his fleet, and Samos and other islands are recovered.

Οὕτω μὲν οὖν τὰ κατὰ τὸν Ἰωάννην καὶ Γρηγόριον
thus indeed then the(-affairs) concerning — John and Gregory
τὸν Γαβρᾶν ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ οἰκονομήσας ἀπάρας τῆς
the Gabras the autocrat having-arranged having-set-out —
Φιλιππουπόλεως τὰ ἀναμεταξὺ Δαλματίας καὶ τῆς
from-Philippopolis the between Dalmatia and the
ἡμεδαπῆς τέμπη καταλαμβάνει. καὶ τὸν ὅλον αὐχένα
our-land valleys reaches and the whole ridge

διαδραμὼν τοῦ οὑτωσί πως ἐγχωρίως καλουμένου
having-run-through of-the thus somehow locally called
Ζυγοῦ, οὐκ ἐποχούμενος (οὐ γὰρ ἐδίδου τοῦτο ἐς ἀεὶ ὁ
Zygos not riding not for allowed this for ever the
τόπος ὀχθώδης τε καὶ χαραδρώδης ὢν καὶ συνηρεφὴς καὶ
place hilly both and ravined being and overgrown and
μικροῦ ἄβατος), ἀλλὰ πεζῇ ἅπαντα διερχόμενος καὶ οἰκείοις
almost impassable but on-foot all-places going-through and with-own
περιαθρῶν ὀφθαλμοῖς, μὴ διαλάθῃ τι ἀφύλακτον
surveying eyes lest should-escape-notice anything unguarded
δι' οὗ ῥᾳδία τοῖς πολεμίοις πολλάκις ἡ δίοδος
through which easy for-the enemies many-times the passage
γένηται, καὶ οὗ μὲν διώρυχας ἐπιτρέπων γενέσθαι, οὗ
might-become and where indeed ditches ordering to-be-made where
δὲ καὶ ξυλίνους κατασκευασθῆναι πύργους καὶ πολίχνια,
and also wooden to-be-built towers and little-towns
ἔνθα ὁ τόπος παρεῖχε, γενέσθαι διὰ πλίνθων ἢ λίθων
where the place allowed to-be-made of bricks or stones
ἐπέταττε τὰ ἀπ' ἀλλήλων διαστήματα καὶ τὰ μεγέθη
he-ordered the from each-other distances and the sizes
αὐτὸς διαμετρῶν· ἔστι δ' οὗ καὶ οὐρανομήκη δένδρα
himself measuring there-are and where also sky-high trees
ῥιζοτομηθέντα κατατεθῆναι εἰς τὸ ἔδαφος διετάξατο. καὶ
cut-at-the-roots to-be-laid on the ground he-ordered and
οὕτω τὰς τῶν πολεμίων διόδους ἀποταφρεύσας ἐπάνεισιν
thus the of-the enemies passages having-trenched-off returns
εἰς τὴν μεγαλόπολιν. ἀλλ' ὁ μὲν λόγος ῥᾳδίαν ἴσως τὴν
to the great-city but the indeed account easy perhaps the
τοιαύτην οἰκονομίαν τοῖς ἀκροαταῖς παρίστησιν· ὁπόσον
such management to-the hearers presents how-great
δὲ τὸν ἱδρῶτα ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ τῷ τότε ὑπέστη,
and the sweat the autocrat at-the then(-time) underwent

μαρτυροῦσι πολλοὶ τῶν τότε παρόντων καὶ εἰς ἔτι καὶ νῦν
bear-witness many of-those then present and for still also now
περιόντων. ἀλλ' οὐ πολὺς παρεληλύθει καιρὸς καὶ τὰ
surviving but not much had-passed time and the(-affairs)
κατὰ τὸν Τζαχᾶν ἀκριβέστερον αὐτῷ ἐπηγγέλλετο, ὡς
concerning — Tzachas more-exactly to-him were-reported that
οὐδὲν τῶν συμβάντων αὐτῷ κατά τε τὴν θάλατταν
nothing of-the(-things) having-befallen him on both the sea
καὶ τὴν ἤπειρον τῆς πρότερον γνώμης ἀπέστησεν, ἀλλὰ
and the mainland from-the former mind removed-him but
τοῖς προσήκουσι βασιλεῦσι χρᾶται παρασήμοις βασιλέα
the fitting for-emperors he-uses insignia emperor
ἑαυτὸν ὀνομάζων καὶ τὴν Σμύρνην οἰκῶν καθαπερεὶ
himself naming and — Smyrna inhabiting as-if
βασίλειά τινα στόλον εὐτρεπίζει ἐφ' ᾧ τάς τε νήσους
palace some a-fleet makes-ready for which the both islands
αὖθις δηώσασθαι καὶ μέχρι αὐτοῦ φθάσαι Βυζαντίου καὶ
again to-ravage and as-far-as itself to-reach Byzantium and
εἰς αὐτὴν δὲ εἰ δυνατὸν τὴν τῆς βασιλείας ἀνενεχθῆναι
to itself and if possible the of-the empire to-be-raised
περιωπήν. ταῦτα ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ βεβαιούμενος ὁσημέραι
eminence these(-things) the autocrat being-assured daily
δεῖν ἔγνω μὴ ἀναπίπτειν μηδὲ μαλακίζεσθαι πρὸς
to-be-needful knew not to-lose-heart nor to-grow-weak at
τὰ θρυλλούμενα, ἀλλὰ παρασκευάζεσθαι διὰ τοῦ ἔτι
the(-things) noised but to-prepare through the still
λείποντος ἐαρινοῦ καιροῦ καὶ τοῦ μετ' αὐτὸν χειμῶνος καὶ
remaining spring season and the after it winter and
κατὰ τὸ ἐπιὸν ἔαρ καρτερῶς πρὸς αὐτὸν ἀντικαταστῆναι
at the coming spring strongly against him to-stand-against
καὶ σπεῦσαι διὰ πάσης μηχανῆς μὴ μόνον φροῦδα τὰ
and to-hasten through every device not only vanished the

ἐκείνου ἀναδεῖξαι ἅπαντα, τὰς βουλάς, τὰς ἐλπίδας,
of-that-man to-show all the plans the hopes
τὰς ἐγχειρήσεις, ἀλλὰ καὶ αὐτῆς ἀπελάσαι τῆς Σμύρνης
the attempts but also from-itself to-drive-out — Smyrna
καὶ ὅσα ἄλλα προφθάσας κατέσχε τῆς ἐκείνου
and as-many-as other having-been-first he-held from-the of-that-man
χειρὸς ῥύσασθαι. τοῦ χειμῶνος δὲ ἤδη παρῳχηκότος,
hand to-rescue the winter and already having-passed
ἐπεὶ προσμειδιῶν ἤδη τὸ ἔαρ παρῆν, μεταπεμψάμενος
since smiling already the spring was-present having-summoned
ἀπὸ τῆς Ἐπιδάμνου τὸν γυναικάδελφον αὐτοῦ Ἰωάννην
from — Epidamnos the brother-in-law his John
τὸν Δούκαν μέγαν δοῦκα τοῦ στόλου προεχειρίσατο. καὶ
the Doukas grand duke of-the fleet he-appointed and
ἠπειρώτας δὲ στρατὸν ἐπίλεκτον ἐπιδοὺς παρεκελεύσατο
mainland too army picked having-given ordered
αὐτὸν μὲν διὰ τῆς ἠπείρου τὴν πρὸς τὸν Τζαχᾶν πορείαν
him indeed through the mainland the toward — Tzachas march
ποιεῖσθαι, τῷ δέ γε Κωνσταντίνῳ τῷ Δαλασσηνῷ
to-make — and at-least to-Constantine the Dalassenos
τὴν τοῦ στόλου ἡγεμονίαν ἐγχειρίσαι ἐντειλάμενον αὐτῷ
the of-the fleet command to-entrust having-enjoined him
τὴν ἠόνα παραθέειν, ἵν’ ἅμα τὴν Μιτυλήνην
the shore to-run-along that at-the-same-time — Mitylene
καταλαβόντες ἐξ ἀμφοῖν θαλάττης τε καὶ ἠπείρου τὸν
having-reached from both sea both and mainland the
μετὰ τοῦ Τζαχᾶ συνάψωσι πόλεμον. καταλαβὼν τοίνυν τὴν
with — Tzachas they-might-join war having-reached therefore —
Μιτυλήνην ὁ Δούκας παραχρῆμα ξυλίνους κατεσκεύασε
Mitylene — Doukas immediately wooden built
πύργους καὶ ὥσπερ ἐξ ὁρμητηρίου τινὸς ἐκεῖθεν ἀφορμῶν
towers and as-if from base some from-there setting-out

καρτερώτερον τοῖς βαρβάροις ἀντικαθίσταται. ὁ δὲ
more-strongly the barbarians resists — and
Τζαχᾶς τὴν τῆς Μιτυλήνης φρουρὰν τῷ ἀδελφῷ αὐτοῦ
Tzachas the — of-Mitylene guard to-the brother his
Γαλαβάτζῃ προαναθέμενος, ἐπεὶ μὴ ἐξαρκοῦντα τοῦτον
Galabatzes having-entrusted-before since not sufficing him
πρὸς μάχας τοιούτου ἀνδρὸς ἐγίνωσκε, θᾶττον φθάσας
for battles of-such a-man he-knew more-quickly having-arrived
καὶ πολέμου σχῆμα διατυπώσας ξυμμίγνυται τῷ Δούκᾳ.
and of-war form having-drawn engages — Doukas
καρτερᾶς δὲ τῆς μάχης γενομένης ἡ νὺξ ταύτην διέλυσε.
strong and the battle having-become the night it dissolved
κἄκτοτε ὁ Δούκας διὰ τριττῆς σεληνιακῆς περιφορᾶς
and-thereafter — Doukas through threefold lunar revolution
οὐκ ἐνεδίδου καθ' ἑκάστην ἡμέραν προσβάλλων τε
not ceased by each day attacking both
τοῖς τείχεσι Μιτυλήνης καὶ μετὰ τοῦ Τζαχᾶ λαμπροὺς
the walls of-Mitylene and with — Tzachas brilliant
πολέμους συναίρων ἐξ ἡλίου ἀνατολῆς μέχρι δυσμῶν.
wars joining from sun rising until setting
καὶ οὐδὲν πλέον ἦν τῷ Δούκᾳ τοῦ τοσούτου καμάτου.
and nothing more was — for-Doukas from-the so-great toil
ὅπερ μανθάνων ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ ἠνιᾶτο καὶ ἤσχαλλεν.
which learning the autocrat was-grieved and was-vexed
ἐπερωτήσας δέ ποτε τὸν ἐκεῖθεν ἐλθόντα στρατιώτην
having-asked and once the from-there having-come soldier
καὶ διαγνούς, ὡς οὐδὲν ἄλλο τῷ Δούκᾳ ἢ μάχαι τε
and having-discerned that nothing other — for-Doukas than battles both
καὶ πόλεμοι, καὶ περὶ τοῦ καιροῦ ἤρετο, καθ' ὁποίαν
and wars also about the time he-asked at what
ὥραν αἱ μετὰ τοῦ Τζαχᾶ μάχαι συνίστανται. τοῦ δὲ περὶ
hour the with — Tzachas battles are-joined he and about

αὐτὰς τὰς τοῦ ἡλίου αὐγὰς εἰρηκότος ὁ βασιλεὺς αὖθις
the-very the of-the sun rays having-said the emperor again
"καὶ τίνες τῶν μαχομένων πρὸς ἀνατολὰς ἀποβλέπουσι;"
also which of-the fighters toward east look
καὶ ὁ στρατιώτης "τὸ ἡμέτερον" ἔφη "στράτευμα".
and the soldier the our he-said army
ξυνεὶς οὖν τηνικαῦτα τὴν αἰτίαν, ὁποῖος ἐκεῖνος
having-understood then at-that-time the cause of-what-sort that-man
ἐν ἀσκέπτῳ χρόνῳ τὸ δέον εὑρίσκων, γράμμα πρὸς τὸν
in unconsidered time the needful finding a-letter to —
Δούκαν σχεδιάζει ξυμβουλεῦον ἀποστῆναι τῆς κατὰ τὰς
Doukas dashes-off advising to-desist from-the at the
αὐγὰς τοῦ ἡλίου μετὰ τοῦ Τζαχᾶ μάχης καὶ μὴ ἕνα πρὸς
rays of-the sun with — Tzachas battle and not one against
δύο μάχεσθαι, τὰς ἡλιακὰς ἀκτῖνας δηλαδὴ καὶ αὐτὸν
two to-fight the solar rays namely and himself
τὸν Τζαχᾶν· ἐπὰν δὲ ὁ ἥλιος τὸν μεσημβρινὸν κύκλον
— Tzachas when and the sun the meridian circle
διελθὼν πρὸς δυσμὰς ἀποκλίνῃ, τηνικαῦτα προσβάλλειν
having-passed toward setting declines then to-attack
τοῖς ἐναντίοις. ἐγχειρίσας οὖν τὸ γράμμα τῷ στρατιώτῃ
the opponents having-handed then the letter to-the soldier
καὶ πολλάκις περὶ τούτου παραγγείλας τέλος ἀποφαντικῶς
and many-times about this having-ordered finally declaratively
ἔφη "ἐὰν κλίνοντος τοῦ ἡλίου τοῖς ἐναντίοις προσβαλεῖτε,
he-said if declining the sun the opponents you-attack
νικηταὶ παραχρῆμα ἔσεσθε". ταῦτα τοῦ Δούκα διὰ τοῦ
victors immediately you-will-be these(-things) — Doukas through the
στρατιώτου μεμαθηκότος καὶ μηδέποτε τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος
soldier having-learned and never of-the autocrat
μηδὲ τὴν ἐπὶ τῷ τυχόντι παραβλεψαμένου ξυμβουλὴν τῇ
even the at the chance having-overlooked counsel on-the

μετ᾽ αὐτὴν κατὰ τὸ σύνηθες οἱ βάρβαροι ὁπλισάμενοι,
after it according-to the custom the barbarians having-armed
ἐπεὶ τῶν ἀντιμάχων οὐδεὶς ἐφαίνετο (ἠρέμουν γὰρ αἱ
since of-the adversaries none appeared were-quiet for the
Ῥωμαϊκαὶ φάλαγγες κατὰ τὰς τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος
Roman phalanxes according-to the of-the autocrat
ὑποθήκας), τὴν μάχην ἀπηλπικότες κατὰ τὴν ἡμέραν
counsels the battle having-despaired-of on the day
ἐκείνην αὐτοῦ που μεμενήκασι τὰ ὅπλα ἀποθέμενοι.
that there somewhere stayed the arms having-laid-aside
ἀλλ᾽ ὁ Δούκας οὐκ ἠρέμει. ἐς μεσουράνημα γὰρ τοῦ
but — Doukas not was-quiet to mid-heaven for the
ἡλίου ἤδη ἐφθακότος αὐτός τε καὶ τὸ στρατιωτικὸν
sun already having-arrived he both and the military-force
ἅπαν ἐπὶ τοῖς ὅπλοις ἦν. καὶ κλίνοντος ἤδη τοῦ ἡλίου
all at the arms was and declining already the sun
πολέμου τάξιν διατυπώσας σὺν ἀλαλαγμῷ καὶ βοῇ πολλῇ
of-war order having-drawn with war-cry and shout much
αἰφνηδὸν κατὰ τῶν βαρβάρων ἴεται. οὐ μέντοι οὐδ᾽ ὁ
suddenly against the barbarians rushes not however even —
Τζαχᾶς ἀνέτοιμος ἐφάνη, ἀλλ᾽ εὐθὺς καρτερῶς ὁπλισάμενος
Tzachas unready appeared but at-once strongly having-armed
ξυμμίγνυσι ταῖς Ῥωμαϊκαῖς φάλαγξι. πνεύσαντος δὲ
engages the Roman phalanxes having-blown and
τηνικαῦτα καὶ ἀνέμου σφοδροῦ καὶ ἀγχεμάχου τῆς μάχης
then also wind violent and hand-to-hand the battle
γεγονυίας ὁ κονίσσαλος ἐς οὐρανὸν αὐτὸν ἦρτο. καὶ
having-become the dust-cloud to heaven itself rose and
τὸ μέν τι κατὰ πρόσωπον τὸν ἥλιον λάμποντα
partly indeed somewhat in face the sun shining
ἔχοντες, τὸ δέ τι καὶ τοῦ ἀνέμου τὰς ὄψεις διὰ τῆς
having partly and somewhat also the wind the eyes with the

κόνεως τρόπον τινὰ κατασβολοῦντος τῶν τε Ῥωμαίων
dust way a-certain blinding the both Romans
καρτερώτερον εἴπερ ποτὲ προσβαλόντων ἠττήθησαν τὰ
more-strongly if ever having-attacked were-defeated the
νῶτα δεδωκότες. καὶ οὕτω μὴ φέρων ὁ Τζαχᾶς τὴν
backs having-given and thus not bearing — Tzachas the
ἐπὶ πλέον πολιορκίαν καὶ πρὸς τὴν ἀδιάστατον μάχην
for more siege and for the unremitting battle
μὴ ἐξαρκῶν τὰ περὶ εἰρήνης ἐπερωτᾷ τοῦτο καὶ
not sufficing the(-terms) about peace asks this and
μόνον ἐξαιτούμενος, ἐκχωρηθῆναί οἱ ἀβλαβῆ τὸν πρὸς
only asking to-be-yielded to-him unharmed the to
τὴν Σμύρνην ἀπόπλουν. πείθεται τούτῳ ὁ Δούκας καὶ
— Smyrna sailing is-persuaded by-this — Doukas and
λαβὼν ὁμήρους δύο τῶν ἐκκρίτων σατραπῶν, ἐπεὶ
having-taken hostages two of-the picked satraps since
κἀκεῖνος αὖθις ἄλλους ᾐτεῖτο τὸν Δούκαν ἐφ' ᾧ τὸν
also-that-one again others asked — Doukas for which the(-one)
μὲν μηδένα τῶν Μιτυληναίων ἀδικῆσαι ἐξερχόμενον ἢ
indeed none of-the Mitylenaeans to-harm going-out or
συνεπαγαγέσθαι ἀποπλέοντα πρὸς Σμύρνην, τὸν δὲ
to-carry-off sailing-away to Smyrna the(-other) and
διατηρῆσαι αὐτὸν ἀβλαβῆ τὸν ὡς πρὸς Σμύρνην ἀπόπλουν
to-keep him unharmed the as to Smyrna sailing
ποιούμενον, δέδωκε τούτῳ τόν τε Εὐφορβηνὸν Ἀλέξανδρον
making he-gave him — both Euphorbenos Alexander
καὶ Μανουὴλ τὸν Βουτουμίτην· ἄνδρες οὗτοι φιλοπόλεμοί
and Manuel the Boutoumites men these war-loving
τε καὶ γενναῖοι. εἶτα πίστεις ἐξ ἀλλήλων λαβόντες ὁ
both and noble then pledges from each-other having-taken the(-one)
μὲν ἀμεριμνίαν ἤδη εἶχε τοῦ μὴ ἐν τῷ ἐξέρχεσθαι τὸν
indeed freedom-from-care already had of-the not in the going-out —

Τζαχᾶν βλάβην τινὰ τοῖς Μιτυληναίοις ἐπαγαγεῖν, ὁ
Tzachas harm some on-the Mitylenaeans to-bring the(-other)
δὲ ἐν τῷ διαπερᾶν μὴ παρὰ τοῦ Ῥωμαϊκοῦ στόλου
and in the crossing not from the Roman fleet
κάκωσιν ἐσχηκέναι. ἀλλ' ὁ καρκίνος ὀρθῶς βαδίζειν
ill-treatment to-have-had but the crab straight to-walk
οὐκ ἐμάνθανεν οὐδ' ὁ Τζαχᾶς τῆς πρότερον ἀφίστατο
not learned nor — Tzachas from-the former stood-off
πονηρίας. πάντας γὰρ τοὺς Μιτυληναίους ἀπεπειρᾶτο σὺν
wickedness all for the Mitylenaeans he-attempted with
γυναιξὶ καὶ τέκνοις ἑαυτῷ συνεπαγαγέσθαι. ἐν ὅσῳ
women and children with-himself to-carry-off in as-long-as
δὲ ταῦτα ἐγίνετο, ὁ Δαλασσηνὸς Κωνσταντῖνος
and these(-things) were-happening — Dalassenos Constantine
θαλασσοκράτωρ τηνικαῦτα ὢν καὶ μήπω ἐφθακὼς κατὰ
master-of-the-sea then being and not-yet having-arrived according-to
τὰ ἐντεταλμένα παρὰ τοῦ Δούκα εἰς ἀκρωτήριόν
the(-things) enjoined by — Doukas at cape
τι τὰς ναῦς προσορμίσας, ἐπεὶ ταῦτα μεμαθήκοι,
a-certain the ships having-moored since these(-things) he-had-learned
ἐλθὼν ἠξίου τὸν Δούκαν παραχωρηθῆναι οἱ μετὰ
having-come asked — Doukas to-be-granted to-him with
τοῦ Τζαχᾶ συνάψαι πόλεμον. ὁ δὲ τὸν προγεγονότα
— Tzachas to-join war he and the previous
εὐλαβούμενος ὅρκον ἀνεβάλλετο τέως. ὁ δὲ Δαλασσηνὸς
respecting oath put-off for-the-time — and Dalassenos
ἐνέκειτο λέγων ὡς "σὺ μὲν ὀμώμοκας, ἐγὼ δ' οὐ παρῆν·
pressed saying that you indeed have-sworn I and not was-present
καὶ σὺ μὲν τήρει ἃς δέδωκας πίστεις ἀρραγεῖς, ἐγὼ δ'
and you indeed keep which you-have-given pledges unbroken I and
ὁ μήτε παρὼν μήτ' ὀμωμοκὼς μήτε τι τῶν
the(-one) neither present nor having-sworn nor anything of-the(-things)

συνδοξάντων ἀμφοῖν γινώσκων ἐπαποδύσομαι πρὸς τὸν
agreed by-both knowing will-strip for the
κατὰ τοῦ Τζαχᾶ πόλεμον". ἐπεὶ δ' ὁ Τζαχᾶς τὰ πρυμνήσια
against — Tzachas war since and — Tzachas the stern-cables
λύσας ὡς εἶχε κατευθὺ Σμύρνης τὸν ἀπόπλουν ἐποιεῖτο,
having-loosed as he-was straight-for Smyrna the sailing made
καταλαμβάνει τοῦτον ὁ Δαλασσηνὸς θᾶττον ἢ λόγος
overtakes him — Dalassenos more-quickly than word
καὶ παραχρῆμα προσβαλὼν ἐδίωκεν. ἀλλὰ καὶ ὁ Δούκας
and immediately having-attacked pursued but also — Doukas
τὸ ἐπίλοιπον τοῦ ναυτικοῦ τοῦ Τζαχᾶ λύον τὰ πρυμνήσια
the rest of-the fleet — of-Tzachas loosing the stern-cables
ἐφθακὼς κατέσχε μὲν τὰς ναῦς καὶ τῆς βαρβαρικῆς
having-overtaken seized indeed the ships and from-the barbarian
χειρὸς τοὺς δορυαλώτους ἅπαντας καὶ τοὺς ἐν αὐτοῖς
hand the spear-captives all and the in them
δεσμώτας αἰχμαλώτους ἐρρύσατο. ὁ δὲ Δαλασσηνὸς πολλὰ
bound captives rescued — and Dalassenos many
τῶν τοῦ Τζαχᾶ ληστρικῶν πλοίων κατασχὼν τοὺς ἐνόντας
of-the — of-Tzachas pirate boats having-seized those in-them
σὺν αὐτοῖς ἐρέταις ἀναιρεῖσθαι παρεκελεύετο. τάχα δ' ἂν
with the-very rowers to-be-killed ordered perhaps and —
καὶ ὁ Τζαχᾶς αὐτὸς ἑαλώκει, εἰ μὴ πανοῦργος ὢν
even — Tzachas himself would-have-been-captured if not crafty being
καὶ τὸ μέλλον ὑφορώμενος εἰς ἓν τῶν κουφοτέρων ἀκατίων
and the future suspecting into one of-the lighter skiffs
μεταβὰς διὰ τὸ ἀνύποπτον διεσώθη λαθών.
having-transferred because-of the unsuspected was-saved having-escaped-notice
στοχαζόμενος γὰρ τοῦ συμπεσόντος αὐτῷ ἐκ τῆς
guessing for the(-thing) having-befallen him from the
ἠπείρου Τούρκους παρεσκευάκει εἴς τι ἀκρωτήριον ἑστάναι
mainland Turks he-had-prepared on some cape to-stand

καὶ ὁρᾶν, μέχρις ἂν ἢ τὴν Σμύρνην ἀκινδύνως αὐτὸς
and to-watch until — either — Smyrna safely he
καταλάβῃ ἢ πολεμίοις περιτυχὼν πρὸς αὐτοὺς τὴν ναῦν
should-reach or with-enemies having-met to them the ship
ἐξορμίσῃ καθάπερ εἴς τι κρησφύγετον. καὶ δὴ τοῦ
he-might-steer as-if to some refuge and indeed the
σκοποῦ οὐκ ἠστόχει, ἀλλ' ἐκεῖ τὴν ναῦν προσορμίσας
mark not he-missed but there the ship having-moored
μετὰ τῶν ἀπεκδεχομένων αὐτὸν Τούρκων ἑνωθεὶς ὡς
with the awaiting him Turks having-united as
πρὸς Σμύρνην ᾤχετο. καὶ δὴ καὶ ταύτην κατέλαβεν. ὁ
toward Smyrna went and indeed also it reached —
δὲ Δαλασσηνὸς νικητὴς ὑποστρέψας ἑνοῦται τῷ μεγάλῳ
and Dalassenos victor having-returned unites with-the grand
δουκί. καὶ ὁ Δούκας τὰ κατὰ τὴν Μιτυλήνην
duke and — Doukas the(-affairs) concerning — Mitylene
ἀσφαλισάμενος, ἐπεὶ καὶ ὁ Δαλασσηνὸς ἐκεῖθεν ὑπέστρεψε,
having-secured since also — Dalassenos from-there returned
τοῦ Ῥωμαϊκοῦ στόλου πολὺ μέρος ἀφελόμενος κατὰ τῶν
of-the Roman fleet great part having-taken-off against those
παρὰ τοῦ Τζαχᾶ κατεχομένων (καὶ γὰρ ἱκανὰς ἔφθασε
by — Tzachas held and for considerable he-had-been-first
νήσους χειρώσασθαι) ἐξαπέστειλε. καὶ ἐξ ἐπιδρομῆς τήν
islands to-subdue sent-off and by raid —
τε Σάμον καί τινας ἄλλας νήσους κατασχὼν ἐπανέρχεται
both Samos and some other islands having-seized returns
πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν.
to the reigning(-city)

Karykes rebels in Crete and Rhapsomates in Cyprus. When John Doukas reaches Karpathos the Cretans kill Karykes and surrender. Doukas takes Kyrenia by assault. Rhapsomates, a novice in war who could hardly sit a horse, delays and then gives battle, but a hundred of his men turn their spears and desert. He flees toward Nemesos, takes refuge in a church on a mountain, and is taken by Boutoumites. Kallipparios is made judge of Cyprus, and Eumathios Philokales commander of its guard.

Οὐ πολλαὶ παρῆλθον ἡμέραι, καὶ μεμαθηκὼς ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ
not many passed days and having-learned the autocrat
τὴν τοῦ Καρύκη ἀποστασίαν καὶ ὅτι τὴν Κρήτην κατέσχεν,
the — of-Karykes rebellion and that — Crete he-held
ἐκεῖθεν δὲ ὁ Ῥαψομάτης τὴν Κύπρον, μετὰ στόλου
from-there and — Rhapsomates — Cyprus with fleet
μεγάλου κατ᾽ αὐτῶν τὸν Δούκαν Ἰωάννην ἐξέπεμψε.
great against them — Doukas John sent-out
καταλαβόντα δὲ τὸν Δούκαν τὴν Κάρπαθον οἱ Κρῆτες
having-reached and — Doukas — Karpathos the Cretans
μεμαθηκότες, ἐπεὶ οὐ πόρρω ταύτην εἶναι ἐγίνωσκον,
having-learned since not far it to-be they-knew
ἐπιθέμενοι τῷ Καρύκῃ δεινὸν τὸν φόνον κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ
having-set-upon — Karykes terrible the murder against him
ἀπειργάσαντο καὶ οὕτω τὴν Κρήτην τῷ μεγάλῳ δουκὶ
wrought and thus — Crete to-the grand duke
παραδεδώκασι. κατασφαλισάμενος δὲ τὰ περὶ αὐτὴν
handed-over having-secured and the(-affairs) about it
ὁ Δούκας καὶ ἀποχρῶσαν δύναμιν εἰς τὴν αὐτῆς φρουρὰν
— Doukas and sufficient force for the its guard
καταλιπὼν ἐπὶ τὴν Κύπρον τὸν κατάπλουν ποιεῖται. καὶ
having-left onto — Cyprus the sailing makes and

ἅμα τῷ ταύτῃ προσοκεῖλαι ἐξ ἐφόδου τὴν Κυρήνην
as-soon-as the to-it to-put-in by assault — Kyrenia
κατέσχεν. ὁ δὲ Ῥαψομάτης τοῦτο μεμαθηκὼς καρτερῶς
held — and Rhapsomates this having-learned strongly
ὁπλίζεται κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ. ἀπὸ Λευκουσίας τοιγαροῦν ἀπάρας
arms against him from Leukousia accordingly having-set-out
καὶ τὰς ἀκρολοφίας τῆς Κυρήνης καταλαβὼν ἐκεῖ που
and the hill-tops — of-Kyrenia having-reached there somewhere
τὸν χάρακα ἐπήξατο ἀναβαλλόμενος τέως τὸν πόλεμον
the palisade pitched putting-off for-the-time the war
ὡς ἀπειροπόλεμος καὶ στρατηγικῶν τεχνασμάτων ἀδαής.
as inexperienced-in-war and of-generalship stratagems unskilled
χρεὼν γὰρ τούτοις ἀνετοίμοις ἐπεισπεσεῖν. ὁ δὲ
it-was-needful for on-them unready to-fall he and
ἀνεβάλλετο τέως τὴν μάχην οὐχ ὅπως εἰς συμβολὴν
put-off for-the-time the battle not so-that for encounter
πολέμου παρασκευασθησόμενος ὡς δῆθεν ἀνετοίμως
of-war going-to-prepare as supposedly unready
ἔχων (παρεσκεύαστο γὰρ εὖ μάλα καὶ εἴπερ ἐβούλετο,
being he-was-prepared for well very and if he-wished
συνεκρότησεν ἂν αὐτίκα τὸν πόλεμον), ἀλλ᾽ ὡς ἂν μηδὲ
would-have-joined — at-once the war but as — not-even
συμπλακῆναι βουλόμενος ὥσπερ ἐν παιδιαῖς μειρακίων
to-engage wishing as-if in games of-youths
τὰ τοῦ πολέμου ἐπικεχειρήκει μαλακῶς τε πρὸς
the(-affairs) of-the war he-had-undertaken softly both to
αὐτοὺς διαπρεσβευόμενος καὶ μειλιχίοις λόγοις ἐφέλκεσθαι
them negotiating and with-soothing words to-draw
τούτους ὥσπερ οἰκονομούμενος. καὶ οἶμαι ἢ δι᾽
them as-if managing and I-think either because-of
ἀπειρίαν πολέμων ταῦτ᾽ ἐποίει (ἦν γάρ, ὡς ἔγωγε
inexperience of-wars these(-things) he-did he-was for as I-for-my-part

περὶ τούτου ἤκουον, χθὲς καὶ πρῴην ἡμμένος ξίφους
about him heard yesterday and the-day-before having-taken-up sword
καὶ δόρατος καὶ μηδ᾽ ἐπιβῆναι ἐφ᾽ ἵππου εἰδώς, ἀλλ᾽
and spear and not-even to-mount on horse knowing but
εἰ καὶ τύχοι ἐπιβεβηκὼς κᾆθ᾽ οὕτως ἐξιππάσασθαι
if even he-should-happen having-mounted and-then thus to-ride-out
βούλοιτο, ταραχὴν εἶχε καὶ σάλον· οὕτως εἶχε περὶ τὴν
he-wished confusion he-had and tossing so was about the
στρατιωτικὴν ἐμπειρίαν ἀπείρως ὁ Ῥαψομάτης) ἢ τοίνυν
military experience inexperiencedly — Rhapsomates either therefore
διὰ ταῦτα ἢ καταπλαγεὶς τὴν ψυχὴν τῷ αἰφνιδίῳ
because-of these(-things) or having-been-astounded in-the soul by-the sudden
τῆς ἐφόδου τῶν βασιλικῶν στρατευμάτων τὰς φρένας
of-the attack of-the imperial armies in-the wits
περιπεπλάνητο. ἔνθεν τοι καὶ τὸν πόλεμον μετά τινος
had-wandered whence surely also the war with some
δυσελπιστίας ἐπιχειρήσαντι οὐκ εἰς καλὸν αὐτῷ ἀπηντήκει
despondency having-attempted not for good to-him turned-out
τὰ πράγματα. ὁ γὰρ Βουτουμίτης ὑποποιησάμενός τινας
the affairs — for Boutoumites having-won-over some
τῶν ἐκείνῳ συναραμένων αὐτομολήσαντας τῷ ἰδίῳ
of-those with-that-one joined having-deserted to-the own
συγκατέλεξε στρατεύματι. τῇ δὲ μετ᾽ αὐτὴν τὰς φάλαγγας
enrolled army on-the and after it the phalanxes
στήσας ὁ Ῥαψομάτης τὸν μετὰ τοῦ Δούκα ἐξήτει πόλεμον
having-set — Rhapsomates the with — Doukas sought war
διὰ τοῦ πρανοῦς τῆς ἀκρολοφίας βραδεῖ ποδὶ στείχων. ὡς
through the slope of-the hill-top with-slow foot stepping as
δὲ τὸ μεσαίχμιον ἀμφοῖν τοῖν στρατοπέδοιν ἀπεστενοῦτο
and the no-man's-land of-both the two-armies was-narrowed
ἤδη, ἀπόμοιρά τις τῶν τοῦ Ῥαψομάτου εἰς ἑκατὸν
already a-detachment certain of-the — of-Rhapsomates to hundred

ποσουμένη τὸν ἀριθμὸν διακριθεῖσα ὡς τάχα κατὰ τοῦ
numbering the number separated as perhaps against —
Δούκα τὰς ἡνίας ὅλας ἐνδόντες τὰς ἀκωκὰς τῶν δοράτων
Doukas the reins whole having-given the points of-the spears
ὄπισθεν στρέψαντες προσχωροῦσιν αὐτῷ. τοῦτο θεασάμενος
behind having-turned go-over to-him this having-beheld
ὁ Ῥαψομάτης τὰ νῶτα παραχρῆμα δίδωσιν ὅλας ἡνίας
— Rhapsomates the backs immediately gives whole reins
εἰς φυγὴν χαλάσας ὡς πρὸς τὴν Νεμεσὸν ἀπονενευκώς,
into flight having-slackened as toward — Nemesos having-turned
εἴ που γένοιτό οἱ ταύτην καταλαβόντι πλοίῳ
if somehow it-might-be-granted to-him it having-reached a-boat
ἐντυχεῖν, δι᾽ οὗ τῇ Συρίᾳ προσορμίσας τὴν σωτηρίαν
to-meet through which — to-Syria having-put-in the safety
ἑαυτῷ περιποιήσαιτο. Μανουὴλ δὲ ὁ Βουτουμίτης ἐξ
for-himself he-might-secure Manuel and the Boutoumites from
ὀπισθίων αὐτοῦ διώκων ἤλαυνεν. ὁ δὲ ὑπ᾽ αὐτοῦ
behind him pursuing drove he and by him
κατεπειγόμενος καὶ τῆς ἐλπίδος διημαρτηκὼς τῷ ἐπὶ
pressed and of-the hope having-failed to-the on
θάτερα προσεχώρησεν ὄρει εἰς τὸν ἐπ᾽ ὀνόματι τοῦ
the-other-side went-over mountain into the in name of-the
τιμίου σταυροῦ ἀνεγερθέντα πάλαι νεὼν προσπεφευγώς. ὁ
precious cross raised long-ago church having-fled-for-refuge —
δὲ Βουτουμίτης (οὗτος γὰρ τὴν αὐτοῦ διωκὴν παρὰ τοῦ
and Boutoumites this-man for the his pursuit by —
Δούκα ἐπετέτραπτο) τοῦτον αὐτοῦ που καταλαβὼν
Doukas had-been-entrusted-with him there somewhere having-caught
λόγον ἀπαθείας αὐτῷ δίδωσι καὶ συμπαραλαβὼν ἄγει
word of-immunity to-him gives and having-taken-along leads
πρὸς τὸν μέγαν δοῦκα. κἀντεῦθεν πάντες τὴν Λευκουσίαν
to the grand duke and-thence all — Leukousia

καταλαμβάνουσι κἀκεῖθεν τὴν ὅλην νῆσον ὑπὸ τὴν ἰδίαν
reach and-from-there the whole island under the own
χεῖρα ποιησάμενοι ἠσφαλίσαντο κατὰ τὸ ἐγχωροῦν τῷ
hand having-made secured according-to the possible to-the
αὐτοκράτορι τὰ συμπεσόντα ἅπαντα διὰ γραμμάτων
autocrat the(-things) having-befallen all through letters
δηλώσαντες. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς ἀποδεξάμενος αὐτῶν τὸν
having-made-known the and emperor having-accepted their the
ἀγῶνα δεῖν ἔγνω τὰ κατὰ τὴν Κύπρον
contest to-be-needful knew the(-affairs) concerning — Cyprus
ἀσφαλίσασθαι. κριτὴν μὲν οὖν τηνικαῦτα καὶ ἐξισωτὴν
to-secure judge indeed then at-that-time and assessor
τὸν Καλλιππάριον προὐβάλλετο· ἀνὴρ δὲ οὗτος οὐ τῶν
— Kallipparios he-put-forward a-man and this-one not of-the
ἐπισήμων, μαρτυρίαν δὲ πολλὴν δικαιοπραγίας τε καὶ
distinguished testimony and much of-just-dealing both and
ἀφιλοχρηματίας καὶ ταπεινοφροσύνης συνεπαγόμενος. ἐπεὶ
freedom-from-avarice and humility bringing-with-him since
δὲ καί τινος ἡ νῆσος ἐδεῖτο τοῦ ταύτην φρουρήσοντος,
and also of-someone the island needed the it going-to-guard
τὸν Φιλοκάλην Εὐμάθιον τὴν ταύτης ἀναθέμενος φρουρὰν
— Philokales Eumathios the of-it having-entrusted guard
στρατοπεδάρχην προεχειρίσατο ναῦς πολεμικὰς δεδωκὼς
as-camp-commander appointed ships warlike having-given
αὐτῷ καὶ ἱππότας ἐφ' ᾧ τὰ κατὰ τὴν Κύπρον
to-him and horsemen for which the(-affairs) concerning — Cyprus
διά τε θαλάττης καὶ ἠπείρου ἀσφαλίζεσθαι. ὁ μέντοι
through both sea and mainland to-be-secured — however
Βουτουμίτης ἀναλαβόμενος τὸν Ῥαψομάτην καὶ τοὺς
Boutoumites having-taken-up — Rhapsomates and the

συναποστατήσαντας αὐτῷ ἀθανάτους ἐπάνεισι πρὸς τὸν
fellow-rebels with-him Immortals returns to —
Δούκαν. καὶ οὕτως εἴσεισι πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν.
Doukas and thus enters to the reigning(-city)

XLVI · THE DEATH OF TZACHAS

Tzachas builds yet another fleet and besieges Abydos. Alexios sends Dalassenos against him by sea and writes to the sultan Klitziasthlan, Tzachas' kinsman by marriage, warning that Tzachas covets the sultan's own rule. The sultan marches out, and Tzachas, caught between them, comes to him. The sultan feasts him, makes him drunk, and stabs him in the side. The sultan then makes peace with Alexios, and the coasts are quiet.

Τοιαῦτα μὲν οὖν τὰ κατὰ τὰς νήσους, τὴν
such indeed then the(-affairs) concerning the islands —
Κύπρον φημὶ καὶ Κρήτην· ὁ δέ γε Τζαχᾶς ἀνὴρ ὢν
Cyprus I-mean and Crete — and at-least Tzachas a-man being
φιλοπόλεμος δραστηριότητι γνώμης οὐκ ἤθελεν ἡρεμεῖν,
war-loving in-energy of-mind not wished to-be-quiet
ἀλλὰ μετ' οὐ πολὺ τὴν Σμύρνην ἐπελθὼν κατέλαβε. καὶ
but after not long — Smyrna having-come-upon reached and
αὖθις λῃστρικὰς ἐπιμελῶς κατεσκεύαζε ναῦς, δρόμωνάς τε
again pirate carefully built ships dromons both
καὶ διήρεις καὶ τριήρεις καὶ ἄλλα τινὰ τῶν κουφοτέρων
and biremes and triremes and other some of-the lighter
νηῶν, τοῦ αὐτοῦ σκοποῦ ἐχόμενος. ταῦτα μεμαθηκὼς ὁ
ships to-the same aim holding these(-things) having-learned the
αὐτοκράτωρ οὐκ ἀνέπιπτεν αὖθις οὐδ' ἀνεβάλλετο, ἀλλ' ἐκ
autocrat not lost-heart again nor put-off but from
θαλάττης καὶ ἠπείρου ἔσπευδε τοῦτον καταγωνίσασθαι. τὸν
sea and mainland hastened him to-defeat —

μὲν οὖν Κωνσταντῖνον τὸν Δαλασσηνὸν θαλασσοκράτορα
indeed then Constantine the Dalassenos as-master-of-the-sea
προχειρισάμενος τηνικαῦτα μετὰ τοῦ ναυτικοῦ παντὸς
having-appointed then with the fleet all
ἐξέπεμψε κατὰ τοῦ Τζαχᾶ. τὸν δέ γε σουλτάνον
he-sent-out against — Tzachas the and at-least sultan
συνοῖσον ἐδόκει διὰ γραμμάτων ἐρεθίσαι κατ᾽
going-to-be-advantageous it-seemed through letters to-provoke against
αὐτοῦ· εἶχε δ᾽ οὕτω τὰ γράμματα “οἶδας, μεγαλοδοξότατε
him had and thus the letters you-know most-glorious
σουλτὰν Κλιτζιασθλάν, ὅτι τὸ σουλτανικὸν ἀξίωμά σοι
sultan Klitziasthlan that the sultanic rank to-you
πατρόθεν προσήκει. ὁ δὲ σὸς γαμβρὸς ὁ Τζαχᾶς κἂν
from-your-father belongs the and your in-law — Tzachas even-if
κατὰ τῆς βασιλείας Ῥωμαίων τῷ φαινομένῳ ὁπλίζηται
against the empire of-Romans in-the seeming arms
βασιλέα ἑαυτὸν ἀποκαλῶν, ἀλλὰ τοῦτο πρόδηλος σκῆψίς
emperor himself calling but this a-manifest pretext
ἐστιν. οὐ γὰρ λέληθεν αὐτὸν πολυπειρίαν ἔχοντα καὶ
is not for it-has-escaped him much-experience having and
ἀκριβῶς γινώσκοντα, ὡς οὐ προσήκει τούτῳ ἡ βασιλεία
exactly knowing that not belongs to-him the empire
Ῥωμαίων, καὶ ἀδύνατον τοιαύτης ἀρχῆς ἐπιδράξασθαι.
of-Romans and impossible of-such rule to-lay-hold-of
τὸ δὲ πᾶν σκαιώρημα κατὰ σοῦ ἐξαρτύεται. οὐ χρὴ
the but whole mischief against you is-being-prepared not it-is-right
τοιγαροῦν ἀνέχεσθαι αὐτοῦ οὔτε μὴν ἀναπεπτωκέναι, ἀλλ᾽
accordingly to-endure him nor indeed to-have-slackened but
ἐγρηγορέναι μᾶλλον, ἵνα μὴ τῆς ἀρχῆς παραλυθῇς.
to-be-awake rather that not from-the rule you-may-be-removed
ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν τοῦτον τῶν ὑπὸ τὴν βασιλείαν Ῥωμαίων
I indeed then him from-the under the empire of-Romans

ὁρίων ἀπελάσω θεοῦ ἀρήγοντος· κηδόμενος δὲ σοῦ
bounds will-drive-out God helping caring and for-you
παρεγγυῶμαι, ὡς ἂν καὶ αὐτὸς τῆς ἰδίας φροντίσῃς
I-charge that — also you of-the own should-care
ἀρχῆς καὶ ἐξουσίας καὶ πὴ μὲν μετ᾽ εἰρήνης, πὴ
rule and authority and in-one-way indeed with peace in-another
δέ, εἰ μὴ ταύτην ἀσπάζοιτο, μετὰ ξίφους σπεύσῃς
and if not it he-should-embrace with sword you-should-hasten
αὐτὸν καθυποτάξαι.” τούτων οὕτω παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως
him to-subdue these-things thus by the emperor
οἰκονομηθέντων καταλαμβάνει τὴν Ἄβυδον ὁ Τζαχᾶς μετὰ
having-been-arranged reaches — Abydos — Tzachas with
τῶν ὑπ᾽ αὐτὸν δυνάμεων ἐξ ἠπείρου καὶ ἐπολιόρκει
the under him forces from mainland and besieged
ταύτην δι᾽ ἑλεπόλεων καὶ παντοίων πετροβόλων ὀργάνων.
it with siege-engines and all-kinds stone-throwing engines
οὐδὲ γὰρ παρῆσαν τούτῳ ἔτι λῃστρικαὶ νῆες μήπω
not for were-present to-him yet pirate ships not-yet
ἀπαρτισθεῖσαι. ὁ δέ γε Δαλασσηνὸς εἶχετο μὲν μετὰ
having-been-completed — and at-least Dalassenos held indeed with
τῶν ὑπ᾽ αὐτὸν δυνάμεων τῆς πρὸς Ἄβυδον φερούσης,
the under him forces the to Abydos leading(-road)
φιλοκινδυνότατος καὶ εὐψυχότατος ὢν ὁ ἀνήρ· ὁ
most-danger-loving and most-courageous being the man the
δὲ σουλτὰν Κλιτζιασθλὰν δεξάμενος τὰ παρὰ τοῦ
and sultan Klitziasthlan having-received the(-things) from the
βασιλέως διαμηνυθέντα ἔργου εὐθὺς εἶχετο τῆς πρὸς τὸν
emperor reported to-work at-once held the to —
Τζαχᾶν φερούσης ἁψάμενος σὺν παντὶ τῷ στρατεύματι.
Tzachas leading(-road) having-taken with all the army
τοιοῦτον γὰρ τὸ βάρβαρον ἅπαν ἕτοιμον πρὸς σφαγὰς
such for the barbarian all ready for slaughters

καὶ πολέμους. ἔγγιστα δὲ τούτου γενομένου, ἐπεὶ ἐξ
and wars nearest and him having-come since from
ἠπείρου καὶ θαλάττης τοὺς πολεμίους ἑώρα ἐπιόντας,
mainland and sea the enemies he-saw coming-on
πλοῖον δὲ οὐδαμοῦ μήπω τῶν παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ ἑτοιμαζομένων
boat and nowhere not-yet of-the by him being-prepared
νηῶν ἀπαρτισθεισῶν μήτε δυνάμεις ἀποχρώσας ἔχων
ships having-been-completed nor forces sufficient having
πρός τε τὸ Ῥωμαϊκὸν καὶ τὸ τοῦ κηδεστοῦ αὐτοῦ
against both the Roman and the of-the relative-by-marriage his
σουλτὰν Κλιτζιασθλὰν στράτευμα, ἐν ἀμηχανίᾳ καθειστήκει.
sultan Klitziastblan army in helplessness was-set
πτοούμενος δὲ καὶ τοὺς ἐποίκους καὶ στρατιώτας Ἀβύδου
fearing and also the settlers and soldiers of-Abydos
δεῖν ἐλογίσατο προσεληλυθέναι τῷ σουλτὰν ἀγνοῶν
to-be-needful he-reckoned to-have-gone-over to-the sultan not-knowing
τὴν τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ κατασκευασθεῖσαν
the of-the autocrat against him prepared
τυρείαν. ὁ δὲ σουλτὰν τοῦτον θεασάμενος ἱλαρὸν εὐθὺς
plot the and sultan him having-beheld cheerful at-once
ἐδείκνυ βλέμμα καὶ ἀσπασίως ἐδέχετο. τράπεζαν τοίνυν ὡς
showed look and gladly received a-table therefore as
ἔθος ἑτοιμάσας καὶ συνδειπνῶν μετ᾽ αὐτοῦ ζωρότερον πίνειν
custom having-prepared and dining with him stronger to-drink
τὸν Τζαχᾶν κατηνάγκαζεν. ὁπηνίκα δὲ τοῦτον ἐμφορηθέντα
— Tzachas compelled when and him filled
οἴνου διέγνω, σπασάμενος ξίφος κατὰ τῶν λαγόνων ὦσεν
of-wine he-discerned having-drawn sword into the flanks thrust
αὐτοῦ. καὶ αὐτὸς μὲν αὐτοῦ που νεκρὸς ἔκειτο· ὁ
his and he indeed there somewhere dead lay the
δέ γε σουλτὰν τὰ περὶ εἰρήνης τοῦ λοιποῦ πρὸς
and at-least sultan the(-terms) about peace for-the rest to

τὸν αὐτοκράτορα διαπρεσβεύεται. καὶ δὴ τοῦ σκοποῦ οὐ
the autocrat negotiates and indeed the aim not
διήμαρτε. δέχεται γὰρ αὐτοῦ τὴν αἴτησιν ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ.
he-missed receives for his the request the autocrat
καὶ τῶν εἰρηνικῶν σπονδῶν ὡς ἔθος τελεσθεισῶν ἐν
and the peaceful treaties as custom having-been-completed in
καταστάσει τὰ παρὰ θάλασσαν ἦσαν ὅρια.
settlement the by sea were bounds

XLVII · BOLKANOS BREAKS FAITH

Bolkanos, ruler of the Dalmatians, seizes and burns Lipenion. Alexios marches against him, and at Skopia Bolkanos asks for peace, blaming the Roman satraps and promising hostages. Alexios returns home, but the hostages never come and Bolkanos raids again. John, the sebastokrator's son, is sent against him, ignores a monk's warning, and is surprised in his camp by night. He retreats with heavy losses, and Bolkanos ravages the land around Skopia, Polobos, and Branea.

Μήπω δὲ τοσούτων φροντίδων ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ ἀπαλλαγεὶς
not-yet and from-so-many cares the autocrat freed
μηδὲ τῶν ἀπὸ τούτου κακώσεων καθαριεύσας (εἰ γὰρ καὶ
nor the from it ill-treatments having-been-clear-of if for even
αὐτὸς μὴ παρῆν ἔν τισιν, ἀλλά γε ταῖς οἰκονομίαις
he not was-present in some but at-least by-the arrangements
καὶ ταῖς φροντίσι καὶ συμπαρῆν καὶ συνέπραττεν) εἰς
and the cares both was-present and co-operated to
ἕτερον ἀγῶνα αὖθις ἠπείγετο. ὁ γὰρ Βολκάνος (ἀνὴρ
another contest again he-hastened — for Bolkanos a-man
δὲ οὗτος τὸ πᾶν τῆς ἀρχῆς τῶν Δαλματῶν φέρων,
and this-one the whole of-the rule of-the Dalmatians bearing
δεινὸς μὲν εἰπεῖν, δεινὸς δὲ καταπράξασθαι) μετὰ διττὴν
skilled indeed to-speak skilled and to-accomplish after twofold

ἡλίου περιφορὰν τῆς τῶν Σκυθῶν καταλύσεως τῶν
of-sun revolution from-the of-the Scythians destruction from-the
ἰδίων ὅρων ἐξεληλυθὼς τὰς παρακειμένας ἐλῄζετο πόλεις
own bounds having-gone-out the neighboring plundered cities
καὶ χώρας καὶ αὐτὸ δὴ τὸ Λιπένιον κατασχὼν πῦρ
and lands and itself indeed — Lipenion having-seized fire
ἐμβαλὼν ἐνέπρησε. ταῦτα ὁ βασιλεὺς μεμαθηκὼς οὐκέτ᾽
having-thrown burned these(-things) the emperor having-learned no-longer
ἀνεκτῶς εἶχεν, ἀλλ᾽ ἀποχρώσας δυνάμεις συναγοχὼς
bearably was but sufficient forces having-gathered
κατὰ τῶν Σέρβων κατευθὺ τοῦ Λιπενίου ἤλαυνε (τοῦτο δὲ
against the Serbs straight-for — Lipenion drove this and
πολίχνιόν τι μικρὸν περὶ τοὺς πρόποδας τοῦ Ζυγοῦ
little-town a-certain small about the foothills of-the Zygos
τοῦ διαιροῦντος τὴν Δαλματίαν ἀπὸ τῆς ἡμεδαπῆς χώρας)
the dividing — Dalmatia from the our-own land
ἐφ᾽ ᾧ τῷ Βολκάνῳ εἰ τύχοι ἀντικαταστῆναι καὶ
for which — Bolkanos if it-should-happen to-stand-against and
πόλεμον συνάψαι καρτερὸν καὶ εἰ τὴν νίκην δοίη αὐτῷ
war to-join strong and if the victory should-give him
θεός, τό τε Λιπένιον καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ ἅπαντα ἀνεγεῖραι καὶ
God — both Lipenion and the rest all to-raise and
εἰς τὸ πρότερον ἀποκαταστῆσαι σχῆμα. ὁ δὲ Βολκάνος
to the former to-restore form — and Bolkanos
τὴν τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος μεμαθηκὼς ἔλευσιν ἀπάρας ἐκεῖθεν
the of-the autocrat having-learned coming having-set-out from-there
καταλαμβάνει τὸ Σφεντζάνιον· πολίχνιον δὲ τοῦτο ἄνωθεν
reaches — Sphentzanion little-town and this above
τοῦ ἤδη ῥηθέντος Ζυγοῦ διακείμενον ἐν μεσαιχμίῳ τῶν
the already mentioned Zygos lying in the-space-between the
τε Ῥωμαϊκῶν ὁρίων καὶ τῆς Δαλματίας. ὁπηνίκα δὲ τὰ
both Roman bounds and — Dalmatia when and —

Σκόπια ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ κατειλήφει, ἀποστείλας ὁ Βολκάνος
Skopia the autocrat had-reached having-sent — Bolkanos
διετίθετο τὰ περὶ εἰρήνης καὶ ἑαυτὸν ἅμα τῆς
arranged the(-terms) about peace and himself at-the-same-time from-the
αἰτίας τῶν κακῶς γεγονότων ἀπολύων καὶ τὸ αἴτιον
cause of-the badly happened-things releasing and the cause
ὅλον τοῖς σατράπαις τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἀνατιθεὶς λέγων
whole on-the satraps of-the Romans laying saying
ὡς "ἐκεῖνοι μὴ τοῖς οἰκείοις ὅροις ἐμμένειν βουλόμενοι
that those not in-the own bounds to-abide wishing
διαφόρους ἐκδρομὰς ποιούμενοι οὐ μικρὰν τὴν βλάβην τῇ
various raids making not small the harm —
Σερβίᾳ προσῆξαν. ἐγὼ δὲ οὐκέτι τοιοῦτον τοῦ λοιποῦ
to-Serbia brought I and no-longer such for-the rest
διαπράξομαι, ἀλλ' ἐπαναστρέψας καὶ ὁμήρους ἀποστελῶ
will-do but having-returned also hostages I-will-send
τῶν ἐμῶν συγγενῶν τῇ σῇ βασιλείᾳ καὶ τῶν οἰκείων
of-the my kinsmen to-the your majesty and the own
ὅρων οὐχ ὑπερβήσομαι." πρὸς ταῦτα ὁ βασιλεὺς
bounds not I-shall-overstep to these(-things) the emperor
κατένευσε. καὶ καταλείψας ἐκεῖσε τοὺς μέλλοντας τὰς
assented and having-left there those going-to the
ἐριπωθείσας πόλεις ἀνεγεῖραι καὶ ὁμήρους ἀναλαβέσθαι
demolished cities to-raise and hostages to-take
πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν ἐπανέζευξεν. ὁ δὲ Βολκάνος τοὺς
to the reigning(-city) returned — and Bolkanos the
ὁμήρους ἀπαιτούμενος οὐκ ἐδίδου τούτους, ἀλλ' ἡμέραν ἐξ
hostages being-asked-for not gave them but day from
ἡμέρας ὑπερετίθετο ἐνιαυτοῦ τε μήπω παρῳχηκότος ὅλου
day put-off of-a-year and not-yet having-passed whole
αὖθις εἰς προνομὴν τῶν Ῥωμαϊκῶν χωρῶν ἐξεληλύθει.
again for foraging of-the Roman lands had-gone-out

καὶ διαφόρους γραφὰς τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος δεξάμενος
and various letters of-the autocrat having-received
ἀναμιμνήσκοντος αὐτὸν τῶν συνθηκῶν καὶ ὑποσχέσεων,
reminding him of-the treaties and promises
ἃς φθάσας πρὸς αὐτὸν ἐποιήσατο, οὐδ' οὕτως τὰ
which having-been-first to him he-had-made not-even thus the(-things)
ὑπεσχημένα τελέσαι ἤθελε. μεταπεμψάμενος οὖν ὁ βασιλεὺς
promised to-fulfill he-wished having-summoned then the emperor
Ἰωάννην τὸν υἱὸν τοῦ σεβαστοκράτορος καὶ αὐταδέλφου
John the son of-the sebastokrator and own-brother
αὐτοῦ κατ' αὐτοῦ ἐξέπεμψε μετὰ ἀποχρώσης δυνάμεως. ὁ
his against him sent-out with sufficient force he
δὲ οἷα ἀπειροπόλεμος καὶ σφαδάζων ὡς νέος πρὸς μάχας
and as inexperienced-in-war and quivering as young for battles
ἀπελθὼν καὶ τὸν τοῦ Λιπενίου ποταμὸν διαβὰς περὶ
having-gone and the — of-Lipenion river having-crossed about
τοὺς πρόποδας τοῦ Ζυγοῦ κατευθὺ τοῦ Σφεντζανίου τὸν
the foothills of-the Zygos straight-opposite — Sphentzanion the
χάρακα ἐπήξατο. οὐκ ἔλαθε τοῦτο τὸν Βολκάνον. καὶ πάλιν
palisade pitched not escaped this — Bolkanos and again
περὶ εἰρήνης καὶ πρὸς αὐτὸν ἠρώτα ὑπισχνούμενος καὶ τοὺς
about peace also to him he-asked promising both the
ὑπεσχημένους ὁμήρους δοῦναι καὶ τὴν καθαρὰν εἰρήνην τοῦ
promised hostages to-give and the pure peace for-the
λοιποῦ μετὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων τηρῆσαι. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν ἐν
rest with the Romans to-keep but these(-things) indeed in
μόναις ψιλαῖς ὑποσχέσεσιν· αὐτὸς δὲ ἐξωπλίζετο ἀγνώστως
only bare promises he and was-arming unawares
αὐτῷ προσβαλεῖν. καὶ τῆς πρὸς τὸν Ἰωάννην φερούσης τοῦ
him to-attack and the to — John leading(-road) —
Βολκάνου ἁψαμένου μοναχός τις προκαταλαβὼν τὸ
Bolkanos having-taken a-monk a-certain having-anticipated the(-thing)

μελετώμενον ἀπαγγέλλει τῷ Ἰωάννῃ καὶ καταλαμβάνειν
planned reports — to-John and to-be-arriving
τὸν ἐχθρὸν ἤδη διισχυρίζετο. ὁ δὲ μετὰ θυμοῦ τοῦτον
the enemy already affirmed he and with anger him
ἀπεπέμψατο ψεύστην καὶ ἀπατεῶνα ἀποκαλῶν. ἀλλὰ τὸ
sent-away liar and deceiver calling but the
ἔργον τὸν λόγον προέφθασε πιστώσασθαι. νυκτὸς γὰρ
deed the word anticipated to-confirm at-night for
ἐπεισπεσὼν αὐτῷ πολλοὺς μὲν τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἐντὸς
having-fallen-upon him many indeed of-the soldiers inside
τῶν σκηνῶν ἀνεῖλε, πολλοὶ δὲ καὶ ἀνὰ κράτος φεύγοντες
the tents he-killed many and also at full-speed fleeing
ταῖς δίναις τοῦ κάτω ῥέοντος ποταμοῦ παρασυρέντες
into-the eddies of-the below flowing river swept-away
ἀπεπνίγησαν. ὁπόσοι δὲ σταθηροτέρας γνώμης ἦσαν, τὴν
were-drowned as-many-as and of-steadier mind were the
τοῦ Ἰωάννου ἀναζητήσαντες σκηνὴν ἐκθύμως μαχόμενοι
— of-John having-sought tent passionately fighting
ταύτην ἐπὶ ταὐτοῦ μόγις διετήρησαν. οὕτω γοῦν τὸ
it on the-same hardly kept thus at-any-rate the
μὲν πλεῖστον τοῦ Ῥωμαϊκοῦ στρατεύματος ᾤχετο· ὁ
indeed most of-the Roman army was-gone —
δὲ Βολκάνος τοὺς ἰδίους ἀναλεξάμενος καὶ ἀνελθὼν
and Bolkanos the own having-gathered and having-gone-up
ἄνωθεν τοῦ Ζυγοῦ κατὰ τὸ Σφεντζάνιον ἔστη. οἱ δ’
above the Zygos at — Sphentzanion stood those and
ἀμφὶ τὸν Ἰωάννην τούτους θεασάμενοι ὀλίγοι ὄντες
about — John them having-seen few being
μετὰ τοσούτων μάχεσθαι μὴ δυνάμενοι ἐβουλεύσαντο εἰς
with so-many to-fight not being-able planned to
τοὐπίσω διαπερᾶσαι τὸν ποταμόν. τούτου δὲ γεγονότος
the-rear to-cross the river this and having-happened

καταλαμβάνουσι τὸ Λιπένιον ὡσεὶ δώδεκα σταδίους τούτου
they-reach — Lipenion about twelve stades from-it
ἀπέχον· ἐπὶ πλέον δ᾽ ἀντέχειν τοὺς πλείστους ἀπολωλεκὼς
being-distant for more and to-hold-out the most having-lost
μὴ δυνάμενος τὴν ὡς πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν ἀνεζήτησε·
not being-able the(-road) as toward the reigning(-city) he-sought
κᾆθ᾽ οὕτως τεθαρρηκὼς ὁ Βολκάνος ὡς μή τινος τοῦ
and-then thus having-taken-courage — Bolkanos as not any of-the
ἀντικαθισταμένου περιλειφθέντος ἐλήζετο τὰς παρακειμένας
resisting having-been-left plundered the neighboring
πόλεις καὶ χώρας. καὶ τῶν Σκοπίων τὴν ἔξω χώραν
cities and lands and — of-Skopia the outside land
τελείως ἠρίπωσε, τὸ δέ τι καὶ κατέκαυσεν. οὐ μέχρι
completely demolished partly and somewhat also burned not as-far-as
δὲ τούτου, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸν Πόλοβον καταλαβὼν καὶ ἄχρι
and this but also — Polobos having-seized and as-far-as
Βρανέας φθάσας καὶ δῃώσας ἅπαντα πολλήν τε λείαν
Branea having-reached and having-ravaged all much and booty
ἐκεῖθεν ἀφελόμενος εἰς τὴν οἰκείαν ὑπέστρεψε χώραν.
from-there having-taken to the own returned land

Alexios marches out again. Nikephoros Diogenes joins him at Daphnoution and pitches his tent beside the emperor's. Philokales warns of danger, but Alexios refuses to give Diogenes a pretext. At midnight Diogenes comes to the open door with a sword, but the maid fanning the sleeping emperor and empress makes him tremble and put off the murder. At Pentegostis, the estate of the Porphyrogennetos Constantine, Tatikios bars Diogenes from the bath; the plotter plans to flee to the empress Maria's estates.

Ταῦτα ὁ βασιλεὺς μεμαθηκὼς οὐκέτ' ἀνεκτῶς εἶχεν, ἀλλ'
these(-things) the emperor having-learned no-longer bearably was but
εὐθὺς αὖθις ἐξωπλίσατο μὴ πάνυ τι μηδὲ τοῦ αὐλητοῦ
at-once again armed not very at-all nor of-the piper
Τιμοθέου πρὸς τοῦτο δεόμενος καθάπερ Ἀλέξανδρος
Timotheos for this needing as Alexander
περιμείνας τὸν ὄρθιον νόμον. αὐτός τε οὖν ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ
having-waited-for the orthian strain he both then the autocrat
περιθέμενος ὅπλα καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ὁπλίσας τοὺς τότε
having-put-on arms and the others having-armed those then
παρατυχόντας τῆς κατευθὺ Δαλματίας φερούσης εἴχετο
present the straight-for Dalmatia leading(-road) held
σπεύδων τὰ μὲν φθάσαντα ἐριπωθῆναι τῶν κάστρων
hastening the(-ones) indeed having-been-first to-be-demolished of-the fortresses
ἀνεγεῖραι αὖθις καὶ εἰς τὸ πρότερον ἀποκαταστῆσαι
to-raise again and to the former to-restore
σχῆμα καὶ ἀντίποινα τῶν παρ' αὐτοῦ πεπραγμένων ἐκ
form and requital of-the by him done in
περιουσίας κατ' αὐτοῦ διαπράξασθαι. ἀπάρας οὖν τῆς
abundance against him to-accomplish having-set-out then from-the
μεγαλοπόλεως καὶ τὸ Δαφνούτιον καταλαβών (πόλις δὲ
great-city and — Daphnoution having-reached city and

τοῦτο παλαιὰ τῆς Κωνσταντίνου σταδίους ἀπέχουσα
this ancient from-the(-city) of-Constantine stades distant
τεσσαράκοντα) καὶ τοὺς μήπω ἐφθακότας τῶν συγγενῶν
forty and those not-yet having-arrived of-the kinsmen
ἐκδεχόμενος αὐτοῦ που ἐγκαρτερεῖ. τῇ γοῦν μετ᾽
awaiting there somewhere he-stays on-the at-any-rate after
αὐτὴν καταλαμβάνει ὁ Διογένης Νικηφόρος πλήρης θυμοῦ
it arrives — Diogenes Nikephoros full of-anger
καὶ φρονήματος· τῷ συνήθει δὲ χρώμενος προσωπείῳ τὴν
and of-arrogance the customary and using mask the
ἀλωπεκῆν περιεβέβλητο καὶ τὴν ὄψιν χαριεστέραν διατιθεὶς
fox's-skin he-had-put-on and the face more-gracious arranging
τῷ βασιλεῖ προσφέρεσθαι ἐλευθέρως ἐσχηματίζετο. τὴν
toward-the emperor to-bear-himself freely he-pretended the
μέντοι σκηνὴν οὐ τῷ συνήθει ἀποστήματι τοῦ βασιλικοῦ
however tent not at-the usual distance from-the imperial
κοιτῶνος ἐπήξατο, ἀλλ᾽ ἀγχοῦ τῆς πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα
bedchamber he-pitched but near the to the emperor
εἰσαγούσης ἀνόδου. Μανουὴλ δὲ ὁ Φιλοκάλης τοῦτο
leading ascent Manuel and — Philokales this
θεασάμενος καὶ ὡς ὑπὸ κεραυνοῦ βληθείς, ἐπεὶ οὐδὲ
having-beheld and as by thunderbolt struck since not-even
τὰ παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ μελετώμενα τοῦτον διελάνθανεν, αὖος
the(-things) by him planned him escaped dried-up
παραχρῆμα εἱστήκει. μόλις δὲ συναγαγὼν τὸ φρονοῦν τῆς
immediately he-stood hardly and having-collected the thinking-part of-the
ψυχῆς πρόσεισιν εὐθὺς τῷ βασιλεῖ καί φησιν "οὐχ ἁπλοῦν
soul he-goes at-once to-the emperor and says not simple
τὸ γινόμενόν μοι δοκεῖ, ἀλλὰ δέος μοι ἔπεισι, μή
the(-thing) happening to-me seems but fear me comes-upon lest
τι νυκτὸς κατὰ τῆς σῆς νεωτερισθῇ βασιλείας. ῥήμασι
something at-night against the your be-attempted majesty with-words

γοῦν τισι πρὸς αὐτὸν χρησάμενος ἐκεῖθεν μεταβῆναι
at-any-rate some to him having-used from-there to-move
τοῦτον παρασκευάσω.” ὁ δέ, ὁποῖος ἐκεῖνος ἀκατάσειστον
him I-will-arrange he and such that-man unshakable
ὡς ἐπίπαν ἔχων τὸ φρόνημα, οὐδαμοῦ παρεχώρει τοῦ
as on-the-whole having the spirit nowhere yielded the
ἔργου τῷ Φιλοκάλῃ. πολλὰ δὲ τούτου βιαζομένου “ἔα”
deed — to-Philokales much and him pressing let-be
φησίν, “οὐ χρὴ πρόφασιν τοῦτον ἐξ ἡμῶν ἐσχηκέναι.
he-says not it-is-right a-pretext him from us to-have
ἔστω τῆς καθ’ ἡμῶν μελέτης αὐτὸς ὁ αἴτιος πρός τε θεὸν
let-be of-the against us plot he the cause before both God
καὶ ἀνθρώπους.” ἀχθόμενος δὲ ὁ Φιλοκάλης καὶ τύπτων
and men being-vexed and — Philokales and striking
τὰς χεῖρας μεματαιωμένον τε τὸν βασιλέα ἀποκαλῶν
the hands deluded and the emperor calling
μεθίστατο. οὐ πολὺ τὸ ἐν μέσῳ, καὶ τοῦ βασιλέως σὺν
withdrew not long the in middle and the emperor with
αὐτῇ τῇ βασιλίδι ἀπεριμερίμνως ὑπνώττοντος περὶ μέσην
the-very the empress carelessly sleeping about middle
φυλακὴν τῆς νυκτὸς ἄνεισιν ὁ Διογένης ξίφος ὑπὸ τὴν
watch of-the night goes-up — Diogenes a-sword under the
μάλην φέρων καὶ ἐπιβεβηκὼς τῶν οὐδῶν ἔστη. κοιμωμένῳ
armpit carrying and having-stepped-on the thresholds stood for-sleeping
γὰρ τούτῳ τῷ βασιλεῖ οὔτε θύραι ἐπεζυγοῦντο οὔτ’ ἐκτὸς
for this the emperor neither doors were-barred nor outside
ἐπηγρύπνει φρουρά. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν τὰ περὶ τὸν
kept-watch guard but these(-things) indeed the(-affairs) about the
βασιλέα· τὸν δέ γε Νικηφόρον θεία τις τῷ τότε
emperor — and at-least Nikephoros divine some at-the then(-time)
δύναμις ἀπεῖρξε τοῦ ἐγχειρήματος. τὴν παιδίσκην γὰρ
power restrained from-the undertaking the maidservant for

θεασάμενον τὴν τὸν ἀέρα ἀναρριπίζουσαν καὶ πόρρω
having-seen the(-one) the air fanning and far
ποι τοὺς κώνωπας ἀπωθουμένην τοῦ τῶν βασιλέων
somewhere the gnats driving-away from-the of-the sovereigns
χρωτὸς παραχρῆμα ὑπό τε τρόμος ἔλλαβε γυῖα ὠχρός
skin immediately under both trembling seized limbs pallor
τέ μιν εἶλε παρειάς, κατὰ τὸν ποιητὴν φάναι, ἐς νέωτα
and him seized cheeks according-to the poet to-say for tomorrow
τὸν φόνον ἀναρτήσαντα. καὶ οὗτος μὲν τὴν ἀπροφάσιστον
the murder having-deferred and this-man indeed the unprovoked
τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος σφαγὴν ἐμελέτα διὰ παντός, ἐκεῖνον
of-the autocrat slaughter planned through all that-one
δὲ οὐδὲν τῶν μελετηθέντων κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ διελάνθανε.
and nothing of-the(-things) planned against him escaped
ταχὺ γὰρ ἡ παιδίσκη τούτῳ προσελθοῦσα τὸ δρᾶμα
quickly for the maidservant to-him having-come the drama
ἀπήγγειλε. τοιγαροῦν ἐκεῖθεν τῇ μετ᾽ αὐτὴν ἀπάρας τῆς
reported accordingly from-there on-the after it having-set-out the
προκειμένης ὁδοῦ εἶχετο τὸν ἀγνοοῦντα μὲν ὑποκρινόμενος,
proposed road held the not-knowing indeed pretending
οἰκονομῶν δὲ καὶ τὰ κατ᾽ αὐτὸν τοσοῦτον, ὡς
managing and also the(-affairs) concerning him so-much as
ἅμα μὲν καὶ φυλάττεσθαι, ἅμα δὲ καὶ μηδ᾽ ἡντιναοῦν
at-once indeed also to-be-on-guard at-once and also not-even any-whatever
εὔλογον λαβὴν διδόναι τῷ Νικηφόρῳ. ἐν τοῖς μέρεσιν
reasonable handle to-give — to-Nikephoros in the parts
οὖν γενόμενος τῶν Σερρῶν, ἐπεὶ ὁ Πορφυρογέννητος
then having-come — of-Serrai since the Porphyrogennetos
Κωνσταντῖνος ὁ Δούκας συνεπόμενος τῷ αὐτοκράτορι
Constantine the Doukas following the autocrat
ᾐτεῖτο εἰς τὸν ἴδιον ἀγρὸν καταλῦσαι ἐπιτερπῆ ὄντα
asked to the own estate to-lodge delightful being

καὶ ὕδασι ψυχροῖς καὶ ποτίμοις κατάρρυτον καὶ
and with-waters cold and drinkable well-watered and
ἀποχρῶντα οἰκήματα ἔχοντα πρὸς τὴν βασιλέως ὑποδοχήν
sufficient dwellings having for the of-emperor reception
(Πεντήγοστις τούτῳ τὸ ὄνομα), ὁ βασιλεὺς ὑπείξας
Pentegostis to-it the name the emperor having-yielded
τῷ τούτου θελήματι αὐτοῦ που κατέλυσεν. ἀλλ' οὐδὲ
to-the his will there somewhere lodged but not-even
τῇ μετ' αὐτὴν βουλομένῳ ἐξελθεῖν ὁ Πορφυρογέννητος
on-the after it him-wishing to-go-out the Porphyrogennetos
συνεχώρει· ἠξίου δὲ μᾶλλον ἐγκαρτερῆσαι καὶ ἔτι ἐφ'
allowed asked but rather to-stay also still for
ᾧ ἀνακτήσασθαί τε ἑαυτὸν τῆς ὁδοιπορίας καὶ τὸ
which to-recover both himself from-the journey and the
σῶμα τοῦ κονιορτοῦ καθᾶραι λουσάμενον. εὐτρέπιστο
body from-the dust to-clean having-bathed had-been-made-ready
γὰρ αὐτῷ ἤδη καὶ τὰ πρὸς εὐωχίαν δαψιλῆ. ὁ δὲ
for for-him already also the(-things) for feasting abundant he and
καὶ αὖθις τῷ τοῦ Πορφυρογεννήτου ὑπεῖξε θελήματι. ὡς
also again to-the of-the Porphyrogennetos yielded will as
δὲ λουσάμενον καὶ τοῦ βαλανείου ἐξελήλυθότα τοῦτον
and having-bathed and from-the bath having-come-out him
μεμαθήκοι Νικηφόρος ὁ Διογένης πάλαι τυραννιῶν,
had-learned Nikephoros the Diogenes long-ago aiming-at-tyranny
ἐπιτηρῶν δὲ εἴ που καὶ αὐτόχειρ δυνηθῇ
watching and whether somehow also murderer-by-his-own-hand he-might-be-able
τούτου γενέσθαι, περιζωσάμενος τὸν ἀκινάκην εἰσῄει ὡς
of-him to-become having-girded-on the scimitar went-in as
δῆθεν ἐκ θήρας ἐπανιὼν κατὰ τὸ σύνηθες. τοῦτον οὖν
supposedly from hunt returning according-to the custom him then
ὁ Τατίκιος θεασάμενος καὶ πάλαι γινώσκων τὸ παρ' αὐτοῦ
— Tatikios having-beheld and long-ago knowing the by him

μελετώμενον ἀπώσατο ἐπειπὼν “ἵνα τί ἀσυντάκτως οὕτως
planned pushed-away having-said that what disorderedly thus
καὶ ξιφήρης εἰσέρχῃ; καιρὸς βαλανείου καὶ οὐχὶ ὁδοιπορίας
and sword-bearing do-you-enter time of-bath and not of-journey
οὐδὲ θήρας ἢ μάχης ἐστίν”. ὁ δὲ τοῦ σκοποῦ διημαρτηκὼς
nor of-hunt or of-battle is he and of-the aim having-failed
ὑπεχώρησεν. ὑπολαβὼν δὲ ὡς ἤδη ἐπέγνωσται (δεινὸς
withdrew having-supposed and that already he-has-been-detected terrible
γὰρ ἔλεγχος ἡ συνείδησις) δρασμῷ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σωτηρίαν
for refutation the conscience by-flight the own safety
πραγματεύσασθαι ἐβουλεύετο καὶ εἰς τοὺς ἐν Χριστουπόλει
to-achieve planned and to the in Christoupolis
ἀγροὺς τῆς βασιλίδος Μαρίας ἢ εἰς τὸν Πέρνικον ἢ τὸν
estates of-the empress Maria or to — Pernikos or —
Πετριτζὸν προσχωρῆσαι κἀκεῖθεν αὖθις πρὸς τὰ
Petritzos to-go-over and-from-there again with-regard-to the(-things)
συμπίπτοντα τὰ κατ᾽ αὐτὸν εὖ διαθέσθαι. προεφθάκει
befalling the concerning him well to-arrange had-been-first
γὰρ ἡ βασιλὶς Μαρία τοῦτον προσλαβέσθαι ἀδελφὸν
for the empress Maria him to-take-up brother
ὄντα μητρόθεν τοῦ προβεβασιλευκότος ἀνδρὸς αὐτῆς
being on-the-mother's-side of-the predecessor-on-the-throne husband her
Μιχαὴλ τοῦ Δούκα, κἂν τὰ ἐς πατέρας διήλλαττον.
Michael the Doukas even-if the(-things) in fathers differed
καὶ ὁ μὲν βασιλεὺς τριταῖος ἐκεῖθεν ἔξεισι· τὸν
and the indeed emperor on-the-third-day from-there goes-out —
δὲ Κωνσταντῖνον αὐτοῦ που καταλελοίπει ῥᾳστώνης
and Constantine there somewhere had-left of-rest
χάριν δεδιὼς τὸ ἁπαλὸν καὶ ἀσύνηθες τοῦ νεανίου τότε
for-the-sake fearing the tenderness and unaccustomedness of-the youth then
πρώτως τῆς ἐνεγκαμένης πρὸς ἐκστρατείαν ἐξεληλυθότος.
first from-the land-that-bore-him on campaign having-gone-out

ἦν γὰρ μονογενὴς τῇ μητρί. καὶ ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ
he-was for only-begotten to-the mother and the autocrat
σφόδρα τοῦ νεανίσκου κηδόμενος πάσης ἀνέσεως συνεχώρει
very the youth caring-for of-every relaxation allowed
ἐπαπολαύειν αὐτὸν σὺν τῇ βασιλίδι μητρί, ἅμα δὲ καὶ
to-enjoy him with the empress mother at-once and also
ὡς ἴδιον ἀπαρτὶ τέκνον ἐξόχως φιλῶν τοῦτον.
as own exactly child exceedingly loving him

XLIX · NIKEPHOROS DIOGENES

Anna goes back to the beginning. Romanos Diogenes left two sons, Leo and Nikephoros, whom their brother Michael stripped of their red shoes and exiled with their mother Eudokia. Alexios took them in, treated them as his own children, and gave Nikephoros Crete. Leo was content, but Nikephoros plotted, and Alexios, learning of it, only grew kinder. Nikephoros courted the magnates. Sharp, sweet-spoken, unswerving only in his aim at the throne, and a fine horseman and archer, he won even the panhypersebastos Michael Taronites.

Ἀλλ' ἵνα μὴ συγκεχυμένος ὁ λόγος προΐῃ, τὰ κατὰ
but that not confused the account may-proceed the(-affairs) concerning
τὸν Διογένην Νικηφόρον ἐξ ἀρχῆς αὐτῆς ἱστορείτω.
— Diogenes Nikephoros from beginning itself let-it-recount
ὅπως μὲν οὖν ὁ τούτου πατὴρ Ῥωμανὸς εἰς τὴν
how indeed then the his father Romanos to the
βασίλειον ἀνήχθη περιωπὴν καὶ ὁποῖον τέλος ἔσχε τὰ
imperial was-raised eminence and what-sort end had the(-affairs)
κατ' αὐτόν, διαφόροις τῶν ἱστοριογράφων ἐμέλησε,
concerning him to-various of-the historians was-a-care
κἀκεῖθεν ἐξέσται τὰ περὶ τούτου ἀναλέγεσθαι
and-from-there it-will-be-possible the(-things) about this to-read

τοῖς βουλομένοις. ἐπὶ παισὶ δὲ ὅμως τετελευτήκει τῷ
for-those wishing on sons and nevertheless he-had-died —
τε Λέοντι καὶ τῷ Νικηφόρῳ. ὁ δὲ αὐτοκράτωρ Ἀλέξιος
both to-Leo and — to-Nikephoros the and autocrat Alexios
ἐκ προοιμίων τῆς αὐτοῦ ἀναρρήσεως παραλαβὼν τούτους
from the-outset of-the his proclamation having-taken-over them
ἰδιώτας ἐκ βασιλέων (καὶ γὰρ ἅμα τῷ τῆς βασιλείας
private-men from emperors and for as-soon-as the of-the empire
ἐπιβῆναι ὁ Μιχαὴλ καὶ αὐτάδελφος αὐτῶν αὐτοὺς μὲν
to-mount — Michael even own-brother their them indeed
τῶν ἐρυθρῶν ἀπογυμνοῖ πεδίλων καὶ τὰ στέφη τούτων
of-the red strips shoes and the crowns their
ἀφαιρεῖται καὶ ὑπερορίαν ξὺν τῇ μητρὶ αὐτῶν τῇ βασιλίσσῃ
takes-away and to-exile with the mother their the empress
Εὐδοκίᾳ εἰς τὴν μονὴν τοῦ Κυπερούδη καταψηφίζεται)
Eudokia to the monastery — of-Kyperoudes condemns
παντοίας θεραπείας ἠξίου τὸ μέν τι δι'
of-every-kind care he-deemed-them-worthy partly indeed somewhat for
ὧ πεπόνθασιν οἰκτείρων αὐτούς, τὸ δέ τι καὶ
what they-had-suffered pitying them partly and somewhat also
τοὺς νέους ὁρῶν κατά τε σώματος ὥραν καὶ ῥώμην
the young seeing in both of-body bloom and strength
διαφέροντας τῶν πολλῶν, χνοάζοντας μὲν καὶ ἀρτιφυεῖς
surpassing the many with-down indeed and newly-grown
τὸ γένειον, ὑψηλοὺς καὶ ἰσομέτρους ὥσπερ ὑπὸ κανόνα
in-the beard tall and equal-sized as-if by rule
τὸ μέγεθος καὶ αὐτὸ τὸ νεοτήσιον ἤδη ἐκφύοντας ἄνθος
in-the size and itself the youthful already putting-forth bloom
ἐξ αὐτῆς τε ὄψεως τὸ θυμοειδὲς αὐτῶν καὶ γενναῖον τοῖς
from itself both look the high-spirited their and noble to-those
μὴ διὰ πάθος τυφλώττουσιν ἀριδήλως ἐμφαίνοντας καὶ
not because-of passion blinded clearly showing and

σκύμνους οἷον λέοντος· καὶ ἄλλως δέ, ὁποῖος ἐκεῖνος μὴ
cubs as-it-were of-a-lion and otherwise too such that-man not
ἐπιπολαίως ὁρῶν μήτε πρὸς τὴν ἀλήθειαν μύων μηδὲ
superficially seeing nor to the truth shutting-his-eyes nor
πάθεσιν ἁλισκόμενος ἐπιψόγοις, ἀλλὰ ταλαντεύων τὸ ὂν ἐν
by-passions being-caught blameworthy but weighing the being in
ἰσορρόπῳ στάθμῃ τῆς συνειδήσεως καὶ τὸ ὕψος ἐξ οὗπερ
equal balance of-the conscience and the height from which
ἐκπεπτώκεσαν λογιζόμενος ἐνηγκαλίζετο ἴσα καὶ τέκνοις
they-had-fallen reckoning embraced equally also to-children
ἰδίοις, τί μὲν οὐ λέγων, τί δὲ οὐ πράττων ἀγαθὸν
own what indeed not saying what and not doing good
ἐς αὐτούς, τί δὲ οὐ προμηθευόμενος; κἂν ὁ φθόνος
toward them what and not providing even-if the envy
βάλλων αὐτοὺς τοῖς τοξεύμασιν οὐκ ἀνίει. ἐκ πολλῶν
striking them with-the arrows not ceased from many
γὰρ κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ἐρεθιζόμενος ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ αὐτὸς μᾶλλον
for against them being-provoked the autocrat he rather
πάσης αὐτοὺς ἐπικουρίας ἠξίου ἱλαρὸν ἐνατενίζων ἀεὶ
of-all them assistance deemed-worthy cheerfully gazing always
καὶ ἐνωραϊζόμενος οἷον ἐπ᾽ αὐτοῖς ξυμβουλεύων τε διὰ
and taking-delight as-it-were in them advising and through
παντὸς τὰ συνοίσοντα. ἄλλος μὲν γὰρ ἴσως καὶ
all the(-things) going-to-help other indeed for perhaps also
ὑπόπτους ἂν ἐλογίσατο τούτους καὶ ἐκποδὼν διὰ
suspect — would-have-reckoned them and out-of-the-way through
παντοίας μεθόδου ἐξ αὐτῆς ἀρχῆς ποιῆσαι ἐσπούδασεν
every-kind method from itself beginning to-make would-have-hastened
ἄν· οὗτος δὲ ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ τὰς τῶν πολλῶν κατὰ
— this but the autocrat the of-the many against
τῶν νέων εἰσηγήσεις παρ᾽ οὐδὲν ἐτίθετο ἐξόχως τούτους
the young suggestions at nothing set exceedingly them

φιλῶν, τὴν μέντοι μητέρα τούτων Εὐδοκίαν καὶ δωρεῶν
loving the however mother their Eudokia both of-gifts
ἀξιῶν καὶ τιμῆς τῆς προσηκούσης βασιλίσσαις μὴ
deeming-worthy and of-honor the befitting to-empresses not
ἀποστερῶν. καὶ αὐτῷ δὴ τῷ Νικηφόρῳ τὴν τῆς νήσου
depriving and very indeed — to-Nikephoros the of-the island
Κρήτης ἀρχὴν ἀνέθετο εἰς ἐνδιαίτημα ἴδιον. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα
Crete rule he-entrusted for residence own but these(-things)
μὲν ὁ βασιλεύς· τούτων δὲ ὁ μὲν Λέων φρονήματος
indeed the emperor of-these and — indeed Leo of-mind
ὢν ἀγαθοῦ καὶ γνώμης ἐλευθέρας, ὁρῶν δὲ καὶ τὴν
being good and of-judgment free seeing and also the
βασιλέως εἰς αὐτοὺς εὐμένειαν ἔστεργε τὴν λαχοῦσαν
of-emperor toward them goodwill was-content-with the allotted
ἐπαναπαυόμενος οἷον ἐπὶ τοῖς παροῦσι κατὰ τὸν
resting as-it-were on the present-things according-to the(-one)
εἰπόντα "Σπάρταν ἔλαχες, ταύταν κόσμει". ὁ δέ γε
having-said Sparta you-got this adorn — and at-least
Νικηφόρος δύσοργος καὶ βαρύμηνις ὢν βυσσοδομεύων κατὰ
Nikephoros ill-tempered and wrathful being plotting-deeply against
τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος καὶ τυραννήσειν μελετῶν οὐκ ἐπαύετο·
the autocrat and to-be-tyrant planning not ceased
ὑποβρύχιον δὲ ὅμως εἶχε τὴν βουλήν. ἤδη δὲ καὶ τοῦ
under-water and nevertheless he-had the plan already and also the
ἔργου ἀπαρξάμενος γνησιώτερόν τισι προσωμίλει. οὐκ
deed having-begun more-sincerely with-some conversed not
ἐλάνθανε τοῦτο τοὺς πλείστους· δι' ὧν καὶ εἰς τὰς
escaped this the most through whom also into the
ἀκοὰς ἔφθανε τοῦ βασιλέως. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς καινόν τι
ears it-reached of-the emperor the and emperor new something
ποιῶν μεταπεμπόμενος τούτους ἐν καιροῖς ἁρμοδίοις οὐκ
doing summoning them at times suitable not

ἐνέφαινε μὲν τὸ ἀκουσθέν, εὐφυῶς δὲ παρῄνει καὶ τὰ
showed indeed the(-thing) heard cleverly but exhorted and the
εἰκότα συνεβούλευε. καὶ ὅσῳ μᾶλλον τῆς ἐπιβουλῆς
fitting-things advised and by-as-much-as more of-the plot
ἐν γνώσει ἐγίνετο, τοσούτῳ μᾶλλον ἐλευθεριώτερον πρὸς
in knowledge he-came by-so-much more more-liberally toward
αὐτοὺς διετίθετο οὕτω βουλόμενος τούτους κερδανεῖν. ἀλλ᾽
them was-disposed thus wishing them to-gain but
ὁ Αἰθίοψ οὐκ ἐλευκαίνετο. ἔμενε γὰρ ὁ αὐτὸς καὶ
the Ethiopian not was-whitened remained for the same and
μετεδίδου τῆς λύμης, ὁπόσοις ἂν προσεπέλασε, τοὺς μὲν
imparted of-the defilement to-as-many-as — he-approached some indeed
δι᾽ ὅρκων, τοὺς δὲ δι᾽ ὑποσχέσεων σφετεριζόμενος.
through oaths others and through promises appropriating
τοῦ μὲν οὖν κοινοῦ τοῦ στρατοῦ οὐ τοσοῦτον ἔμελε τῷ
of-the indeed then common of-the army not so-much was-a-care —
Νικηφόρῳ· ἤδη γὰρ ἅπαντες πρὸς αὐτὸν ἀπονενεύκασιν·
to-Nikephoros already for all to him had-turned
ἀλλ᾽ ὅλος πρὸς τοὺς μεγιστᾶνας ἀπονενευκὼς τῶν
but wholly to the magnates having-turned of-the
τε ἡγεμόνων καὶ τῶν τῇ συγκλήτῳ κατειλεγμένων
both leaders and of-the in-the senate enrolled
προκρίτων ἀνδρῶν πολλὴν φροντίδα ποιούμενος ὑπεποιεῖτο
eminent men much care making won-over
αὐτούς. ἦν γὰρ τὴν φρένα μὲν ὀξύτερος ἀμφιστόμου
them he-was for in-the mind indeed sharper than-a-two-edged
ξίφους, στάσιμος δὲ οὐδαμῶς, εἰ μὴ ὅσον πρὸς τὸ
sword steadfast and in-no-way if not as-far-as for the
τυραννήσειν τὸ ἀμετάθετον ἐνεδείκνυτο· μελιχρὸς ἐν
to-be-tyrant the unchangeable he-showed honey-sweet in
λόγοις, ἐν συναναστροφαῖς ἡδύς, ταπεινοφροσύνην μὲν
words in companionship pleasant humility indeed

ὡς ἀλωπεκῆν ποτε περιβαλλόμενος, ἔστιν οὗ καὶ τὸ
as a-fox's-skin sometimes putting-on there-is where also the
θυμοειδὲς καθάπερ λέων ἐμφαίνων ποτέ, ῥωμαλέος καὶ
high-spirited like a-lion showing sometimes strong and
πρὸς Γίγαντας ἐγκαυχώμενος ἁμιλλᾶσθαι, σιτόχρους τὴν
against Giants boasting to-contend wheat-colored in-the
ὄψιν, εὐρὺς τὰ στέρνα, ὑπερωμίας τῶν τότε καιροῦ
face broad in-the chest by-a-head-taller-than the then of-time
ὄντων ἀνδρῶν. εἰ δὲ σφαιρίζοντα τοῦτον εἶδέ τις, εἰ δὲ
being men if and playing-ball him saw someone if and
ἱππαζόμενον, εἰ δὲ ὀϊστὸν πέμποντα ἢ δόρυ κραδαίνοντα
riding if and an-arrow sending or a-spear brandishing
καὶ ἱππασίας ποιούμενον, θαῦμα ἐδόκει καινὸν θεᾶσθαι
and charges making a-wonder be-seemed new to-see
ἐκεχήνει τε καὶ μόνον οὐ πεπηγὼς ἦν. διὰ τοῦτο καὶ
he-gaped both and only not rooted was because-of this also
μᾶλλον τὴν τῶν πολλῶν ἐπεσπᾶτο εὔνοιαν. τοσοῦτον δὲ τὸ
more the of-the many he-drew goodwill so-far and the
σπουδαζόμενον αὐτῷ προῄει, ὡς καὶ αὐτὸν τὸν ἐπ᾽ ἀδελφῇ
being-pursued by-him advanced that even himself the on sister
τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος γαμβρὸν Μιχαὴλ τὸν Ταρωνίτην τῷ
of-the autocrat brother-in-law Michael the Taronites with-the
τοῦ πανυπερσεβάστου τιμώμενον ἀξιώματι ὑποποιήσασθαι.
of-the panhypersebastos honored rank to-win-over

L · THE PLOT UNCOVERED

Alexios weighs Diogenes' plotting against his love for him, and fears for his own life. Diogenes, failing to get a swift horse from the Porphyrogennetos, puts off his flight. On the feast of Saint Theodore, Alexios has his brother Adrian, Diogenes' brother-in-law, urge him to confess, but he denies everything. Adrian reminds him of the half-Armenian, half-Turkish assassin who once could not draw his sword at the polo ground and whom Alexios freed and rewarded, refusing to banish him, since if the Lord does not guard the city, the guards watch in vain.

Ἀλλ᾽ ἐπανακτέον τὸν λόγον αὖθις ὅθεν ἀπερρύη καὶ
but one-must-bring-back the account again whence it-flowed-away and
καθ᾽ εἱρμὸν ἑκτέον τῆς διηγήσεως. ὁ μὲν οὖν
in sequence one-must-hold-to the narration the indeed then
αὐτοκράτωρ τοῖς λογισμοῖς ἀνατρέχων, ἐξ οὗπερ τὴν
autocrat in-the reasonings running-back from when the
καθ᾽ ἑαυτοῦ τοῦ Διογένους μελέτην ἐπέγνωκεν, καὶ
against himself — of-Diogenes plan he-had-recognized and
ὅπως ἐξ αὐτῆς ἀρχῆς τῆς αὐτοῦ ἀναρρήσεως ἀμφοῖν
how from itself beginning of-the his proclamation both
ἐχρήσατο τοῖν ἀδελφοῖν ὁπόσης τε φιλοφροσύνης καὶ
he-had-treated the brothers of-how-much both kindness and
κηδεμονίας ἐπὶ τοσούτοις ἔτεσιν αὐτοὺς ἠξίου, κἂν
care for so-many years them he-deemed-worthy even-if
οὐδὲν τούτων τὴν τοῦ Νικηφόρου γνώμην ἐπὶ τὸ βέλτιον
nothing of-these the — of-Nikephoros mind to the better
μετηλλοίωσεν, εἰς ἀμηχανίαν ἐνέπιπτε. ταῦτ᾽ οὖν
changed into helplessness fell these(-things) then
ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀναλογιζόμενος πάντα καὶ ὅπως μετὰ τὸ
the emperor reckoning-up all and how after the
σφαλῆναι αὖθις εἰσήει, ὅπως ἀπώσθη παρὰ τοῦ
to-have-failed again he-entered how he-was-pushed-away by —

Τατικίου, καὶ γνοὺς ὡς τὸ φονουργὸν σιδήριον θήγων
Tatikios and having-known that the murderous iron whetting
κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ αἵμασιν ἀναιτίοις σπεύδει χρᾶναι τὰς χεῖρας
against him with-blood innocent he-hastens to-stain the hands
καὶ ὁ τέως ἐφεδρεύων καὶ νυκτὸς ἐπιτηρῶν τὸν
and the(-one) for-the-time lying-in-wait and at-night watching the
φόνον τελέσαι ἀπαρακαλύπτως τοῦτον ἤδη ἐπισπεύδει,
murder to-accomplish openly this already hastens
πολλοῖς ἐκυμαίνετο λογισμοῖς. ἤθελε μὲν οὖν οὐδαμῶς τὸν
with-many surged reasonings he-wished indeed then in-no-way —
Διογένην μετελεύσεσθαι δι᾽ ὃν πρὸς αὐτὸν ἐγκάρδιον
Diogenes to-prosecute because-of which toward him heartfelt
ἐκέκτητο πόθον ἐξόχως τὸν ἄνδρα φιλῶν· ἁπαξαπλῶς δὲ
he-had-acquired longing exceedingly the man loving in-a-word and
ἅπαντα συνελὼν ὅπη τε προβήσεται τὸ δεινὸν ἐννοῶν,
all having-summed-up where and will-go-on the terror considering
ἐπεὶ τὸν περὶ ψυχῆς κίνδυνον αὐτῷ ἐφιστάμενον ἔγνω,
since the about life danger for-him impending he-knew
πλήττεται τὴν καρδίαν. καὶ εἰς ἓν τὸ πᾶν συναγαγὼν
is-struck in-the heart and into one the whole having-collected
δεῖν ἔκρινεν κατασχεῖν τὸν Νικηφόρον. ἐκεῖνος δὲ
to-be-needful judged to-seize — Nikephoros that-one and
τὸν μελετώμενον ἐπισπεύδων δρασμὸν καὶ βουλόμενος
the planned hastening flight and wishing
νυκτὸς τῆς πρὸς Χριστούπολιν φερούσης ἅψασθαι ἑσπέρας
at-night the to Christoupolis leading(-road) to-take in-the-evening
ἀποστείλας εἰς τὸν Πορφυρογέννητον Κωνσταντῖνον τὸν
having-sent to the Porphyrogennetos Constantine the
δοθέντα αὐτῷ παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως ταχυδρόμον ἵππον ᾐτεῖτο
given to-him by the emperor swift horse asked
ἀποχαρίσασθαί οἱ. ὁ δὲ ἀνένευε λέγων μὴ δύνασθαι
to-make-a-gift-of to-him he and refused saying not to-be-able

δῶρον τοιοῦτον αὐθήμερον τοῦ βασιλέως ἀποποιήσασθαι.
gift such on-the-same-day of-the emperor to-renounce
ἐπεὶ δὲ πρωΐας ὁ βασιλεὺς τῆς προκειμένης ὁδοῦ ἥψατο,
since and in-the-morning the emperor the proposed road took
συνείπετο τούτῳ καὶ ὁ Διογένης τοῦ διασκεδάζοντος βουλὰς
followed him also — Diogenes the scattering plans
καὶ λογισμοὺς ἀθετοῦντος λαῶν θεοῦ τοῦτον σφήλαντος
and reasonings setting-aside of-peoples God him having-tripped-up
γνωσιμαχοῦντα μὲν τὸν δρασμόν, ὑπερτιθέμενον δὲ ὥραν
changing-his-mind indeed the flight putting-off and hour
ἐξ ὥρας, ὁποῖα τὰ τοῦ θεοῦ κρίματα. κατασκηνώσας
from hour such-as the — of-God judgments having-encamped
οὖν ἀγχοῦ τῶν Σερρῶν, ὅπου καὶ ὁ βασιλεύς, αὐτὸς μὲν
then near — Serrai where also the emperor he indeed
τῶν συνήθων εἴχετο λογισμῶν ὡς πεφωραμένος ἤδη καὶ
to-the customary held reasonings as detected already and
δεδιὼς τὸ μέλλον. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς μετακαλεῖται τηνικαῦτα
fearing the future the and emperor summons then
τὸν ἴδιον ἀδελφὸν Ἀδριανὸν καὶ μέγαν δομέστικον κατ'
the own brother Adrian and grand domestic on
αὐτὴν τὴν ἑσπέραν, ἐν ᾗ καὶ ἡ τοῦ μεγαλομάρτυρος
itself the evening on which also the of-the great-martyr
Θεοδώρου ἐτελεῖτο μνήμη. καὶ κοινοῦται αὖθις τούτῳ
Theodore was-celebrated memorial and communicates again to-him
τὰ τοῦ Διογένους μηδὲ πρότερον ἀγνοοῦντι, ὡς
the(-affairs) — of-Diogenes not-even before not-knowing how
ξιφήρης εἰσῄει, ὡς ἀπώσθη τῆς θύρας, ὡς τὸ
sword-bearing he-entered how he-was-pushed-away from-the door how the
πάλαι βεβουλευμένον εἰ δυνατὸν ἵσταται σπεύδων τελέσαι.
long-ago planned if possible he-stands hastening to-accomplish
τηνικαῦτα οὖν ἐπισκήπτει τῷ δομεστίκῳ ὁ βασιλεὺς
at-that-time then enjoins on-the domestic the emperor

τὸν Διογένην εἰς τὴν ἰδίαν μετακαλέσασθαι σκηνὴν καὶ
— *Diogenes to the own to-summon tent and*
διὰ μειλιχίων λόγων καὶ παντοίων ὑποσχέσεων πεῖσαι
through soothing words and all-kinds promises to-persuade
ἀνακαλύψαι ἅπαντα τὰ βεβουλευμένα ἀπάθειαν αὐτῷ
to-uncover all the(-things) planned immunity to-him
ὑπισχνουμένῳ καὶ ἀμνηστίαν τοῦ λοιποῦ τῶν κακῶν,
promising and amnesty for-the rest of-the evils
εἰ μηδ᾽ ὁτιοῦν ἀποκρύψειεν, ἀλλὰ καὶ τοὺς συνίστορας
if not-even anything he-should-hide but also the accomplices
ἐξείποι ἅπαντας. ὁ δὲ ἀθυμίας πλήρης γενόμενος ὅμως
should-tell all he and of-despondency full having-become nevertheless
ἐπλήρου τὸ κελευσθέν. ποτὲ μὲν οὖν ἀπειλῶν, ὁτὲ
fulfilled the(-thing) ordered at-times indeed then threatening at-times
δὲ ὑπισχνούμενος, ὁτὲ δὲ καὶ συμβουλεύων οὐκ ἔπειθε
and promising at-times and also advising not he-persuaded
τὸν Διογένην ὅλως οὐδ᾽ ὁτιοῦν τῶν βεβουλευμένων
— *Diogenes at-all not-even anything of-the(-things) planned*
ἀνακαλύψαι. τί τὸ ἐπὶ τούτοις; ἤχθετο μὲν ὁ μέγας
to-uncover what the(-thing) at these-things was-vexed indeed the grand
δομέστικος καὶ ἠνιᾶτο, οὗ κακῶν φέρεται ὁ Διογένης,
domestic and was-grieved to-what of-evils is-borne — Diogenes
στοχαζόμενος. ἔσχε γὰρ τοῦτον προφθάσας ὁ Διογένης
guessing had for him having-been-first — Diogenes
γαμβρὸν ἐπὶ τῇ ὑστάτῃ τῶν ἑτεροθαλῶν αὐτοῦ ἀδελφῶν.
as-brother-in-law on the youngest of-the half-blood his sisters
ἔνθεν τοι καὶ μετὰ δακρύων ἐκλιπαρῶν αὐτὸν οὐκ ἀνίει·
whence surely also with tears entreating him not ceased
ἔπειθε δὲ οὐδαμῶς, κἂν αὐτὸς ἐνέκειτο ἀναμιμνήσκων
persuaded but in-no-way even-if he pressed reminding
ἅμα καὶ τῶν ὄπισθεν. σφαιρίζοντι γάρ ποτε
at-the-same-time also of-the(-things) behind playing-ball for once

τῷ αὐτοκράτορι κατὰ τὸ ἐν τῷ μεγάλῳ παλατίῳ
the autocrat at the in the great palace
ἱππηλάσιον ἀνήρ τις βάρβαρος ἐξ Ἀρμενίων καὶ
riding-ground man a-certain barbarian from Armenians and
Τούρκων φὺς ξίφος ἔσωθεν τῶν ἀμφίων φέρων, ἐπὰν
Turks sprung a-sword inside the garments carrying when
τὸν αὐτοκράτορα τῶν συσφαιριζόντων ἀνασειράσαντα
the autocrat from-the fellow-players having-reined-in
τὸν χαλινὸν ἀπολειφθέντα ἐθεάσατο ἐφ' ᾧ πνευστιῶντα
the bridle left-behind he-saw for which panting
τὸν ἵππον ἀναψῦξαι, πρόσεισι μὲν τῷ αὐτοκράτορι
the horse to-refresh goes indeed to-the autocrat
γονυπετῶν ἅμα καὶ αἰτεῖσθαι ὑποκρινόμενος. ὁ δὲ
kneeling at-the-same-time and to-ask pretending he and
ἀνασειράζει τὸν ἵππον εὐθὺς καὶ ἐπιστραφεὶς ἐπυνθάνετο,
reins-in the horse at-once and having-turned asked
τί ἂν τὸ αἰτούμενον εἴη. ὁ δὲ φονεὺς μᾶλλον ἢ
what — the request might-be he and murderer rather than
προσαίτης ὢν τὴν χεῖρα ὑποβαλὼν καὶ τοῦ ξίφους
beggar being the hand having-put-under and the sword
ἁψάμενος εἵλκε τοῦ κουλεοῦ. τὸ δ' οὐ συνείπετο τῇ
having-grasped drew from-the scabbard it but not followed the
χειρί. ἅπαξ οὖν καὶ δὶς τοῦ μὲν ξίφους ἀποπειρώμενος,
hand once then and twice the indeed sword trying
τοῖς δὲ χείλεσι ψευδεῖς αἰτήσεις συνείρων ἀπογνοὺς
with-the and lips false requests stringing having-despaired
καὶ προσουδίσας ἑαυτὸν τῇ γῇ ἔκειτο συγγνώμην
and having-thrown himself on-the ground lay pardon
ἐξαιτούμενος. ὁ δὲ πρὸς αὐτὸν στρέψας τὸν χαλινὸν
asking he and toward him having-turned the bridle
ἠρώτα ὅτου χάριν συγγνώμην αἰτεῖ. καὶ ὃς τὸ ξίφος

σὺν αὐτῷ κουλεῷ ἐδείκνυ· στερνοτυπῶν δ᾽ ἅμα καὶ
with the-very scabbard showed beating-his-breast and at-the-same-time also
ἐκθαμβούμενος καὶ βοῶν ἔλεγε "νῦν σε δοῦλον τοῦ θεοῦ
astounded and shouting said now you servant — of-God
γνήσιον ἔγνωκα, νῦν τὸν μέγαν θεὸν σκέποντά σε ἐν
genuine I-know now the great God sheltering you with
ὀφθαλμοῖς τεθέαμαι. ἐπὶ τῇ σφαγῇ γὰρ τῇ σῇ τουτὶ τὸ
eyes I-have-seen for the slaughter for the your this-here the
ξίφος κατασκευάσας καὶ λαβὼν οἴκοθεν ἐνταῦθα πάρειμι
sword having-prepared and having-taken from-home here I-am-present
ἐφ᾽ ᾧ κατὰ τῶν σῶν ὠθῆσαι σπλάγχνων. ἅπαξ δὲ καὶ
for which into the your to-thrust bowels once and also
δὶς καὶ τρὶς τοῦτο σπασάμενος οὐδαμῶς ὑπεῖκον ἔσχον
twice and thrice this having-drawn in-no-way yielding I-had
τῇ βίᾳ τῆς ἐμῆς χειρός." ὁ μὲν οὖν βασιλεὺς καθαπερεὶ
to-the force of-the my hand the indeed then emperor as-if
μηδέν τι τοιοῦτον ἀκηκοὼς ἐπὶ ταὐτοῦ σχήματος
nothing at-all such having-heard on the-same posture
θαρσαλέος εἱστήκει· συνέδραμον δὲ πρὸς αὐτὸν παραχρῆμα
bold stood ran-together and to him immediately
ἅπαντες, οἱ μὲν ἀκροασόμενοι τῶν λεγομένων, οἱ
all some indeed going-to-hear the(-things) said others
δὲ ἐκθαμβούμενοι ἐπὶ τούτοις. οἱ δὲ εὐνούστερον πρὸς
and astounded at these-things others and more-loyally toward
τὸν αὐτοκράτορα διακείμενοι καὶ διασπαράττειν αὐτὸν
the autocrat disposed also to-tear-apart him
ἐπεχείρουν, κἂν αὐτὸς νεύματί τε καὶ χειρὶ καὶ συχνοῖς
attempted even-if he by-nod both and hand and frequent
ἐμβριμήμασιν ἀπεῖργε τῆς ἐγχειρήσεως. τί τὸ ἐπὶ
rebukes restrained from-the attempt what the(-thing) at
τούτοις; παντελοῦς ἀφέσεως ὁ φονεὺς ἐκεῖνος παραχρῆμα
these-things of-complete release the murderer that immediately

τυγχάνει στρατιώτης, οὐκ ἀφέσεως δὲ μόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ
obtains a-soldier not of-release and only but also
μεγίστων δωρεῶν· ἐπὶ τούτοις καὶ ἐλευθερίας παραπολαύει.
of-greatest gifts on these and of-freedom enjoys
πολλοὶ μὲν οὖν τούτων καὶ ὀχλοῦντες ἐνέκειντο τῆς
many indeed then of-them even pestering pressed from-the
βασιλευούσης ἀπελαθῆναι τὸν φονέα ἐκεῖνον· ὁ δ' οὐκ
reigning(-city) to-be-driven-out the murderer that he and not
ἐπείθετο λέγων "ἐὰν μὴ κύριος φυλάξῃ πόλιν, εἰς μάτην
was-persuaded saying if not (the)-Lord should-guard a-city in vain
ἠγρύπνησαν οἱ φυλάσσοντες. λοιπὸν θεῷ ἐπεύχεσθαι
kept-awake those guarding for-the-rest to-God to-pray
δεῖ τὴν ἡμετέραν ἐκεῖθεν ἐξαιτουμένους διαμονὴν καὶ
it-is-necessary the our from-there asking continuance and
φρουράν." ὑπεψιθύριζον οὖν τινες μετὰ τῆς τοῦ Διογένους
guard whispered then some with the — of-Diogenes
γνώμης τῷ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος φόνῳ ἐπικεχειρηκέναι τὸν
mind the of-the autocrat murder to-have-attempted the
ἄνδρα ἐκεῖνον, κἂν ὁ βασιλεὺς οὐδ' ὅλως ὑπεῖχε τούτοις
man that even-if the emperor not-even at-all lent to-these
τοῖς λόγοις τὰ ὦτα, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἐβαρυμηνία κατ' αὐτῶν
the words the ears but rather was-wrathful against them
τοσοῦτον αὐτοῦ ἀνεχόμενος, ὡς μέχρις αὐτοῦ λαιμοῦ τῆς
so-much him bearing-with that as-far-as itself throat the
ἀκωκῆς τοῦ ξίφους φθανούσης τὸν ἀγνοοῦντα ὑποκρίνεσθαι.
point of-the sword reaching the not-knowing to-pretend
ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν οὕτω. τούτων οὖν ἀναμνήσας αὐτὸν
but these(-things) indeed thus of-these then having-reminded him
ὁ μέγας δομέστικος καὶ μηδαμῶς πείθων προσελθὼν
the grand domestic and in-no-way persuading having-gone
ἀπαγγέλλει τῷ βασιλεῖ τὴν τοῦ Διογένους ἔνστασιν καὶ
reports to-the emperor the — of-Diogenes obstinacy and

ὅτι ἔξαρνος παντάπασιν ὁ Διογένης ἐστί, καίτοι πολλὰ
that denying entirely — Diogenes is although much
παρακληθεὶς παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ, ὡς ἔλεγε.
entreated by him as he-said

LI · DIOGENES CONFESSES

Mouzakes takes Diogenes into custody and, exceeding his orders, examines him himself, and Diogenes confesses everything to the secretary Gregory Kamateros. Letters show that the empress Maria knew of the rebellion but tried to stop the murder. Alexios keeps her name secret. Since the whole civil and military body had been corrupted, he sends only Diogenes and Kekaumenos Katakalon to Kaisaropolis, exiles Michael Taronites with another, and spares the rest.

Μεταπέμπεται τοίνυν τὸν Μουζάκην καὶ ἐπισκήπτει
he-summons therefore — Mouzakes and enjoins
ἔνοπλον μεθ᾽ ἑτέρων παραγενόμενον ἀναλαβέσθαι τοῦτον
armed with others having-come to-take him
τῆς τοῦ μεγάλου δομεστίκου σκηνῆς καὶ εἰς τὴν ἰδίαν
from-the of-the grand domestic tent and to the own
ἀπαγαγεῖν κἀκεῖσε μετὰ ἀσφαλείας τηρεῖν δεσμῶν ἄτερ
to-lead-away and-there with security to-keep bonds without
καὶ ἑτέρας κακώσεως. ὁ δ᾽ εὐθὺς τὸ κελευσθὲν
and other ill-treatment he and at-once the(-thing) ordered
ἐπλήρου. καὶ παραλαβὼν τοῦτον εἰς τὴν ἰδίαν ἀπάγει
fulfilled and having-taken him to the own leads-away
σκηνήν. ἐπεὶ δὲ δι᾽ ὅλης νυκτὸς παρακαλῶν αὐτὸν καὶ
tent since and through whole night entreating him and
ξυμβουλεύων οὐ μόνον οὐκ ἔπειθεν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἀναισχύντως
advising not only not he-persuaded but also shamelessly
αὐτῷ προσφερόμενον ἑώρα, θυμοῦ πλησθεὶς καὶ ὃ μὴ
toward-him bearing-himself he-saw with-anger filled also what not

προστέτακτο ἐπιχειρεῖν ἠπείγετο. δοκιμάσας οὖν ἐτάσαι
had-been-ordered to-attempt hastened having-tested then to-examine
αὐτόν, ἤδη δὲ καὶ ἐτάζων, ἐπεὶ οὐδὲ πρὸς τὴν πρώτην
him already and also examining since not-even against the first
προσβολὴν ὁ Διογένης ἀντισχὼν ἅπαντα ἀνομολογῆσαι
attack — Diogenes having-held-out all to-confess
διεβεβαιοῦτο, τῶν μὲν δεσμῶν λύει παραχρῆμα,
affirmed from-the indeed bonds he-looses immediately
καὶ γραφεὺς τηνικαῦτα προκαλεῖται γραφίδα κατέχων·
and a-scribe then is-called a-pen holding
Γρηγόριος δὲ ἦν ὁ Καματηρὸς νεωστὶ προσληφθεὶς καὶ
Gregory and was — Kamateros newly taken-on and
ὑπογραμματεύων τῷ αὐτοκράτορι. καὶ ὁ Διογένης ἅπαντα
serving-as-under-secretary to-the autocrat and — Diogenes all
ἀπαγγέλλων οὐδὲ τὸν φόνον παρεσιώπα. ἀναλαβόμενος
reporting not-even the murder passed-over-in-silence having-taken
δὲ πρωΐας ὁ Μουζάκης τάς τε ἐγγράφους αὐτοῦ
and in-the-morning — Mouzakes the both written his
ὁμολογίας καὶ ἃς ἀναζητήσας εὗρε παρά τινων πρὸς
confessions and which having-sought-out he-found by some to
αὐτὸν πεμπομένας γραφάς, δι' ὧν ἐφαίνετο καὶ ἡ
him sent letters through which appeared also the
βασιλὶς Μαρία τὴν μὲν ἀποστασίαν τοῦ Διογένους
empress Maria the indeed rebellion — of-Diogenes
εἰδέναι, τὸν δὲ φόνον μηδαμῶς συγχωρεῖν ἀλλὰ καὶ μετ'
to-know the but murder in-no-way to-allow but also with
ἐπιμελείας ἀπείργειν αὐτὸν οὐκ ἀπὸ τοῦ φόνου μόνον,
care to-restrain him not from the murder only
ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐξ αὐτῆς ψιλῆς ἐννοίας, κομίζει τῷ βασιλεῖ. ὁ
but also from itself bare thought brings to-the emperor he
δὲ ταύτας ὑπαναγνοὺς καὶ πλείονας τῶν ὑποπτευομένων
and them having-read and more of-the suspected

ἐγγεγραμμένους εὑρηκὼς καὶ τούτους ἐκκρίτους ἅπαντας ἐν
written-in having-found and these picked all in
ἀμηχανίᾳ ἦν. οὐδὲ γὰρ ἔμελε τῷ Διογένει τοσοῦτον τῆς
helplessness was not for it-was-a-care — to-Diogenes so-much of-the
κοινότητος· εἶχε γὰρ αὐτοὺς πάλαι ὅλῃ ψυχῇ κεχηνότας
commons he-had for them long-ago with-whole soul gaping
καὶ πρὸς αὐτὸν ἀπονενευκότας· ἀλλὰ πᾶν τὸ τὰ πρῶτα
and to him having-turned but all the(-part) the first-places
φέρον τοῦ στρατιωτικοῦ τε καὶ πολιτικοῦ συντάγματος
holding of-the military both and civil body
ἔσπευδεν ὑποποιήσασθαι. ὁ μὲν οὖν αὐτοκράτωρ τὰ
he-hastened to-win-over the indeed then autocrat the(-affairs)
τῆς βασιλίδος Μαρίας ἀνέκφορα μένειν ἠβούλετο. καὶ
of-the empress Maria unspoken to-remain wished and
μέντοι καὶ διετήρησε τὸν ἀγνοοῦντα ὑποκριθεὶς δι' ἣν
indeed also maintained the not-knowing having-pretended because-of which
πρὸς αὐτὴν εἶχε πίστιν καὶ ὁμολογίαν καὶ πρὸ τοῦ τὰ τῆς
toward her he-had faith and agreement even before the the of-the
βασιλείας ἀναδέξασθαι σκῆπτρα. διεδίδοτο δὲ πανταχοῦ
empire to-take-up scepters was-spread and everywhere
τὴν τοῦ Διογένους βουλὴν παρὰ τοῦ Πορφυρογεννήτου
the — of-Diogenes plan by the Porphyrogennetos
Κωνσταντίνου τοῦ βασιλέως καὶ υἱοῦ αὐτῆς διαμηνυθῆναι
Constantine the emperor and son her to-have-been-reported
τῷ βασιλεῖ, κἂν ἄλλως εἶχε τὸ πρᾶγμα. ἐξ αὐτῶν γὰρ
to-the emperor even-if otherwise was the matter from themselves for
τῶν ἐξυπηρετουμένων τῷ Διογένει τὰ τῆς βουλῆς
those serving — Diogenes the(-things) of-the plan
ἠρέμα διεπορθμεύετο. ἐπεὶ δ' ὁ Διογένης πεφώρατο καὶ
quietly were-conveyed since and — Diogenes had-been-detected and
δέσμιος ἤδη καὶ ὑπερόριος καθίστατο, καὶ οἱ τῆς αὐτοῦ
prisoner already and exile was-set and those of-the his

βουλῆς ἔκκριτοι οἱ μὴ φθάσαντες ἁλῶναι ὑπόπτους
plan picked those not having-been-first to-be-caught suspect
ἑαυτοὺς ἤδη γεγενημένους διαγνόντες περίφοβοί τε
themselves already become having-discerned very-afraid both
ἐφαίνοντο καὶ σκεπτόμενοι ὅ τι καὶ δράσαιεν, τούτους
appeared and considering what — also they-might-do them
οἱ ἀμφὶ τὸν βασιλέα οὕτω κυμαινομένους κατανοοῦντες ἐν
those about the emperor thus surging observing in
ἀμηχάνοις ἑστάναι ἐδόκουν ἐν στενῷ κομιδῇ τὰ κατ᾽
difficulties to-stand seemed in strait utterly the(-affairs) concerning
αὐτὸν ὁρῶντες ὡς εἰς ῥητούς τινας περιγραφείσης ἤδη
him seeing as to specified some having-been-circumscribed already
τῆς τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος ἀρωγῆς τὸν κίνδυνον ὑπὲρ κεφαλῆς
the of-the autocrat help the danger over head
ἐφιστάμενον ἤδη ἔχοντος. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς τοῖς λογισμοῖς
standing already having the and emperor in-the reasonings
ἀλύων ἐς τὰ ἐξ ἀρχῆς καὶ ποσάκις κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ
distraught to the(-things) from beginning and how-many-times against him
ὁ Διογένης ὁρμήσας καὶ σφαλεὶς ἐκ θείας δυνάμεως
— Diogenes having-rushed and having-failed by divine power
αὐτὸς αὐτόχειρ τούτου φονεὺς ἤδη ἐφίστατο, πολλοῖς
he himself his murderer already stood with-many
ἐκυμαίνετο λογισμοῖς. καὶ πολλὰς νοημάτων λαμβάνων
surged reasonings and many of-thoughts receiving
μεταβολὰς καὶ τροπὰς παρ᾽ ἑαυτῷ, ἐπεὶ ἅπαν τοῦ τε
changes and turns within himself since all of-the both
πολιτικοῦ καὶ στρατιωτικοῦ συντάγματος διεφθορὸς ταῖς
civil and military body corrupted by-the
τοῦ Διογένους θωπείαις ἐπέγνω, ἀποχρῶσαν μὴ ἔχων
— of-Diogenes flatteries he-recognized sufficient not having
δύναμιν, ὥστε φρουρὰν πρὸς τοσούτους ἐπιστῆσαι, μήτε
force so-as guard over so-many to-set nor

μὴν ἀκρωτηριάσαι λαὸν παμπληθῆ ἐθέλων τὸν μὲν
indeed to-mutilate a-people very-numerous wishing — indeed
Διογένην καὶ Κεκαυμένον τὸν Κατακαλὼν τοὺς πρωταιτίους
Diogenes and Kekaumenos the Katakalon the ringleaders
ἐς Καισαρόπολιν ἐξέπεμψεν, ἐφ' ᾧ ἐμφρούρους καὶ
to Kaisaropolis sent-out for which under-guard and
δεσμώτας εἶναι μόνον, μηδὲν ἄλλο δεινὸν τέως κατ'
prisoners to-be only nothing other terrible for-the-time against
αὐτῶν βουλευσάμενος, κἂν πάντες ἀκρωτηριάσαι τούτους
them having-planned even-if all to-mutilate them
αὐτῷ ξυνεβούλευον (ἠγάπα γὰρ τὸν Διογένην διαφερόντως
to-him advised he-loved for — Diogenes exceedingly
καὶ τῆς προτέρας ἔτι περὶ αὐτὸν εἶχετο κηδεμονίας),
and to-the former still about him held care
ὑπερόριον δὲ καὶ τὸν ἐπ' ἀδελφῇ γαμβρὸν αὐτοῦ Μιχαὴλ
into-exile and also the on sister brother-in-law his Michael
τὸν Ταρωνίτην καὶ τὸν *** καὶ τὰς περιουσίας αὐτῶν
the Taronites and the (lacuna) and the properties their
ἀφελόμενος. τὰ δέ γε κατὰ τοὺς λοιποὺς ἀσφαλὲς
having-taken-away the(-affairs) and at-least concerning the rest safe
ἐλογίσατο μηδὲ εἰς ἐξέτασιν ἀγαγεῖν ὅλως, ἀλλὰ διὰ
he-reckoned not-even to examination to-bring at-all but through
συμπαθείας τούτους μᾶλλον καταμαλθάξαι. κατὰ μὲν οὖν
sympathy them rather to-soften at indeed then
τὴν ἑσπέραν ἕκαστος τῶν ὑπερορίων τὴν λαχοῦσαν αὐτῷ
the evening each of-the exiles the allotted to-him
κατελάμβανε, καὶ ὁ Διογένης τὴν Καισαρόπολιν· τῶν δ'
reached and — Diogenes — Kaisaropolis of-the and
ἄλλων οὐδεὶς τῆς οἰκείας μεθίστατο καταστάσεως, ἀλλ'
others none from-the own moved condition but
ἐπὶ ταὐτοῦ ἅπαντες μεμενήκεσαν.
on the-same all remained

Fearing an attack, Alexios' kin spread a rumor that Diogenes will be blinded. At dawn the guards and kinsmen ring the throne, and the suspects file in terrified. Alexios reminds them that he never wronged Diogenes but treated him as his own child, and that Diogenes plotted his death in return. They acclaim him, and he pardons all. Without his knowledge Diogenes and Katakalon are blinded on the feast of the apostles. Anna leaves to God whether her father consented.

Ἐν τούτοις δὲ τοῖς δεινοῖς ὄντων τῇ μετ' αὐτὴν
in these and the terrors being on-the after it
βουλομένου τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος μετακαλέσασθαι πάντας
wishing the autocrat to-summon all
καὶ τὸ δοκοῦν αὐτῷ διαπράξασθαι, ὁπόσοι εἰς τὸν
and the seeming to-him to-accomplish as-many-as for the
αὐτοκράτορα πόθον ἐγκάρδιον ἔτρεφον τῶν τε ἐξ
autocrat longing heartfelt nourished of-those both of
αἵματος καὶ ἀγχιστείας αὐτῷ προσηκόντων καὶ ὁπόσοι
blood and marriage to-him related and as-many-as
πατρῷοι θεράποντες τότε παρῆσαν, ὀμβριμοεργοὶ καὶ
paternal servants then were-present vigorous and
ταχεῖς μὲν συνιδεῖν τὸ μέλλον, ἀγχίνοι δὲ τὸ συνοῖσον
quick indeed to-perceive the future shrewd and the advantageous
ἐν ἀσκέπτῳ καταπράξασθαι χρόνῳ, δεδιότες μή πως
in unconsidered to-accomplish time fearing lest somehow
τῇ μετ' αὐτὴν τοῦ πλήθους συρρεύσαντος ἐφορμήσαντές
on-the after it the multitude having-flowed-together having-rushed
τινες διαμελίσωσιν αὐτὸν ἐπὶ τοῦ θρόνου πολλάκις
some should-cut-to-pieces him on the throne often
ξίφη ὑπὸ τὰ ἀμφία φέροντες ὥσπερ ποτὲ ἐκεῖνος ὁ
swords under the garments carrying as once that-one the
σφαιρίζοντι τούτῳ ἐν σχήματι προσαίτου προσελθών (τὸ
playing-ball to-him in guise of-beggar having-come the

δὲ οὐκ ἄλλην εἶχε τὴν θεραπείαν ἢ τὸ τὰς πρὸς τὸν
and not other had the remedy than the the toward —
Διογένην ἁπάντων περιελεῖν ἐλπίδας, τὴν τῶν τούτου
Diogenes of-all to-take-away hopes the of-the his
ὀμμάτων ὡς ἐν παραβύστῳ διαφημισάντων ἐκτύφλωσιν)
eyes as in a-corner having-spread-abroad blinding
μεταπεμψάμενοί τινας διαπέμπονται τοὺς τοῦτο πρὸς
having-summoned some send-around those this to
πάντας διακηρυκεύσοντας ἐν ἀπορρήτοις, κἂν μηδ' εἰς
all going-to-proclaim in secret even-if not-even into
νοῦν οὔπω τοῦτο τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος ὅλως ἀνῄει. ὁ
mind not-yet this of-the autocrat at-all came-up the
δὲ λόγος οὗτος κἂν ψιλὸς τότ' ἦν, εἰς ἔργον ὅμως
and word this even-if bare then was into deed nevertheless
προὐβέβηκε, καθὼς ὁ λόγος κατωτέρω διατρανώσειεν.
proceeded as the account below may-make-clear
ἐπὰν δὲ ὁ ἥλιος τοῦ ὁρίζοντος ὑπερκύψας λαμπρὸς
when and the sun the horizon having-peeped-over brilliant
ἀνέθορεν, ὁπόσοι τῶν περὶ τὸν αὐτοκράτορα μὴ τῆς τοῦ
leapt-up as-many-as of-the about the autocrat not of-the —
Διογένους λύμης μετειλήχασι καὶ αὐτοὶ δὲ οἱ πάλαι τῶν
of-Diogenes defilement partook also themselves and the long-ago of-the
βασιλικῶν σωμάτων τεταγμένοι φύλακες, πρῶτοι πρὸς τὴν
imperial bodies appointed guards first to the
βασιλικὴν ἐχώρουν σκηνὴν οἱ μὲν ξίφη περιεζωσμένοι,
imperial went tent some indeed swords girded
οἱ δὲ δόρατα φέροντες, οἱ δὲ τὰς βαρυσιδήρους
others and spears carrying others and the heavy-iron
ῥομφαίας ἐπὶ τῶν ὤμων ἔχοντες, ἐκ διαστήματός τινος
broadswords on the shoulders having from distance some
τοῦ βασιλικοῦ θρόνου εἰς μηνοειδὲς σχῆμα ἑαυτοὺς
of-the imperial throne into crescent-shaped form themselves

ἰλαδὸν καταστήσαντες καὶ οἷον ἐναγκαλισάμενοι τὸν
by-squadrons having-set and as-it-were having-embraced the
αὐτοκράτορα, θυμῷ στρατηγούμενοι πάντες καὶ θήγοντες
autocrat by-anger generaled all and whetting
κἂν μὴ τὰ ξίφη, ἀλλὰ τὰς καρδίας. ὅσον δὲ συγγενὲς
even-if not the swords but the hearts as-much and kin
ἐξ αἵματός τε καὶ ἀγχιστείας τούτῳ προσῆκον, ἀγχοῦ
of blood both and marriage to-him related near
τοῦ βασιλικοῦ θρόνου ἐφ' ἑκάτερα ἵσταντο. δεξιόθεν
the imperial throne on both-sides stood on-the-right
δὲ καὶ ἐξ εὐωνύμων ἕτεροι καθίσταντο ὑπασπισταί.
and also on left others were-set shield-bearers
ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς ἐπὶ θώκου φοβερὸς προὐκάθητο, οὐ
the and emperor on seat formidable sat not
βασιλικῶς ἐσταλμένος μᾶλλον ἢ στρατιωτικῶς οὐδὲ πολὺ
imperially attired rather than militarily nor much
μετέωρος, ὁποῖα τὰ ἐκείνου μὴ ἐπηρμένα. χρυσὸς
raised such the(-things) of-that-man not exalted gold
δὲ ὅμως τὸν θρόνον ὑπήλειφεν ὑπερανεστήκει τε τὴν
and nevertheless the throne gilded he-stood-above and in-the
κεφαλήν. συνέσταλτο δὲ τούτου τὸ ἐπισκύνιον, τὴν δὲ
head was-drawn and his the brow the and
παρειὰν ἐπίπλεον τότε ὁ ἀγὼν κατεφοίνισσε, τὰ δὲ
cheek more then the contest reddened the and
ὄμματα πεπηγότα ἐπὶ συννοίας καὶ πλήρη ἐνθυμημάτων
eyes fixed on thought and full of-reflections
ὑπεμφαίνοντα τὴν ψυχήν. συνέθεον δὲ ἅπαντες ὁμοῦ
indicating the soul ran-together and all together
πεφοβημένοι καὶ τὰς ψυχὰς μικροῦ ἐς ἀέρα ἐξερεύξασθαι
frightened and the souls almost into air to-belch-out
ὑπὸ φόβου ἐκβιαζόμενοι, τῶν μὲν ὀξύτερον βέλους ὑπὸ
by fear forced some indeed sharper than-an-arrow by

τῆς σφῶν συνειδήσεως κεντουμένων, τῶν δὲ τὴν κενὴν
the own conscience being-goaded others and the empty
ὑποψίαν δεδιότων. φωνὴ δέ τις παρ᾽ οὐδενὸς ἐξηκούετο,
suspicion fearing voice and any from no-one was-heard
ἀλλ᾽ ἀτενὲς πρὸς τὸν ἐφεστηκότα τῇ πύλῃ τῆς σκηνῆς
but intently toward the(-one) stationed at-the gate of-the tent
ἀπονεύοντες ἐπτοημένοι ἑστήκεσαν. ἀνὴρ δὲ οὗτος καὶ
looking terrified stood a-man and this-one both
εἰπεῖν συνετὸς καὶ καταπράξασθαι δυνατός· Τατίκιος τούτῳ
to-speak intelligent and to-accomplish able Tatikios to-him
τὸ ὄνομα. τούτῳ ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐνατενίσας δοῦναι τοῖς
the name at-him the emperor having-gazed to-give to-those
ἔξωθεν τὴν εἴσοδον διὰ τοῦ βλέμματος ἐνέφηνεν. ὁ δὲ
outside the entrance through the look showed he and
παραχρῆμα τῆς εἰσόδου τούτοις παραχωρεῖ. οἱ δὲ καίπερ
immediately the entrance to-them yields they and although
δεδιότες, ἀλλ᾽ ὅμως εἰσῄεσαν τετραμμένοι τε τὰς ὄψεις
fearing but nevertheless entered turned both in-the faces
καὶ βραδεῖ ποδὶ στείχοντες. κατὰ στοίχους δὲ τὴν στάσιν
and with-slow foot stepping in rows and the position
λαχόντες ἐκαραδόκουν τὸ μέλλον ἕκαστος δεδιὼς ὡς τὸν
having-received awaited the future each fearing as the
περὶ ψυχῆς λοίσθιον δρόμον δραμούμενος. ἀλλ᾽ οὐδὲ αὐτὸς
about life last race going-to-run but not-even himself
ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ ἐθάρρει παντάπασι (κατ᾽ ἄνθρωπον
the autocrat was-confident entirely according-to man
λέγω, εἰ μὴ ὅσον εἰς θεὸν ἀναφέρων τὸ πᾶν) δεδιὼς
I-say if not as-far-as to God referring the whole fearing
τὸ σύμμικτον τῶν παρεστώτων, μὴ ἄλλο τι ὀξὺ καὶ
the mixed-body of-the standing-by lest other something sharp and
δεινὸν κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ μελετήσαιεν. στερροτέροις δὲ λογισμοῖς
terrible against him they-might-plan with-firmer and reasonings

ἑαυτὸν ἑδράσας καὶ ἅπαξ τοῖς ἀγῶσιν ἐγκαταστὰς τῆς
himself having-settled and once in-the contests having-entered the
πρὸς αὐτοὺς δημηγορίας ἤρχετο (οἱ δὲ καὶ αὐτῶν
to them harangue began they and even than-the-very
ἰχθύων ἀφωνότεροι ἑστήκεσαν καθαπερεὶ τὰς γλώττας
fishes more-voiceless stood as-if the tongues
ἐκκεκομμένοι) "οἴδατε" λέγων "ὡς οὐδὲν δεινὸν παρ' ἐμοῦ
cut-out you-know saying that nothing terrible from me
ὁ Διογένης ἐπεπόνθει ποτέ. οὔτε γὰρ τὴν ἀρχὴν ταυτησὶ
— Diogenes had-suffered ever neither for the rule of-this-here
τῆς βασιλείας ἐκ τοῦ πατρὸς αὐτοῦ ἀφειλόμην ἐγώ, ἀλλ'
the empire from the father his took-away I but
ἕτερος, οὔτε τι δεινὸν ἢ λυπηρὸν τὸ παράπαν εἰς
another nor anything terrible or grievous the at-all to
αὐτὸν πέπραχα. καὶ τῆς βασιλείας εἰς ἐμὲ θεοῦ πάντως
him I-have-done and the empire to me of-God surely
νεύσει μεταβιβασθείσης οὐ μόνον αὐτὸν καὶ τὸν αὐτοῦ
by-the-nod having-been-transferred not only him and the his
ἀδελφὸν Λέοντα ἐπὶ ταὐτοῦ διεφύλαξα, ἀλλ' ὡς οἰκείους
brother Leo on the-same I-preserved but as own
παῖδας καὶ ἐπόθησα καὶ ἐχρησάμην. τὸν δὲ Νικηφόρον καὶ
children both I-longed-for and treated — and Nikephoros also
πολλάκις κατ' ἐμοῦ βουλευόμενον φωράσας τοσαυτάκις
many-times against me plotting having-detected so-many-times
συμπαθείας ἠξίωσα. καὶ μηδὲ πάλιν διορθουμένου
of-sympathy I-deemed-worthy and not-even again correcting-himself
ἠνειχόμην ἐπικρύπτων τὰ πολλὰ τῶν αὐτοῦ μνημάτων
I-endured hiding the many of-the his grudges
κατανοῶν τὴν τῶν ἁπάντων πρὸς αὐτοὺς δυσμένειαν,
perceiving the of-the all toward them hostility
κἂν μηδὲν τῶν παρ' ἐμοῦ εἰς αὐτὸν γενομένων ἀγαθῶν
even-if nothing of-the from me to him having-happened good-things

τὸ δολερὸν τῆς αὐτοῦ γνώμης ἠλλοίωσεν. ἀλλ᾽ αὐτὸς
the crafty of-the his mind changed but he
ἀντὶ πάντων θάνατόν μοι ἐπεψηφίσατο.᾽᾽ ἐπεβόησαν
instead-of all death for-me voted shouted
δ᾽ ἐπὶ τούτοις ἅπαντες, ὡς οὐ βούλοιντ᾽ ἂν ἕτερον
and at these-things all that not they-would-wish — another
προεστηκότα ἐν βασιλείῳ ἰδεῖν σχήματι, οὐ τοῦτο οἱ
presiding in imperial to-see form not this the
πλείους βουλόμενοι, ἀλλ᾽ ἦσαν θῶπες αὐτῶν οἱ λόγοι
most wishing but were flatterers their the words
τὸν ὑπόγυον διαδρᾶναι κίνδυνον ἐντεῦθεν μηχανωμένων. ὁ
the imminent to-escape danger thence contriving the
δὲ βασιλεὺς προαρπάσας τὸν καιρὸν συμπαθείας κοινῆς
and emperor having-snatched-first the occasion of-sympathy common
τοὺς πλείονας ἠξίου ὡς τῶν αἰτίων τῆς βουλῆς
the most deemed-worthy as of-the causes of-the plot
ὑπερορίαν πρότερον κατακριθέντων. ἐπὶ τούτοις θροῦς
to-exile before having-been-condemned at these-things noise
ἦρτο πολύς, οἷον οὐδείς πω τῶν τότε παρόντων ***
rose great such-as no-one ever of-those then present (lacuna)
εἰς ἔτι καὶ νῦν τῶν ὤτων ὡς λέγουσιν ἐντὸς εἰσεδέξατο,
for still also now of-the ears as they-say inside received
τῶν μὲν ἐπαινούντων τὸν βασιλέα καὶ θαυμαζόντων
some indeed praising the emperor and wondering-at
τῆς ἀνεξικακίας καὶ πραότητος, τῶν δὲ τοὺς ὑπερορίους
the forbearance and gentleness others and the exiles
διασυρόντων καὶ θανάτου ἀξίους εἶναι διενισταμένων,
disparaging and of-death worthy to-be affirming
ὁποῖα τὰ τῶν ἀνθρώπων. ὃν γὰρ τὴν σήμερον
such the(-things) of-the men whom for the today
μακαρισμῶν ἀξιοῦσι προπέμπουσί τε καὶ διὰ τιμῆς
of-blessings they-deem-worthy they-escort both and with honor

ἄγουσιν, ἐπὰν περιτραπέντα τούτῳ τοῦ βίου τὸν κύβον
lead when overturned for-him of-the life the die
θεάσοιντο, πᾶν τοὐναντίον εἰς αὐτὸν ἐνδεικνύμενοι οὐκ
they-should-see all the-opposite toward him showing not
αἰσχύνονται. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς νεύματι τούτους κατασιγάσας
they-are-ashamed the and emperor with-a-nod them having-silenced
αὖθις ἔφη "οὐ χρὴ θορυβεῖσθαι οὐδὲ συγχεῖν τὴν
again he-said not it-is-right to-be-troubled nor to-confound the
προκειμένην ὑπόθεσιν. ἔγωγε γάρ, καθὼς ἔφην, ἅπαντας
proposed matter I-for-my-part for as I-said all
συμπαθείας ἀξιώσας πάλιν ὁποῖος τὸ πρότερον πρὸς
of-sympathy having-deemed-worthy again such the before toward
ὑμᾶς ἔσομαι." ἐν ᾧ δὲ τούτους συμπαθείας ὁ βασιλεὺς
you I-will-be in which and them of-sympathy the emperor
ἠξίου, ἄτερ τῆς αὐτοῦ γνώμης ἀποστείλαντες οἱ τὴν
deemed-worthy without the his mind having-sent those the
βουλὴν ἐκείνην βουλευσάμενοι τῶν ὀμμάτων τὸν Διογένην
plan that having-planned of-the eyes — Diogenes
ἐστέρησαν. ταὐτὰ τούτῳ καὶ κατὰ τοῦ Κεκαυμένου
deprived the-same to-this also against — Kekaumenos
Κατακαλὼν ὡς τῆς αὐτῆς βουλῆς κεκοινωνηκότος τῷ
Katakalon as of-the same plan having-shared —
Διογένει κατεψηφίσαντο. ἡμέρα δὲ ἦν, ἐν ᾗ ἡ τῶν
to-Diogenes voted day and it-was on which the of-the
κορυφαίων ἀποστόλων μνήμη ἐτελεῖτο. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα
chief apostles memorial was-celebrated but these(-things)
μὲν ἔκτοτε καὶ μέχρι σήμερον λογοποιεῖται· εἰ δὲ καὶ ὁ
indeed from-then and until today is-told-as-a-story if and also the
βασιλεὺς περὶ τούτου παρ᾽ αὐτῶν εἰσηγηθεὶς ἐνδέδωκεν
emperor about this by them having-been-prompted gave-way

ἢ καὶ τὸ πᾶν τῆς ἐκείνου γνώμης ἦν, θεὸς ἂν εἰδείη·
or also the whole of-the that-one's mind it-was God — would-know
ἔγωγε τέως οὐ πάνυ τι γινώσκειν ἔχω βεβαίως.
I-for-my-part for-the-time not very at-all to-know can securely

LIII · BOLKANOS SUBMITS; DIOGENES BLIND

Alexios reaches Lipenion, and Bolkanos, taking courage, comes in person and hands over his nephews Ouresis and Stephen Bolkanos and others as hostages, twenty in all. Alexios returns home. He grieves for Diogenes and restores much of his property. Blind, Diogenes lives on his estates, has the ancients read to him, and masters geometry by handling solid figures, as Didymos did. Anna has spoken with him herself. He plots again, confesses at once, and is pardoned.

Τοιαῦτα μὲν οὖν τὰ ἐκ τοῦ Διογένους συμπεσόντα
such indeed then the(-things) from — Diogenes having-befallen
τῷ αὐτοκράτορι, παραδόξως τῆς ἀμάχου τοῦ ὑψίστου
the autocrat unexpectedly the invincible of-the Most-High
χειρὸς ῥυσαμένης τοῦτον ἐξ ὑπογύου κινδύνου· αὐτὸς
hand having-rescued him from imminent danger he
δὲ πρὸς οὐδὲν τῶν συμπιπτόντων ἐμαλακίζετο,
and at nothing of-the(-things) befalling grew-weak
ἀλλὰ καὶ ὡς κατευθὺ Δαλματίας ἤλαυνε. μεμαθηκὼς
but also as straight-for Dalmatia drove having-learned
δὲ ὁ Βολκάνος τὴν εἰς τὸ Λιπένιον τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος
and — Bolkanos the to — Lipenion of-the autocrat
ἔλευσιν καὶ ἐπικαταλαβόντα τοῦτον θεασάμενος καὶ
coming and having-arrived him having-beheld and
πρὸς τὰς Ῥωμαϊκὰς παρατάξεις καὶ τὸν συνασπισμὸν
against the Roman battle-lines and the locking-of-shields
ἐκεῖνον καὶ τὴν στρατηγικὴν πανοπλίαν μηδ' ἀντωπῆσαι
that and the generalship's panoply not-even to-face

δυνάμενος ἀποστείλας παραχρῆμα τὰ περὶ εἰρήνης
being-able having-sent immediately the(-terms) about peace
ἠρώτα ὑπισχνούμενος ἅμα καὶ αὐτοὺς τοὺς
asked promising at-the-same-time also the-very the
προὐποσχεθέντας ὁμήρους ἀποστεῖλαι καὶ μηδέν τι δεινὸν
promised-before hostages to-send and nothing at-all terrible
τοῦ λοιποῦ διαπράξασθαι. δέχεται τοίνυν τὸν βάρβαρον
for-the rest to-do receives therefore the barbarian
ἀσμένως ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ ἀκηδιῶν οἷον καὶ ἀποστρεφόμενος
gladly the autocrat being-weary as-it-were and turning-away-from
τὴν ἐμφύλιον μάχην· κἂν γὰρ Δαλμάται ἦσαν, ἀλλ' ὅμως
the civil battle even-if for Dalmatians they-were but nevertheless
Χριστιανοί. ἐκεῖνος δ' εὐθὺς τεθαρρηκὼς προσεληλύθει
Christians that-one and at-once having-taken-courage had-come
συνεπαγόμενος τούς τε συγγενεῖς καὶ ἐκκρίτους τῶν
bringing-with-him the both kinsmen and picked-men of-the
ζουπάνων καὶ προθύμως ὁμήρους τοὺς αὐτοῦ ἀνεψιαδεῖς
zoupans and eagerly as-hostages the his nephews
τῷ αὐτοκράτορι παραδέδωκε, τόν τε Οὔρεσιν καλούμενον
to-the autocrat handed-over — both Ouresis called
καὶ Στέφανον τὸν Βολκάνον καὶ ἑτέρους τὸν εἴκοσιν
and Stephen the Bolkanos and others the twenty
ἀριθμὸν ἀποπληροῦντας. οὐ γὰρ ἐνὸν ἦν αὐτῷ ἄλλως πως
number filling-up not for possible was for-him otherwise somehow
τοῦ λοιποῦ διατεθήσεσθαι. ὁ δὲ αὐτοκράτωρ, ὁπόσα
for-the rest to-be-disposed the and autocrat as-many-as
διὰ μάχης καὶ σιδήρου ἀνύεσθαι πέφυκεν, εἰρηνικῶς
through battle and iron to-be-accomplished are-wont peacefully
διαλύσας πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν ἐπανέστρεψε. τοῦ μέντοι
having-settled to the reigning(-city) returned — however
Διογένους ἐκήδετο πάνυ καὶ δακρύων ὡρᾶτο καὶ βύθιον
of-Diogenes he-cared very and in-tears was-seen and deep

στένων δι᾽ αὐτὸν ἐξηκούετο πολλήν τε τὴν περὶ αὐτὸν
groaning for him was-heard much both the toward him
φιλοφροσύνην ἐπεδείκνυτο καὶ ἀνακτᾶσθαι τοῦτον ἔσπευδε
kindness he-showed and to-win-over him hastened
κἂν τοῖς πλείοσι τῶν ἐξ αὐτοῦ ἀφαιρεθέντων αὖθις τοῦτον
and-in the more of-the from him taken-away again him
ἀποκατέστησεν. αὐτὸς δὲ κατακώχιμος ὑπὸ τῆς λύπης
he-reinstated he and possessed by the grief
ὢν καὶ τὴν ἐν τῇ μεγαλοπόλει διατριβὴν ἀποστρεφόμενος
being and the in the great-city stay turning-away-from
τοῖς ἰδίοις ἀγροῖς ἐμφιλοχωρῶν ἦν ταῖς τῶν παλαιῶν
on-the own estates fond-of-staying was to-the of-the ancients
προσανέχων διόλου βίβλοις ἄλλων ὑπαναγινωσκόντων
devoted throughout books others reading-aloud
αὐτῷ. στερούμενος γὰρ φωτὸς ἑτέρων ἐχρᾶτο πρὸς
to-him being-deprived for of-light of-others he-used for
τὴν ἀνάγνωσιν ὄμμασιν. ἀνὴρ δὲ οὗτος τοσοῦτος τὴν
the reading eyes a-man and this-one so-great in-the
φύσιν ὡς καὶ μὴ ὁρῶν τὰ τοῖς ὁρῶσι δυστέκμαρτα
nature that even not seeing the(-things) to-those seeing hard-to-make-out
ῥᾳδίως καταλαμβάνειν. πᾶσαν μὲν δὴ ἔκτοτε παιδείαν
easily to-grasp all indeed truly from-then education
διελθὼν καὶ αὐτὴν δὴ τὴν περίκλυτον γεωμετρίαν,
having-gone-through and itself indeed the renowned geometry
τὸ καινότατον, φιλοσόφων τινὶ ἐντυχὼν διὰ
the newest of-philosophers with-a-certain-one having-met through
στερεῶν τούτῳ τὰ σχήματα παρέχειν ἐπέταττεν· ὁ δὲ
solids him the figures to-provide he-ordered he and
τῇ τῶν χειρῶν ψηλαφήσει ἁπάντων τῶν τῆς γεωμετρίας
by-the of-the hands feeling of-all the of-the geometry
θεωρημάτων τε καὶ σχημάτων ἔσχε κατάληψιν καθάπερ
theorems both and figures had comprehension like

ἐκεῖνος ὁ Δίδυμος, ὃς δι᾽ ὀξύτητα νοῦ καὶ ἄνευ
that — Didymos who because-of sharpness of-mind even without
ὀμμάτων μουσικῆς καὶ γεωμετρίας εἰς ἄκρον ἐλήλυθεν, εἰ
eyes of-music and geometry to the-summit came if
καὶ μετὰ τὴν γνῶσιν τούτων εἰς αἵρεσιν ἄτοπον συνηλάθη
even after the knowledge of-these into heresy strange was-driven
τὸν νοῦν ἐκτυφλωθεὶς ὑπὸ κενοδοξίας καθάπερ ὑπὸ πάθους
in-the mind blinded by vainglory as by suffering
τὰ ὄμματα. θαυμάζει μὲν οὖν ἅπας ταῦτα ἀκούων·
the eyes wonders indeed then everyone these(-things) hearing
ἐγὼ δὲ καὶ τεθέαμαι τὸν ἄνδρα καὶ τεθαύμακα καὶ περὶ
I and also have-seen the man and have-wondered and about
τοιούτων λαλοῦντος ἀκήκοα· μηδ᾽ αὐτὴ δὲ τῶν τοιούτων
such-things him-talking have-heard nor I-myself and of-the such-things
παντάπασιν ἀμελέτητος οὖσα ἐπεγίνωσκον τοῦτον ἀκριβῆ
entirely unpracticed being I-recognized him exact
τῶν θεωρημάτων γνῶσιν ἔχοντα. εἰ δὲ καὶ περὶ λόγους
of-the theorems knowledge having if and also about letters
ἠσχόλητο, τῆς παλαιᾶς ὅμως κατὰ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος
he-was-occupied of-the old nevertheless against the autocrat
οὐκ ἀφίστατο μήνιδος, ἀλλὰ τὸν τῆς τυραννίδος λογισμὸν
not stood-away from-wrath but the of-the tyranny reasoning
ὑποτυφόμενον εἶχε διόλου. καὶ μέντοι καί τισιν αὖθις
smoldering he-had throughout and indeed also to-some again
τοῦ ἀπορρήτου τούτου κεκοινώνηκε λογισμοῦ, ἀφ᾽ ὧν
of-the secret this he-communicated reasoning from whom
εἷς τις τὰ βεβουλευμένα προσελθὼν προσαγγέλλει τῷ
one someone the plans having-gone reports to-the
αὐτοκράτορι. μεταπεμψάμενος δὲ τὸν Διογένην ἐπυνθάνετο
autocrat having-summoned and — Diogenes he-asked
περὶ ὧν τε βεβούλευται καὶ περὶ τῶν τῆς βουλῆς αὐτῷ
about what both he-has-planned and about those of-the plan with-him

κεκοινωνηκότων. καὶ ὃς ἅπαντα θᾶττον ἀνομολογήσας
having-shared and he all more-quickly having-confessed
παραχρῆμα συμπαθείας ἠξίωτο.
immediately of-sympathy was-deemed-worthy

BOOK X

LIV · NEILOS AND THE BLACHERNITES

After Italos comes Neilos, a self-taught ascetic who never understood the hypostatic union and teaches that Christ's assumed nature was deified by nature. Alexios argues with him but cannot move him, and Armenians, Tigranes and Arsakes among them, take up his doctrine. A synod under the patriarch Nicholas lays Neilos under anathema and proclaims the hypostatic union. The Blachernites, a priest who had joined the Enthusiasts, is condemned with him.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ τὴν ἐκκλησίαν ὥσπερ τι ῥεῦμα κακίας ὁ
since and the church like some stream of-wickedness —
Νεῖλος ἐκεῖνος ἐπικλύζων πολὺν τὸν σάλον ταῖς τῶν
Neilos that flooding much the tossing in-the of-the
ἁπάντων ἐνεποίει ψυχαῖς μετ᾽ οὐ πολὺ τῆς τῶν τοῦ
all caused souls after not long of-the of-the —
Ἰταλοῦ δογμάτων καθαιρέσεως ἀναφανεὶς καὶ πολλοὺς
of-Italos doctrines destruction having-appeared and many
ταῖς δίναις τῆς αὐτοῦ κακοδοξίας ἐβύθισεν (ἀνὴρ δὲ
in-the eddies of-the his heterodoxy sank a-man and
οὗτος δεξιὸς μὲν τὴν ἀρετὴν ὑποκρίνασθαι οὐκ οἶδα
this-one skilled indeed the virtue to-feign not I-know
μὲν ὅθεν, τέως δ᾽ οὖν τῇ μεγαλοπόλει ἐφοίτησε καὶ
indeed whence for-the-time but then to-the great-city came and
ἐγγωνιάζων Θεῷ μόνῳ δῆθεν καὶ ἑαυτῷ προσανεῖχε
keeping-in-a-corner to-God alone supposedly and to-himself devoted-himself

διὰ παντὸς ταῖς ἱεραῖς βίβλοις ἐνασχολούμενος, ἀμύητος
through all with-the holy books being-occupied uninitiated
δὲ πάσης Ἑλληνικῆς παιδείας ὢν καὶ μηδὲ καθηγητήν
and in-all Hellenic education being and not-even a-teacher
τινα ἐσχηκὼς ἀρχῆθεν τὸν ὑφαπλοῦντα τούτῳ τὸ
any having-had from-the-beginning the(-one) unfolding to-him the
τῆς θείας γραφῆς βάθος ἐνεκεκύφει μὲν τοῖς τῶν ἁγίων
of-the divine scripture depth he-had-pored indeed over-the of-the saints
συγγράμμασιν, ἄγευστος δὲ πάσης παιδείας λογικῆς ὢν
writings untasted and of-all education logical being
ἐπεπλάνητο περὶ τὸν νοῦν τῶν γραφῶν, οὐκ ἀγεννῆ
he-had-strayed about the sense of-the scriptures not ignoble
δέ τινα χορὸν ὑποσυρόμενος ἐν μεγάλαις οἰκίαις εἰσέδυ
and some chorus drawing-in into great houses he-slipped
διδάσκαλος αὐτοχειροτόνητος, τὸ μέν τι διὰ τὴν
a-teacher self-appointed partly indeed somewhat because-of the
ἐπιφαινομένην αὐτῷ ἀρετὴν καὶ τὸ κατεσκληκὸς ἐκεῖνο
appearing in-him virtue and the dried-up that
ἦθος, τὸ δὲ καὶ διὰ τὴν ὑποκεκρυμμένως ἐμφαινομένην
character partly and also because-of the covertly showing
αὐτῷ τάχα γνῶσιν· ἔνθεν τοι καὶ τὴν καθ' ὑπόστασιν
in-him perhaps knowledge whence surely also the according-to hypostasis
ἕνωσιν τοῦ καθ' ἡμᾶς ἀγνοήσας μυστηρίου καὶ μήθ' ὅ
union of-the of us not-knowing mystery and neither what
τι ἐστὶν ἕνωσις ἁπλῶς συνιέναι δυνάμενος μήθ' ὅ τι
— is union simply to-understand being-able nor what —
ἐστὶν ὅλως ὑπόστασις εἰδὼς οὔτε διακεκριμένως ὑπόστασιν
is at-all hypostasis knowing neither distinctly hypostasis
ἢ ἕνωσιν νοεῖν δυνάμενος μήτ' αὖθις ἡνωμένως καθ'
or union to-conceive being-able nor again unitedly according-to
ὑπόστασιν ἕνωσιν μήθ' ὅπως ἐθεώθη τὸ πρόσλημμα παρὰ
hypostasis union nor how was-deified the assumed-nature by

τῶν ἁγίων διδασκόμενος, πόρρω τοῦ ὄντος ἐξενεχθεὶς
the saints being-taught far from-the truth carried
φύσει τοῦτο θεωθῆναι ἐδόξαζεν ἀπατώμενος), οὐδὲ τοῦτο
by-nature this to-be-deified held being-deceived not-even this
διέλαθε τὸν αὐτοκράτορα· ἀλλ' ὡς ᾔσθετο τὰ περὶ
escaped the autocrat but when he-perceived the(-things) about
τούτου ὀξύρροπον ἐπινοεῖ τὴν βοήθειαν καὶ τὸν ἄνδρα
this swift devises the help and the man
μετακαλεσάμενος πολλὰ τοῦ θράσους καὶ τῆς ἀμαθίας
having-summoned much for-the boldness and the ignorance
ἐμέμφετο καὶ πολλὰ τοῦτον ἐλέγξας τήν τε καθ'
blamed and much him having-refuted the both according-to
ὑπόστασιν ἕνωσιν τοῦ θεανθρώπου λόγου τρανῶς ἐδίδασκε
hypostasis union of-the God-man Word clearly taught
καὶ τὸν τῆς ἀντιδόσεως τρόπον παρίστα καὶ ὅπως ἐθεώθη
and the of-the exchange manner presented and how was-deified
τὸ πρόσλημμα μετὰ τῆς ἄνωθεν ἐδίδασκε χάριτος. ὁ
the assumed-nature with the from-above he-taught grace he
δὲ τῆς ἰδίας ψευδοδοξίας ἀπρὶξ εἶχετο καὶ πρὸς πᾶσαν
and to-the own false-opinion tenaciously held and to every
κάκωσιν, στρέβλας τε καὶ δεσμὰ καὶ ξεσμοὺς σαρκὸς
ill-treatment rackings both and bonds and scrapings of-flesh
ἑτοιμότατος ἦν ἢ ἀποστῆναι τοῦ μὴ θεωθῆναι φύσει
most-ready he-was than to-desist from-the not to-be-deified by-nature
διδάσκειν τὸ πρόσλημμα. εἶχε δὲ τότε καὶ πολλοὺς τῶν
to-teach the assumed-nature had and then also many of-the
Ἀρμενίων ἡ μεγαλόπολις, οἷς τῆς ἀσεβείας ὑπέκκαυμα ὁ
Armenians the great-city to-whom of-the impiety a-kindling —
Νεῖλος ἐκεῖνος ἐγίνετο· ἐντεῦθεν διαλέξεις τε συχναὶ πρὸς
Neilos that became thence disputations both frequent with
τὸν Τικράνην ἐκεῖνον καὶ τὸν Ἀρσάκην, οὓς ἐπὶ πλέον τὰ
— Tigranes that and — Arsakes whom for more the

τοῦ Νείλου δόγματα πρὸς ἀσέβειαν ἠρέθιζε. τί τὸ
— of-Neilos doctrines to impiety provoked what the(-thing)
ἐντεῦθεν; τὴν ἀσέβειαν πολλῶν ἐπινεμομένην ψυχὰς ὁρῶν
thereupon the impiety of-many feeding-on souls seeing
ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ καὶ ἀλλήλοις τὰ τοῦ Νείλου καὶ τῶν
the autocrat and with-each-other the(-things) — of-Neilos and of-the
Ἀρμενίων ἐπιπλεκόμενα καὶ ἁπανταχῇ τὸ φύσει θεωθῆναι
Armenians being-intertwined and everywhere the by-nature to-be-deified
τὸ πρόσλημμα λαμπρᾷ φωνῇ κηρυττόμενον ἀθετουμένας
the assumed-nature with-brilliant voice being-proclaimed being-set-aside
τε τὰς τῶν ἁγίων πατέρων περὶ τούτου γραφὰς καὶ τὴν
both the of-the saints fathers about this writings and the
καθ' ὑπόστασιν ἕνωσιν ἀγνοουμένην σχεδόν, στῆσαι
according-to hypostasis union being-unknown almost to-stop
τὴν σφοδρὰν τοῦ κακοῦ ῥύμην βουληθεὶς τοὺς τῆς
the violent of-the evil impetus having-wished the of-the
ἐκκλησίας λογάδας συναγαγὼν σύνοδον περὶ τούτους
church picked-men having-gathered a-synod about these
γενέσθαι κοινῇ συνεσκέψατο. καὶ παρῆν τηνικαῦτα ἅπαν
to-be-held in-common he-considered and was-present then all
τὸ τῶν ἀρχιερέων πλήρωμα καὶ αὐτὸς ὁ πατριάρχης
the of-the high-priests body and himself the patriarch
Νικόλαος. καὶ ὁ Νεῖλος εἰς τὸ μέσον μετὰ τῶν Ἀρμενίων
Nicholas and — Neilos into the middle with the Armenians
ἵστατο, καὶ τὰ τούτου ἀνεκαλύπτοντο δόγματα, καὶ
stood and the his were-uncovered doctrines and
ὃς λαμπρᾷ τῇ φωνῇ ταῦτα ἐδίδασκε καὶ ἰσχυρῶς
he with-brilliant the voice these(-things) taught and strongly
αὐτῶν διὰ πλειόνων ἀντείχετο. τί τὸ ἐντεῦθεν; ἡ
them through more clung-to what the(-thing) thereupon the
σύνοδος, ἵνα πολλῶν ἀπαλλάξῃ ψυχὰς τῆς διεφθαρμένης
synod that of-many it-might-free souls from-the corrupted

αὐτοῦ διδαχῆς, αἰωνίῳ τοῦτον καθυπέβαλεν ἀναθέματι
his teaching to-eternal him subjected anathema
καὶ τὴν καθ᾽ ὑπόστασιν ἕνωσιν κατὰ τὰς τῶν
and the according-to hypostasis union according-to the of-the
ἁγίων παραδόσεις ἐμφανέστερον ἀνεκήρυξε. μετὰ τοῦτον ἢ
saints traditions more-manifestly proclaimed after this-one or
μᾶλλον εἰπεῖν σὺν τούτῳ καὶ ὁ Βλαχερνίτης δεδημοσίευτο
rather to-say with this-one also — Blachernites had-been-made-public
ἀσεβὴ καὶ ἔκφυλα τῆς ἐκκλησίας φρονῶν, κἂν ἱερώμενος
impious and alien to-the church thinking even-if ordained
ἦν. Ἐνθουσιασταῖς γὰρ ὁμιλήσας καὶ τῆς τούτων λύμης
he-was with-Enthusiasts for having-consorted and of-the their defilement
μετασχὼν πολλούς τε ἐξαπατῶν καὶ μεγάλας τῶν ἐν
having-partaken many both deceiving and great of-the in
τῇ μεγαλοπόλει οἰκίας ὑπορύττων καὶ παραδιδοὺς τὰ τῆς
the great-city houses undermining and handing-down the of-the
ἀσεβείας δόγματα, ἐπεὶ πολλὰ πολλάκις μεταπεμπόμενος
impiety doctrines since many-times often being-summoned
καὶ διδασκόμενος παρὰ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος οὐδ᾽ ὅλως
and being-taught by the autocrat not-even at-all
τῆς οἰκείας κακοδοξίας ἀφίστατο, τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ καὶ
from-the own heterodoxy he-desisted to-the church also
τοῦτον ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ παρέπεμψεν. οἱ δὲ ἐπὶ πλέον
him the autocrat sent they and for more
τοῦτον ἐξετάσαντες, ὡς ἀμετάθετον καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐγνώκεσαν,
him having-examined as unchangeable also they knew
αὐτόν τε αἰωνίῳ ἀναθέματι καὶ τὰ τούτου δόγματα
him both to-eternal anathema and the his doctrines
καθυπέβαλον.
subjected

A man from the camp claims to be Leo, son of Romanos Diogenes, who in fact fell at Antioch. Theodora, Leo's widow, now a nun, is distressed, and Alexios sends the impostor to Cherson. He escapes over the wall to the Cumans, who make him their pretext for invasion. Alexios fortifies the passes and asks God's judgment by leaving two tablets on the altar of Hagia Sophia. He marches out, posts his commanders at Beroe and the passes, and garrisons Adrianople under Bryennios and Katakalon Tarchaneiotes.

Οὕτω μὲν οὖν ὥσπερ τις ἀγαθὸς κυβερνήτης ὁ
thus indeed then like some good helmsman the
αὐτοκράτωρ τὰς ἀλλεπαλλήλους τῶν κυμάτων ἐπιδρομὰς
autocrat the successive of-the waves onrushes
ὥσπερ διανηξάμενος καὶ πολλὴν ἀποκλυσάμενος ἅλμην
as-if having-swum-through and much having-washed-off brine
τῆς οἰκουμένης καὶ τὰ κατὰ τὴν ἐκκλησίαν εὖ
of-the inhabited-world and the(-affairs) concerning the church well
διαθέμενος ἐπ᾽ ἄλλα τινὰ πάλιν πελάγη πολέμων καὶ
having-arranged to other some again seas of-wars and
θορύβων ἐπάγεται. ἀεὶ γὰρ ἕτερον ἐφ᾽ ἑτέρῳ προσίστατο
tumults is-brought always for one upon another confronted
καὶ θάλασσά φασιν ἐπὶ θαλάσσῃ καὶ ποταμὸς κακῶν
and sea they-say upon sea and river of-evils
ἐπὶ ποταμῷ, ὡς μηδ᾽ ἀναπνεῖν ἐᾶν τὸ τοῦ λόγου τὸν
upon river so-that not-even to-breathe to-let the of-the saying the
βασιλέα μηδ᾽ ἐπιμύσαι τὰ βλέφαρα. κἂν ἡμεῖς σταγόνα
emperor nor to-close the eyelids even-if we a-drop
μικράν, εἶπεν ἄν τις εἰκότως, ἐκ τοῦ Ἀδριαντικοῦ
small would-say — anyone reasonably from the Adriatic
πελάγους ἀνιμησάμεθα ὀλίγα τῶν κατ᾽ ἐκεῖνο καιροῦ
sea have-drawn-up few of-the at that of-the-time

πεπραγμένων τῷ βασιλεῖ περιγράψαντες μᾶλλον ἢ
deeds by-the emperor circumscribing rather than
γράψαντες, ἀλλ᾽ ἐκεῖνος ἀντέσχε πρὸς ἅπαντα κύματά
writing but that-one held-out against all waves
τε καὶ κλύδωνας, ἕως τὴν τῆς βασιλείας οὐριοδρομοῦσαν
both and surges until the of-the empire sailing-with-fair-wind
ναῦν εἰς λιμένας ἀκλύστους ὁρμίσειε. καὶ τίς ἂν ἢ
ship into harbors wave-sheltered he-should-moor and who — either
Δημοσθένους ἠχὼ ἢ ῥοῖζος Πολέμωνος ἢ Ὁμηρικαὶ πᾶσαι
of-Demosthenes echo or rush of-Polemon or Homeric all
Μοῦσαι τὰ ἐκείνῳ κατωρθωμένα πρὸς ἀξίαν ὑμνήσειαν;
Muses the by-that-man achievements according-to worth could-hymn
ἐγὼ δ᾽ ἂν φαίην, οὐδ᾽ ἂν αὐτὸς Πλάτων οὐδ᾽ ἂν ξύμπασα
I but — would-say not-even — himself Plato nor — all
στοὰ καὶ ἀκαδημία εἰς ταὐτὸ ξυνεληλυθυῖαι προσῆκον τῆς
Stoa and Academy into the-same having-come-together fittingly of-the
ἐκείνου ψυχῆς ἐφιλοσόφησαν. μήπω γὰρ παυσαμένων τῶν
that-one's soul could-have-philosophized not-yet for having-ceased of-the
χειμώνων ἐκείνων καὶ τῶν πολυπλόκων πολέμων μηδὲ
storms those and the complex wars nor
τοῦ κλύδωνος ἀφυβρίσαντος ἕτερος χειμὼν οὐδενὸς τῶν
of-the surge having-stopped-raging another storm than-none of-the
εἰρημένων ἐλάττων αὐτῷ ἐπεγείρεται. καὶ γὰρ ἄνθρωπός
mentioned less against-him rises and for a-man
τις οὐ τῶν ἐπιφανῶν, ἀλλὰ τῆς κάτω τύχης ἐκ τοῦ
a-certain not of-the illustrious but of-the lower fortune from the
χάρακος ὁρμώμενος τὸν τοῦ Διογένους υἱὸν ἑαυτὸν εἶναι
camp sprung the — of-Diogenes son himself to-be
ἔλεγε, κἂν ἐκεῖνος φθάσας ἀνῃρέθη, ὁπηνίκα τὸν μετὰ
said even-if that-one before was-killed when the with
τῶν Τούρκων κατὰ τὴν Ἀντιόχειαν πόλεμον ὁ Κομνηνὸς
the Turks at — Antioch war — Komnenos

Ἰσαάκιος καὶ αὐτάδελφος τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος συνεκρότησεν·
Isaac and own-brother of-the autocrat fought
ὅπως δὲ τῷ λεπτομερέστερον ἐθέλοντι μανθάνειν
how and for-the(-one) in-more-detail wishing to-learn
ἐξέσται ἀπὸ τῶν τοῦ κλεινοῦ Καίσαρος συγγραμμάτων
it-will-be-possible from the of-the famous Caesar writings
διεντυχεῖν. παρὰ πολλῶν μὲν οὖν ἐπιστομιζόμενος ὁ
to-read-through by many indeed then being-muzzled the
τοιοῦτος ἐπαύετο οὐδαμῶς. καὶ γὰρ ἦλθε μὲν οὗτος ἐξ
such-a-one ceased in-no-way and for came indeed this-man from
ἀνατολῆς πένης τε καὶ σισυροφορῶν, πανουργότατος
east poor both and wearing-a-goat-hair-cloak most-knavish
δὲ ὢν καὶ τὸ ἦθος πολύτροπος περιενόστει τὴν πόλιν
and being and the character versatile went-about the city
κατ᾽ οἴκους τε καὶ ῥυμοτομίας περὶ ἑαυτοῦ ὑψηλά τινα
by houses both and streets about himself lofty some-things
διαγγέλλων καὶ ὡς εἴη τοῦ προβεβασιλευκότος Διογένους
announcing and that he-was of-the predecessor-on-the-throne Diogenes
υἱὸς Λέων ἐκεῖνος, ὃς κατὰ τὴν Ἀντιόχειαν ὑπὸ βέλους,
son Leo that who at — Antioch by an-arrow
ὡς εἴρηται, πληγεὶς ἐτετελευτήκει. ἀναβιώσκων τοίνυν τὸν
as has-been-said struck had-died reviving therefore the
τεθνηκότα οὗτος ὁ ἀλαζὼν τοὔνομά τε ἐκείνου ἑαυτῷ
dead this the impostor the-name both of-that-one on-himself
περιετίθει καὶ φανερῶς ἐβασιλεία καὶ τοὺς κουφοτέρους
put and openly played-emperor and the more-frivolous
ὑπήγετο. καὶ ἦν ἄρα καὶ τοῦτο τὸ δεινὸν ἐπιθήκη τῶν
led-on and it-was after-all also this the terror an-addition to-the
τοῦ βασιλέως συμφορῶν, ὥσπερ τι δρᾶμα ἐπιτραγῳδούσης
of-the emperor misfortunes as-if some drama adding-a-tragic-act
αὐτῷ τῆς Τύχης τοῦτον τὸν κακοδαίμονα· καὶ ὥσπερ,
for-him the Fortune this the wretch and as

οἶμαι, οἱ τρυφῶντες μετὰ τὸν κόρον ἐπιτραγηματίζονται
I-think the luxurious after the satiety take-dessert
τῶν μελιπήκτων τινὰ προσφερόμενοι, οὕτω δῆτα καὶ ἡ
of-the honey-cakes some taking thus indeed also the
τῶν Ῥωμαίων Τύχη πολλοῖς ἐπορχησαμένη κακοῖς καὶ
of-the Romans Fortune on-many having-danced evils and
διακορὴς γεγονυῖα τοῖς τοιούτοις ψευδοβασιλεῦσι τὸν
surfeited having-become with-the such pseudo-emperors the
βασιλέα προσέπαιζεν. ὁ μέντοι αὐτοκράτωρ κατεφρόνει
emperor mocked the however autocrat despised
τῶν λεγομένων παντάπασιν. ἐπεὶ δ' ὁ χαρακηνὸς κἀν
the(-things) said entirely since and the camp-man both-in
ταῖς ἀγυιαῖς κἀν ταῖς ἀμφόδοις ἐν παντὶ καιρῷ τοιαῦτα
the streets and-in the alleys at every time such-things
ληρῶν οὐκ ἐπαύετο, ἦλθε ταῦτα εἰς ἀκοὰς τῆς Ἀλεξίου
babbling not ceased came these(-things) to hearing of-the of-Alexios
τοῦ κρατοῦντος ἀδελφῆς Θεοδώρας καὶ ὁμεύνου τοῦ
the ruler sister Theodora and wife of-the
ἀναιρεθέντος ἐκείνου υἱοῦ τοῦ Διογένους. ἡ δὲ τοὺς λήρους
slain that son — of-Diogenes she and the babblings
ἐκείνους μὴ φέρουσα ἤχθετο. ἐπὶ τῇ σφαγῇ γὰρ τἀνδρὸς
those not bearing was-vexed after the slaughter for of-the-husband
τὸν μονήρη βίον ἠλλάξατο τὸν ἀσκητικὸν ἀκριβέστατα
the solitary life exchanged-for the ascetic most-strictly
μετεληλυθυῖα βίον καὶ Θεῷ μόνῳ προσανέχουσα. ὁ δὲ
having-pursued life and to-God alone devoted the and
αὐτοκράτωρ, ἐπεὶ μετὰ δευτέραν καὶ τρίτην παραίνεσιν ὁ
autocrat since after a-second and third admonition the
λῆρος ἐκεῖνος οὐχ ἡσύχαζεν, ἐς Χερσῶνα τοῦτον ἀποστείλας
babbler that not was-quiet to Cherson him having-sent
ἔμφρουρον εἶναι παρεκελεύσατο. ἐκεῖσε δὲ παραγενόμενος,
under-guard to-be ordered there and having-come

νυκτὸς ἀνερχόμενος διὰ τοῦ τείχους καὶ προκύπτων,
at-night going-up through the wall and leaning-out
τοῖς συνήθως φοιτῶσι Κομάνοις ἐμπορίας χάριν καὶ
to-the customarily coming Cumans of-trade for-the-sake and
τοῦ τὰ πρὸς χρείαν ἐκεῖθεν κομίζεσθαι ἅπαξ καὶ
of-the the(-things) for use from-there to-get once and
δὶς ὁμιλήσας καὶ πίστεις δοὺς καὶ λαβὼν διὰ
twice having-conversed and pledges having-given and having-received with
καλῳδίων νυκτὸς ἑαυτὸν δεσμήσας ἐχαλάσθη τοῦ τείχους.
ropes at-night himself having-tied was-let-down from-the wall
συμπαραλαβόντες δὲ τοῦτον οἱ Κόμανοι πρὸς τὴν ἰδίαν
having-taken-along and him the Cumans to the own
ἀπῄεσαν χώραν. συναυλιζόμενος δὲ τούτοις ἐφ' ἱκανὸν ἐς
went-off land camping-with and them for a-good-while to
τοσοῦτον συνήλασεν, ὡς καὶ βασιλέα αὐτὸν κατονομάζειν
so-much be-brought so-that even emperor him to-name
ἤδη. οἱ δὲ αἵμασιν ἀνθρώπων λαφύξαι ἱμειρόμενοι καὶ
already they and with-blood of-men to-gulp longing and
κρεῶν ἀνθρωπείων ἐμφορηθῆναι καὶ λείαν πολλὴν ἐκ
with-flesh human to-be-filled and booty much from
τῆς ἡμεδαπῆς ἐπισυνάξαι, Πάτροκλον εὑρηκότες τοῦτον
the our-land to-collect a-Patroclus having-found this
πρόφασιν κατὰ τῆς Ῥωμαίων πανστρατιᾷ χωρῆσαι
pretext against the(-land) of-Romans with-all-their-army to-advance
ἐβουλεύοντο, ὡς δῆθεν τῷ πατρῴῳ τοῦτον ἐγκαθιδρῦσαι
planned as supposedly on-the paternal him to-seat
θρόνῳ. καὶ ἀπαιωρουμένην εἶχον τέως ταυτηνὶ τὴν
throne and in-suspense held for-the-time this-here the
βουλήν. οὐκ ἔλαθε ταῦτα τὸν αὐτοκράτορα. ἔνθεν τοι
plan not escaped these(-things) the autocrat whence surely
καὶ τὰς δυνάμεις ὡς δυνατὸν ἐξώπλιζέ τε καὶ πρὸς τὴν
also the forces as possible armed both and for the

τῶν βαρβάρων μάχην ἡτοιμάζετο. τὰ γὰρ τέμπη, ἅπερ
of-the barbarians battle prepared the for valleys which
κλεισούρας ἡ ἰδιῶτις οἶδε γλῶττα καλεῖν, ὡς ἔφαμεν,
passes the common knows tongue to-call as we-said
φθάσας ἤδη κατωχυρώσατο. καιροῦ δὲ παρεληλυθότος
having-been-first already he-fortified of-time and having-passed
ἐπεὶ τὸ Παρίστριον τοὺς Κομάνους μετὰ τοῦ ψευδωνύμου
since — Paristrion the Cumans with the falsely-named
καταλαβεῖν μεμαθήκοι, τοὺς τὰ πρῶτα τοῦ στρατιωτικοῦ
to-reach he-had-learned those the first-places of-the military
συντάγματος φέροντας καὶ αὐτοὺς δὴ τοὺς καθ᾽ αἷμα
body holding and themselves indeed those by blood
καὶ ἐξ ἀγχιστείας αὐτῷ προσήκοντας συναγαγών, εἰ
and from marriage to-him related having-gathered whether
χρὴ κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ἐξιέναι ἐβουλεύετο. πάντες δὲ πρὸς
it-is-needful against them to-go-out he-deliberated all and from
τοῦτο αὐτὸν ἀπεῖργον. τοίνυν αὐτὸς ἑαυτῷ πιστεύειν οὐκ
this him restrained therefore he himself to-trust not
εἶχεν οὔτε μὴν τοῖς οἰκείοις ἤθελε λογισμοῖς χρήσασθαι,
could nor indeed to-the own wished reasonings to-use
ἀλλὰ τὸ πᾶν τῷ Θεῷ ἀναθέμενος ἐξ ἐκείνου τὴν κρίσιν
but the whole — to-God having-entrusted from him the judgment
ᾐτεῖτο. τοιγαροῦν ἅπαντας μετακαλεσάμενος τοῦ ἱερατικοῦ
asked accordingly all having-summoned of-the priestly
καὶ στρατιωτικοῦ καταλόγου εἰς τὴν τοῦ Θεοῦ μεγάλην
and military roll into the — of-God great
ἐκκλησίαν ἑσπέρας φοιτᾷ καὶ αὐτοῦ δὴ τοῦ πατριάρχου
church in-the-evening goes and himself indeed the patriarch
Νικολάου παρόντος. ἔφθασε γὰρ εἰς τὸν πατριαρχικὸν
Nicholas being-present he-had-been-first for to the patriarchal
ἀναβεβηκέναι θρόνον ἐπινεμήσεως παριππευούσης ἑβδόμης
to-have-ascended throne (the)-indiction passing seventh

ἔτους ϛφϟβ΄ μετὰ τὴν Εὐστρατίου τοῦ Γαριδᾶ παραίτησιν.
of-the-year 6592 after the of-Eustratios the Garidas resignation
ἐν δυσὶ δὲ πυκτίοις τὴν ἐπερώτησιν περὶ τοῦ, εἰ δεῖ
on two and tablets the question about the whether it-is-necessary
ἐξελθεῖν τοῖς Κομάνοις ἐπιθέσθαι ἢ μή, ἐνσημηνάμενος
having-gone-out the Cumans to-attack or not having-sealed
τῷ κορυφαίῳ πάντων παρεκελεύσατο καταθέσθαι εἰς τὴν
to-the chief of-all he-ordered to-lay on the
ἱερὰν τράπεζαν. παννύχου δὲ τῆς ὑμνῳδίας τελουμένης
holy table all-night and the hymnody being-performed
κατὰ τὸ περίορθρον εἴσεισιν ὁ τεθεικὼς καὶ ἀναλαμβάνεται
at the early-dawn enters the having-placed and takes
τὸν χάρτην καὶ ἐξαγαγὼν καὶ λύσας ἐνώπιον
the paper and having-brought-out and having-opened in-the-presence
πάντων ὑπανεγίνωσκε. τὸ ἐνδόσιμον οὖν ἐκεῖθεν ὥσπερ ἐκ
of-all read-aloud the cue then from-there as-if from
θείας ὀμφῆς ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ λαβὼν ὅλος ἐγεγόνει τῆς
divine voice the autocrat having-received wholly became of-the
ἐκστρατείας καὶ διὰ γραφῶν ἁπανταχόθεν ἀνεκαλεῖτο
campaign and through letters from-everywhere recalled
τὸ στράτευμα. καλῶς τοίνυν παρασκευασάμενος τῆς κατὰ
the army well therefore having-prepared the against
τῶν Κομάνων ὁδοῦ εἶχετο. ἅπαν οὖν τὸ στράτευμα
the Cumans road held all then the army
μετακαλεσάμενος καὶ καταλαβὼν τὴν Ἀγχίαλον τὸν μὲν
having-summoned and having-reached — Anchialos the indeed
ἴδιον γαμβρὸν Καίσαρα Νικηφόρον τὸν Μελισσηνὸν καὶ τὸν
own brother-in-law Caesar Nikephoros the Melissenos and —
Παλαιολόγον Γεώργιον καὶ τὸν ἀδελφιδοῦν αὐτοῦ Ἰωάννην
Palaiologos George and the nephew his John
τὸν Ταρωνίτην μεταπεμψάμενος εἰς Βερόην ἐκπέμπει,
the Taronites having-summoned to Beroe sends-out

ἐφ᾽ ᾧ ἐπαγρυπνεῖν καὶ ἀσφάλειαν αὐτῆς τε καὶ τῶν
for which to-keep-watch and security of-it both and of-the
παρακειμένων αὐτῇ ποιεῖσθαι. τοὺς δέ γε λοιποὺς τῶν
neighboring to-it to-make the and at-least rest of-the
ἐκκρίτων διελὼν τὰ στρατεύματα καὶ ἡγεμόνας τούτων
picked-men having-divided the armies and as-leaders of-these
αὐτοὺς καταστήσας τὸν Δαβατηνόν, τὸν Εὐφορβηνὸν
themselves having-set — Dabatenos — Euphorbenos
Γεώργιον καὶ Κωνσταντῖνον τὸν Οὐμπερτόπουλον εἰς
George and Constantine the Houmbertopoulos for
φυλακὴν τῶν περὶ τὸν Ζυγὸν διακειμένων κλεισουρῶν
guard of-the about the Zygos lying passes
ἐκπέπομφεν. ἐκεῖθεν δὲ τὴν Χορταρέαν καταλαβών
sent-out from-there and — Chortarea having-reached
(κλείσουρα δὲ τοῦ Ζυγοῦ οὕτωσί πως ὀνομαζομένη) τὸν
a-pass and of-the Zygos thus somehow named the
ὅλον περιήει Ζυγὸν κατασκεπτόμενος, εἰ πάντα τὰ
whole went-round Zygos inspecting whether all the
πρώην παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ ἐντεταλμένα οἱ τὴν τούτων οἰκονομίαν
formerly by him enjoined those the of-these management
ἀναδεξάμενοι τετελέκασι καὶ εἴ τι ἡμιτελὲς ἢ ἐνδέον
having-undertaken have-completed and if anything half-finished or lacking
ἐστί, καὶ τοῦτο ἐπανορθώσασθαι, ὡς μὴ ῥᾳδίως διὰ
is also this to-set-right so-that not easily through
τούτων ἐξεῖναι τοῖς Κομάνοις διελθεῖν. πάντα γοῦν
these to-be-possible for-the Cumans to-pass-through all at-any-rate
οἰκονομήσας κᾆθ᾽ οὕτως ἐκεῖθεν ὑποστρέψας περὶ τὴν
having-arranged and-then thus from-there having-returned about the
Ἱερὰν καλουμένην Λίμνην τὸν χάρακα ἐπήξατο τῆς
Holy called Lake the palisade pitched —
Ἀγχιάλου ἀγχοῦ διακειμένην. νυκτὸς δὲ καταλαβόντος
of-Anchialos near lying at-night and having-arrived

Πουδίλου τινὸς ἐκκρίτου τῶν Βλάχων καὶ τὴν τῶν
Poudilos a-certain picked of-the Vlachs and the of-the
Κομάνων διὰ τοῦ Δανούβεως διαπεραίωσιν ἀπαγγείλαντος,
Cumans across the Danube crossing having-announced
δέον ἔκρινεν αὐγαζούσης τῆς ἡμέρας μετακαλεσάμενος τοὺς
needful he-judged dawning the day having-summoned the
ἐκκρίτους τῶν συγγενῶν τε καὶ ἡγεμόνων βουλεύσασθαι
picked of-the kinsmen both and leaders to-deliberate
ὅ τι δεῖ ποιεῖν. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς τὴν Ἀγχίαλον
what — it-is-necessary to-do since and to — Anchialos
πάντες παραγενέσθαι δεῖν ἔλεγον, παραχρῆμα τὸν
all to-come it-is-necessary said immediately —
μὲν Καντακουζηνὸν καὶ τὸν Τατίκιον εἰς τὰ καλούμενα
indeed Kantakouzenos and — Tatikios to the called
Θερμὰ ἐξαπέστειλε μετὰ καί τινων ἐθνικῶν, τοῦ τε
Therma sent-off with also some foreigners — both
Σκαλιαρίου τοῦ Ἐλχὰν καὶ ἑτέρων τῶν ἐκκρίτων, ἐφ'
of-Skaliarios — of-Elchan and others of-the picked for
ᾧ τὴν φυλακὴν τῶν ἐκεῖσε ποιεῖσθαι μερῶν. αὐτὸς
which the guard of-the there to-make parts he
δὲ ἀπέρχεται εἰς Ἀγχίαλον. ἐπεὶ δὲ πρὸς Ἀδριανούπολιν
and goes-away to Anchialos since and to Adrianople
τὸ ὅρμημα τῶν Κομάνων μεμαθήκοι, μεταπεμψάμενος
the onset of-the Cumans he-had-learned having-summoned
τοὺς ἐκκρίτους τῶν Ἀδριανουπολιτῶν ἅπαντας, ὧν
the picked of-the Adrianopolitans all of-whom
ὑπερέχοντες ὅ τε Κατακαλὼν ὁ Ταρχανειώτης λεγόμενος
surpassing — both Katakalon the Tarchaneiotes called
καὶ Νικηφόρος ὁ υἱὸς τοῦ πάλαι τυραννήσαντος Βρυεννίου,
and Nikephoros the son of-the long-ago having-usurped Bryennios
καὶ αὐτὸς τυραννήσας καὶ τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν στερηθείς,
and himself having-usurped and of-the eyes deprived

τούτοις πολλὴν τὴν τοῦ κάστρου φυλακὴν ἐνετείλατο
to-these much the of-the fortress guard he-enjoined
ποιεῖσθαι καὶ τῶν Κομάνων καταλαβόντων μὴ μετὰ
to-make and the Cumans having-arrived not with
μικροψυχίας τὸν μετ᾽ αὐτῶν συναίρειν πόλεμον, ἀλλὰ
faintheartedness the with them to-take-up war but
μετὰ σκοποῦ καὶ ἐκ διαστήματος τὰς κατ᾽ ἐκείνων βολὰς
with aim and from a-distance the against them shots
ποιεῖσθαι, τὰ δὲ πλεῖστα κεκλεισμένας τὰς πύλας ἔχειν,
to-make the and most shut the gates to-keep
πολλὰς ὑποσχόμενος εὐεργεσίας, εἰ τὰ προστεταγμένα
many having-promised benefactions if the(-things) ordered
τηρήσαιεν. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν πρὸς τὸν Βρυέννιον καὶ
they-should-keep these(-things) indeed then to — Bryennios and
τοὺς ἄλλους ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ παρεγγυησάμενος οἷον μετὰ
the others the autocrat having-charged as-it-were with
χρηστῶν τῶν ἐλπίδων πρὸς Ἀδριανούπολιν ἐκπέπομφε.
good the hopes to Adrianople sent-off
τῷ δέ γε Κατακαλὼν τῷ Εὐφορβηνῷ Κωνσταντίνῳ
— and at-least to-Katakalon the Euphorbenos Constantine
διὰ γραμμάτων προσέταξεν ἀναλαβέσθαι τὸν καλούμενον
through letters ordered to-take the called
Μοναστρᾶν (μιξοβάρβαρος δὲ οὗτος ἀνὴρ πολλὴν τὴν περὶ
Monastras a-half-barbarian and this-one a-man much the about
τὰ στρατιωτικὰ ἐμπειρίαν κεκτημένος) καὶ Μιχαὴλ τὸν
the military-affairs experience having-acquired and Michael the
Ἀνεμᾶν μετὰ τῶν ὑπ᾽ αὐτοὺς τεταγμένων στρατιωτῶν,
Anemas with the under them stationed soldiers
καὶ ἐπὰν τοὺς Κομάνους τὰς κλεισούρας διελθόντας
and when the Cumans the passes having-passed-through

μάθοιεν, παρέσπεσθαι ὄπισθεν αὐτῶν καὶ ἀξυμφανῶς
they-should-learn to-follow behind them and unseen
αὐτῶν ἀποπειρᾶσθαι.
them to-try

LVI · THE SIEGE OF ADRIANOPLE

The Vlachs show the Cumans the paths over the Zygos. Goloe and Dampolis surrender to the pretender. At Anchialos, Alexios holds his men between the sea and the vineyards, and after three days the Cumans turn to Adrianople, the pretender claiming Bryennios as his uncle. For forty-eight days they skirmish. Bryennios denies him from the walls; Nikephoros, son of Katakalon, kills a Scythian with his lance; and Marianos Maurokatakalon whips the impostor about the head.

Τῶν γοῦν Κομάνων παρὰ τῶν Βλάχων τὰς διὰ τῶν
the at-any-rate Cumans from the Vlachs the through the
κλεισουρῶν ἀτραποὺς μεμαθηκότων καὶ οὕτω τὸν Ζυγὸν
passes paths having-learned and thus the Zygos
ῥᾳδίως διεληλυθότων ἅμα τῷ τῇ Γολόῃ προσπελάσαι
easily having-passed-through as-soon-as the — Goloe to-approach
εὐθὺς οἱ ἔποικοι ταύτης δεσμήσαντες τὸν τὴν φυλακὴν
at-once the settlers of-it having-bound the(-one) the guard
τοῦ κάστρου πεπιστευμένον παραδεδώκασι τοῖς Κομάνοις,
of-the fortress entrusted handed-over to-the Cumans
αὐτοὶ δὲ εὐφημήσαντες ἄσμενοι τούτους ὑπεδέξαντο. ὁ δὲ
they and having-acclaimed gladly them received — and
Κατακαλὼν Κωνσταντῖνος ἐναύλους τὰς τοῦ βασιλέως
Katakalon Constantine ringing-in-his-ears the of-the emperor
ὑποθημοσύνας ἔχων Κομάνοις ἐντυχὼν εἰς προνομὴν
counsels having Cumans having-met for foraging
ἐξερχομένοις καὶ προσβαλὼν θαρσαλέως ζωγρίαν εὐθὺς ἐκ
going-out and having-attacked boldly alive at-once from

τούτων ἄγει εἰς ἑκατὸν ποσουμένους. τοῦτον ὁ βασιλεὺς
them leads to hundred numbering him the emperor
ὑποδεξάμενος εὐθὺς τῷ τοῦ νωβελλισίμου τιμᾷ ἀξιώματι.
having-received at-once with-the of-the nobelissimos honors rank
κατασχόντας δὲ τὴν Γολόην τοὺς Κομάνους θεασάμενοι
having-held and — Goloe the Cumans having-beheld
οἱ τῶν παρακειμένων πόλεων ἔποικοι, Δαμπόλεώς
the of-the neighboring cities settlers of-Dampolis
τε καὶ τῶν λοιπῶν, προσεληλυθότες αὐτοὺς ἄσμενοι
both and of-the rest having-come them gladly
ὑπεδέχοντο καὶ παρεδίδουν τὰς πόλεις ἐπευφήμουν τε
received and handed-over the cities acclaimed and
τὸν ψευδώνυμον Διογένην. ὃς μετὰ τὸ πάντων ἐγκρατὴς
the falsely-named Diogenes who after the of-all master
γενέσθαι ἀναλαβόμενος ἅπαν τὸ Κομανικὸν στράτευμα
to-become having-taken-up all the Cuman army
καταλαμβάνει τὴν Ἀγχίαλον ἀποπειρᾶσθαι τάχα βουλόμενος
reaches — Anchialos to-make-trial perhaps wishing
τῶν ταύτης τειχῶν. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς ἐντὸς ὢν καὶ πολλὴν
of-the its walls the and emperor inside being and much
ἐμπειρίαν περὶ τὰ στρατιωτικὰ ἐκ νηπίου κεκτημένος,
experience about the military-arts from infancy having-acquired
ἐπεὶ τὴν τοῦ τόπου θέσιν διέγνω τοὺς μὲν Κομάνους
since the of-the place position he-discerned the indeed Cumans
ἀπείργουσαν τῆς ὁρμῆς, ὀχύρωμα δὲ τοῦ τείχους οὖσαν,
keeping-off from-the onset a-stronghold and of-the wall being
διελὼν τὰς δυνάμεις καὶ τὰς πύλας ἀναπετάσας τοῦ
having-divided the forces and the gates having-thrown-open of-the
κάστρου ἔξωθεν τούτους συνησπικότας ἰλαδὸν κατέστησε,
fortress outside them locking-shields by-squadrons set
περὶ δὲ τὸ ἄκρον τῆς Κομανικῆς παρατάξεως ***
about and the tip of-the Cuman battle-line (lacuna)

ἐγκεκραγότος μέρους τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς φάλαγγος ***
having-shouted part of-the Roman phalanx (lacuna)
ἐτρέψαντο μέχρις αὐτῆς θαλάττης διώξαντες. τοῦτο ὁ
they-routed as-far-as itself sea having-pursued this the
αὐτοκράτωρ θεασάμενος καὶ πρὸς τοσαῦτα πλήθη μὴ
autocrat having-beheld and against so-great multitudes not
ἐξαρκούσας ἔχων δυνάμεις μήτε ἀντικαταστῆναι δυνάμενος
sufficing having forces nor to-stand-against being-able
ἐκέλευσε τοῦ λοιποῦ συνησπικότας ἅπαντας ἵστασθαι
ordered for-the rest locking-shields all to-stand
καὶ μηδένα προθέειν τῆς παρατάξεως. οἱ δὲ Κόμανοι
and no-one to-run-ahead of-the battle-line the and Cumans
παραταξάμενοι ἵσταντο καὶ αὐτοὶ προμετώπιοι τῆς
having-arrayed-themselves stood also they in-front-of the
Ῥωμαϊκῆς φάλαγγος, μὴ προσβάλλοντες δὲ ὅμως
Roman phalanx not attacking and nevertheless
μηδὲ αὐτοί. τοῦτο δὲ ἐτελεῖτο ἐπὶ τρισὶν ἡμέραις ἐκ
nor they this and was-performed for three days from
πρωΐας μέχρις ἑσπέρας, τῆς τε τοῦ τόπου θέσεως
morning until evening the both of-the place position
ἀπειργούσης τούτους ἐθέλοντας μάχεσθαι καὶ τοῦ μηδένα
preventing them wishing to-fight and the none
τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς φάλαγγος προεκτρέχειν κατ᾽ αὐτῶν.
of-the Roman phalanx to-run-out against them
τὸ δὲ κάστρον ἡ Ἀγχίαλος τοιαύτης ἔτυχε θέσεως.
the and fortress — Anchialos such got position
δεξιόθεν μὲν τὴν Ποντηρὰν εἶχε θάλασσαν, ἐξ εὐωνύμου
on-the-right indeed the Pontic had sea from left
δὲ τραχύν τινα τόπον καὶ δύσβατον καὶ ὑπάμπελον
and rough a-certain place and hard-to-pass and vine-planted
καὶ τοῖς ἱππόταις εὔοδον τὸν δρόμον μὴ παρέχοντα.
and to-the horsemen easy the course not providing

τί τὸ ἐπὶ τούτοις; τὴν τοῦ βασιλέως θεασάμενοι
what the(-thing) at these-things the of-the emperor having-beheld
καρτερίαν οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ τὰ βεβουλευμένα ἀπηλπικότες
steadfastness the barbarians and the plans having-despaired-of
ἐφ' ἑτέραν ἀτραπὸν τὴν πρὸς Ἀδριανούπολιν ἐτράποντο,
onto another path the toward Adrianople turned
ἐξαπατῶντος αὐτοὺς τοῦ ψευδωνύμου καὶ λέγοντος ὡς
deceiving them the falsely-named and saying that
"ὁπηνίκα με τὴν Ἀδριανούπολιν καταλαβόντα ὁ Βρυέννιος
when me — Adrianople having-reached — Bryennios
Νικηφόρος ἀκούσει, ἀνοίξας τὰς πύλας μετὰ περιχαρείας
Nikephoros will-hear having-opened the gates with joy
ὑποδέξεται χρήματά τε παρέξει καὶ παντοίας φιλοφροσύνης
he-will-receive money both will-provide and of-every-kind kindness
ἀξιώσειε. κἂν γὰρ μὴ ἐκ φύσεως, ἀλλά γε ἐκ
would-deem-worthy even-if for not from nature but at-least from
προαιρέσεως τὴν πρὸς τὸν ἐμὸν πατέρα ἀδελφικὴν ἔσχε
choice the toward the my father brotherly he-had
διάθεσιν. ἐπὰν δὲ τὸ κάστρον ἡμῖν παραδοθῇ, οὕτω
disposition when and the fortress to-us is-handed-over thus
τῆς ἐπὶ τὰ ἔμπροσθεν καὶ πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν
the on the(-things) forward and toward the reigning(-city)
φερούσης ἀψόμεθα." θεῖον δὲ τὸν Βρυέννιον ὠνόμαζε
leading(-road) we-shall-take uncle and — Bryennios he-named
παράκουσμά τι ἔχων ἀληθοῦς ὑποθέσεως. καὶ γὰρ ὁ
misheard-thing some having of-true matter and for the
πάλαι βεβασιλευκὼς Ῥωμανὸς ὁ Διογένης ἄνδρα τουτονὶ
long-ago having-reigned Romanos the Diogenes a-man this-here
τὸν Βρυέννιον γινώσκων φρονήσει τε ὑπερέχοντα ἁπάντων
— Bryennios knowing in-prudence both surpassing all
τῶν τότε εὐθῆ τε τὴν γνώμην καὶ ἐπαληθεύοντα ὡς
of-the then straight and in-the mind and truthful as

ἐπίπαν ἐν λόγοις καὶ πράξεσι τοῦτον ἀκριβῶς ἐπιστάμενος
on-the-whole in words and deeds him exactly knowing
ἀδελφὸν εἰσποιήσασθαι ἠβουλήθη. καὶ δὴ καὶ τὸ ἔργον
as-brother to-adopt wished and indeed also the deed
τετέλεστο ἀμφοῖν τούτου συνδόξαντος. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα
had-been-completed to-both this having-seemed-good but these(-things)
μὲν ἀληθῆ καὶ παρὰ πάντων οὕτω γινώσκεται, ὁ δέ
indeed true also by all thus is-known the and
γε ψευδώνυμος τοσοῦτον ἀπηναισχύντησεν, ὡς καὶ θεῖον
at-least falsely-named so-much became-shameless that even uncle
ἐπ᾽ ἀληθείας τοῦτον κατονομάζειν. οὕτω μὲν οὖν τὰ τοῦ
in truth him to-name thus indeed then the of-the
ψευδωνύμου τεχνάσματα· οἱ δὲ Κόμανοι ὡς βάρβαροι τὸ
falsely-named tricks the and Cumans as barbarians the
κοῦφον καὶ εὐμετάβλητον ὡς φυσικόν τι παρακολούθημα
light and changeable as natural some consequence
κεκτημένοι πείθονται τοῖς αὐτοῦ λόγοις καὶ καταλαβόντες
having-acquired are-persuaded by-the his words and having-reached
τὴν Ἀδριανούπολιν ἔξωθεν τῆς πόλεως ταύτης ηὐλίσαντο.
— *Adrianople outside the city this camped*
ἐπὶ δὲ τεσσαράκοντα καὶ ὀκτὼ ἡμέραις καθ᾽ ἑκάστην
for and forty and eight days by each(-day)
πολέμων συγκροτουμένων (καὶ γὰρ οἱ νεώτεροι καὶ πρὸς
wars being-fought and for the younger and for
πόλεμον σφαδάζοντες καθ᾽ ἡμέραν ἐξερχόμενοι πολέμους
war quivering by day going-out wars
συχνοὺς μετὰ τῶν βαρβάρων συνεκρότουν) Νικηφόρος ὁ
frequent with the barbarians fought Nikephoros the
Βρυέννιος, ἐπεὶ κάτωθεν παρὰ τοῦ ψευδωνύμου ἐζητεῖτο,
Bryennios since from-below by the falsely-named he-was-sought
πυργόθεν προκύψας, ὅσα γε ἀπὸ τῆς φωνῆς τοῦ
from-the-tower having-leaned-out as-much-as at-least from the voice of-the

ἀνδρὸς τεκμαιρόμενος ἔλεγε μήτε υἱὸν αὐτὸν ἐπιγινώσκειν
man judging said neither son him to-recognize
Ῥωμανοῦ τοῦ Διογένους, τοῦ ἐκ προαιρέσεως ἀδελφοῦ
of-Romanos the Diogenes the by choice brother
αὐτοῦ χρηματίσαντος, ὡς εἴρηται, ὁποῖα φιλεῖ πολλάκις
his having-been-styled as has-been-said such-as is-wont often
γίνεσθαι, καὶ ὅτι ὁ ἐπ᾽ ἀληθείᾳ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ εἰς Ἀντιόχειαν
to-happen and that the in truth son his at Antioch
ἀνῃρέθη. ταῦτα εἰπὼν μετ᾽ αἰσχύνης τὸν ὑποκριτὴν
was-killed these(-things) having-said with shame the pretender
ἀπεπέμψατο. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ ἐντὸς παρεκτεινομένου τοῦ
sent-away since and those inside being-prolonged the
καιροῦ ἐστενοῦντο ἤδη, διὰ γραφῆς ᾐτήσαντο βοήθειαν
time were-straitened already through letter asked help
παρὰ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος. ὁ δὲ παρευθὺ παρακελεύεται
from the autocrat he and at-once orders
Κωνσταντίνῳ τῷ Εὐφορβηνῷ ἀποχρῶσαν ἀποδιελέσθαι
Constantine the Euphorbenos sufficient to-separate
δύναμιν τῶν ὑπ᾽ αὐτὸν κομήτων καὶ διὰ νυκτὸς μετ᾽
force of-the under him counts and through night with
αὐτῶν εἰς Ἀδριανούπολιν διὰ τοῦ μέρους τῶν Καλαθάδων
them into Adrianople through the part of-the Kalathades
εἰσελθεῖν. καὶ ὁ Κατακαλὼν παραχρῆμα τῆς πρὸς τὴν
to-enter and — Katakalon immediately the toward —
Ὀρεστιάδα φερούσης εἶχετο μετ᾽ ἀγαθῶν τῶν ἐλπίδων
Orestias leading(-road) held with good the hopes
λήσεσθαι τοὺς Κομάνους οἰόμενος. ἀλλὰ διημάρτανε τοῦ
to-escape-notice-of the Cumans thinking but he-missed the
σκοποῦ. αἰσθόμενοι γὰρ τούτου πολλαπλάσιοι τηνικαῦτα
aim having-perceived for this many-times-more then
ἐξιππασάμενοι καὶ προσβαλόντες ἀπώσαντό τε εἰς τοὐπίσω
having-ridden-out and having-attacked pushed both to the-rear

καὶ ὀξέως ἐδίωκον. ὁπηνίκα καὶ ὁ τούτου υἱὸς Νικηφόρος
and swiftly pursued when also the his son Nikephoros
καὶ ἐμὸς ἐν ὑστέροις χρηματίσας γαμβρὸς ἐπὶ τῇ μετ᾽
and my in later-times having-been-styled brother-in-law on the after
ἐμὲ ἀδελφῇ τῇ πορφυρογεννήτῳ Μαρίᾳ δόρυ μακρὸν
me sister the born-in-the-purple Maria a-spear long
ἐναγκαλισάμενος καὶ συναντήσας ἐξ ὑποστροφῆς τὸν
having-couched and having-met from turning-back the
διώκοντα αὐτὸν Σκύθην πλήττει κατὰ τὸ στέρνον, ὁ δ᾽
pursuing him Scythian strikes in the chest he and
εὐθὺς νεκρὸς ἔκειτο. οἶδε γὰρ ἐπ᾽ ἀληθείᾳ δόρυ κραδαίνειν
at-once dead lay knows for in truth a-spear to-brandish
καὶ ἀσπίδι περιφράττεσθαι· καὶ ἱππαζόμενον ἄν τις
and with-a-shield to-fence-himself and riding — anyone
αὐτὸν ἐθεάσατο, οὐ Ῥωμαῖον εἴκασεν εἶναι, ἀλλὰ
him had-seen not a-Roman would-have-guessed to-be but
Νορμανόθεν ἥκειν· θαῦμα γὰρ ἦν ὁ νεανίσκος ἐκεῖνος
from-Normandy to-come a-marvel for was the youth that
ἐξιππαζόμενος καὶ ὄντως φιλοτίμημα φύσεως· τὴν πρὸς
riding-out and truly a-pride of-nature the toward
Θεὸν εὐσέβειαν πολύς, τὰ πρὸς ἀνθρώπους ἡδὺς καὶ
God piety great the(-things) toward men pleasant and
μειλίχιος. οὔπω τεσσαράκοντα πρὸς ταῖς ὀκτὼ διῆλθον
gentle not-yet forty besides the eight passed
ἡμέραι, καὶ παρακελευσαμένου Νικηφόρου τοῦ Βρυεννίου (ἐν
days and having-ordered Nikephoros the Bryennios in
ἐκείνῳ γὰρ ἡ πᾶσα ἐξουσία τῆς Ἀδριανουπόλεως ἦν) τὰς
that-one for the whole authority — of-Adrianople was the
πύλας ἀθρόον ἀναπετάσαντες ἐξῆλθον κατὰ τῶν Κομάνων
gates suddenly having-thrown-open went-out against the Cumans
γενναῖοι στρατιῶται. καὶ πολέμου καρτεροῦ συρραγέντος
noble soldiers and of-war strong having-broken-out

πίπτουσι μὲν ἱκανοὶ τῶν Ῥωμαίων γενναίως ἀγωνιζόμενοι
fall indeed considerable of-the Romans nobly contending
καὶ τῆς ἑαυτῶν ζωῆς ἀφειδήσαντες, πλείους δὲ κτείνουσιν.
and the own life having-spared-nothing more and they-kill
ὁπηνίκα καὶ Μαριανὸς ὁ Μαυροκατακαλὼν τοῦ Τογορτὰκ
when also Marianos the Maurokatakalon — Togortak
καταστοχασάμενος (ἡγεμὼν δὲ οὗτος ὑπερέχων τῆς τῶν
having-aimed-at leader and this-one surpassing of-the of-the
Κομάνων στρατιᾶς), δόρυ μακρὸν ἐναγκαλισάμενος ὅλας
Cumans army a-spear long having-couched whole
τε τῷ ἵππῳ δοὺς τὰς ἡνίας εὐθὺ κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ ἤλαυνε
and to-the horse having-given the reins straight against him drove
καὶ μικροῦ ἂν τοῦτον ἀνεῖλεν, εἰ μὴ προφθάσαντες οἱ
and almost — him would-have-killed if not having-been-first the
περὶ αὐτὸν τυχόντες Κόμανοι τοῦτον ἐξείλοντο, μικροῦ καὶ
about him happening Cumans him rescued almost also
τὸν Μαριανὸν ἀποκτείναντες. οὗτος δὲ ὁ Μαριανός, κἂν
— Marianos having-killed this and — Marianos even-if
νέος τὴν ἡλικίαν ἦν καὶ ἐς μείρακας ἄρτι παραγγέλλων,
young in-the age he-was and into lads just passing
ἀλλὰ πολλάκις τῶν τῆς Ὀρεστιάδος πυλῶν ἐξερχόμενος
but often from-the — of-Orestias gates going-out
μετὰ τῶν Κομάνων ἐμάχετο καὶ τοσαυτάκις πλήττων ἢ
with the Cumans fought and so-many-times striking or
καὶ κτείνων νικητὴς ἀνθυπέστρεφεν. ἦν γὰρ ὡς ἀληθῶς
also killing victor returned he-was for as truly
μαχητὴς γενναιότατος, καθάπερ τινὰ κλῆρον πατρῷον
a-fighter most-noble as-if some inheritance paternal
τὴν ἀνδρείαν κληρωσάμενος ἐκ γενναιοτάτων ἀνδρῶν
the courage having-inherited from most-noble men
γενναιότερος παῖς γεννηθείς. ἐξ ὑπογύου δὲ τοῦ θανάτου
more-noble a-boy born from imminent and the death

ῥυσθείς, ἀναζέσας τῷ θυμῷ κατὰ τοῦ Ψευδοδιογένους
rescued having-boiled-up with-the anger against the Pseudo-Diogenes
ἐχώρησε πέραθεν παρὰ τῷ χείλει τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ
advanced from-beyond by the lip of-the river and
αὐτοῦ ἱσταμένου, ὅπου ὁ Μαριανὸς μετὰ τῶν βαρβάρων
him standing where — Marianos with the barbarians
ἐμάχετο, καὶ θεασάμενος ἐρυθροφοροῦντα καὶ βασιλικῶς
fought and having-beheld red-clad and imperially
ἐσταλμένον καὶ τοὺς περὶ αὐτὸν σκεδασθέντας, ἀνατείνας
attired and those about him scattered having-raised
τηνικαῦτα τὴν μάστιγα ἔπαιε τοῦτον κατὰ κεφαλῆς
then the whip struck him on head
ἀφειδῶς ψευδώνυμον ἀποκαλῶν βασιλέα.
unsparingly falsely-named calling emperor

LVII · ALAKASEUS' RUSE

Alakaseus, whose father had known Romanos Diogenes, shaves his head and beard, like Zopyros under Cyrus, and goes to the pretender as a victim of the emperor. He leads him into the little town of Poutza, whose guard has the emperor's orders, and there the pretender is made drunk, taken, and later blinded. Alexios routs the Cumans at Taurokomos, killing the arrogant Cuman who challenged him himself, and returns the booty to its owners. He catches the rest at the Iron Pass, killing many and taking many prisoners.

Ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς τὴν περὶ τὴν Ἀδριανούπολιν καρτερίαν
the and emperor the at — Adrianople steadfastness
τῶν Κομάνων μανθάνων καὶ τοὺς συχνοὺς ἐκεῖσε πολέμους
of-the Cumans learning and the frequent there wars
δέον ἔκρινε καὶ αὐτὸς ἐξ Ἀγχιάλου κεῖθι παραγενέσθαι.
needful judged also he from Anchialos there to-be-present

μεταπεμψάμενος οὖν τοὺς ἐκκρίτους τῶν ἡγεμόνων καὶ
having-summoned then the picked of-the leaders and
προέχοντας τοῦ λαοῦ ἐβουλεύετο, τί ἂν ποιήσειεν.
prominent of-the people deliberated what — he-should-do
εἰσελθὼν δέ τις ἀνὴρ Ἀλακασεὺς ὀνομαζόμενος ἔφη
having-entered and a-certain man Alakaseus named he-said
"ὁ ἐμὸς πατὴρ συνήθης πάλαι τῷ τοῦ ψευδωνύμου
the my father an-acquaintance long-ago to-the of-the falsely-named
πατρὶ ἔτυχεν ὤν. ἔγωγε τοίνυν ἀπελθὼν καὶ εἰς ἓν
father happened being I-for-my-part therefore having-gone and into one
τῶν πολιχνίων εἰσαγαγὼν αὐτὸν κατασχήσω." ἐζητεῖτο
of-the little-towns having-brought him will-seize was-sought
οὖν τηνικαῦτα ὁ τρόπος τῆς τοῦ τοιούτου ἔργου
then at-that-time the way of-the of-the such deed
μεταχειρίσεως. ὁ δὲ τὸν ἐπὶ Κύρου Ζώπυρον μιμησάμενος
handling he and the under Cyrus Zopyros having-imitated
τὸν ἐκείνου τρόπον ὑπέθετο πρὸς τὸν αὐτοκράτορα·
the of-that-one way suggested to the autocrat
αἰκίσασθαι γὰρ ἑαυτὸν ἐπηγγείλατο καὶ τὸν πώγωνα καὶ
to-maltreat for himself he-promised and the beard and
τὰς τρίχας ἀποκερεῖν καὶ εἰς ἐκεῖνον φοιτῆσαι ὡς δῆθεν
the hair to-cut-off and to that-one to-go as supposedly
ταῦτα παρὰ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος πεπονθώς. ταῦτ' οὐκ
these(-things) from the autocrat having-suffered these(-things) not
εἶπε μέν, οὐκ εἰργάσατο δέ, οὐδ' ἐπηγγείλατο μέν, εἰς
he-said indeed not he-did but nor promised indeed into
ἔργον δὲ τὴν ἐπαγγελίαν οὐκ ἤγαγεν, ἀλλ' ἅμα τε ὁ
deed but the promise not he-brought but at-once both the
βασιλεὺς ἐπῄνει τὴν συμβουλὴν καὶ ὁ Ἀλακασεὺς ἐν
emperor praised the counsel and — Alakaseus in
χρῷ τε κουρίας ἐγίνετο καὶ τὰς σάρκας κατήκιστο
skin both shorn was and the flesh had-been-maltreated

καὶ πρὸς τὸν ἐπίπλαστον Διογένην ἐκεῖνον ἐφοίτησε. καὶ
and to the counterfeit Diogenes that went and
τά τε ἄλλα καὶ τὴν παλαιὰν ὑπέμνησε φιλίαν καὶ
the(-things) both other and the old reminded friendship and
ὡς "πολλὰ δεινὰ παρὰ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος πεπονθὼς
that many terrible-things from the autocrat having-suffered
Ἀλεξίου ἥκω πρὸς σὲ θαρρήσας" ἔλεγεν "ἐπὶ τῇ πάλαι
Alexios I-come to you having-trusted he-said in the long-ago
τοὐμοῦ πατρὸς πρὸς τὴν σὴν βασιλείαν γνησιότητι ἐφ'
of-my father toward the your majesty genuineness for
ᾧ συνάρασθαί σοι πρὸς τὸ προκείμενον". ἐχρῆτο γὰρ
which to-help-with you toward the proposed-thing he-used for
καὶ τοιούτοις ὀνόμασι κολακευτικοῖς, ἵνα πλέον αὐτὸν
also such names flattering that more him
ἐφελκύσηται. καὶ ἵνα πλατύτερον τὰ κατ' αὐτὸν
he-might-draw and that more-broadly the(-affairs) concerning him
διηγήσωμαι, λαβὼν τὸ ἐνδόσιμον παρὰ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος
I-may-narrate having-taken the cue from the autocrat
Ἀλεξίου καὶ γραφὰς ὡσαύτως παραδηλούσας πρὸς τὸν
Alexios and letters likewise indicating to the(-one)
τὴν φυλακὴν πολιχνίου τινὸς Πούτζης ὠνομασμένου
the guard of-little-town a-certain Poutza named
πεπιστευμένον ὡς "πᾶν, ὅπερ ἂν ὁ παρών σοι ὑπόθηται,
entrusted that every-thing which — the present to-you should-suggest
ποίησον ἀδιστάκτως ὑπακούσας αὐτοῦ" (ἐκεῖσε γὰρ ὁ
do without-hesitation having-obeyed him there for the
βασιλεὺς καλῶς ἐστοχάσατο τοὺς Κομάνους καταλαβεῖν ἀπὸ
emperor well guessed the Cumans to-arrive from
Ἀδριανουπόλεως ἀπάραντας), τούτων οὕτως οἰκονομηθέντων
Adrianople having-set-out these thus having-been-arranged
προσηκάμενος ὁ Ἀλακασεύς, καθάπερ εἴπομεν, τὴν ἐν χρῷ
having-accepted — Alakaseus as we-said the in skin

κουρείαν πρόσεισι τῷ ψευδωνύμῳ λέγων "διὰ σὲ πολλὰ
shearing goes to-the falsely-named saying because-of you many
δεινὰ πέπονθα, διὰ σὲ ὑβρίσθην καὶ σιδηρόδετος
terrible-things I-have-suffered because-of you I-was-insulted and iron-bound
γέγονα, διὰ σὲ καθείρχθην ἐπὶ πολλαῖς ἤδη ἡμέραις,
I-became because-of you I-was-shut-up for many already days
ἐξ ὅτου τῶν Ῥωμαϊκῶν ὁρίων ἐπέβης, αὐτὸς ὕποπτος
from when the Roman borders you-set-foot-on I suspect
διὰ τὴν τοῦ ἐμοῦ πατρὸς πρὸς σὲ φιλίαν δόξας τῷ
because-of the of-the my father toward you friendship having-seemed to-the
αὐτοκράτορι. λαθὼν οὖν αὐτὸς σοὶ τῷ ἐμῷ δεσπότῃ
autocrat having-escaped-notice then I to-you the my master
προσπέφευγα ἐμαυτόν τε τῶν δεσμῶν ἐλευθερώσας καὶ
have-fled myself both from-the bonds having-freed and
σοὶ τὰ συνοίσοντα ὑποθέμενος." ὁ δὲ καλῶς τοῦτον
to-you the(-things) going-to-help having-suggested he and well him
ἀποδεξάμενος ἐπυνθάνετο, ὅ τι δεῖ ποιεῖν ἐφ' ᾧ
having-accepted asked what — it-is-necessary to-do for which
τὰ κατὰ σκοπὸν πληρῶσαι. καὶ ὃς "ὁρᾷς τουτὶ
the(-things) according-to aim to-fulfill and he you-see this-here
τὸ πολίχνιον καὶ τὴν εὐρεῖαν ταύτην πεδιάδα ἀποχρῶσαν
the little-town and the broad this plain sufficient
πρὸς νομὰς τῶν ἵππων ἐφ' ἡμέραις, ἐφ' ὅσαις βούλει
for pastures of-the horses for days for as-many-as you-wish
διαναπαῦσαι σαυτόν τε καὶ τὸ σὸν στράτευμα; χρὴ
to-rest yourself both and the your army it-is-needful
οὖν μὴ περαιτέρω τέως ἡμᾶς προβαίνειν, ἀλλ' ἐνταῦθα
then not further for-the-time us to-advance but here
προσκαρτερῆσαι μικρὸν ἐφ' ᾧ καὶ σὲ ἀνακτήσασθαι τὸ
to-stay a-little for which also you to-refresh-yourself the
πολίχνιον τοῦτο κατασχόντα καὶ τοὺς Κομάνους ἐξελθόντας
little-town this having-seized and the Cumans having-gone-out

τὰ πρὸς χρείαν κομίσασθαι καὶ οὕτω τῆς πρὸς τὴν
the(-things) for need to-bring and thus the toward the
βασιλεύουσαν ἄψασθαι. καὶ εἰ ἀρεστὸν δοκεῖ σοι, τὸν
reigning(-city) to-take and if pleasing it-seems to-you the
τοῦ πολιχνίου φύλακα πάλαι ὅλον ἐμὸν ὄντα θεάσομαί
of-the little-town guard long-ago wholly mine being I-will-see
τε καὶ ἀμαχητὶ παρασκευάσω παραδοῦναί σοι τοῦτο."
both and without-battle I-will-prepare to-hand-over to-you this
ἤρεσεν ὁ σκοπὸς οὑτοσὶ τῷ Διογένει. διὰ τῆς νυκτὸς
pleased the aim this-here — to-Diogenes through the night
δὲ τὴν βασιλικὴν δεσμήσας γραφὴν ὁ Ἀλακασεὺς πέμπει
and the imperial having-bound letter — Alakaseus sends
διὰ βέλους ἐντὸς τοῦ κάστρου· ἣν ὑπαναγνοὺς ὁ τοῦτο
through an-arrow inside the fortress which having-read the it
φυλάσσων παρεσκευάσθη πρὸς τὸ δοῦναι τὸ εἰρημένον
guarding was-prepared for the to-give the said
πολίχνιον. πρωΐας δὲ ὁ μὲν Ἀλακασεὺς πρῶτος ταῖς
little-town in-the-morning and — indeed Alakaseus first to-the
πύλαις προσπελάσας ὁμιλεῖν ὑπεκρίνατο τῷ φύλακι,
gates having-approached to-converse pretended with-the guard
πρότερον σημεῖον δοὺς τῷ Διογένει, ἵν', ὁπηνίκα τοῦτο
first a-sign having-given — to-Diogenes that when this
θεάσοιτο, εὐθὺ τοῦ κάστρου χωρήσειεν. ἐφ' ἱκανὸν δὲ
he-should-see straight-for the fortress he-should-advance for a-good-while and
προσποιουμένου τὴν μετὰ τοῦ φύλακος ὁμιλίαν καὶ ὅπερ
pretending the with the guard conversation and what
φθάσας δεδώκει τῷ ψευδωνύμῳ ποιήσαντος σημεῖον,
having-been-first he-had-given to-the falsely-named having-made sign
καθὼς ὁ Διογένης τοῦτ' ἐθεάσατο, τινὰς ἀναλαβόμενος
as — Diogenes this saw some having-taken
στρατιώτας οὐ πάνυ πολλοὺς θαρσαλέως εἴσεισι. περιχαρῶς
soldiers not very many boldly enters joyfully

δὲ τῶν ἐντὸς ὑποδεξαμένων αὐτὸν καὶ τοῦ φρουροῦντος
and those inside having-received him and the guarding
τὴν Ποῦτζαν ἐπὶ τὸ βαλανεῖον αὐτὸν προκαλουμένου
— Poutza to the bath him calling-forth
συνωθούμενός τε ἐπὶ τοῦτο καὶ παρὰ τοῦ Ἀλακασέως
being-urged and to this also by — Alakaseus
πείθεται τούτοις εὐθύς. εἶτα δαψιλῆ τράπεζαν αὐτῷ τε
he-is-persuaded by-them at-once then abundant a-table for-him both
καὶ τοῖς μετ᾽ αὐτοῦ Κομάνοις παρέθεντο. οἱ δὲ πάντες
and for-the with him Cumans they-set-before they and all
ὁμοῦ ἱκανῶς εὐωχηθέντες πλησθέντες τε οἴνου, ὃν ἐξ
together sufficiently having-feasted filled and with-wine which from
ἐμπεπλησμένων ἀσκῶν ἀπερρόφησαν, ἔκειντο ῥέγχοντες.
full skins they-had-gulped lay snoring
περιελθόντες δὲ εὐθὺς αὐτός τε ὁ Ἀλακασεὺς καὶ ὁ
having-gone-round and at-once himself both — Alakaseus and the
φύλαξ μετά τινων ἑτέρων τούς τε ἵππους ἀφελόμενοι
guard with some others the both horses having-taken-away
καὶ τὰ ὅπλα αὐτὸν μὲν αὐτοῦ που καταλιμπάνουσι
and the arms him indeed there somewhere leave
ῥέγχοντα, τοὺς δ᾽ ὑπ᾽ αὐτὸν ἀναιρήσαντες ἐν διώρυξί
snoring those and under him having-killed in ditches
τισιν εὐθέως ἀπέρριψαν ὥσπερ εἴς τινας τάφους αὐτοφυεῖς.
some at-once threw as-if into some graves self-grown
ὁ δὲ Κατακαλὼν παρεπόμενος τῷ Κομανικῷ στρατεύματι
— and Katakalon following the Cuman army
κατὰ τὰς τοῦ βασιλέως ὑποθημοσύνας, ἐπεὶ ἐκεῖνον
according-to the of-the emperor counsels since that-one
μὲν ἐντὸς εἰσελθόντα τοῦ κάστρου ἐθεάσατο, τοὺς δέ
indeed inside having-entered the fortress he-saw the and
γε Κομάνους εἰς προνομὴν διασκεδασθέντας, ἀπελθὼν
at-least Cumans for foraging scattered having-gone

τὸν χάρακα ἐπήξατο ἀγχοῦ που τῆς πόλεως, ἣν
the palisade pitched near somewhere the city which
φθάσαντες ὠνομάσαμεν. ὁ δὲ Ἀλακασεὺς τῶν Κομάνων
having-been-first we-named — and Alakaseus the Cumans
ἁπανταχοῦ διασπαρέντων οὐκ ἐθάρρησε δηλῶσαι περὶ
everywhere scattered not dared to-make-known about
τούτου τῷ αὐτοκράτορι, ἀλλὰ ἀναλαβόμενος τοῦτον τὴν
this to-the autocrat but having-taken him the
κατευθὺ Τζουρουλοῦ ἤλαυνεν ὡς πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν
straight-for Tzouroulos drove as toward the reigning(-city)
ἀπερχόμενος. μεμαθηκυῖα δὲ τοῦτο ἡ τοῦ βασιλέως
going having-learned and this the of-the emperor
μήτηρ καὶ δέσποινα περὶ τὰ βασίλεια ἐνδιατρίβουσα εὐθὺς
mother and lady about the palace staying at-once
τὸν δρουγγάριον τοῦ στόλου Κυμινειανὸν τὸν ἐκτομίαν
the drungarios of-the fleet Kymineianos the eunuch
Εὐστάθιον διὰ τάχους ἀπέστειλεν ἐφ' ᾧ τὸν τοιοῦτον
Eustathios with speed sent for which the such-one
παραλαβεῖν καὶ εἰσαγαγεῖν εἰς τὴν μεγαλόπολιν. ὁ δὲ
to-take-over and to-bring to the great-city he and
ἔχων μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ Τοῦρκόν τινα Καμύρην ὀνομαζόμενον
having with himself a-Turk a-certain Kamyres named
εἰς τὴν τούτου ἐκτύφλωσιν τῷ τοιούτῳ ἐχρήσατο. ὁ δὲ
for the his blinding the such-a-one used the and
αὐτοκράτωρ ἔτι εἰς Ἀγχίαλον ἐγκαρτερῶν, μεμαθηκὼς τὸν
autocrat still at Anchialos staying having-learned the
ἐπὶ τῇ προνομῇ τῶν παρακειμένων χωρῶν σκεδασμὸν
for the foraging of-the nearby lands scattering
τῶν Κομάνων, ἀπάρας ἐκεῖθεν καταλαμβάνει τὴν μικρὰν
of-the Cumans having-set-out from-there reaches the Little
Νίκαιαν. ὡς δὲ μεμαθήκοι, ὅτι ὁ Κιτζῆς, ἡγεμὼν δὲ
Nicaea as and he-had-learned that — Kitzes leader and

οὗτος εἷς τῶν τοῦ Κομανικοῦ στρατεύματος, ἀναλαβόμενος
this-one one of-the of-the Cuman army having-taken
Κομάνους ποσουμένους εἰς δώδεκα χιλιάδας καὶ εἰς
Cumans numbering to twelve thousands and for
προνομὴν τούτους διασπείρας λείαν τε πολλὴν συναγαγὼν
foraging them having-scattered booty and much having-collected
τὸν αὐχένα τοῦ Ταυροκώμου κατείληφε, τὰς ὑπ᾽ αὐτὸν
the ridge — of-Taurokomos held the under him
ἀναλαβόμενος δυνάμεις κατελθὼν παρὰ τῷ χείλει εἱστήκει
having-taken forces having-gone-down by the lip stood
τοῦ ποταμοῦ τοῦ κατὰ τὴν πεδιάδα τὴν κάτωθεν τοῦ
of-the river the along the plain the below the
τοιούτου αὐχένος διακειμένην ῥέοντος. τόπος δὲ οὗτος
such ridge lying flowing place and this
πλήρης χαμαιδρύων καὶ ἀρτιφυῶν δένδρων. ἐκεῖσε γοῦν
full of-ground-oaks and newly-grown trees there at-any-rate
τὰς δυνάμεις καταστησάμενος ἀπόμοιραν Τούρκων ἱκανὴν
the forces having-set a-detachment of-Turks considerable
ἀποτεμόμενος τῆς τοξείας ἐκκρίτους εἰδήμονας κατὰ τῶν
having-cut-off of-the archery picked skilled against the
Κομάνων ἐπαφίησιν, ὥστε τὸν μετ᾽ αὐτῶν συναραμένους
Cumans lets-loose so-that the with them having-joined
πόλεμον καὶ ἱππασίας τινὰς ποιησαμένους ἐπισπάσασθαι
war and charges some having-made to-draw
τούτους πρὸς τὸ πρανές. οἱ δὲ Κόμανοι προσβαλόντες
them to the downward the and Cumans having-attacked
τούτοις ἐδίωκον ἀκρατῶς μέχρι τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς φάλαγγος·
them pursued headlong as-far-as the Roman phalanx
εἶτα μικρὸν τοὺς ἵππους ἀνασειράσαντες καὶ κατὰ τῆς
then a-little the horses having-reined-in and against the
Ῥωμαϊκῆς ἐξορμῆσαι φάλαγγος ἡτοιμάζοντο καθιστῶντες
Roman to-rush phalanx were-preparing setting

τὰς παρατάξεις. ἐπεὶ δὲ Κόμανόν τινα ἀγέρωχον ἱππότην
the battle-lines since and Cuman a-certain arrogant horseman
τῆς φάλαγγος προπηδήσαντα ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ ἐθεάσατο
of-the phalanx having-leapt-forward the autocrat saw
καὶ τὰς παρατάξεις παραθέοντα καὶ μονονοὺ τὸν μετ'
and the battle-lines running-along and almost the with
αὐτοῦ μαχεσόμενον ἀναζητεῖν ἐοικότα, οὐκ ἔφερεν οὔτε τὸ
him going-to-fight to-seek seeming not he-bore neither the
δεξιὸν καρτερεῖν οὔτε τὸ εὐώνυμον κέρας, ἀλλ' αὐτὸς πρὸ
right to-hold-firm nor the left wing but he before
πάντων ὅλας τὰς ἡνίας χαλάσας τὸν ἀναζητοῦντα τὸν
all whole the reins having-slackened the seeking the
πόλεμον βάρβαρον πρώτως παίει διὰ τοῦ δόρατος καὶ
war barbarian first strikes with the spear and
ἀμφὶ στήθεσι διαμπερὲς ἐλάσας τὸ ξίφος τοῦ ἵππου
about breast right-through having-driven the sword from-the horse
κατέβαλε κατὰ ταυτηνὶ τὴν ἡμέραν στρατιώτην μᾶλλον ἢ
threw-down on this-here the day soldier rather than
στρατηγὸν ἑαυτὸν ἀποδείξας. μέγα τοίνυν ταῖς Ῥωμαϊκαῖς
general himself having-shown great therefore in-the Roman
παραυτίκα θάρσος ἐμβαλὼν παρατάξεσιν, οὐχ ἧσσονα δὲ
at-once boldness having-thrown battle-lines not less and
τοῖς Σκύθαις φόβον, ὡς πύργος τούτοις προσβαλὼν διεῖλε
into-the Scythians fear like a-tower on-them having-fallen divided
τὸ στράτευμα. οὕτω γοῦν τῆς ὁμαιχμίας τῶν βαρβάρων
the army thus at-any-rate the confederacy of-the barbarians
διασπασθείσης διασπαρέντες ἁπανταχῇ ἔφευγον ἀκρατῶς.
having-been-torn-apart scattered everywhere they-fled headlong
Κόμανοι μὲν οὖν τηνικαῦτα πίπτουσιν ὡσεὶ χιλιάδες
Cumans indeed then at-that-time fall about thousands
ἑπτά, ἄγονται δὲ καὶ ζωγρίᾳ τρισχίλιοι. τὴν μέντοι λείαν
seven are-led and also alive three-thousand the however booty

ἅπασαν ἀφελόμενοι οἱ τοῦ Ῥωμαϊκοῦ στρατεύματος
all having-taken those of-the Roman army
οὐ συνεχωρήθησαν παρὰ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος κατὰ τὸ
not were-allowed by the autocrat according-to the
εἰωθὸς ταύτην ἐπιμοιράσασθαι, καθὸ ἐξ ὑπογύου τῶν
custom it to-share-out inasmuch-as from recently from-the
παρακειμένων χωρῶν ἐσκυλεύθη, ἀλλὰ δοθῆναι τοῖς
nearby lands it-had-been-plundered but to-be-given to-the
ἐποίκοις. τοῦ γοῦν βασιλικοῦ προστάγματος πτηνοῦ
settlers the at-any-rate imperial order of-a-bird
δίκην εἰς ἅπασαν τὴν περίχωρον διαδεδραμηκότος
in-the-manner-of into all the surrounding-country having-run
ἕκαστος τῶν σκυλευθέντων παραγενόμενος ἐπιγινώσκων
each of-the despoiled having-come recognizing
τὸ ἴδιον ἀνελαμβάνετο. στερνοτυποῦντες οὖν καὶ χεῖρας
the own took-back beating-their-breasts then and hands
ἱκέτιδας εἰς οὐρανὸν αἴροντες τῷ αὐτοκράτορι τὰ
suppliant to heaven raising for-the autocrat the
λῴονα ἐπηύχοντο. καὶ ἦν ἀκούειν φωνὴν σύμμικτον
better-things they-prayed and it-was to-hear a-voice mixed
ἀνδρῶν τε καὶ γυναικῶν μέχρις αὐτῆς σεληνιακῆς
of-men both and women as-far-as itself lunar
σφαίρας φθάνουσαν. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν οὕτω· ὁ δέ
sphere reaching but these(-things) indeed thus the and
γε αὐτοκράτωρ χαίρων τὰς δυνάμεις ἀνακτησάμενος
at-least autocrat rejoicing the forces having-recovered
εἰς τὴν εἰρημένην μικρὰν Νίκαιαν αὖθις ἐπαναζεύγνυσιν.
to the said Little Nicaea again returns
ἐκεῖσε γοῦν ἐπὶ δυσὶν ἡμέραις ἐγκαρτερήσας τριταῖος
there at-any-rate for two days having-stayed on-the-third-day
ἐκεῖθεν ἐξελθὼν καταλαμβάνει τὴν Ἀδριανούπολιν περὶ
from-there having-gone-out reaches — Adrianople about

τὴν οἰκίαν τοῦ Σιλβέστρου ἱκανὰς ἐνδιατρίψας ἡμέρας.
the house — of-Silvester considerable having-spent days
τῶν γοῦν Κομάνων οἱ λογάδες ἅπαντες ἀποκριθέντες
of-the at-any-rate Cumans the picked-men all having-separated
τοῦ λοιποῦ στρατεύματος βουληθέντες τοῦτον ἀπατῆσαι
from-the rest army having-wished him to-deceive
προσέρχονται τούτῳ ὡς αὐτόμολοι σπείσασθαι τάχα μετ᾽
come to-him as deserters to-make-a-treaty perhaps with
αὐτοῦ προσποιούμενοι, ἵνα τριβομένου τοῦ μετ᾽ εἰρήνης
him pretending that being-spent the with peace
καιροῦ προχωροίη τὸ Κομανικὸν στράτευμα τοῖς
time might-advance the Cuman army to-the(-things)
ἔμπροσθεν. ἐπὶ τρισὶν οὖν ἡμέραις ἐγκαρτερήσαντες
forward for three then days having-stayed
μετὰ τὴν τρίτην ἡμέραν νυκτὸς τῆς πρὸς τὰ οἴκοι
after the third day at-night the to the at-home
φερούσης ἤψαντο. αἰσθόμενος δὲ τῆς τῶν Κομάνων
leading(-road) took having-perceived and of-the of-the Cumans
ἀπάτης ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ ὑποπτέρους ἀποστείλας δηλοῖ
deceit the autocrat winged-messengers having-sent makes-known
τοῦτο τοῖς πεπιστευμένοις τὴν φυλακὴν τῶν τοῦ Ζυγοῦ
this to-those entrusted the guard of-the of-the Zygos
ἀτραπῶν ἐφ᾽ ᾧ μὴ ἀναπίπτειν, ἀλλ᾽ ἐγρηγορέναι διὰ
paths for which not to-slacken but to-be-awake through
παντός, εἴ που τούτους κατάσχοιεν. αὐτὸς δὲ τὸ
all if somewhere them they-might-catch he and the
ὅλον στράτευμα τῶν Κομάνων μεμαθηκὼς ἐπὶ τὰ
whole army of-the Cumans having-learned onto the(-things)
πρόσω τὴν πορείαν ποιούμενον εὐθὺς ἀναλαβόμενος τοὺς
forward the march making at-once having-taken those
παρατυχόντας τῶν στρατιωτῶν καταλαμβάνει τόπον τινὰ
present of-the soldiers reaches a-place certain

Σκουτάριον καλούμενον σταδίους τῆς Ἀδριανουπόλεως
Skoutarion called stades — from-Adrianople
ἀπέχοντα ὀκτωκαίδεκα, τὴν δὲ μετ᾽ αὐτὴν εἰς Ἀγαθονίκην.
distant eighteen on-the and after it to Agathonike
ἐπεὶ δὲ μεμαθήκοι τὸ Κομανικὸν φοσσάτον ἔτι κατὰ τὸν
since and he-had-learned the Cuman fossaton still at —
Ἀβριλεβὼ διακείμενον (τόπος δὲ οὗτος οὐ πορρωτέρω
Abrilebo lying place and this not farther
τῶν εἰρημένων πόλεων κείμενος), ἐνταῦθα γενόμενος
than-the said cities lying here having-come
καὶ τὰ ἄπειρα ἅπερ ἀνῆψαν πυρὰ πόρρωθεν ἐξιδὼν καὶ
and the countless which they-had-lit fires from-afar having-seen and
κατασκεψάμενος ἀποστείλας μετεπέμψατο Νικόλαον τὸν
having-surveyed having-sent summoned Nicholas the
Μαυροκατακαλὼν καὶ ἑτέρους τῶν ἐκκρίτων ἡγεμόνων
Maurokatakalon and others of-the picked leaders
τοῦ ὁπλιτικοῦ καὶ τί χρὴ ποιεῖν διεσκοπεῖτο. δέον
of-the heavy-armed-force and what it-is-needful to-do considered needful
οὖν τηνικαῦτα ἐκρίθη μεταπέμψασθαι τοὺς τῶν ἐθνικῶν
then at-that-time was-judged to-summon the of-the foreigners
ἀρχηγούς, τόν τε Οὐζᾶν (ἐκ Σαυροματῶν δὲ οὗτος) καὶ
chiefs — both Ouzas from Sauromatai and this-one and
Καρατζᾶν τὸν Σκύθην καὶ τὸν μιξοβάρβαρον Μοναστρᾶν
Karatzas the Scythian and the half-barbarian Monastras
καὶ παρασκευάσασθαι, ἵνα ἀπελθόντες παρασκευάσωσιν
and to-prepare that having-gone they-should-arrange
ἐφ᾽ ἑκάστῃ σκηνῇ πεντεκαίδεκα καὶ πλείους ἀνάψαι
on each tent fifteen and more to-light
πυρσούς, ὥστε τοὺς Κομάνους τοὺς τοσούτους πυρσοὺς
fires so-that the Cumans the so-many fires
θεασαμένους ἀπειροπληθὲς τὸ Ῥωμαϊκὸν νομίσαι στράτευμα
having-seen infinitely-numerous the Roman to-suppose army

κἀντεῦθεν ἐκδειματωθέντες τοῦ λοιποῦ μὴ θαρσαλέως
and-thence terrified for-the rest not boldly
τούτοις προσβαλεῖν. τοῦτο δὲ γεγονὸς ταῖς τῶν
on-them to-attack this and having-happened into-the of-the
Κομάνων ψυχαῖς φόβον μέγαν ἐνίησιν. ὁ δέ γε
Cumans souls fear great sends the and at-least
αὐτοκράτωρ πρωΐας ὁπλισάμενος καὶ τὰς ὑπ᾽ αὐτὸν
autocrat in-the-morning having-armed and the under him
δυνάμεις ἀναλαβόμενος ἴεται κατ᾽ αὐτῶν. πολέμου δὲ ἐξ
forces having-taken rushes against them of-war and from
ἑκατέρων συρραγέντος οἱ Κόμανοι τὰ νῶτα διδόασιν. ὁ
both-sides having-broken-out the Cumans the backs give the
δὲ βασιλεὺς διελὼν τὸ στράτευμα τοὺς μὲν ψιλοὺς
and emperor having-divided the army the indeed light-armed
ἔμπροσθεν διώκειν ἐκπέπομφεν, αὐτὸς δὲ φευγόντων
in-front to-pursue sent-out he and them-fleeing
ἀκρατῶς ἐλαύνων ἐδίωκε. τούτους δὲ περὶ τὴν Σιδηρᾶν
headlong driving pursued them and about the Iron
Κλείσουραν καταλαβὼν πολλοὺς μὲν ἀναιρεῖ, πλείστους
Pass having-overtaken many indeed kills very-many
δὲ καὶ ζωγρίαν ἄγει· οἱ δέ γε προπεμφθέντες τῶν
and also alive leads those and at-least sent-ahead of-the
Κομάνων τὴν λείαν πᾶσαν ἀναλαβόμενοι ὑπεχώρησαν.
Cumans the booty all having-taken withdrew
ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς περὶ τὴν ἀκρολοφίαν τῆς Σιδηρᾶς
the and emperor about the hill-top of-the Iron
Κλεισούρας παννύχιος διατελέσας χειμῶνος ὄντος σφοδροῦ,
Pass all-night having-spent winter being violent
αὐγαζούσης ἤδη ἡμέρας τὴν Γολόην κατείληφεν· ἐκεῖσε
dawning already day — Goloe reached there
δὲ ἡμερονύχθιον ἓν διακαρτερήσας ἐφ᾽ ᾧ τιμῆσαι πάντας
and night-and-day one having-stayed for which to-honor all

τοὺς ἀνδρικῶς ἀγωνισαμένους καὶ δωρεῶν μεγίστων
those manfully having-contended and with-gifts greatest
ἀξιῶσαι καὶ τὸ βουλευθὲν εἰς ἔργον ἀγαγὼν
to-deem-worthy and the(-thing) planned into deed having-brought
καὶ μετ᾽ εὐφροσύνης πάντας ἐκπέμψας οἴκαδε ἐν δυσὶ
and with gladness all having-sent-off homeward in two
νυχθημέροις κατείληφε τὰ βασίλεια.
nights-and-days reached the palace

LVIII · THE FRANKS SET OUT

Alexios fortifies Bithynia against the Turks with a trench along Anastasios' old canal and an iron fort. Then he hears of countless Frankish armies coming. Peter, called Koukoupetros, beaten back from the Holy Sepulcher, has proclaimed a divine command to free Jerusalem from the Hagarenes, and all the west is on the march, women and children too, preceded by locusts. Some come to venerate the tomb, while Bohemond and his like covet Constantinople itself. Godfrey sells his lands, and Peter reaches the city.

Καὶ μικρὸν ἑαυτὸν ἀνακτησάμενος τῶν πολλῶν μόχθων,
and a-little himself having-recovered from-the many toils
ἐπεὶ τοὺς Τούρκους τὰ ἐντὸς Βιθυνίας κατατρέχοντας
since the Turks the(-parts) inside Bithynia overrunning
εὗρε καὶ ληζομένους ἅπαντα, τῶν δυτικῶν πραγμάτων
he-found and plundering all the western affairs
ἐκ θατέρου μέρους πρὸς ἑαυτὰ ἐπισπωμένων τὸν
from the-other side to themselves drawing the
αὐτοκράτορα, πλέον ἐν τούτοις ἢ ἐν ἐκείνοις κάμνων
autocrat more in these than in those toiling
(πρὸς γὰρ τὸ κατεπεῖγον μᾶλλον ὁ πόνος ἦν) ἐπίνοιαν
toward for the pressing rather the toil was a-device

ἐπινοεῖται μάλα μεγαλουργὸν καὶ ἀξίαν τῆς ἐκείνου ψυχῆς
devises very grand and worthy of-the that-one's soul
καὶ πρὸς ἀσφάλειαν Βιθυνίας ἀποταφρεύει τὰς ἐκείνων
and for safety of-Bithynia trenches-off the their
καταδρομὰς διὰ τοιαύτης κατασκευῆς. ἄξιον δὲ καὶ
raids through such construction worthy and also
τὴν κατασκευὴν ἐκείνην διηγήσασθαι. ὁ γὰρ Σάγγαρις
the construction that to-narrate the for Sangaris
ποταμὸς καὶ ἡ παραλία ἡ μέχρι τοῦ χωρίου Χηλῆς
river and the coast the as-far-as the place Chele
ἰθυτενῶς καταφερομένη καὶ ἡ πρὸς βορρᾶν ἀνακάμπτουσα
straight extending and the toward north bending-back
πολλὴν ἔνδον περικλείουσι χώραν. ταύτην τοίνυν τὴν
much inside enclose land this therefore the
χώραν πονηροὶ γείτονες γεγονότες ἡμῖν ἀνέκαθεν οἱ τοῦ
land wicked neighbors having-become to-us from-of-old the of-the
Ἰσμαὴλ κατὰ πολλὴν ἐρημίαν τῶν κωλυόντων διά
Ishmael through much lack of-those preventing through
τε Μαρυανδηνῶν καὶ τῶν πέραν Σαγγάρεως ῥᾳδίως
both Maryandenoi and those beyond Sangaris easily
κατελῄζοντο καὶ μᾶλλον τὴν Νικομήδους ἐπέθλιβον
plundered and rather the(-city) of-Nikomedes pressed
τὸν ποταμὸν διαπεραιούμενοι. τὴν τοιαύτην τοίνυν ὁρμὴν
the river crossing the such therefore onset
ἀνακόπτων τῶν βαρβάρων ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ τὴν τῆς χώρας
checking of-the barbarians the emperor and the of-the land
καταδρομὴν καὶ μάλιστα τὴν Νικομήδους ἀσφαλιζόμενος
raid and especially the(-city) of-Nikomedes securing
κατωτέρω τῆς Βαάνης λίμνης μακρότατον ὄρυγμα κατιδὼν
below — of-Baanes lake very-long trench having-noticed
καὶ παρακολουθήσας αὐτῷ μέχρι πέρατος κατενόει ἀπό τε
and having-followed it to end perceived from both

τῆς θέσεως καὶ τοῦ σχήματος, ὡς ἄρα ὁ τόπος οὐκ ἐκ
the position and the shape that after-all the place not by
ταὐτομάτου διαβεβόθρωται οὐδὲ συσσεσηράγγωται φυσικῶς,
itself has-been-dug-out nor has-been-hollowed naturally
ἀλλὰ χειρός τινος ὑπῆρχε μηχάνημα. πολυπραγμονήσας οὖν
but of-hand some was a-device having-inquired then
τὸ τοῦ τόπου μανθάνει παρά τινων, ὡς ἄρα τῆς
the(-matter) of-the place he-learns from some that after-all of-the
τοιαύτης διώρυχος Ἀναστάσιος ὁ Δίκουρος ἐπεστάτησε.
such canal Anastasios the Dikouros was-in-charge
τί μὲν βουλόμενος, οὐκ εἶχον λέγειν· ἐφαίνετο δ' οὖν
what indeed wishing not I-could say it-appeared and then
τῷ βασιλεῖ Ἀλεξίῳ, ὡς δὴ ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ ἐκεῖνος
to-the emperor Alexios that indeed the autocrat that
ἐβούλετο ἀπὸ τῆς λίμνης ὕδωρ μετοχετεύειν ἐς ταυτηνὶ τὴν
wished from the lake water to-divert into this-here the
χειροποίητον χαράδραν. πρὸς τοιαύτην τοίνυν ἐνθύμησιν
hand-made ravine to such therefore thought
ἀναχθεὶς ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ Ἀλέξιος τήν τε τάφρον εἰς
having-been-led the autocrat Alexios the both trench to
βάθος ἱκανώτατον διορύσσειν ἐκέλευε· δεδοικὼς δέ, μή ποτε
depth very-considerable to-dig ordered fearing and lest ever
καὶ πορεύσιμα γένοιτο τὰ τῶν ποταμῶν κατὰ τὰς
also passable should-become the(-parts) of-the rivers at the
συναφὰς τῶν ῥευμάτων, ἀνιστᾷ φρούριον ἐρυμνότατον,
junctions of-the streams raises fort most-strongly-fortified
πανταχόθεν τὸ ἀσφαλὲς καὶ τὸ ἀνεπιχείρητον ἔχον ἀπό
on-all-sides the safety and the unassailability having from
τε τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς εἰς ὕψος καὶ πάχος τειχοποιίας·
both the river and the in height and thickness wall-building
ὅθεν καὶ τὴν σιδηρᾶν ἀπηνέγκατο κλῆσιν. καὶ ἔστι
whence also the iron it-carried-off name and is

νῦν τὸ σιδηροῦν τουτὶ πυργίον πόλις πρὸ πόλεως καὶ
now the iron this-here tower a-city before a-city and
τείχους προτείχισμα. αὐτὸς δὲ ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ ἐφίστατο
of-a-wall an-outwork he and the autocrat stood-over
τῇ τοῦ πολιχνίου οἰκοδομῇ ἀπὸ πρωΐας μέχρις ἑσπέρας,
the of-the little-town building from morning until evening
καίτοι πολλῆς τῆς ἀλέας οὔσης τὸν θερινὸν τροπικὸν τοῦ
although much the heat being the summer tropic the
ἡλίου διαπορευομένου, καὶ καύσωνος ἠνείχετο καὶ κονίας
sun passing-through and burning-heat he-endured and dust
καὶ πολλὴν τὴν δαπάνην κατεβάλλετο, ὡς ἐντεῦθεν
and much the expense paid-out so-that thence
ἐρυμνότατον γεγονέναι τὸ τεῖχος καὶ ἀπρόσμαχον, τοὺς
most-strongly-fortified to-have-become the wall and impregnable those
σύροντας ἕκαστον τῶν λίθων, εἰ ἔτυχεν εἶναι πεντήκοντα
dragging each of-the stones if it-happened to-be fifty
ἢ ἑκατὸν ἄνδρας, δαψιλῶς ἐπιφιλοτιμούμενος. ἐντεῦθεν
or hundred men abundantly rewarding thence
δὲ οὐ τῶν τυχόντων, ἀλλὰ καὶ στρατιώτης ἅπας καὶ
and not of-the ordinary but also soldier every and
ὑπηρέτης αὐτόχθων τε καὶ ἐξ ἀλλοδαπῆς ὁρμώμενος
servant native both and from foreign-land sprung
πρὸς τὴν τῶν τοιούτων λίθων ὁλκὴν ἐκεκίνητο δαψιλεῖς
to the of-the such stones hauling had-been-moved abundant
ὁρῶντες τοὺς μισθοὺς καὶ αὐτὸν τὸν αὐτοκράτορα καθάπερ
seeing the wages and himself the autocrat as
ἀθλοθέτην τινὰ ἐφιστάμενον. τέχνη γὰρ ἦν καὶ τοῦτο,
games-master some standing-over art for was also this
ἵνα πολλῶν συρρεόντων ῥᾷον ἡ ὁλκὴ τῶν παμμεγέθων
that many flocking more-easily the hauling of-the huge
ἐκείνων λίθων γίνοιτο. οὕτως ἦν ἐκεῖνος καὶ ἐπινοῆσαι
those stones might-happen thus was that-one both to-devise

βαθύτατος καὶ καταπρᾶξαι μεγαλουργότατος. τὰ μὲν
most-profound and to-accomplish most-grand the(-affairs) indeed
οὖν κατὰ τὸν αὐτοκράτορα μέχρι τῆς *** ἐπινεμήσεως
then concerning the autocrat until the (lacuna) indiction
τοῦ *** ἔτους κατὰ τὸν εἰρημένον τρόπον προβέβηκεν·
of-the (lacuna) year in the mentioned way have-proceeded
οὔπω δὲ μικρὸν ἑαυτὸν ἀναπαύσας λογοποιουμένην
not-yet and a-little himself having-rested being-rumored
ἠκηκόει ἀπείρων Φραγγικῶν στρατευμάτων ἐπέλευσιν.
he-had-heard of-countless Frankish armies onset
ἐδεδίει μὲν οὖν τὴν τούτων ἔφοδον γνωρίσας αὐτῶν τὸ
he-feared indeed then the their attack having-known their the
ἀκατάσχετον τῆς ὁρμῆς, τὸ τῆς γνώμης ἄστατον καὶ
ungovernable of-the impulse the of-the mind instability and
εὐάγωγον καὶ τἆλλα ὁπόσα ἡ τῶν Κελτῶν φύσις ὡς
easily-led and the-other-things as-many-as the of-the Celts nature as
ἴδια ἢ παρακολουθήματά τινα ἔχει διὰ παντὸς καὶ ὅπως
own or consequences some has through all and how
ἐπὶ χρήμασι κεχηνότες ἀεὶ διὰ τὴν τυχοῦσαν αἰτίαν
at money gaping always for the chance cause
τὰς σφῶν συνθήκας εὐκόλως ἀνατρέποντες φαίνονται.
the their agreements easily overturning they-appear
εἶχε γὰρ ἀεὶ τοῦτο ᾀδόμενον καὶ πάνυ ἐπαληθεῦον. καὶ
he-had for always this sung and very proving-true and
οὐκ ἀναπεπτώκει, ἀλλὰ παντοίως παρεσκευάζετο, ὥστε
not he-lost-heart but in-every-way prepared so-that
καιροῦ καλοῦντος ἕτοιμον πρὸς τὰς μάχας εἶναι. καὶ
occasion calling ready for the battles to-be and
γὰρ καὶ πλέω καὶ φοβερώτερα τῶν φημιζομένων λόγων
for also more and more-terrible than-the rumored words
ἦσαν τὰ πράγματα. πᾶσα γὰρ ἡ ἑσπέρα καὶ ὁπόσον
were the affairs all for the west and as-much-as

γένος βαρβάρων τὴν πέραθεν Ἀδρίου μέχρις Ἡρακλείων
race of-barbarians the beyond Adriatic as-far-as of-Herakles
στηλῶν κατῴκει γῆν, ἅπαν ἀθρόον μεταναστεῦσαν ἐπὶ τὴν
pillars inhabited land all in-a-body having-migrated to —
Ἀσίαν διὰ τῆς ἑξῆς Εὐρώπης ἐβάδιζε πανοικὶ τὴν
Asia through the adjacent Europe went with-whole-household the
πορείαν ποιούμενον. ἔσχε δὲ τὰ κατὰ τὴν τοιαύτην
march making had and the(-affairs) concerning the such
συγκίνησιν τὴν αἰτίαν ἐνθένδε ποθέν. Κελτός τις Πέτρος
commotion the cause from-here somewhere a-Celt a-certain Peter
τοὔνομα, τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν Κουκούπετρος, εἰς προσκύνησιν
the-name the surname Koukoupetros to veneration
τοῦ ἁγίου τάφου ἀπελθὼν καὶ πολλὰ δεινὰ πεπονθὼς
of-the holy tomb having-gone and many terrible-things having-suffered
παρὰ τῶν τὴν Ἀσίαν πᾶσαν λῃζομένων Τούρκων τε καὶ
from the — Asia all plundering Turks both and
Σαρακηνῶν μόγις ἐπανῆλθεν εἰς τὰ ἴδια. καὶ διαμαρτὼν
Saracens hardly returned to the own and having-missed
τοῦ σκοποῦ οὐκ ἔφερεν, ἀλλ' αὖθις ἠβούλετο τῆς αὐτῆς
the aim not he-bore but again wished the same
ἅψασθαι ὁδοῦ. συνιδὼν δέ, ὡς οὐ χρὴ μόνον αὖθις
to-take road having-perceived and that not it-is-right alone again
τῆς πρὸς τὸν ἅγιον τάφον ὁδοιπορίας ἅψασθαι, ἵνα μὴ
the toward the holy tomb journey to-take that not
χεῖρόν τι γένηταί οἱ, βουλὴν βουλεύεται συνετήν. ἡ
worse something should-happen to-him a-plan plans intelligent it
δὲ ἦν διακηρυκεῦσαι εἰς ἁπάσας τὰς τῶν Λατίνων χώρας
and was to-proclaim into all the of-the Latins lands
ὡς "ὀμφὴ θεία παρακελεύεταί με πᾶσι τοῖς ἐν Φραγγίᾳ
that voice divine orders me to-all the in France
κόμησι κηρῦξαι, ἅπαντας τῶν ἰδίων ἀπᾶραι καὶ εἰς
counts to-proclaim all from-the own to-depart and to

προσκύνησιν τοῦ ἁγίου τάφου ἀπελθεῖν καὶ σπεῦσαι ὅλῃ
veneration of-the holy tomb to-go and to-hasten with-whole
χειρὶ καὶ γνώμῃ τῆς τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν τὰ Ἱεροσόλυμα
hand and mind from-the of-the Hagarenes — Jerusalem
λυτρώσασθαι χειρός". καὶ μέντοι καὶ κατώρθωκεν. ὥσπερ
to-redeem hand and indeed also he-succeeded as-if
γάρ τινα θείαν ὀμφὴν ἐνθέμενος εἰς τὰς ἁπάντων
for some divine voice having-put into the of-all
ψυχὰς τοὺς ὁπουδήποτε Κελτοὺς ἄλλον ἀλλαχόθεν σὺν
souls the anywhere Celts one from-elsewhere with
ὅπλοις καὶ ἵπποις καὶ τῇ λοιπῇ τοῦ πολέμου παρασκευῇ
arms and horses and the rest of-the war gear
συναθροίζεσθαι παρεσκεύαζε. κἀκεῖνοι μὲν οὕτως εἶχον
to-assemble he-arranged and-they indeed thus had
προθυμίας τε καὶ ὁρμῆς καὶ πᾶσα λεωφόρος τούτους
of-eagerness both and of-impulse and every highway them
εἶχε· συνεπῄει δὲ τοῖς στρατιώταις ἐκείνοις Κελτοῖς καὶ
held went-along and with-the soldiers those Celts also
ψιλὸν ὑπὲρ τὴν ἄμμον καὶ τὰ ἄστρα πλῆθος φοίνικας
unarmed beyond the sand and the stars a-multitude palms
φέρον καὶ σταυροὺς ἐπ' ὤμων, γύναιά τε καὶ τέκνα τῶν
carrying and crosses on shoulders women both and children from-the
σφῶν ἐξεληλυθότα χωρῶν. καὶ ἦν ὁρᾶν αὐτοὺς καθάπερ
their having-come-out lands and it-was to-see them like
τινὰς ποταμοὺς ἁπανταχόθεν συρρέοντας καὶ διὰ τῶν
some rivers from-everywhere flowing-together and through the
Δακῶν ὡς ἐπίπαν πρὸς ἡμᾶς ἐπερχομένους πανστρατιᾷ.
Dacians as on-the-whole to us coming with-all-their-army
προηγήσατο δὲ τῆς τῶν τοσούτων λαῶν ἐλεύσεως ἀκρὶς
preceded and the of-the so-many peoples coming locust
τῶν μὲν πυρῶν ἀπεχομένη, τοὺς δὲ ἀμπελῶνας δεινῶς
the indeed wheat sparing the and vineyards terribly

κατεσθίουσα. ἦν δ' ἄρα τοῦτο τὸ σύμβολον, ὡς οἱ
devouring it-was and after-all this the token as the
τότε συμβολομάντεις ἀπεμαντεύοντο, ὡς ἡ ἔφοδος τοῦ
then token-diviners divined that the attack of-the
τοσούτου Κελτικοῦ στρατεύματος τῶν μὲν Χριστιανικῶν
so-great Celtic army from-the indeed Christian
πραγμάτων ἀπόσχηται, δεινῶς δ' ἐπιβρίσειε κατὰ τῶν
affairs would-abstain terribly and would-fall-heavily upon the
βαρβάρων Ἰσμαηλιτῶν μέθῃ καὶ οἴνῳ καὶ τῷ Διονύσῳ
barbarians Ishmaelites to-drunkenness and wine and — to-Dionysos
δεδουλευκότων. τοῦτο γὰρ τὸ γένος Διονύσῳ τε ὑπείκει
enslaved this for the race to-Dionysos both yields
καὶ Ἔρωτι καὶ πρὸς παντοίας μίξεις καταφορώτατον
and to-Eros and to every-kind intercourse most-prone
καὶ μὴ συμπεριτεμνόμενον τῇ σαρκὶ καὶ τὰ πάθη. καὶ
and not circumcised in-the flesh and the passions and
ἔστιν οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἢ δοῦλον καὶ τρίδουλον τῶν τῆς
it-is nothing other than slave and thrice-slave of-the —
Ἀφροδίτης κακῶν. ἔνθεν τοι καὶ τὴν Ἀστάρτην αὐτοὶ καὶ
of-Aphrodite evils whence surely also — Astarte they and
τὴν Ἀσταρὼθ προσκυνοῦσι καὶ σέβονται καὶ τοῦ ἄστρου
— Astaroth venerate and worship and of-the star
τὸν τύπον περὶ πλείονος τίθενται καὶ τὴν χρυσῆν παρ'
the image above more set and the golden among
ἐκείνοις Χοβάρ. ὁ μέντοι σῖτος εἰς τὸν Χριστιανισμὸν
them Chobar the however wheat as the Christianity
τοῖς συμβολικοῖς τούτοις ἐξελαμβάνετο διὰ τὸ νηφάλιον
by-the token-readers these was-taken because-of the sober
τε καὶ τροφιμώτατον. οὕτω μὲν οὖν οἱ μάντεις τὰς
both and most-nourishing thus indeed then the diviners the
ἀμπέλους καὶ τὸν πυρὸν ἐξεδέξαντο. ἀλλὰ τὰ μὲν
vines and the wheat interpreted but the(-things) indeed

περὶ τῶν μάντεων οὕτως ἐχέτω· τὰ δὲ κατὰ τὴν
about the divineers thus let-them-be the(-things) and concerning the
ἔφοδον τῶν βαρβάρων οὕτω παρηκολουθήκει καὶ καινόν
attack of-the barbarians thus followed and new
τι κατανοεῖν τοῖς γε νοῦν ἔχουσιν ἐνῆν. τῆς γὰρ
something to-perceive for-those at-least sense having was-possible the for
τῶν τοσούτων ἐλεύσεως οὐχ ὁμοῦ οὐδὲ κατὰ ταὐτὸν
of-the so-many coming not together nor at the-same-time
γινομένης (καὶ πῶς γὰρ τοσαῦτα πλήθη ἐκ διαφόρων
happening and how for so-great multitudes from various
τόπων ἐξορμήσαντα ὁμαδὸν τὸν τῆς Λογγιβαρδίας πορθμὸν
places having-set-out in-a-body the — of-Lombardy strait
διανήξασθαι ἐνῆν;) οἱ μὲν πρῶτοι, οἱ δὲ δεύτεροι, οἱ
to-swim-across it-was-possible the indeed first the and second the
δὲ τούτων ὄπισθεν καὶ καθεξῆς οἱ ἅπαντες τὸν ἀπόπλουν
and of-these behind and in-succession the all the sailing
οὕτω ποιούμενοι διὰ τῆς ἠπείρου διήρχοντο. προηγεῖτο
thus making through the mainland went preceded
δὲ ἑκάστου στρατεύματος τούτων ἀκρὶς ἀμύθητος, ὡς
and each army of-these a-locust countless as
ἔφαμεν. ἅπαντες γοῦν ἅπαξ καὶ δὶς τοῦτο θεασάμενοι
we-said all at-any-rate once and twice this having-beheld
προδρόμους ταύτας τῶν Φραγγικῶν ταγμάτων ἐγνώρισαν.
forerunners these of-the Frankish units recognized
ὡς δὲ σποράδην τινὲς τὸν τῆς Λογγιβαρδίας διεπέρων
as and scattered some the — of-Lombardy were-crossing
ἤδη πορθμόν, ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ μετακαλεσάμενός τινας τῶν
already strait the autocrat having-summoned some of-the
Ῥωμαϊκῶν δυνάμεων ἀρχηγοὺς ἐκπέμπει τούτους πρὸς
Roman forces commanders sends-out them to
τὰ μέρη Δυρραχίου καὶ Αὐλῶνος ἐντειλάμενος δέχεσθαι
the parts of-Dyrrachion and Avlona having-enjoined to-receive

μὲν προσηνῶς τοὺς διαπερῶντας πανηγύρεις τε δαψιλεῖς
indeed kindly those crossing markets both abundant
ἐξ ἁπασῶν τῶν χωρῶν κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν ἐξάγειν, εἶτα
from all the lands along the road to-bring-out then
ἐνεδρεύειν παρακολουθοῦντας διόλου καὶ ἐπὰν ἐκδρομάς
to-lie-in-wait following throughout and when raids
τινας τούτους θεάσοιντο ποιουμένους εἰς προνομὴν τῶν
some them they-should-see making for foraging of-the
παρακειμένων χωρῶν ἐκτρέχοντας, ἀναστέλλειν διὰ
nearby lands running-out to-check through
μετρίων ἀκροβολισμῶν. συμπαρῆσαν δὲ τούτοις καί τινες
moderate skirmishes were-present-with and them also some
τῆς Λατινικῆς διαλέκτου εἰδήμονες, ἵνα τὰς ἀναφυομένας
of-the Latin tongue skilled that the springing-up
μεταξὺ μάχας καταστέλλωσιν. ἀλλ' ὅπως σαφέστερον
between battles they-might-quell but so-that more-clearly
ἀφηγησαίμην τὸ πρᾶγμα καὶ κατὰ μέρος, ταύτης τῆς
I-may-narrate the matter and by part of-this the
φήμης διαδραμούσης ἁπανταχοῦ πρῶτος ὁ Γοντοφρὲ τὴν
rumor having-run-through everywhere first — Godfrey the
ἰδίαν ἀπεμπολήσας χώραν τῆς προκειμένης ὁδοῦ εἴχετο·
own having-sold land the proposed road held
ἀνὴρ δὲ οὗτος πολυχρήματος καὶ ἐπὶ γενναιότητι καὶ
a-man and this-one very-rich and for nobility and
ἀνδρείᾳ καὶ γένους περιφανείᾳ μεγάλως αὐχῶν· ἕκαστος
courage and of-birth distinction greatly boasting each
γὰρ τῶν Κελτῶν ἔσπευδε προτρέχειν τῶν ἄλλων. καὶ
for of-the Celts hastened to-run-before the others and
γέγονε συγκίνησις οἵαν οὐδέπω τις μέμνηται ἀνδρῶν
became a-commotion such-as never anyone remembers of-men
τε καὶ γυναικῶν, τῶν μὲν ἁπλουστέρων ὡς τὸν τοῦ
both and women some indeed more-simple as the of-the

κυρίου προσκυνῆσαι τάφον καὶ τὰ κατὰ τοὺς ἱεροὺς
Lord to-venerate tomb and the(-things) at the holy
ἱστορῆσαι τόπους ἐπειγομένων ἐπ᾽ ἀληθείᾳ, τῶν δέ
to-visit places hastening in truth those and
γε πονηροτέρων καὶ μᾶλλον ὁποῖος ὁ Βαϊμοῦντος
at-least more-wicked and rather such-as — Bohemond
καὶ οἱ τούτου ὁμόφρονες ἄλλον ἐνδομυχοῦντα λογισμὸν
and the his like-minded another lurking reasoning
ἐχόντων, εἴ που ἐν τῷ διέρχεσθαι δυνηθεῖεν καὶ
having if somehow in the passing-through they-might-be-able also
αὐτὴν τὴν βασιλεύουσαν κατασχεῖν καθάπερ πόρισμά τι
itself the reigning(-city) to-seize as-if a-windfall some
ταύτην εὑρηκότες. ἐτάρασσε δὲ τὰς τῶν πλειόνων καὶ
it having-found troubled and the of-the more and
γενναιοτέρων ψυχὰς ὁ Βαϊμοῦντος ὡς παλαιὰν μῆνιν
nobler souls — Bohemond as old wrath
κατὰ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος τρέφων. ὁ μὲν οὖν Πέτρος μετὰ
against the autocrat nourishing — indeed then Peter after
τὸ ταῦτα διακηρυκεῦσαι πάντων προηγησάμενος τὸν
the these(-things) to-proclaim all having-preceded the
τῆς Λογγιβαρδίας διεπέρασε πορθμὸν μετὰ πεζῶν μὲν
— of-Lombardy crossed strait with foot indeed
χιλιάδων ὀγδοήκοντα, ἱππέων δὲ χιλιάδων ἀνδρῶν ἑκατὸν
thousands eighty horse and thousands of-men hundred
καὶ διὰ τῶν μερῶν τῆς Οὐγγρίας τὴν βασιλεύουσαν
and through the parts — of-Hungary the reigning(-city)
κατέλαβεν. ἔστι μὲν γὰρ τὸ τῶν Κελτῶν γένος, ὡς
reached is indeed for the of-the Celts race as
εἰκάσαι τινά, καὶ ἄλλως λίαν θερμότατον καὶ ὀξύ, ἐπὰν
to-guess anyone also otherwise very most-hot and sharp when
δὲ καὶ ἀφορμῆς δράξοιτο, ἀκάθεκτον.
and also a-pretext it-should-grasp unrestrainable

Against advice Peter crosses and camps at Helenoupolis. Ten thousand Normans plunder around Nicaea, roasting infants, and seize Xerigordos, which Elchanes recaptures. A false report that the Normans hold Nicaea draws Peter's followers out, and the Turks destroy them at the Drakon; their bones make a mountain, later built into a city wall. Alexios rescues Peter, who blames his own disobedient men. Anna judges that Bohemond's kind used Peter's preaching as a pretext.

Τοῦ δὲ βασιλέως ἅπερ ὁ Πέτρος προεπεπόνθει παρὰ τῶν
the and emperor what — Peter had-suffered-before from the
Τούρκων γινώσκοντος καὶ συμβουλεύοντος αὐτῷ καὶ τὴν
Turks knowing and advising him also the
τῶν λοιπῶν κομήτων καρτερῆσαι ἔλευσιν, οὐκ ἐπείθετο
of-the remaining counts to-await coming not he-was-persuaded
θαρρῶν εἰς τὸ πλῆθος τῶν συνεπομένων αὐτῷ καὶ
trusting in the multitude of-those following him and
διαπεράσας ἐπήξατο τὸν χάρακα εἴς τι πολίχνιον
having-crossed pitched the palisade at a-certain little-town
Ἑλενούπολιν ὀνομαζόμενον. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ Νορμάνοι τούτῳ
Helenoupolis named since and also Normans him
συνείποντο εἰς δέκα χιλιάδας ποσούμενοι, ἀποκριθέντες
followed to ten thousands numbering having-separated
τοῦ λοιποῦ στρατεύματος τὰ κατὰ τὴν Νίκαιαν
from-the rest army the(-parts) about — Nicaea
ἐλῄζοντο πᾶσιν ὠμοτάτως χρησάμενοι. τῶν τε γὰρ
plundered on-all most-cruelly having-dealt of-the both for
βρεφῶν τὰ μὲν ἐμέλιζον, τὰ δὲ ξύλοις περιπείροντες
infants some indeed they-dismembered others and on-spits skewering
ὤπτιζον ἐν πυρί, πρὸς δὲ τοὺς τῷ χρόνῳ προήκοντας
roasted in fire to and those in-the time advanced
πᾶν εἶδος ποινῆς ἐπεδείκνυντο. οἱ δὲ ἐντὸς τῶν
every kind of-punishment they-displayed those and inside of-the

γινομένων ἐν αἰσθήσει γεγονότες ἀναπετάσαντες τὰς πύλας
happenings in perception having-become having-thrown-open the gates
κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ἐξήεσαν. καρτεροῦ δὲ τηνικαῦτα συρραγέντος
against them went-out strong and then having-broken-out
πολέμου παλίνορσοι εἴσω τοῦ κάστρου γεγόνασιν ἐκθύμως
war turned-back inside the fortress they-became passionately
τῶν Νορμάνων ἀγωνισαμένων. καὶ ὡς τὴν λείαν ἅπασαν
the Normans having-contended and thus the booty all
ἀναλαβόμενοι κατέλαβον αὖθις τὴν Ἑλενούπολιν. λόγου δὲ
having-taken reached again — Helenoupolis word and
ἀναμεταξὺ αὐτῶν τε καὶ τῶν μὴ σὺν αὐτοῖς ἀπελθόντων
between them both and those not with them having-gone
κινηθέντος, ὁποῖα φιλεῖ ἐν τοῖς τοιούτοις γίνεσθαι, τοῦ
having-been-stirred such-as is-wont in the such-cases to-happen the
φθόνου τὸν θυμὸν ἀναφλέγοντος τῶν ἀπολειφθέντων
envy the anger inflaming of-those left-behind
κἀντεῦθεν ἀψιμαχίας ἀμφοῖν γενομένης οἱ τολμητίαι
and-thence skirmish between-both having-happened the daring
Νορμάνοι ἀποκριθέντες αὖθις τὴν Ξερίγορδον καταλαβόντες
Normans having-separated again — Xerigordos having-reached
ἐξ ἐφόδου κατέσχον. μαθὼν δὲ τὸ γεγονὸς ὁ σουλτὰν
by assault held having-learned and the event the sultan
κατ᾽ αὐτῶν μετὰ ἀποχρώσης δυνάμεως ἐκπέμπει τὸν
against them with sufficient force sends-out —
Ἐλχάνην. ὁ δὲ καταλαβὼν αἱρεῖ μὲν τὴν Ξερίγορδον,
Elchanes he and having-arrived takes indeed — Xerigordos
τῶν δέ γε Νορμάνων τοὺς μὲν ξιφῶν παρανάλωμα
of-the and at-least Normans some indeed of-swords a-casualty
ἐποιήσατο, τοὺς δὲ καὶ ζωγρίαν ἦγε μελετήσας ἅμα
made others and also alive led having-planned at-the-same-time
καὶ κατὰ τῶν συναπολειφθέντων τῷ Κουκουπέτρῳ. καὶ
also against those left-together — with-Koukoupetros and

λόχους μὲν ἐν ἐπικαίροις καταστήσας τόποις, ὡς ἂν
ambushes indeed in suitable having-set places so-that —
ἐν τῷ κατὰ τῆς Νικαίας ἀπιέναι τούτοις ἀπροόπτως
in the toward — Nicaea going on-them unforeseeably
ἐμπίπτοντες ἀναιρῶνται, γινώσκων δὲ καὶ τὸ τῶν
falling they-might-be-killed knowing and also the of-the
Κελτῶν ἐρασιχρήματον δύο τινὰς δραστηρίους τὴν γνώμην
Celts love-of-money two some energetic in-the mind
μεταπεμψάμενος ἐνετείλατο ἀπελθεῖν πρὸς τὸ στράτευμα
having-summoned enjoined to-go to the army
τοῦ Κουκουπέτρου διακηρυκεύοντας, ὡς οἱ Νορμάνοι
— of-Koukoupetros proclaiming that the Normans
κατασχόντες τὴν Νίκαιαν δασμὸν τῶν ἐνόντων ἐν
having-seized — Nicaea a-division of-the(-things) in in
αὐτῇ ποιοῦνται. αὕτη ἡ φήμη τοὺς μετὰ τοῦ Πέτρου
it make this the rumor those with — Peter
συνόντας καταλαβοῦσα δεινῶς συνετάραξε. δασμὸν γὰρ
being having-reached terribly confounded division for
καὶ χρήματα ἀκηκοότες παραχρῆμα τῆς πρὸς τὴν Νίκαιαν
and money having-heard immediately the to — Nicaea
φερούσης ὁδοῦ ἀσυντάκτως ἥψαντο ἐπιλαθόμενοι μονονοὺ
leading road in-disorder took having-forgotten almost
καὶ στρατιωτικῆς ἐμπειρίας καὶ τῆς τοῖς πρὸς μάχην
also military experience and the for-those to battle
ἀπιοῦσιν *** εὐταξίας. ἔστι μὲν γὰρ καὶ ἄλλως τὸ τῶν
going (lacuna) good-order is indeed for also otherwise the of-the
Λατίνων γένος φιλοχρηματώτατον, ὥσπερ ἄνωθεν εἴρηται,
Latins race most-money-loving as above has-been-said
ἐπὰν δὲ καὶ πρὸς καταδρομὴν χώρας ἀπονεύσειε, καὶ
when and also to raid of-land it-should-turn and
λόγῳ μὴ χρώμενον ἀχαλιναγώγητον. μὴ κατὰ στοίχους
with-reason not using unbridled not in rows

δὲ μήτε ἰλαδὸν πορευόμενοι τοῖς περὶ τὸν Δράκοντα
and nor by-squadrons marching to-the about the Drakon
λοχῶσι Τούρκοις περιπίπτοντες οἰκτρῶς ἀνῃροῦντο. καὶ
ambushing Turks falling-in pitiably were-killed and
τοσοῦτον πλῆθος Κελτῶν τε καὶ Νορμάνων ἔργον
so-great a-multitude of-Celts both and Normans a-work
μαχαίρας Ἰσμαηλιτικῆς ἐγεγόνει, ὥστε τὰ ἑκασταχοῦ
of-knife Ishmaelite became that the everywhere
κείμενα λείψανα τῶν ἀποσφαγέντων ἀνδρῶν συγκομίσαντες
lying remains of-the slaughtered men having-collected
μέγιστον οὐ λόφον φημὶ οὐδὲ βουνὸν οὐδὲ σκοπιὰν
very-great not a-mound I-mean nor hill nor peak
ἐποιήσαντο, ἀλλ᾽ οἷον ὄρος ὑψηλὸν καὶ βάθος καὶ
they-made but as-it-were a-mountain high and in-depth and
πλάτος ἀξιολογώτατον ἀπολαμβάνον· τοσοῦτος ἔκειτο ὁ
breadth most-remarkable taking-up so-great lay the
τῶν ὀστῶν κολωνός. καί τινες ὕστερον τῶν ἐκ τοῦ αὐτοῦ
of-the bones heap and some later of-those from the same
γένους τῶν ἀποσφαγέντων βαρβάρων ἐν σχήματι πόλεως
race of-the slaughtered barbarians in form of-a-city
οἰκοδομήσαντες τεῖχος μεσέμβολά τινα καθάπερ κάχληκας τὰ
having-built a-wall interstices some as-if pebbles the
ὀστᾶ τῶν ἀπολωλότων ἐνέθεντο τρόπον τινὰ τάφον αὐτοῖς
bones of-the perished put-in way a-certain a-tomb for-them
τὴν πόλιν ποιούμενοι. ἥτις καὶ εἰς τὴν τήμερον ἵσταται
the city making which also to the today stands
τετειχισμένη ὁμοῦ τε λίθοις καὶ ὀστοῖς ἀναμὶξ ἔχουσα
walled together both with-stones and bones mixed having
τὸν περίβολον. πάντων οὖν ξιφῶν παρανάλωμα γεγονότων
the circuit all then of-swords a-casualty having-become
μόνος ὁ Πέτρος μετ᾽ ὀλίγων τινῶν εἰς Ἑλενούπολιν αὖθις
alone — Peter with few some to Helenoupolis again

ὑποστρέψας εἰσῄει. οἱ δὲ Τοῦρκοι αὖθις τοῦτον ἐνήδρευον
having-returned entered the and Turks again him ambushed
ἑλεῖν ἐθέλοντες. ὁ δὲ αὐτοκράτωρ ἅπαντα ἀκηκοὼς καὶ τὴν
to-take wishing the and autocrat all having-heard and the
τοσαύτην ἀνδροκτασίαν βεβαιωθεὶς ἐν δεινῷ ἐποιεῖτο, εἰ
so-great slaughter having-been-assured in terror held-it if
καὶ ὁ Πέτρος ἁλῴη. παραχρῆμα τοίνυν μεταπεμψάμενος
even — Peter should-be-taken immediately therefore having-summoned
τὸν Κατακαλὼν Κωνσταντῖνον τὸν Εὐφορβηνόν, οὗ ὁ
— Katakalon Constantine the Euphorbenos of-whom the
λόγος ἐν πολλοῖς ἤδη ἐμνήσθη, ἀποχρώσας δυνάμεις ἐν
account in many-places already made-mention sufficient forces into
ναυσὶ πολεμικαῖς ἐμβαλὼν διαπόντιον εἰς ἀρωγὴν αὐτοῦ
ships warlike having-put by-sea for help his
πέπομφε. θεασάμενοι δὲ τοῦτον οἱ Τοῦρκοι καταλαβόντα
sent having-beheld and him the Turks arriving
φυγαδείᾳ ἐχρήσαντο. ὁ δὲ μηδὲ μικρὸν ἀναμείνας
flight used he and not-even a-little having-waited
ἀναλαβόμενος τὸν Πέτρον μετὰ τῶν σὺν αὐτῷ, ῥητοὶ
having-taken — Peter with those with him countable
γὰρ ἦσαν, διασῴζει πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα. τοῦ δὲ βασιλέως
for they-were brings-safely to the emperor the and emperor
ἀναμιμνήσκοντος αὐτὸν τῆς ἀρχῆθεν ἀβουλίας αὐτοῦ
reminding him of-the from-the-beginning folly his
καὶ ὅπως ταῖς αὐτοῦ ὑποθημοσύναις μὴ πειθόμενος
and how to-the his counsels not obeying
τοσούτοις ἐνεπεπτώκει δεινοῖς, ὁποῖα Λατῖνος ὑψαύχην οὐχὶ
into-so-many had-fallen terrors such-as a-Latin haughty not
ἑαυτὸν αἴτιον τοῦ τοσούτου κακοῦ ἔλεγεν, ἀλλ᾽ ἐκείνους
himself cause of-the so-great evil said but those
τοὺς μὴ αὐτῷ πειθομένους, ἀλλὰ τοῖς ἰδίοις θελήμασι
the not him obeying but the own wills

χρωμένους, λῃστὰς ἀποκαλῶν τούτους καὶ ἅρπαγας καὶ
using robbers calling them and plunderers and
μηδὲ παρὰ τοῦ σωτῆρος εἰς προσκύνησιν τοῦ ἁγίου
not-even by the savior to veneration of-the holy
τάφου διὰ ταῦτα δεκτούς. οἱ μὲν οὖν τῶν Λατίνων,
tomb because-of these(-things) accepted those indeed then of-the Latins
ὁποῖος ὁ Βαϊμοῦντος καὶ οἱ τούτου ὁμόφρονες, ἔρωτα
such-as — Bohemond and the his like-minded desire
τῆς τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῆς ἐκ μακροῦ ἔχοντες καὶ ταύτην
of-the of-the Romans rule from long having and it
ἑαυτοῖς περιποιήσασθαι βουλόμενοι, πρόφασιν τὴν τοῦ
for-themselves to-secure wishing a-pretext the —
Πέτρου διακηρύκευσιν εὑρηκότες, ὡς εἴρηται, τὴν τοιαύτην
of-Peter proclamation having-found as has-been-said the such
συγκίνησιν ἐποιήσαντο ἀπατήσαντες τοὺς ἀκεραιοτέρους
commotion made having-deceived the more-simple
καὶ σχηματιζόμενοι κατὰ τῶν Τούρκων ἀπέρχεσθαι εἰς
and pretending against the Turks to-go for
ἐκδίκησιν τοῦ ἁγίου τάφου τὰς ἰδίας ἐπίπρασκον χώρας.
vengeance of-the holy tomb the own sold lands

LX · HUGH OF VERMANDOIS

Hugh, brother of the king of France, calls himself the king of kings. Shipwrecked near Palous, he is held by John, duke of Dyrrachion, and brought to Constantinople, where Alexios wins him with gifts and he swears the Latin oath.

Οὖβος δέ τις ὁ τοῦ ῥηγὸς Φραγγίας ἀδελφὸς φυσῶν
Hugh and a-certain the of-the king of-France brother breathing
τὰ Ναυάτου ἐπ᾽ εὐγενείᾳ καὶ πλούτῳ καὶ δυνάμει
the(-things) of-Novatus for nobility and wealth and power

τῆς ἐνεγκαμένης μέλλων ἐξελθεῖν τάχα ὡς πρὸς τὸν
of-the land-that-bore-him being-about to-go-out perhaps as to the
ἅγιον τάφον ἀποστείλας ἀπονοίας ῥήματα ἐμήνυσε πρὸς
holy tomb having-sent of-madness words sent-word to
τὸν αὐτοκράτορα προμηθευόμενος λαμπρὰν τὴν ὑπαντὴν
the autocrat providing brilliant the meeting
αὐτῷ γενέσθαι "ἴσθι" λέγων "ὦ βασιλεῦ, ὡς ἐγὼ ὁ
for-him to-happen know saying O emperor that I the
βασιλεὺς τῶν βασιλέων καὶ ὁ μείζων τῶν ὑπ' οὐρανόν·
king of-the kings and the greater of-those under heaven
καὶ καταλαμβάνοντά με ἤδη ἐνδέχεται ὑπαντῆσαί τε καὶ
and arriving me already it-is-fitting to-meet both and
δέξασθαι μεγαλοπρεπῶς καὶ ἀξίως τῆς ἐμῆς εὐγενείας".
to-receive magnificently and worthily of-the my nobility
ταῦτα ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀκούσας, ἐπεὶ δοὺξ μὲν ἔτυχε
these(-things) the emperor having-heard since duke indeed happened-to-be
Δυρραχίου Ἰωάννης ὁ υἱὸς Ἰσαακίου τοῦ σεβαστοκράτορος,
of-Dyrrachion John the son of-Isaac the sebastokrator
περὶ οὗ ἄνωθεν εἴρηται, τοῦ δὲ στόλου Νικόλαος ὁ
about whom above has-been-said of-the and fleet Nicholas the
Μαυροκατακαλὼν περὶ τὸν λιμένα τοῦ Δυρραχίου ἐκ
Maurokatakalon about the harbor — of-Dyrrachion at
διαστημάτων ἐνορμίσας τὰς ναῦς κἀκεῖθεν αὖθις τὰς
intervals having-moored the ships and-from-there again the
ἐκδρομὰς ποιούμενος καὶ τὰ πελάγη περισκοπῶν, ὡς μὴ
raids making and the seas surveying so-that not
λάθοιεν αὐτὸν λῃστρικαὶ νῆες παραπλεύσασαι, ὁ
should-escape-notice-of him pirate ships having-sailed-past the
αὐτοκράτωρ εὐθὺς γράμματα πρὸς ἀμφοτέρους ἐκπέμπει
autocrat at-once letters to both sends-out
ἐντειλάμενος τὸν μὲν δοῦκα Δυρραχίου διὰ τῆς ἠπείρου καὶ
having-enjoined the indeed duke of-Dyrrachion by the mainland and

τῆς παραλίας ἐφεδρεύειν τὴν τούτου ἔλευσιν καὶ παραυτίκα
the coast to-watch-for the his coming and immediately
τῷ αὐτοκράτορι ταχεῖαν τῆς τούτου ἐλεύσεως δοῦναι
to-the autocrat quick of-the his coming to-give
γνῶσιν, αὐτὸν δὲ τὸν Οὗβον ὑποδέξασθαι μεγαλοπρεπῶς,
knowledge him and — Hugh to-receive magnificently
τὸν δὲ δοῦκα τοῦ στόλου παρακελεύσασθαι μηδαμῶς
the and duke of-the fleet to-order in-no-way
ἀναπεπτωκέναι μηδὲ καταρρᾳθυμεῖν, ἀλλ' ἐγρηγορέναι
to-slacken nor to-be-careless but to-be-awake
διὰ παντός. κατὰ τὴν παραλίαν δὲ τῆς Λογγιβαρδίας ὁ
through all on the coast and — of-Lombardy —
Οὗβος διασωθεὶς πρέσβεις τηνικαῦτα ἐκπέμπει πρὸς τὸν
Hugh having-come-safely envoys then sends to the
δοῦκα Δυρραχίου εἴκοσι πρὸς τοῖς τέσσαρσι τὸν ἀριθμόν,
duke of-Dyrrachion twenty besides the four the number
θώραξι χρυσέοις σὺν αὐταῖς κνημῖσι περιπεφραγμένους,
with-breastplates golden with the-very greaves fenced
μετὰ τοῦ κόμητος Τζερπεντηρίου καὶ Ἠλία τοῦ ἐκ
with the count Tzerpenterios and Elias the from
Θεσσαλονίκης ἀποδράσαντος ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος. οἱ
Thessalonike having-run-away from the autocrat they
δὲ πρὸς τὸν δοῦκα τοιαῦτα ἔλεγον "γνωστὸν ἔστω σοι,
and to the duke such-things said known let-it-be to-you
δούξ, ὅτι ὁ κύριος ἡμῶν Οὗβος ὅσον ἤδη καταλαμβάνει
duke that the lord our Hugh all-but already arrives
ἀναλαβόμενος ἀπὸ Ῥώμης τὴν χρυσῆν τοῦ ἁγίου Πέτρου
having-taken from Rome the golden of-the holy Peter
σημαίαν. ἀρχηγὸν δὲ τοῦτον ἐπίστασο τοῦ Φραγγικοῦ
standard leader and him know of-the Frankish
στρατεύματος ἅπαντος. ἑτοιμάσθητι γοῦν πρὸς τὴν
army all prepare at-any-rate for the

τούτου καὶ τῶν ὑπ᾽ αὐτὸν δυνάμεων δοχὴν ἀξίαν τῆς
his and of-the under him forces reception worthy of-the
αὐτοῦ ἐξουσίας καὶ τὴν πρὸς αὐτὸν ὑπαντὴν ποιησόμενος.”
his authority and the to him meeting going-to-make
τούτων τοιαῦτα πρὸς τὸν δοῦκα λεγόντων ὁ Οὖβος διὰ
them such-things to the duke saying — Hugh through
τῆς Ῥώμης εἰς Λογγιβαρδίαν, ὡς εἴρηται, κατελθὼν καὶ
— Rome to Lombardy as has-been-said having-come-down and
διὰ τῆς Βάρεως ὡς πρὸς τὸ Ἰλλυρικὸν τὸν ἀπόπλουν
through — Bari as to — Illyricum the sailing
ποιούμενος κλύδωνι μεγίστῳ περιπεσὼν ἀπώλεσε τὰ πλείω
making into-a-surge very-great having-fallen lost the most
τῶν αὐτοῦ πλοίων σὺν αὐτοῖς ἐρέταις καὶ ἐπιβάταις,
of-the his boats with the-very rowers and marines
ἑνὸς μόνου σκάφους, ἐν ᾧ αὐτὸς ἔτυχε, κατὰ τὴν
one only skiff in which he happened-to-be on the
μεσαίχμιον παραλίαν τοῦ τε Δυρραχίου καὶ τόπου τινὸς
between coast — both of-Dyrrachion and place a-certain
καλουμένου Πάλους ἀποπτυσθέντος οἷον παρὰ τῶν
called Palous having-been-spat-out as-it-were by the
κυμάτων καὶ αὐτοῦ ἡμιθραύστου. παραδόξως δὲ τούτῳ
waves and it half-shattered unexpectedly and him
σωθέντι περιτυχόντες δύο τινὲς τῶν περισκοπούντων τὴν
saved having-met two some of-those watching-for the
τούτου ἔλευσιν μετεκαλοῦντο αὐτὸν λέγοντες ὡς “ὁ δοὺξ
his coming summoned him saying that the duke
ἀπεκδέχεταί σου τὴν ἄφιξιν ἐπιποθῶν σε θεάσασθαι”. ὁ δ᾽
awaits your the arrival longing you to-see he and
εὐθὺς ἵππον ἐζήτει. ἄτερος δὲ τούτων ἀποβὰς τοῦ
at-once a-horse sought the-other and of-these having-dismounted from-the
ἵππου τοῦτον αὐτῷ μάλα προθύμως δίδωσιν. οὕτω γοῦν
horse it to-him very eagerly gives thus at-any-rate

τοῦτον ὁ δοὺξ σωθέντα θεασάμενος καὶ προσηγορίας
him the duke saved having-beheld and of-greeting
ἀξιώσας, ὅπη τε καὶ ὅθεν ἐπερωτήσας καὶ ὅπως
having-deemed-worthy where both and whence having-asked and how
αὐτῷ διαπλῳζομένῳ τὰ δεινὰ ξυμβέβηκε μαθὼν καὶ
to-him sailing the terrible-things befell having-learned and
ἐπανακτησάμενος χρησταῖς ὑποσχέσεσι τράπεζαν αὐτῷ
having-recovered with-good promises a-table to-him
δαψιλῆ τοῦ λοιποῦ παρατίθησιν. μετὰ δὲ τὴν εὐωχίαν
abundant for-the rest sets-before after and the feasting
ἄνετον μὲν οὔκ, ἐλεύθερον δὲ παντελῶς εἶχε. ταχὺ δὲ τῷ
at-liberty indeed not free and entirely he-held quickly and to-the
αὐτοκράτορι τὰ κατ᾽ αὐτὸν δηλώσας ἐκαρτέρει
autocrat the(-affairs) concerning him having-made-known awaited
τὸ ποιητέον ἐκεῖθεν δέξασθαι. ἅπαντα δὲ μεμαθηκὼς
the(-thing) to-be-done from-there to-receive all and having-learned
ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ ὀξέως τὸν Βουτουμίτην πέμπει πρὸς τὴν
the autocrat swiftly — Boutoumites sends to —
Ἐπίδαμνον, ἣν πολλάκις Δυρράχιον κατωνομάσαμεν, ἐφ᾽
Epidamnos which often Dyrrachion we-have-named for
ᾧ τὸν Οὖβον ἀναλαβέσθαι καὶ μὴ τὴν εὐθεῖαν βαδίσαι, ἀλλὰ
which — Hugh to-take and not the straight to-go but
παρεκκλῖναι καὶ διὰ τῆς Φιλιππουπόλεως αὐτὸν ἀγαγεῖν εἰς
to-turn-aside and through — Philippopolis him to-bring to
τὴν μεγαλόπολιν. ἐδεδίει γὰρ τὰ ὄπισθεν ἐρχόμενα Κελτικὰ
the great-city he-feared for the behind coming Celtic
πλήθη καὶ στρατεύματα. δεξάμενος δὲ τοῦτον ὁ βασιλεὺς
multitudes and armies having-received and him the emperor
ἐντίμως καὶ παντοίας φιλοφροσύνης ἀξιώσας χρήματά
honorably and of-every-kind kindness having-deemed-worthy money

τε ἱκανὰ ἐπιδοὺς πείθει παραχρῆμα ἄνθρωπον αὐτοῦ
and considerable having-given persuades immediately man his
γενέσθαι τὸν τοῖς Λατίνοις συνήθη ὅρκον ἐπομοσάμενον.
to-become the for-the Latins customary oath having-sworn

LXI · THE PRIEST AT SEA

Bohemond crosses to Kabalion. The count of Prebentza hires a pirate ship to avoid the Roman fleet, but Nicholas Maurokatakalon intercepts him by night. Anna describes the crossbow, the tzangra, whose bolts pierce shield, breastplate, and even a bronze statue. Marianos attacks the ship at its prow, and a Latin priest fights him from evening to the next midday with arrows, stones, and finally barley-cakes. Anna contrasts Latin priests, who fight, with the Roman canons. Then the count surrenders, and the priest dies giving Marianos a silver cup.

Ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν τὰ κατὰ τὸν Οὖβον ἐκ
but these(-things) indeed the(-affairs) concerning — Hugh from
προοιμίων· ὁ δέ γε Βαϊμοῦντος, οὗ ἄνωθεν ὁ λόγος
the-outset — and at-least Bohemond of-whom above the account
πολλάκις ἐμνήσθη, πεντεκαίδεκα ἡμερῶν οὔπω διελθουσῶν
many-times made-mention fifteen days not-yet having-passed
διεπέρασεν εἰς τὴν ἀκτὴν τοῦ Καβαλίωνος μετὰ κομήτων
crossed to the coast — of-Kabalion with counts
διαφόρων καὶ στρατεύματος ἀριθμὸν ὑπερβαίνοντος ἅπαντα.
various and army number exceeding all
τόπος δὲ οὗτος ἐγγὺς τῆς Βοούσης· ὀνόματα δὲ ταῦτα
place and this near — Boousa names and these
τῶν ἐν τοῖς μέρεσιν ἐκείνοις τόπων. καὶ μεμφέσθω
of-the in the parts those places and let-blame
μηδεὶς ἡμῖν τοιούτοις χρωμένοις ὀνόμασι βαρβαρικοῖς καὶ
no-one us such using names barbarian and

ἀφ' ὧν ἔστι τὸ ὕφος τῆς ἱστορίας καταμιαίνεσθαι·
from which it-is-possible the texture of-the history to-be-defiled
οὐδὲ γὰρ οὐδ' Ὅμηρος ἀπηξίωσε Βοιωτοὺς ὀνομάζειν
not for even Homer disdained Boeotians to-name
καί τινας βαρβαρώδεις νήσους διὰ τὴν τῆς ἱστορίας
and some barbarous islands because-of the of-the history
ἀκρίβειαν. κατὰ πόδας δὲ τούτου καὶ ὁ κόμης Πρεβέντζας
exactness at heels and of-him also the count of-Prebentza
ταῖς ἀκταῖς τοῦ πορθμοῦ Λογγιβαρδίας προσπελάσας,
the shores of-the strait of-Lombardy having-approached
ἐπεὶ διαπερᾶν καὶ αὐτὸς ἐβούλετο, μυριοφόρον ναῦν
since to-cross also he wished a-ten-thousand-bearing ship
λῃστρικὴν μισθωσάμενος τριάρμενον ἑξακισχιλίων χρυσίνων
pirate having-hired three-masted of-six-thousand gold
στατήρων, ἐν ᾗ ἐρέται μὲν διακόσιοι, ἐφόλκια δὲ
staters in which rowers indeed two-hundred tow-boats and
τὰ συνεφεπόμενα ταύτῃ τρία. τὸν ἀπόπλουν οὐ πρὸς
the following it three the sailing not toward
τὰ μέρη τοῦ Αὐλῶνος ἐπεποίητο καθὼς τὰ λοιπὰ τῶν
the parts — of-Avlona had-made as the rest of-the
Λατίνων στρατεύματα, ἀλλὰ τὸν Ῥωμαϊκὸν ὑφορώμενος
Latin armies but the Roman suspecting
στόλον λύσας τὰ πρυμνήσια μικρὸν παρεκκλίνας κατευθὺ
fleet having-loosed the stern-cables a-little having-swerved straight-for
Χιμάρας τὸν ἀπόπλουν ἐποιεῖτο οὐρίου τυχὼν πνεύματος.
Chimara the sailing made fair having-got wind
φεύγων δὲ τὸν καπνὸν εἰς πῦρ ἐπεπτώκει. καὶ γὰρ
fleeing and the smoke into fire had-fallen and for
οὐχὶ τοῖς σποράδην ἐνεδρεύουσι τὸν τῆς Λογγιβαρδίας
not with-the scattered lying-in-wait-for the — of-Lombardy
πορθμὸν ναυτικοῖς περιέτυχεν, ἀλλ' αὐτῷ τῷ δουκὶ τοῦ
strait naval-craft he-met but himself the duke of-the

ὅλου Ῥωμαϊκοῦ στόλου Νικολάῳ τῷ Μαυροκατακαλών. ὃς
whole Roman fleet Nicholas the Maurokatakalon who
πόρρω περὶ τῆς λῃστρικῆς ἐκείνης νηὸς μεμαθηκώς, τὰς
far-off about the pirate that ship having-learned the
τοῦ ὅλου στόλου διήρεις καὶ τριήρεις καί τινας δρομάδας
of-the whole fleet biremes and triremes and some swift
ἀναλαβόμενος ναῦς ἀπελθὼν ἵστατο εἰς Καβαλίωνα
having-taken ships having-gone stood at Kabalion
ἀντικρὺ τοῦ Ἄσωνος, ἐξ οὗπερ ἐξεληλύθει τὸν μέγαν
opposite — of-Ason from which he-had-gone-out the great
ἐκεῖσε στόλον καταλιπών, καὶ ἀπέστειλε τὸν καλούμενον
there fleet having-left and sent the called
δεύτερον κόμητα μετὰ τοῦ ἰδίου κατέργου ἐξκουσσάτου
second count with the own galley exkoussaton
παρὰ τοῖς ναυτικοῖς καλουμένου ἐπισκήψας αὐτῷ, ἵν᾽
among the sailors called having-enjoined him that
ὁπηνίκα τὰ πρυμνήσια τῆς ἤδη ῥηθείσης νηὸς οἱ ἐρέται
when the stern-cables of-the already mentioned ship the rowers
λύσαντες εἰς κῦμα θαλάσσης ἐμβάλωσι, πυρσὸν ἀνάψῃ.
having-loosed into wave of-sea should-put a-beacon he-should-light
ὁ δὲ ἀπελθὼν παραχρῆμα τὸ κελευσθὲν ἐποίει. ὁ δὲ
he and having-gone at-once the(-thing) ordered did the and
δοὺξ Νικόλαος τοῦτο θεασάμενος τὰς μὲν τῶν νηῶν τοῖς
duke Nicholas this having-seen the indeed of-the ships with-the
ἱστίοις παραχρῆμα ἐπτέρου, τὰς δὲ καὶ οἷον πολύποδας
sails at-once winged the and also as-it-were many-footed
ταῖς κώπαις ἀπεργασάμενος κατὰ τοῦ διαπερῶντος
with-the oars having-made against the crossing
χωρεῖ κόμητος. οὔπω δὲ τρεῖς σταδίους ἀπὸ τῆς χέρσου
advances count not-yet and three stades from the dry-land
διαπλῳσάμενον καταλαμβάνει τοῦτον πρὸς τὴν περαίαν
having-sailed overtakes him toward the far-shore

Ἐπιδάμνου σπεύδοντα, ἐνόπλους μὲν στρατιώτας ἔχοντα
of-Epidamnos hastening armed indeed soldiers having
χιλίους πρὸς τοῖς πεντακοσίοις, ἵππους δὲ τῶν ἐκκρίτων
thousand besides the five-hundred horses and of-the picked
ὀγδοήκοντα. ὃν θεασάμενος ὁ πηδαλιοῦχος τῆς νεώς
eighty whom having-beheld the helmsman of-the ship
φησι πρὸς τὸν κόμητα Πρεβέντζας· "ἐκ Συρίας ὁ ἤδη
says to the count of-Prebentza from Syria the already
καταλαμβάνων ἡμᾶς στόλος ἐστὶ καὶ κίνδυνος μαχαίρας
overtaking us fleet is and danger of-knife
καὶ ξιφῶν παρανάλωμα γενέσθαι." παραχρῆμα γοῦν
and of-swords a-casualty to-become immediately at-any-rate
ὁ κόμης θωρήξασθαί τε ἐκέλευεν ἅπαντας καὶ καρτερῶς
the count to-arm both ordered all and strongly
μάχεσθαι. κἂν δὲ μέσος χειμὼν ἦν, ὁπότε ἡ μνήμη τοῦ
to-fight even-if and mid winter it-was when the memorial of-the
ἐν ἱεράρχαις μεγίστου Νικολάου τελεῖται, ἀλλ' ὅμως
among hierarchs greatest Nicholas is-celebrated but nevertheless
νηνεμία ἔτυχε παντελὴς καὶ ἡ νὺξ πανσέληνος φαίνουσα
calm happened complete and the night full-moon shining
τότε μᾶλλον ἢ ἐν ἔαρι. πεπαυμένων δὲ παντάπασι
then more than in spring having-ceased and entirely
τῶν ἀνέμων οὐκέτι ἡ λῃστρικὴ ναῦς κινεῖσθαι πρὸς
the winds no-longer the pirate ship to-move with
ἰσχύος εἶχε καὶ συνέβαινε ταύτην ἀτρεμεῖν ἐν τοῖς ὕδασιν.
strength could and it-happened it to-be-still in the waters
ἀλλ' ἐνταυθοῖ τοῦ λόγου γενομένη βουλοίμην ἂν τὴν
but here in-the account having-come I-would-wish — the
γλῶτταν ἐπαφεῖναι τοῖς τοῦ Μαριανοῦ κατορθώμασιν.
tongue to-let-loose on-the — of-Marianos exploits
ὃς παραχρῆμα παρὰ τοῦ δουκὸς τοῦ στόλου καὶ ἰδίου
who immediately from the duke of-the fleet and own

πατρὸς τὰ κουφότερα τῶν πλοίων αἰτήσας κατευθὺ τῆς
father the lighter of-the boats having-asked straight-for the
νεὼς ἐκείνης ἴεται καὶ τῇ πρώρᾳ συνεισπεσὼν ταύτης
ship that rushes and the prow having-fallen-upon of-it
ἀπεπειρᾶτο. συνέρρεον δὲ παραχρῆμα ἐκεῖσε οἱ ἔνοπλοι
he-tried flowed-together and immediately there the armed
καρτερῶς τοῦτον ἐξωπλισμένον πρὸς μάχην θεασάμενοι.
strongly him equipped for battle having-beheld
ὁ δὲ Μαριανὸς τοῖς Λατίνοις τῇ ἐκείνων ἀποχρώμενος
— and Marianos to-the Latins the their using
διαλέκτῳ παρεκελεύετο μὴ δεδιέναι μηδὲ μάχεσθαι πρὸς
tongue exhorted not to-fear nor to-fight against
ὁμοπίστους. βάλλει δέ τις τοῦτον τῶν Λατίνων διὰ τῆς
co-religionists strikes and someone him of-the Latins with the
τζάγγρας κατὰ τῆς κόρυθος. ἡ δὲ τζάγγρα τόξον μέν ἐστι
tzangra on the helmet the and tzangra a-bow indeed is
βαρβαρικὸν καὶ Ἕλλησι παντελῶς ἀγνοούμενον· τείνεται
barbarian and to-Greeks entirely unknown is-stretched
δὲ οὐχὶ τῆς μὲν δεξιᾶς ἑλκούσης τὴν νευράν, τῆς δὲ λαιᾶς
and not the indeed right drawing the string the and left
ἀνθελκούσης τὸ τόξον, ἀλλὰ δεῖ τὸν διατείνοντα
drawing-back the bow but it-is-necessary the(-one) stretching
τὸ ὄργανον τουτὶ τὸ πολεμικὸν καὶ ἐκηβολώτατον, ὡς
the instrument this-here the warlike and most-far-shooting as
ἄν τις εἴποι, ὕπτιον κείμενον ἑκάτερον μὲν τῶν ποδῶν
— anyone might-say on-his-back lying each indeed of-the feet
ἐνερεῖσαι τοῖς ἡμικυκλίοις τοῦ τόξου, ἀμφοτέραις δὲ ταῖς
to-press-against the semicircles of-the bow with-both and the
χερσὶ τὴν νευρὰν μάλα γενναίως ἀνθελκύσαι. ἧς κατὰ
hands the string very nobly to-draw-back of-which at
τὸ μέσον σωλήν ἐστι κυλινδρικὸν ἡμίτομον ἐξημμένον
the middle a-groove is cylindrical half-cut fastened

αὐτῆς τῆς νευρᾶς καὶ ὥσπερ τι βέλος ἀξιόλογον μέγεθος
to-itself the string and like some arrow considerable size
ἀπολαμβάνον διήκει ἀπ᾽ αὐτῆς τῆς νευρᾶς ἐς τὸ τοῦ
taking extends from itself the string to the of-the
τόξου μεσαίτατον· ἀφ᾽ οὗ βέλη παντοδαπὰ διεκπίπτουσιν.
bow very-middle from which missiles of-all-kinds shoot-out
ἐν τούτῳ τοίνυν τὰ βέλη τιθέμενα βραχύτατα μὲν τῷ
in this therefore the missiles placed very-short indeed in-the
μήκει, παχύτατα δὲ καὶ πρόσθεν ἀξιόμαχον βάρος
length very-thick and also in-front a-match-for-battle weight
σιδήρου λαμβάνοντα. καὶ τῇ ἀφέσει τῆς νευρᾶς μετὰ
of-iron taking and at-the release of-the string with
σφοδρότητος καὶ ῥύμης ἁπάσης ἀφιείσης τὰ βέλεμνα οὗ
violence and impetus all releasing the darts whatever
ἂν τύχῃ ἐπεισπεσόντα οὐκ εἰς τοὔμπαλιν ἀποπίπτει,
— it-should-chance having-fallen-upon not to the-opposite falls-back
ἀλλὰ καὶ ἀσπίδα διέτρησε καὶ θώρακα βαρυσίδηρον
but also a-shield pierced and a-breastplate heavy-iron
διατεμόντα ἐκεῖθεν διὰ θατέρου μέρους ἐξεπετάσθη. οὕτως
having-cut-through from-there through the-other side flew-out so
ἐστὶ σφοδρὰ καὶ ἀκατάσχετος ἡ ἄφεσις τῶν τοιούτων
is violent and irresistible the release of-the such
βελῶν. ἤδη τοῦτο τὸ βέλος καὶ ἀνδριάντα διεπερόνησε
missiles already this the missile also a-statue pierced
χαλκοῦν καὶ τείχει ἐμπεπτωκὸς μεγίστης πόλεως ἢ
bronze and on-a-wall having-fallen of-a-very-great city either
ἐπὶ τἄνδον προὔκυψε τοῦ βέλους ἡ ἀκμὴ ἢ ἐνδεδυκὸς
to the-inside peeped-out of-the missile the point or having-sunk
κατὰ τὸ μέσον τοῦ τείχους ἀφανὲς γέγονε. τὸ μὲν οὖν
in the middle of-the wall invisible became the indeed then
τῆς τζάγγρας πρᾶγμα τοιοῦτόν ἐστιν ὡς ὄντως δαιμόνιον·
of-the tzangra thing such is as truly devilish

ὁ δὲ πειρασθεὶς τῆς ἐκ τούτου πληγῆς ἀθλιώτατος
the(-one) and having-experienced of-the from it blow most-wretched
ἀναισθήτως ἀποθνήσκων καὶ μηδὲ τῆς πληγῆς, ὁπόση τίς
senselessly dying and not-even of-the blow how-great —
ἐστιν, αἰσθανόμενος. τὸ μὲν οὖν ἀπὸ τῆς τζάγγρας βέλος
it-is perceiving the indeed then from the tzangra missile
ἐμπεσὸν τῷ ἄκρῳ τῆς κόρυθος διήλασεν αὐτὴν ἀποπτὰν
having-fallen on-the tip of-the helmet drove-through it having-flown-off
οὐδ' ἄχρι τριχὸς τοῦ Μαριανοῦ ἐφαψάμενον· πρόνοια γὰρ
not-even as-far-as a-hair — of-Marianos touching providence for
ἀπεῖρξεν. ὁ δὲ γοργῶς ἄλλον κατὰ τοῦ κόμητος ἐπαφεὶς
prevented he and swiftly another against the count having-let-loose
ὀϊστὸν πλήττει τοῦτον κατὰ τοῦ βραχίονος· ὃς τὴν
arrow strikes him on the arm which the
ἀσπίδα διατρήσας τόν τε φολιδωτὸν διεληλυθὼς θώρακα
shield having-pierced the both scaled having-gone-through breastplate
καὶ αὐτῆς ἥψατο τῆς πλευρᾶς. ἱερεὺς δέ τις Λατῖνος
also itself touched the side a-priest and a-certain Latin
τρισκαιδέκατος τυγχάνων τῶν σὺν αὐτῷ μαχομένων τοῦτο
thirteenth being of-those with him fighting this
θεασάμενος πρυμνόθεν ἱστάμενος πολλὰς βολίδας κατὰ
having-beheld from-the-stern standing many javelins against
τοῦ Μαριανοῦ ἐξέπεμψεν. ἀλλ' οὐδ' ὁ Μαριανὸς ἐνεδίδου
— Marianos sent-out but nor — Marianos yielded
αὐτός τε ἐκθύμως μαχόμενος καὶ τοῖς ὑπ' αὐτὸν τοῦτο
he both passionately fighting and to-those under him this
παρακελευόμενος, ὡς τρισσάκις τοὺς μετὰ τοῦ Λατίνου
exhorting so-that thrice those with the Latin
ἱερέως ὑπαλλαχθῆναι τιτρωσκομένους τε καὶ κοπιῶντας.
priest to-be-relieved wounded both and toiling
καὶ αὐτὸς δὲ ὁ ἱερεύς, κἂν πολλὰς τὰς πληγὰς δεδεγμένος
and himself too the priest even-if many the blows having-received

ἦν καὶ τῷ ἰδίῳ αἵματι περιρρεόμενος, ἀλλ᾽ ὅμως
he-was and in-the own blood streaming but nevertheless
ἄτρεστος ἦν. οὐ γὰρ κατὰ τὰ αὐτὰ ἡμῖν τε καὶ τοῖς
fearless he-was not for according-to the same-things to-us both and to-the
Λατίνοις περὶ τῶν ἱερωμένων δέδοκται· ἀλλ᾽ ἡμεῖς μὲν
Latins about the ordained it-has-been-resolved but we indeed
ἐντετάλμεθα παρά τε τῶν κανόνων καὶ νόμων καὶ τοῦ
have-been-commanded by both the canons and laws and the
εὐαγγελικοῦ δόγματος "μὴ θίξῃς, μὴ γρύξῃς, μὴ ἅψῃ·
evangelical doctrine do-not touch do-not mutter do-not handle
ἱερώμενος γὰρ εἶ", ὁ δέ τοι βάρβαρος Λατῖνος ἅμα τε
ordained for you-are the and surely barbarian Latin at-once both
τὰ θεῖα μεταχειριεῖται καὶ τὴν ἀσπίδα ἐπὶ τοῦ λαιοῦ
the divine-things will-handle and the shield on the left
θέμενος καὶ τὸ δόρυ τῇ δεξιᾷ ἐναγκαλισάμενος ὁμοῦ τε
having-put and the spear in-the right having-grasped together both
μεταδίδωσι τοῦ θείου σώματός τε καὶ αἵματος καὶ φόνιον
imparts of-the divine body both and blood and murderous
ὁρᾷ καὶ αἱμάτων ἀνὴρ κατὰ τὸν Δαυιτικὸν ψαλμὸν
looks and of-bloods a-man according-to the Davidic psalm
γίνεται. οὕτως ἐστὶ τὸ βάρβαρον τοῦτο γένος οὐχ ἧττον
becomes thus is the barbarian this race not less
ἱερατικὸν ἢ φιλοπόλεμον. οὗτος τοίνυν ὁ ῥέκτης μᾶλλον
priestly than war-loving this-man therefore the doer rather
ἢ ἱερεὺς ὁμοῦ τε καὶ τὴν ἱερατικὴν στολὴν ἐνεδιδύσκετο
than priest together both and the priestly robe wore
καὶ τὴν κώπην μετεχειρίζετο καὶ πρὸς ναυτικὸν πόλεμον
and the oar handled and to naval war
καὶ μάχην ἀφώρα κατὰ ταὐτὸν καὶ θαλάττῃ καὶ ἀνδράσι
and battle looked at the-same-time both with-sea and with-men
μαχόμενος. τὰ γὰρ ἡμέτερα, καθάπερ ἔφθην εἰρηκυῖα, τῆς
fighting the for our-things as I-was-first having-said of-the

∗∗∗ Ἀαρὼν καὶ Μωσέως καὶ τοῦ καθ᾽ ἡμᾶς πρώτου
(lacuna) Aaron and Moses and of-the among us first
ἀρχιερέως ἐξήρτηται. ἀλλὰ τῆς μάχης ἐξ ἑσπέρας αὐτῆς
high-priest depend but the battle from evening itself
μέχρι μέσης τῆς ἐπιφαινούσης ἡμέρας καρτερᾶς γεγονυίας
until middle of-the appearing day strong having-become
ὑπείκουσι κἂν μὴ ἐβούλοντο οἱ Λατῖνοι τῷ Μαριανῷ
yield even-if not they-wished the Latins — to-Marianos
λόγον ἀπαθείας ἐξ αὐτοῦ αἰτησάμενοι καὶ τυχόντες. ὁ
word of-immunity from him having-asked and having-obtained the
δέ γε μαχιμώτατος ἱερεὺς ἐκεῖνος οὐδὲ τῶν εἰρηνικῶν
and at-least most-warlike priest that not-even the peaceful
σπονδῶν τελουμένων τῆς μάχης ἐπέπαυτο, ἀλλὰ τὸν
treaties being-completed from-the battle had-ceased but the
γωρυτὸν βελῶν ἐκκενώσας χερμάδα ἀναλαβόμενος λίθον
quiver of-missiles having-emptied a-hand-sized having-taken stone
πέμπει κατὰ τοῦ Μαριανοῦ, τοῦ δὲ τὴν κεφαλὴν διὰ
sends against — Marianos him and the head with
τῆς ἀσπίδος περιφράττοντος πλήξας τὴν ἀσπίδα διεῖλε
the shield fencing having-struck the shield divided
τετραχῆ καὶ τὴν κόρυθα κατέθραυσεν. ὁ δὲ Μαριανὸς
in-four and the helmet shattered — and Marianos
τῇ τοῦ λίθου βολῇ συγχυθεὶς ἀπολωλεκὼς τὸ φρονοῦν
by-the of-the stone throw confounded having-lost the thinking-part
τῆς ψυχῆς ἄναυδος παραχρῆμα ἐφ᾽ ἱκανὸν ἔκειτο, ὥσπερ
of-the soul speechless immediately for a-good-while lay like
ὁ Ἕκτωρ ἐκεῖνος ὑπὸ τῆς τοῦ λίθου βολῆς τοῦ Αἴαντος
— Hector that by the of-the stone throw — of-Ajax
μικροῦ δεῖν ἐψυχορράγει. μόλις δ᾽ ἀνενεγκὼν καὶ ἑαυτὸν
almost to-lack was-breathing-his-last hardly and having-recovered and himself
συναγαγὼν τρισσάκις τὸν παίσαντα ἔπληξε βέλεμνα
having-collected thrice the(-one) having-struck struck darts

κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ ἐπαφείς. ὁ δὲ πολέμαρχος ἐκεῖνος μᾶλλον
against him having-let-loose the and war-lord that rather
ἢ ἱερεὺς μηδέποτε μάχης κορεννύμενος, ἐπειδὴ καὶ τοὺς
than priest never of-battle being-sated since also the
λίθους ἅπαντας ἀπεπέμψατο τῶν χειρῶν καὶ ἁπλῶς ἦν
stones all he-had-sent-away from-the hands and simply he-was
καὶ λίθων κενὸς καὶ βελῶν, οὐκ ἔχων ὅ τι καὶ δράσειεν
both of-stones empty and of-missiles not having what — also he-might-do
οὐδὲ δι᾽ ὧν ἀμυνεῖται τὸν ἀντίπαλον, ἐσφάδαζε μὲν
nor through which he-will-ward-off the adversary was-quivering indeed
ἐνταῦθα καὶ ἐξεφλέγετο καὶ ἐμεμήνει καθάπερ θηρίον
here and was-inflamed and was-raging like a-beast
εἰς ἑαυτὸν συστρεφόμενος· τοῖς γοῦν παρατυχοῦσιν
into himself turning with-the at-any-rate present
αὐτίκα καὶ ἀποχρώμενος ἦν. σάκκον οὖν μάζης
at-once also using he-was a-sack then of-barley-cake
μεστὸν ἐφευράμενος ἐκεῖθεν ἀπὸ τοῦ σάκκου καθάπερ
full having-found from-there from the sack as-if
χερμάδας τὰς μάζας ἔβαλλεν, ὥσπερ ἱερατεύων καὶ
hand-stones the barley-cakes he-threw as-if officiating and
τελετήν τινα ποιούμενος καὶ ἱεροτελεστίαν τὸν πόλεμον
rite some making and sacred-ceremony the war
ἐργαζόμενος. μᾶζαν γοῦν τινα μίαν ἀναλαβόμενος καὶ
working barley-cake at-any-rate some one having-taken and
ὅλῃ χειρὶ πιθήσας ἐπαφίησι ταύτην κατὰ τῆς τοῦ
with-whole hand having-trusted lets-loose it against the —
Μαριανοῦ ὄψεως καὶ πλήττει τοῦτον κατὰ τῆς παρειᾶς.
of-Marianos face and strikes him on the cheek
ταῦτα μὲν οὖν τὰ κατὰ τὸν ἱερέα ἐκεῖνον καὶ
these(-things) indeed then the(-affairs) concerning the priest that and
τὴν ναῦν καὶ τοὺς ἐπιβάτας· ὁ δὲ κόμης Πρεβέντζας
the ship and the marines the and count of-Prebentza

πιστεύσας ἑαυτὸν σὺν αὐτῇ τῇ νηΐ καὶ τοῖς ὑπ᾽ αὐτὸν
having-entrusted himself with the-very the ship and those under him
προθύμως τῷ Μαριανῷ εἵπετο τοῦ λοιποῦ. ἐπεὶ δὲ
eagerly — Marianos followed for-the rest since and
κατὰ τὴν χέρσον γενόμενοι ἀπέβαινον τῆς νηός, πολλὰ
on the dry-land having-come they-disembarked from-the ship much
καὶ πολλάκις ὁ ἱερεὺς ἐκεῖνος ἐζήτει τὸν Μαριανὸν τὴν
and many-times the priest that sought — Marianos the
κλῆσιν μὲν αὐτοῦ μὴ γινώσκων, ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ χρώματος
name indeed his not knowing from and the color
τῶν ἀμφίων τοῦτον ἀνακαλούμενος. προσελθὼν δὲ τούτῳ
of-the garments him calling having-come and to-him
περιχυθεὶς κατησπάζετο ἐγκαυχώμενος ἅμα ὡς "εἴ μοι
having-embraced kissed boasting at-once that if me
κατὰ τὴν χέρσον ἐντετυχήκατε, πολλοὶ ἂν ταῖς ἐμαῖς
on the dry-land you-had-met many — by-the my
χερσὶν ἀνῃρέθητε". ἐκβαλὼν δ᾽ ἐπιδίδωσι τούτῳ
hands would-have-been-killed having-taken-out and gives him
ἀργυροῦν θηρίκλειον τιμῆς στατήρων ἑκατὸν πρὸς τοῖς
silver Thericlean-cup of-value staters hundred besides the
τριάκοντα. ταῦτα δὲ ὁμιλῶν καὶ διδοὺς ἐξεπεπνεύκει.
thirty these(-things) and saying and giving breathed-his-last

LXII · GODFREY ON HOLY THURSDAY

Godfrey camps along the Propontis and delays, awaiting Bohemond. A false rumor that the counts have been seized sets his men attacking the walls on Holy Thursday. Alexios, unarmed on his throne, forbids killing on that day. The Caesar Nikephoros and his archers shoot to miss, until he kills one insolent Latin, and a sally from the Saint Romanos gate drives the Franks off with their horses shot. Hugh urges Godfrey to yield. Beaten again, Godfrey swears the oath and crosses to Pelekanos.

Ἀλλὰ καὶ ὁ κόμης Γοντοφρὲ τῷ τότε καιροῦ διαπεράσας
but also the count Godfrey at-the then of-the-time having-crossed
μεθ' ἑτέρων κομήτων καὶ στρατεύματος ἱππέων μὲν
with other counts and army of-horse indeed
χιλιάδων δέκα, πεζῶν δὲ χιλιάδων ἑβδομήκοντα καὶ
thousands ten of-foot and thousands seventy and
καταλαβὼν τὴν μεγαλόπολιν περὶ τὰ μέρη τῆς Προποντίδος
having-reached the great-city about the parts of-the Propontis
κατατίθησιν αὐτοῦ τὸ στράτευμα, διῆκον ἀπὸ τῆς ἔγγιστα
sets his the army extending from the nearest
τοῦ Κοσμιδίου διακειμένης γεφύρας μέχρι καὶ αὐτοῦ τοῦ
— of-Kosmidion lying bridge as-far-as even itself the
ἁγίου Φωκᾶ. παρακελευομένου δὲ αὐτῷ τοῦ βασιλέως τὸν
holy Phokas ordering and him the emperor the
τῆς Προποντίδος διαπερᾶσαι πορθμὸν ἡμέραν ἐξ ἡμέρας
of-the Propontis to-cross strait day from day
ὑπερτιθέμενος καὶ αἰτίαν αἰτίᾳ συνείρων ἀνεβάλλετο· τὸ
putting-off and cause to-cause stringing put-off the
δὲ πᾶν, τὴν τοῦ Βαϊμούντου καὶ τῶν λοιπῶν κομήτων
and whole the — of-Bohemond and the remaining counts
ἀνέμενεν ἄφιξιν. καὶ γὰρ ὁ μὲν Πέτρος ἐξ αὐτῆς ἀρχῆς
he-awaited arrival and for — indeed Peter from itself beginning
εἰς προσκύνησιν τοῦ ἁγίου τάφου τὴν τοσαύτην ὁδοιπορίαν
for veneration of-the holy tomb the so-great journey
ἀνεδέξατο, οἱ δέ γε λοιποὶ κόμητες καὶ τούτων μᾶλλον
undertook the and at-least remaining counts and of-these rather
ὁ Βαϊμοῦντος παλαιὰν μῆνιν κατὰ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος
— Bohemond old wrath against the autocrat
τρέφοντες καὶ εὐκαιρίαν ζητοῦντες ἀντίποινα τούτῳ
nourishing and opportunity seeking requital to-him
παρασχεῖν τῆς λαμπρᾶς ἐκείνης νίκης, ἣν ἤρατο κατ'
to-provide of-the brilliant that victory which he-won over

αὐτοῦ, ὁπότε κατὰ τὴν Λάρισσαν τὸν μετ᾽ αὐτοῦ συνῆψε
him when at — Larissa the with him he-joined
πόλεμον, ὁμογνωμονήσαντες καὶ αὐτὴν τὴν μεγαλόπολιν
war having-agreed and itself the great-city
κατασχεῖν ὀνειρώττοντες εἰς τὴν αὐτὴν ἐληλύθεισαν γνώμην
to-seize dreaming to the same had-come mind
(καὶ τούτου πολλάκις ἐμνημονεύσαμεν ἄνωθεν), τῷ μὲν
and this often we-have-mentioned above in-the indeed
φαινομένῳ τὴν πρὸς τὰ Ἱεροσόλυμα ὁδοιπορίαν ποιούμενοι,
seeming the to the Jerusalem journey making
τῇ δ᾽ ἀληθείᾳ τὸν αὐτοκράτορα τῆς ἀρχῆς παραλῦσαι
in-the and truth the autocrat from-the rule to-remove
καὶ τὴν μεγαλόπολιν κατασχεῖν ἐθέλοντες. ἀλλ᾽ ὁ βασιλεὺς
and the great-city to-seize wishing but the emperor
τὸ πανοῦργον αὐτῶν πάλαι γινώσκων τὰς τῶν ἐθνικῶν
the knavery their long-ago knowing the of-the foreigners
δυνάμεις σὺν αὐτοῖς ἡγεμόσι διὰ γραφῶν παρεκελεύσατο
forces with the-very leaders through letters ordered
ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἀθύρα μέχρις αὐτοῦ Φιλέα ἰλαδὸν καταστῆναι
from — Athyras as-far-as itself Phileas by-squadrons to-be-set
(τόπος δὲ παράλιος οὗτος τοῦ Πόντου) καὶ ἐφεδρεύειν, εἴ
place and coastal this of-the Pontus and to-lie-in-wait if
πού τις τοῦ Γοντοφρὲ πρὸς τὸν Βαϊμοῦντον καὶ τοὺς
somewhere anyone — of-Godfrey to — Bohemond and the
ὄπισθεν ἐρχομένους κόμητας ἀποστέλλοιτο ἢ ἐξ ἐκείνων
behind coming counts should-be-sent or from those
αὖθις πρὸς αὐτόν, καὶ ἀπείργειν αὐτῶν τὴν δίοδον. ἐν
again to him and to-prevent their the passage in
τῷ μεταξὺ δὲ γίνεταί τι τοιοῦτον. μεταπεμψαμένου
the meantime and happens something such having-summoned
γὰρ τοῦ βασιλέως τινὰς τῶν μετὰ τοῦ Γοντοφρὲ
for the emperor some of-the with — Godfrey

κομήτων ἐφ᾽ ᾧ τούτοις συμβουλεύσασθαι ὑποθέσθαι αὐτῷ
counts for which to-them to-advise to-suggest to-him
πληρῶσαι τὸν ὅρκον τριβομένου τε τοῦ καιροῦ διὰ
to-fulfill the oath being-spent and the time because-of
τὸ φύσει λάλον τε καὶ μακρηγορώτατον τῶν Λατίνων
the by-nature talkative both and most-long-winded of-the Latins
ψευδὴς διέδραμεν εἰς αὐτοὺς φήμη κατασχεθῆναι τοὺς
false ran to them rumor to-have-been-seized the
κόμητας παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως. εὐθὺς οὖν πυκιναὶ κατὰ
counts by the emperor at-once then thick against
τῆς Βυζαντίδος κεκίνηντο φάλαγγες καὶ παραχρῆμα τὰ
— Byzantis had-been-moved phalanxes and immediately the
κατὰ τὴν Ἀργυρᾶν καλουμένην Λίμνην διακείμενα παλάτια
by the Silver called Lake lying palaces
παντελῶς ἐξηρίπωσαν, ἅμα δὲ καὶ τῶν τειχῶν τῆς
entirely they-demolished at-the-same-time and also the walls —
Βυζαντίδος ἀπεπειρῶντο κἂν μὴ δι᾽ ἑλεπόλεων, οὐ γὰρ
of-Byzantis they-tried even-if not with siege-engines not for
παρῆσαν, ἀλλὰ τῷ ἑαυτῶν πλήθει θαρροῦντες τοσοῦτον
were-present but in-the own multitude trusting so-much
κατηναιδεύσαντο, ὡς καὶ πῦρ τολμῆσαι ἐπαφεῖναι κατὰ
they-became-shameless that even fire to-dare to-let-loose against
τῆς κάτωθεν τῶν ἀνακτόρων πύλης ἀγχοῦ τοῦ ἐπ᾽
the below of-the palace gate near the in
ὀνόματι τοῦ ἐν ἱεράρχαις μεγίστου Νικολάου πάλαι
name of-the among hierarchs greatest Nicholas long-ago
παρά του τῶν βασιλέων ἀνοικοδομηθέντος τεμένους. οὐ
by one of-the emperors built precinct not
μόνον δὲ ὁπόσοι τοῦ συρφετώδους ὄχλου τῶν Βυζαντίων
only and as-many-as of-the rabble crowd of-the Byzantines
καὶ ἀνάλκιδες πάντη καὶ ἀπειροπόλεμοι τὰς τῶν Λατίνων
and feeble wholly and inexperienced-in-war the of-the Latins

φάλαγγας θεασάμενοι ἔστενον ᾤμωζον ἐστερνοτύπουν μὴ
phalanxes having-beheld groaned wailed beat-their-breasts not
ἔχοντες ὑπὸ φόβου, ὅ τι καὶ δράσαιεν, ἀλλὰ καὶ μᾶλλον
having from fear what — also they-might-do but also rather
ὁπόσοι εὖνοι περὶ τὸν αὐτοκράτορα, τὴν πέμπτην ἐκείνην
as-many-as loyal about the autocrat the Thursday that
φανταζόμενοι, καθ' ἣν ἡ τῆς πόλεως γέγονεν ἅλωσις,
imagining on which the of-the city happened capture
καὶ δεδιότες διὰ τοῦτο τὴν ἐνισταμένην ἡμέραν, μή τις
and fearing because-of this the present day lest some
ἔκτισις τῶν τότε γεγενημένων συμβαίη. πάντες δέ,
payment of-the(-things) then having-happened should-befall all and
ὅσοι στρατιωτικῆς εἰδήμονες ἦσαν, ἀσυντάκτως πρὸς
as-many-as of-military skilled were in-disorder to
τὰ βασίλεια συνέρρεον. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς ὡπλίσατο μὲν
the palace flowed-together the and emperor armed indeed
οὐδαμῶς οὐδὲ φολιδωτὸν περιεβάλετο θώρακα οὐδὲ σάκος
in-no-way nor scaled put-on breastplate nor shield
οὐδ' ἔγχος ἐνηγκαλίσατο οὐδὲ ξίφος περιεζώσατο, ἀλλ'
nor spear grasped nor sword girded-on but
ἑδραίως ἐπὶ τοῦ βασιλικοῦ ἐσταλμένος καθῆστο θρόνου καὶ
steadily on the imperial attired sat throne and
μεθ' ἱλαροῦ βλέμματος πάντας θαρρύνων καὶ θάρσος ἐνιεὶς
with cheerful look all encouraging and boldness putting-in
ταῖς σφῶν ψυχαῖς καὶ τοῖς συγγενέσι δὲ καὶ ἡγεμόσι
the their souls and with-the kinsmen and also leaders
τοῦ στρατοῦ περὶ τῶν μελλόντων συμβουλευόμενος. τὰ
of-the army about the future-things taking-counsel the
μὲν οὖν πρῶτα οὐδ' ὁντιναοῦν κατὰ τῶν Λατίνων
indeed then first not-even anyone against the Latins
τοῦ τείχους ἐξενεγκεῖν προτεθύμητο, τὸ μὲν διὰ τὴν
from-the wall to-bring-out he-had-been-eager partly indeed because-of the

ἐνισταμένην ἐκείνην σεβασμίαν τῶν ἡμερῶν (πέμπτη γὰρ
present that venerable(-one) of-the days Thursday for
ἦν τῆς μεγίστης καὶ ἁγίας τῶν ἑβδομάδων, ἐν ᾗ ὁ
it-was of-the greatest and holy of-the weeks in which the
σωτὴρ τὸν ἐπονείδιστον ὑπὲρ ἁπάντων ὑπέστη θάνατον),
savior the shameful for all underwent death
τὸ δὲ καὶ τὸν ἐμφύλιον παρεκκλίνων φόνον. πολλάκις
partly and also the civil avoiding slaughter often
οὖν μεταπεμψάμενος συνεβούλευε τοῦ τοιούτου ἀπέχεσθαι
then having-summoned he-advised from-the such to-abstain
ἔργου "αἰδέσθητε" λέγων "τὸν ὑπὲρ πάντων ἡμῶν τὴν
deed respect saying the for all of-us the
τήμερον σφαγέντα θεὸν μηδὲ σταυρὸν καὶ ἥλους καὶ
today slaughtered God not-even cross and nails and
λόγχην τὰ κακούργοις προσήκοντα τῆς ἡμῶν ἕνεκα
lance the(-things) for-criminals fitting the our for-the-sake
παραιτησάμενον σωτηρίας. εἰ δὲ μάχης ὑμῖν ἔφεσίς ἐστι,
refused salvation if and of-battle to-you desire is
μετὰ τὴν ἀναστάσιμον τοῦ σωτῆρος ἡμέραν καὶ ἡμεῖς
after the of-the-resurrection of-the savior day also we
ἕτοιμοι παρεσόμεθα." οἱ δὲ οὐ μόνον οὐχ ὑπείκοντο, ἀλλὰ
ready will-be-present they and not only not yielded but
καὶ κατεπύκνουν μᾶλλον τὰς φάλαγγας συχνὰς τὰς βολὰς
also made-dense rather the phalanxes frequent the shots
πέμποντες, ὡς καί τινα τῶν ἀγχοῦ τοῦ βασιλικοῦ θρόνου
sending so-that even some of-those near the imperial throne
ἱσταμένων κατὰ τὸ στέρνον πλῆξαι. ὅπερ οἱ πλείονες
standing in the chest to-strike which the most
τῶν ἐφ' ἑκάτερα παρισταμένων τοῦ βασιλέως θεασάμενοι
of-those on both-sides standing-by of-the emperor having-beheld
ἀνεχώρουν· ὁ δὲ ἀτρέμας ἐκάθητο ἀνακτώμενος τούτους
withdrew he and unmoved sat rallying them

καὶ πρᾴως πως νεμεσῶν· ὃ καὶ θάμβος πᾶσι παρεῖχεν.
and gently somehow rebuking which also amazement to-all provided
ἐπεὶ δ' ἀναισχύντως τοὺς Λατίνους τοῖς τείχεσι πελάζοντας
since and shamelessly the Latins the walls approaching
ἑώρα καὶ τὸ συμφέρον βουλευομένῳ μὴ ὑπείκοντας,
he-saw and the advantageous to-one-counseling not yielding
τὰ μὲν πρῶτα μεταπεμψάμενος τὸν γαμβρὸν αὐτοῦ
the(-things) indeed first having-summoned the son-in-law his
Νικηφόρον τὸν ἐμὸν Καίσαρα παρεκελεύσατο ἄνδρας
Nikephoros the my Caesar ordered men
πολεμικωτάτους ἀναλαβόμενον καὶ τοξείας εἰδήμονας τοῦ
most-warlike having-taken and of-archery skilled the
τείχους ἄνωθεν καταστῆσαι παρεγγυησάμενος συχνοὺς μὲν
wall above to-set having-charged frequent indeed
ὀϊστοὺς κατὰ τῶν Λατίνων πέμπειν, μὴ κατὰ σκοποῦ
arrows against the Latins to-send not at mark
δέ, ἀλλὰ διαμαρτάνειν τὰ πλείω, ὡς μόνον ἐκφοβεῖν
and but to-miss the most so-that only to-frighten
τῇ πυκνότητι τῶν βελῶν, ἀναιρεῖν δὲ μηδαμῶς. ἐδεδίει
by-the thickness of-the missiles to-kill and in-no-way he-feared
γάρ, ὡς ἄνωθεν εἴρηται, τὸ τῆς ἡμέρας σεβάσμιον
for as above has-been-said the of-the day reverence
καὶ τὸν ἐμφύλιον φόνον οὐκ ἤθελεν. ἑτέρους δὲ τῶν
and the civil slaughter not he-wished others and of-the
ἐκκρίτων τοὺς πλείους μὲν τόξα φέροντας, τοὺς δὲ
picked the most indeed bows carrying the and
ἔγχεα μακρὰ ἐναγκαλισαμένους τὴν κατὰ τὸν ἅγιον
spears long having-couched the at the holy
Ῥωμανὸν πύλην ἀναπετάσαντας σφοδρὰν ἐνδείξασθαι κατ'
Romanos gate having-thrown-open violent to-show against
αὐτῶν τὴν ὁρμὴν ἐκέλευε τοιαύτην καταστησαμένους τὴν
them the onset ordered such having-set the

παράταξιν, ∗∗∗ ἕκαστον τῶν τὰ δόρατα φερόντων
battle-line (lacuna) each of-those the spears carrying
ἐξ ἑκατέρου μέρους ὑπὸ δύο φυλάττεσθαι πελταστῶν·
from each side by two to-be-guarded peltasts
οὕτω δὲ ἑαυτοὺς καταστήσαντας αὐτοὺς μὲν βραδεῖ ποδὶ
thus and themselves having-set they indeed with-slow foot
στείχειν, ὀλίγους δέ τινας τῆς τοξείας εἰδήμονας κατὰ
to-step few and some of-the archery skilled against
τῶν Κελτῶν προεκπέμπειν πόρρωθεν μὲν τοὺς ὀϊστοὺς
the Celts to-send-ahead from-afar indeed the arrows
βάλλοντας καὶ ἐφ᾽ ἑκάτερα πυκνὰ περιστρεφομένους,
shooting and to both-sides thick turning
ἐπὰν δὲ τὸ μεσαίχμιον ἀποστενωθὲν θεάσοιντο, τηνικαῦτα
when and the no-man's-land narrowed they-should-see then
τοῖς συνεφεπομένοις αὐτοῖς τοξόταις παρακελευσαμένους
to-the following them archers having-ordered
πυκνοὺς ἐκπέμψαι τοὺς ὀϊστοὺς κατὰ τῶν ἵππων, οὐ
thick to-send the arrows against the horses not
τῶν ἐποχουμένων, ὅλας ἡνίας κατὰ τῶν Λατίνων λῦσαι,
the riders whole reins against the Latins to-loose
τὸ μὲν ἵνα τῶν ἵππων πληττομένων ἀποπαύηται τὸ
partly indeed that the horses being-struck might-be-stopped the
πολὺ τῆς ὁρμῆς τῶν Κελτῶν καὶ μὴ ῥαδίως κατὰ τῶν
much of-the onset of-the Celts and not easily against the
Ῥωμαίων ἱππάζωνται, τὸ δέ τι, ὃ καὶ μᾶλλον, ἵνα
Romans might-ride partly and somewhat what also rather that
μὴ Χριστιανοὶ κτείνωνται. ἐκθύμως τοίνυν τὸ βασιλικὸν
not Christians be-killed passionately therefore the imperial
ἀπεπλήρουν πρόσταγμα καὶ τὰς πύλας ἀναπετάσαντες
they-fulfilled order and the gates having-thrown-open
καὶ ποτὲ μὲν τοὺς ῥυτῆρας κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ἐνδιδόντες, ποτὲ
and at-times indeed the reins against them giving at-times

δὲ τοὺς ἵππους ἀνασειράζοντες κτείνουσι μὲν πολλούς,
and the horses reining-in kill indeed many
ὀλίγοι δ' ἐξ αὐτῶν κατὰ ταυτηνὶ τὴν ἡμέραν ἐτρώθησαν.
few and of them on this-here the day were-wounded
οὗτοι μὲν οὖν ἐρρέσθων· ὁ δ' ἐμὸς δεσπότης ὁ Καῖσαρ
these indeed then let-them-go-hang the and my lord the Caesar
ἀναλαβόμενος, ὡς εἴρηται, τοὺς τῆς τοξείας εἰδήμονας ἐπὶ
having-taken as has-been-said those of-the archery skilled on
τῶν πύργων ἵστατο τοῖς βαρβάροις ἐπιτοξαζόμενος. καὶ
the towers stood at-the barbarians shooting and
πάντες μὲν εἶχον τόξα καὶ εὔστοχα καὶ εὐθυβολώτατα·
all indeed had bows and well-aimed and most-straight-shooting
νεανίαι γὰρ ἦσαν σύμπαντες οὐχ ἥττους τοῦ Ὁμηρικοῦ
youths for they-were all not inferior to-the Homeric
Τεύκρου εἰς τοξικὴν ἐμπειρίαν. τὸ δὲ τόξον τοῦ Καίσαρος
Teukros in archery experience the and bow of-the Caesar
Ἀπόλλωνος ἦν ἄρα τόξον αὐτόχρημα· οὐδὲ γὰρ κατ'
of-Apollo was after-all bow very-itself not for like
ἐκείνους τοὺς Ὁμηρικοὺς Ἕλληνας νευρὴν μὲν μαζῷ,
those the Homeric Greeks string indeed to-breast
τόξῳ δὲ σίδηρον ἦγέ τε καὶ ἐφήρμοττε κυνηγετῶν ἀρετὴν
to-bow and iron drew both and fitted of-hunters virtue
ἐνδεικνύμενος κατ' ἐκείνους, ἀλλ' ὥσπερ τις Ἡρακλῆς ἐξ
showing like those but like some Herakles from
ἀθανάτων τόξων θανασίμους ἀπέπεμπεν ὀϊστοὺς καὶ οὗπερ
immortal bows deadly sent-away arrows and whatever
ἂν στοχάσαιτο κατευστοχῶν ἦν, εἰ μόνον θελήσειε.
— he-should-aim-at hitting he-was if only he-should-wish
καὶ γὰρ καὶ ἐν ἄλλοις καιροῖς, ὁπηνίκα καιρὸς ἀγῶνος
and for also in other times when time of-contest
καὶ μάχης παρῆν, ὅντινα καὶ σκοπὸν ἔθετο, εὐθὺς οὐκ
and battle was-present whatever also target he-set at-once not

ἄστοχον ἔβαλλε, καὶ ᾧ ἂν μέρει ἐπετοξάσατο, κατ'
unaimed he-struck and in-whatever — part he-shot against
ἐκείνου τοῦ μέρους εὐθὺς ἐτίτρωσκεν ἀεί· οὕτως ἰσχυρὸν
that the part at-once he-wounded always so strong
ἔτεινε τόξον ἐκεῖνος καὶ βέλος ἠφίει ὀξύτατον, κἀν τῇ
drew bow that-one and missile let-fly most-sharp and-in the
τοξείᾳ δὲ καὶ ὑπὲρ τὸν Τεῦκρον αὐτὸν καὶ τοὺς Αἴαντας
archery and also above — Teukros himself and the Ajaxes
φαινόμενος. ἀλλὰ καίπερ τοιοῦτος ὢν δεδιὼς τὸ τῆς αὐτῆς
appearing but although such being fearing the of-the same
ἡμέρας αἰδέσιμον καὶ τὴν τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος παραγγελίαν
day reverence and the of-the autocrat order
ἐγκάρδιον ἔχων ἔτεινε μὲν τόξον ἰταμῶς τούτους καὶ
in-heart having drew indeed bow recklessly them and
ἀλόγως τοῖς τείχεσι πελάζοντας ὁρῶν καὶ ἀσπίσι καὶ
irrationally the walls approaching seeing and with-shields and
κυνέῃ ἑαυτοὺς περιφράττοντας καὶ τὸ βέλος ἐτίθετο
helmet themselves fencing and the missile placed
τῇ νευρᾷ, ἀλλ' ὅμως ἄστοχα θέλων ἔβαλλεν, ὅπου
on-the string but nevertheless unaimed wishing he-shot in-one-place
μὲν εἴσω πέμπων, ὅπου δὲ καὶ ὑπερπέμπων. κἂν δὲ
indeed inside sending in-another and also overshooting even-if and
διὰ τὴν ἐνεστῶσαν ἡμέραν ὑπεστέλλετο εὐστόχως κατὰ
because-of the present day he-held-back aimed against
τῶν Λατίνων βαλεῖν, ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ Λατῖνός τις ἰταμὸς
the Latins to-shoot but since Latin a-certain reckless
καὶ ἀναίσχυντος οὐ μόνον κατὰ τῶν ἄνωθεν ἱσταμένων
and shameless not only against those above standing
πυκνοὺς ἐξέπεμπεν ὀϊστούς, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῇ ἰδίᾳ διαλέκτῳ
thick sent-out arrows but also in-the own tongue
πολλὰ φωνῶν ὑβρίζειν ἐδόκει, τείνει μὲν κατ' αὐτοῦ
much uttering to-insult seemed draws indeed against him

ὁ Καῖσαρ τὸ τόξον· τοῦ δ' οὐχ ἅλιον βέλος ἔκθορε
the Caesar the bow of-him and not in-vain missile leapt
χειρός, ἀλλὰ διέτρησε μὲν τὸν θυρεόν, τὸν δὲ φολιδωτὸν
from-hand but pierced indeed the shield the and scaled
θώρακα σὺν αὐτῷ διελὼν τῷ βραχίονι τῇ πλευρᾷ
breastplate with itself having-cut-through the arm into-the side
τὸ βέλος περιέπειρεν. ὁ δ' εὐθὺς ἄφωνος ἔκειτο χαμᾶζε
the missile skewered he and at-once speechless lay on-the-ground
κατὰ τὸν ποιητήν, φωνὴ δ' οὐρανὸν ἧκε τῶν μὲν
according-to the poet a-cry and to-heaven went of-some indeed
ἐπαγαλλομένων τῷ Καίσαρι, τῶν δὲ ἐπὶ τῷ πεπτωκότι
exulting in-the Caesar of-others and over the fallen
ἀπολοφυρομένων. καρτερῶς οὖν αὖθις τῶν τε ἱππέων
lamenting strongly then again the both horsemen
ἐκεῖθεν μαχομένων τῶν τε ἐν τοῖς τείχεσιν ἱσταμένων
from-there fighting those both on the walls standing
βαρὺς καὶ δεινὸς ἐξ ἀμφοτέρων ἀνερριπίζετο πόλεμος.
heavy and terrible from both-sides was-fanned war
ἐπιβαλὼν δ' αὖθις ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ τὰς ἰδίας δυνάμεις
having-thrown-in and again the autocrat the own forces
εἰς φυγὴν τὰς τῶν Λατίνων προὐτρέψατο φάλαγγας.
into flight the of-the Latins turned phalanxes
τῇ δὲ μετ' αὐτὴν ἀπελθὼν ὁ Οὖβος συνεβούλευε τῷ
on-the and after it having-gone — Hugh advised —
Γοντοφρὲ τῷ τοῦ βασιλέως ὑπείξαι θελήματι, εἰ μὴ
to-Godfrey to-the of-the emperor to-yield will if not
καὶ δευτέραν βούλοιτο τῆς τούτου περὶ τὰ πολεμικὰ
also a-second he-should-wish of-the his about the warlike-things
ἐμπειρίας πεῖραν λαβεῖν, καὶ ὁμωμοκέναι καθαρὰν πίστιν
experience trial to-take and to-have-sworn pure faith
φυλάττειν αὐτῷ. ὁ δὲ πολλὰ τοῦτον κατεμέμφετο λέγων
to-keep to-him he and much him blamed saying

"σὺ ὡς βασιλεὺς τῆς ἰδίας ἐξεληλυθὼς χώρας μετὰ
you as king from-the own having-gone-out land with
τοσούτου πλούτου καὶ στρατεύματος νῦν ἐξ ὕψους
so-great wealth and army now from height
τοσούτου εἰς δούλου τάξιν ἑαυτὸν συνήλασας· εἶτα ὡς
so-great to of-slave rank yourself have-driven then as
μέγα τι κατωρθωκὼς κἀμοὶ τοιαῦτα συμβουλεύων
great something having-achieved also-to-me such-things advising
ἥκεις;" ὁ δὲ "ἐχρῆν ἡμᾶς" ἔφη "ἐν ταῖς ἰδίαις
you-come he and it-was-needful us he-said in the own
προσμένειν χώραις καὶ τῶν ἀλλοτρίων ἀπέχεσθαι· ἐπεὶ
to-stay lands and from-the others' to-abstain since
δὲ μέχρις ὧδε κατήλθομεν πολλῆς τῆς τοῦ βασιλέως
and as-far-as here we-came-down of-much the of-the emperor
κηδεμονίας δεόμενοι, εἰ μὴ τοῖς αὐτοῦ πειθόμεθα λόγοις,
care needing if not the his we-obey words
οὐκ ἀγαθὰ ἡμῖν συμβήσεται". ὡς δὲ κενὸν τὸν Οὖβον
not good-things to-us will-befall as and empty — Hugh
ἐκεῖθεν ἐξέπεμψε, πληροφορηθεὶς ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ τοὺς
from-there he-sent-away having-been-informed the emperor and the
ὄπισθεν ἐρχομένους ἐγγίζειν ἤδη κόμητας, ἀποστείλας
behind coming to-be-approaching already counts having-sent
τῶν ἡγεμόνων ἐκκρίτους τινὰς μετὰ τῶν ὑπ' αὐτοὺς
of-the leaders picked some with the under them
δυνάμεων ἐπέσκηψεν αὖθις συμβουλεύσασθαι αὐτῷ καὶ
forces enjoined again to-advise him and
καταναγκάσαι διαπερᾶσαι. τούτους οἱ Λατῖνοι θεασάμενοι
to-compel to-cross them the Latins having-beheld
καὶ μηδὲ μικρὸν ἀναμείναντες μήτε μὴν τὸ τί ἂν
and not-even a-little having-waited nor indeed the what —
βούλοιντο ἐπερωτήσαντες πρὸς πολέμους καὶ μάχας
they-might-want having-asked to wars and battles

ἐχώρουν· πολέμου δὲ ἀναμεταξὺ συρραγέντος ἰσχυροῦ
advanced war and between having-broken-out strong
πίπτουσιν ἐξ ἑκατέρου μέρους ἱκανοί, τιτρώσκονται δὲ
fall from each side considerable are-wounded and
καὶ *** οἱ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος, ὁπόσοι ἀναισχυντότερον
also (lacuna) those of-the autocrat as-many-as more-shamelessly
αὐτῷ προσέβαλον. ἐκθυμότερον δὲ τούτων μαχομένων τὰ
him attacked more-passionately and these fighting the
νῶτα οἱ Λατῖνοι ὑπεῖχον. καὶ οὕτως ὁ Γοντοφρὲ μετ᾽
backs the Latins turned and thus — Godfrey after
οὐ πολὺ τῷ τοῦ βασιλέως ἐστοίχει θελήματι. προσελθὼν
not long the of-the emperor fell-in-with will having-come
οὖν τῷ βασιλεῖ ἐπωμόσατο ὅνπερ ἀπῃτεῖτο ὅρκον, ὥστε
then to-the emperor swore which was-demanded oath that
ὁπόσας πόλεις καὶ χώρας ἢ φρούρια φθάσει κατασχεῖν
as-many-as cities and lands or forts he-will-be-first to-seize
ὑπὸ τὴν βασιλείαν Ῥωμαίων τὸ πρῶτον τελοῦντα, πρὸς
under the empire of-Romans the before belonging to
τὸν ἐπ᾽ αὐτῷ τούτῳ παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως ἀποστελλόμενον
the for itself this by the emperor sent
ἀρχηγὸν παραδιδόναι. ταῦτ᾽ οὖν ἐπομοσάμενος χρήματά
commander to-hand-over these(-things) then having-sworn money
τε ἱκανὰ λαβὼν ὁμέστιός τε καὶ ὁμοτράπεζος
both considerable having-received hearth-companion both and table-companion
αὐτῷ γεγονὼς καὶ δαψιλῶς εὐωχηθεὶς διαπεράσας κατὰ
to-him having-become and abundantly having-feasted having-crossed at
τὸν Πελεκάνον ηὐλίσατο. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς τηνικαῦτα
— Pelekanos camped the and emperor then
ἐπέσκηψε δαψιλεῖς πανηγύρεις ἐξάγειν αὐτοῖς.
enjoined abundant markets to-bring-out to-them

Raoul refuses to cross and fights Opos and Pegasios, then asks to be shipped to the Holy Sepulcher. Countless others follow, and Anna declines to name their leaders. They swear the oath with Godfrey present. A Frankish noble sits on the emperor's throne and is rebuked by Baldwin. Told that he calls the emperor a rustic, Alexios hears his boast of waiting at a crossroads for an opponent, and advises him to keep to the middle of the line against the Turks.

Κατόπιν δὲ τούτου ἐφθακὼς καὶ ὁ Ῥαοὺλ καλούμενος
after and this having-arrived also the Raoul called
κόμης μετὰ πεντεκαίδεκα χιλιάδων ἱππέων τε καὶ πεζῶν
count with fifteen thousands horse both and foot
καὶ κατὰ τὴν Προποντίδα περὶ τὴν καλουμένην μονὴν
and on the Propontis about the called monastery
τοῦ Πατριάρχου σκηνώσας μετὰ τῶν ὑπ' αὐτὸν κομήτων
of-the Patriarch having-encamped with the under him counts
τοὺς λοιποὺς μέχρις αὐτοῦ Σωσθενίου κατέθετο. ὡς δὲ καὶ
the rest as-far-as itself Sosthenion placed as and also
αὐτὸς τὰ αὐτὰ τῷ Γοντοφρὲ φρονῶν ἀνεβάλλετο τέως
he the same-things — as-Godfrey thinking put-off for-the-time
τὴν τῶν ὄπισθεν ἐρχομένων ἀπεκδεχόμενος ἔλευσιν, ὁ
the of-those behind coming awaiting coming the
βασιλεὺς στοχαζόμενος τοῦ μέλλοντος ἐδεδίει τὴν τούτων
emperor guessing the future feared the their
ἄφιξιν καὶ αὐτῶν ὅλῃ χειρὶ καὶ γνώμῃ τὴν διαπεραίωσιν
arrival and their with-whole hand and mind the crossing
ἐπέσπευδεν. ἀποστείλας τοίνυν τὸν Ὦπον μετεκαλεῖτο
hastened having-sent therefore — Opos he-summoned
(εὐγενὴς δὲ οὗτος φρονήσει καὶ τῇ περὶ τὰ στρατιωτικὰ
noble and this-one in-prudence and in-the about the military-arts
ἐμπειρίᾳ μηδενὸς ἀποδέων) καὶ ἐπειδὴ παρῆν, μεθ'
experience to-none falling-short and since he-was-present with

ἑτέρων γενναίων ἀνδρῶν διὰ τῆς ἠπείρου πρὸς αὐτὸν
other noble men through the mainland to him
ἐξέπεμψε παρακελευσάμενος καταναγκάσαι τούτου τὴν
he-sent-out having-ordered to-compel his the
διαπεραίωσιν. ἐπεὶ δὲ τοῦτον ἑώρα τῷ βασιλικῷ μηδαμῶς
crossing since and him he-saw to-the imperial in-no-way
ὑπείκοντα προστάγματι, ἀλλ' ἀναισχυντοῦντα καὶ πολλὰ
yielding command but behaving-shamelessly and much
κατὰ τοῦ βασιλέως φρυαττόμενον, ὁπλισάμενος παρετάξατο
against the emperor snorting having-armed arrayed
μορμολυττόμενος τάχα τὸν βάρβαρον καὶ διὰ τοῦτο
frightening perhaps the barbarian and because-of this
οἰόμενος πείσειν αὐτὸν πρὸς τὴν περαίαν διαπλώσασθαι. ὁ
thinking to-persuade him to the far-shore to-sail he
δὲ θᾶττον ἢ λόγος μετὰ τῶν συνόντων αὐτῷ Κελτῶν
and more-quickly than word with the being-with him Celts
παραταξάμενος ὡς λέων ἐχάρη μεγάλῳ ἐπὶ σώματι
having-arrayed-himself like a-lion rejoiced great upon body
κύρσας καὶ τηνικαῦτα μετὰ τοῦ Ὤπου μέγαν συνίστησι
having-chanced and then with — Opos great sets-up
πόλεμον. καταλαβὼν δὲ καὶ ὁ Πηγάσιος διαπόντιος ἐφ'
war having-arrived and also — Pegasios by-sea for
ᾧ τούτους διαπερᾶν καὶ θεασάμενος τὴν κατὰ τὴν
which them to-ferry and having-beheld the on the
ἤπειρον μάχην καὶ τοὺς Κελτοὺς ἰταμώτερον τῷ Ῥωμαϊκῷ
mainland battle and the Celts more-recklessly the Roman
στρατεύματι προσβάλλοντας τῶν νηῶν ἐξεληλυθὼς ἐξ
army attacking from-the ships having-gone-out from
ὀπισθίων προσβάλλει καὶ αὐτὸς τοῖς Κελτοῖς. ἀναιροῦνται
behind attacks also he the Celts are-killed
τοίνυν τηνικαῦτα πολλοί· πλεῖστοι δὲ καὶ τιτρώσκονται.
therefore then many very-many and also are-wounded

καὶ οὕτως οἱ σωθέντες ἀνακαλοῦνται τὴν διαπεραίωσιν.
and thus those saved call-for the crossing
ὁ δὲ βασιλεύς, μηχανικώτατος ὢν ἀνήρ, σκεψάμενος
the and emperor most-resourceful being man having-considered
μὴ τῷ Γοντοφρὲ ἑνωθέντες καὶ τὰ συμβάντα τούτοις
lest — with-Godfrey having-united and the(-things) having-befallen them
ἀφηγησάμενοι τοῦτον κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ ἐρεθίσωσι, τὴν αἴτησιν
having-narrated him against him they-should-provoke the request
τούτων ἀσμένως δεξάμενος ἐν πλοίοις τούτους ἐνίησι καὶ
their gladly having-received into boats them puts and
διαποντίους πρὸς τὸν τοῦ σωτῆρος τάφον ἐκπέμπει, τοῦτο
by-sea to the of-the savior tomb sends-out this
καὶ αὐτῶν ἐξαιτησαμένων. ἀποστέλλει δὲ καὶ πρὸς τοὺς
also they having-asked sends and also to the
ἐλπιζομένους κόμητας καὶ φιλοφροσύνης μηνύει ῥήματα
expected counts and of-kindness sends-word words
χρηστὰς αὐτοῖς ἐλπίδας διδούς. οἱ καὶ καταλαβόντες πᾶν
good to-them hopes giving who also having-arrived every
τὸ προσταττόμενον προθύμως ἐπλήρουν. τοιαῦτα μὲν
the(-thing) ordered eagerly fulfilled such indeed
οὖν καὶ τὰ τοῦ κόμητος Ῥαούλ· ἀναριθμήτου δὲ καὶ
then also the(-affairs) of-the count Raoul innumerable and also
ἑτέρου πλήθους ὄπισθεν ἐρχομένου συμμίγδην ἐξ ἁπασῶν
another multitude behind coming mixed from all
μικροῦ τῶν Κελτικῶν χωρῶν συνειλεγμένου μετὰ τῶν
almost the Celtic lands collected with the
ἀγόντων αὐτοὺς ἡγεμόνων, ῥηγῶν τε καὶ δουκῶν καὶ
leading them leaders kings both and dukes and
κομήτων καὶ αὐτῶν ἐπισκόπων, ἀποστέλλων ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ
counts and themselves bishops sending the autocrat
φιλοφρόνως αὐτοὺς ὑπεδέχετο καὶ ἐπιεικείας ἐξέπεμπε
kindly them received and of-reasonableness sent-out

λόγους, ὁποῖος ἐκεῖνος δεινὸς τὸ μέλλον προμηθεύσασθαι
words such that-man skilled the future to-provide-for
καὶ προαρπάσαι τὸ συμφέρον. ἐπισκήπτει δὲ καὶ τὰ
and to-snatch-first the advantageous enjoins and also the
ζωαρκῆ τούτοις ἐρχομένοις ἐπιχορηγεῖν τοῖς ἐπ' αὐτῷ
provisions to-them coming to-supply on-those for itself
τούτῳ τεταγμένοις, ὡς μὴ λαβὴν αὐτοὺς τὸ παράπαν
this appointed so-that not handle them the at-all
ἐσχηκέναι μηδ' ἐξ οἵας οὖν αἰτίας. οἱ δὲ πρὸς τὴν
to-have nor from whatever then cause they and to the
μεγαλόπολιν ἠπείγοντο. τάχα δὲ εἶπέ τις οὐρανοῦ
great-city hastened perhaps and would-say someone of-heaven
ἀστέρας εἶναι τούτους ἢ ψάμμον παρὰ τῷ χείλει τῆς
stars to-be them or sand by the lip of-the
θαλάττης ἐκκεχυμένην. ἦσαν γὰρ ὅσα φύλλα καὶ ἄνθεα
sea poured-out they-were for as-many-as leaves and flowers
γίγνεται ὥρῃ καθ' Ὅμηρον τῇ Κωνσταντίνου
come in-season according-to Homer to-the(-city) of-Constantine
πελάζειν ἤδη κατεπειγόμενοι. τὰς δὲ τῶν ἡγεμόνων
to-approach already hastening the and of-the leaders
κλήσεις καὶ προθυμουμένη περ ἐξειπεῖν οὐ βούλομαι. ναρκᾷ
names even being-eager though to-tell not I-wish is-numbed
γάρ μοι ὁ λόγος τὸ μέν τι βαρβαρικὰς φωνὰς
for in-me the speech partly indeed somewhat barbarian sounds
ἀπαγγέλλειν ἀδυνατούσῃ διὰ τὸ ἄναρθρον, τὸ δέ
to-report being-unable because-of the inarticulate partly and
τι καὶ πρὸς τὸ πλῆθος ἐκείνων ἀποβλεπούσῃ. καὶ ἵνα
somewhat also at the multitude of-them looking and that
τί τοσούτου πλήθους κλήσεις ἀπαριθμεῖσθαι πειρώμεθα,
what of-so-great multitude names to-enumerate do-we-try
οὓς καὶ οἱ τότε παρόντες ἀκηδίας ἐπληροῦντο ὁρῶντες;
whom even those then present with-weariness were-filled seeing

ὡς οὖν τὴν μεγαλόπολιν ἤδη κατέλαβον, κατατίθενται τὰ
when then the great-city already they-reached they-place the
τούτων στρατεύματα ἐπισκήψει τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος ἀγχοῦ
their armies by-order of-the autocrat near
τῆς μονῆς Κοσμιδίου καὶ μέχρις αὐτοῦ διήκοντα Ἱεροῦ.
the monastery of-Kosmidion and as-far-as itself extending Hieron
οὐκ ἐννέα δὲ κήρυκες, καθάπερ ποτὲ τὸ Ἑλληνικόν,
not nine and heralds as once the Greek-army
τούτους βοόωντες ἐρήτυον, ἀλλ' ἱκανοὶ καὶ γενναῖοι
them shouting restrained but considerable and noble
ὁπλῖται οἱ τούτοις ἐφεπόμενοι τοῖς τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος
hoplites those them following to-the of-the autocrat
κελεύσμασιν ὑπείκειν ἀνέπειθον. τούτους δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς
commands to-yield persuaded them and the emperor
βουλόμενος ὑπὸ τὸν τοῦ Γοντοφρὲ συνελάσαι ὅρκον
wishing under the — of-Godfrey to-drive oath
διῃρημένως προσεκαλεῖτο ἰδίᾳ προσομιλῶν, ἅττα καὶ
separately called privately conversing whatever-things also
βούλοιτο, καὶ τοῖς εὐγνωμονεστέροις χρώμενος μεσασταῖς
he-might-wish and the more-reasonable using as-mediators
τῶν ἀπειθεστέρων. ἐπεὶ δ' οὐκ ἐπείθοντο τὴν τοῦ
of-the more-disobedient since and not they-were-persuaded the —
Βαϊμούντου καραδοκοῦντες ἔλευσιν, ἀλλὰ ποικίλους τρόπους
of-Bohemond awaiting coming but various ways
εὑρίσκοντες ἐξαιτήσεων ἄλλα τινὰ προσαπαιτοῦντες
finding of-demands other some-things demanding-besides
ἦσαν, ὁ βασιλεὺς τὸ παρ' αὐτῶν προτιθέμενον ῥᾷστα
they-were the emperor the by them proposed most-easily
διαλύων καὶ παντοίως τούτους μετελθὼν συνήλασεν εἰς
dissolving and in-every-way them having-pursued drove into
τὸν τοῦ Γοντοφρὲ ὅρκον μεταπεμψάμενος καὶ αὐτὸν ἀπὸ
the — of-Godfrey oath having-summoned also him from

τοῦ Πελεκάνου ἐπὶ τῷ παρεῖναι τοῦ ὅρκου τελουμένου
— *Pelekanos for the to-be-present the oath being-completed*
διαπόντιον. πάντων οὖν συνεληλυθότων καὶ αὐτοῦ δὴ
by-sea all then having-come-together and himself indeed
τοῦ Γοντοφρέ, ἐπεὶ καὶ ὁ ὅρκος ἤδη τετέλεστο ὑπὸ
— *Godfrey since also the oath already had-been-completed by*
πάντων τῶν κομήτων, τολμήσας τις εὐγενὴς εἰς τὸν
all the counts having-dared a-certain noble onto the
σκίμποδα τοῦ βασιλέως ἐκάθισεν. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς ἠνείχετο
stool of-the emperor sat the and emperor endured
τούτου μηδέν τι φθεγξάμενος, πάλαι τὴν ἀγέρωχον
this nothing at-all having-uttered long-ago the arrogant
τῶν Λατίνων φύσιν εἰδώς. προσελθὼν δὲ ὁ κόμης
of-the Latins nature knowing having-come and the count
Βαλδουῖνος καὶ ἁψάμενος αὐτοῦ τῆς χειρὸς ἤγειρεν ἐκεῖθεν
Baldwin and having-grasped his the hand raised-him from-there
καὶ πολλὰ καταμεμψάμενος ἔφη "οὐκ ἐξῆν σοι
and much having-reproached he-said not it-was-permitted for-you
τοιοῦτον ἐνταῦθα ποιῆσαι δουλείαν τῷ βασιλεῖ καὶ ταῦτα
such here to-do servitude to-the emperor even this
ὑποσχομένῳ· οὐδὲ γὰρ ἔθιμον τοῖς βασιλεῦσι Ῥωμαίων
having-promised not for customary for-the emperors of-Romans
συνέδρους ἔχειν τοὺς ὑπ' αὐτούς· δούλους δὲ ὁμότας
as-assessors to-have those under them slaves and sworn
τῆς αὐτοῦ βασιλείας γεγονότας χρὴ καὶ τὰ ἔθη τῆς
of-the his majesty having-become it-is-needful also the customs of-the
χώρας τηρεῖν". ὁ δὲ πρὸς μὲν τὸν Βαλδουῖνον ἐφθέγξατο
land to-keep he and to indeed — Baldwin uttered
οὐδέν, δριμύτερον δὲ ἐνατενίσας τῷ βασιλεῖ πρὸς ἑαυτὸν
nothing more-keenly and having-gazed at-the emperor to himself
τῇ οἰκείᾳ διαλέκτῳ λόγους τινὰς ἀπεφθέγξατο λέγων
in-the own tongue words some uttered saying

"ἴδε, ποῖος χωρίτης κάθηται μόνος παρισταμένων αὐτῷ
see what-a rustic sits alone standing-by him
τοιούτων ἡγεμόνων". οὐδ' ἡ κίνησις τῶν χειλέων τοῦ
such leaders nor the movement of-the lips of-the
Λατίνου τὸν βασιλέα διέλαθε· καλέσας δ' ἕνα τῶν τὴν
Latin the emperor escaped having-called and one of-those the
Λατινικὴν διάλεκτον μεθερμηνευόντων ἠρώτα περὶ τῶν
Latin tongue interpreting asked about the(-things)
λεχθέντων. ἀκούσας δὲ τὰ παρ' αὐτοῦ ῥηθέντα οὐδὲν
said having-heard and the(-things) by him said nothing
μὲν τέως πρὸς τὸν Λατῖνον εἰρήκει, ἐτήρει δ' ὅμως
indeed for-the-time to the Latin had-said kept but nevertheless
τὸν λόγον παρ' ἑαυτῷ· συντασσομένων δὲ τῷ βασιλεῖ
the word within himself taking-leave and of-the emperor
πάντων μετεκαλεῖτο τὸν ὑψηλόφρονα Λατῖνον ἐκεῖνον καὶ
all summoned the haughty Latin that and
ἀναιδῆ καὶ ἐπυνθάνετο, τίς τέ ἐστι καὶ ὅθεν ὥρμηται
shameless and asked who both he-is and whence he-came
καὶ ἐκ ποίου γένους. ὁ δὲ "Φράγγος μέν εἰμι καθαρὸς"
and from what race he and a-Frank indeed I-am pure
ἔφη "τῶν εὐγενῶν· ἓν δὲ ἐπίσταμαι, ὅτι ἐν τριόδῳ
he-said of-the nobles one and I-know that at a-crossroad
τῆς χώρας, ὅθεν αὐτὸς ὥρμημαι, τέμενός ἐστι πάλαι
of-the land whence I came a-precinct is long-ago
οἰκοδομηθέν, ἐν ᾧ πᾶς ὁ προθυμούμενος μόνος
built in which every the(-one) eager alone
πρὸς μόνον μάχην ἀναδήσασθαι εἰς μονομάχου τάξιν
against alone battle to-take-up into of-single-combatant rank
ἑαυτὸν καταστήσας προσερχόμενος βοήθειαν μὲν τὴν τοῦ
himself having-set coming help indeed the of-the
θείου ἐκεῖθεν αἰτεῖται, βραδύνει δὲ τὸν κατ' αὐτοῦ
divine from-there asks waits and the(-one) against him

τολμήσαντα ἀπεκδεχόμενος. καθ' ἣν τρίοδον ἐχρόνισα καὶ
having-dared awaiting at which crossroad spent-time also
αὐτὸς σχολάζων καὶ ζητῶν τὸν μετ' ἐμοῦ μαχεσόμενον·
I being-idle and seeking the(-one) with me going-to-fight
ὁ δὲ τοῦτο τολμήσων οὐδαμοῦ." ταῦτα ὁ βασιλεὺς
the(-one) and this going-to-dare nowhere these(-things) the emperor
ἀκηκοὼς ἔφη "εἰ πόλεμον τότε ζητῶν οὐχ εὗρες,
having-heard he-said if war then seeking not you-found
πάρεστί σοι καιρὸς ὁ πολλῶν σε πολέμων ἐμπλήσων·
is-present for-you time the of-many you of-wars going-to-fill
παρεγγυῶμαι δέ σοι, μήτε πρὸς οὐραγίαν μήτε πρὸς
I-charge and you neither at rear nor at
λοχαγίαν ἵστασθαι φάλαγγος, ἀλλὰ τὸ μέσον ἔχειν τῶν
front to-stand of-the-phalanx but the middle to-hold of-the
ἡμιλοχιτῶν· ἐπιστήμην γὰρ τῆς μεθόδου τῶν πολέμων
half-file-leaders knowledge for of-the method of-the wars
τῶν Τούρκων ἐκ μακροῦ ἔσχηκα". οὐκ αὐτῷ δὲ μόνῳ
of-the Turks from long I-have-had not to-him and alone
ταῦτα συνεβούλευεν, ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις πᾶσιν ὁπόσα
these(-things) he-advised but also to-the others all as-many-as
τούτοις συναντήσειν ἔμελλεν ἀπερχομένοις κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν
them to-meet were-about going along the road
προλέγων παρηγγυᾶτο μὴ ἀκρατῶς διώκειν, ὁπηνίκα τὴν
foretelling he-charged not headlong to-pursue when the
νίκην αὐτοῖς κατὰ τῶν βαρβάρων δοίη θεός, ἵνα μὴ
victory to-them over the barbarians should-give God that not
τοῖς ἐνεδρεύουσι λοχαγοῖς περιπίπτοντες ἀναιρῶνται.
into-the lying-in-wait captains falling they-be-killed

Bohemond comes ahead with ten Celts. Alexios offers him cooked dishes and raw meat; Bohemond, fearing poison, gives the dishes away and has the meat cooked his own way. He swears the oath eagerly. Shown a room full of treasure, he accepts it gladly, sends it back, and then takes it after all. Alexios refuses him the office of domestic of the east. He favors Saint-Gilles above all the Latins and warns him against Bohemond. The armies cross to Damalion, and Alexios resolves to go to Pelekanos, secretly sending Boutoumites to win Nicaea for himself.

Ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν τὰ κατὰ τὸν Γοντοφρὲ καὶ
but these(-things) indeed the(-affairs) concerning — Godfrey and
Ῥαοὺλ καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους τοὺς συνεπομένους αὐτοῖς· ὁ δέ
Raoul and the others the following them — and
γε Βαϊμοῦντος μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων κομήτων καταλαβὼν τὸν
at-least Bohemond with the other counts having-reached —
Ἄπρων καὶ μήτ᾽ ἐξ εὐγενῶν φύντα ἑαυτὸν ἐπιγινώσκων
Apros and neither from nobles born himself recognizing
μήτε δυνάμεις πολλὰς συνεπαγόμενος δι᾽ ἣν εἶχε
nor forces many bringing because-of which he-had
σπάνιν τῶν χρημάτων, τὴν τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος βουλόμενος
lack of-the money the of-the autocrat wishing
ἐπισπάσασθαι εὔνοιαν, ἅμα δὲ καὶ συγκαλύψαι τὰ
to-draw goodwill together and also to-cover-up the(-affairs)
κατ᾽ αὐτὸν ἐθέλων, μετὰ δέκα καὶ μόνων Κελτῶν
concerning him wishing with ten and only Celts
προεξελθὼν τῶν ἄλλων κομήτων ἔσπευσε καταλαβεῖν
having-gone-ahead of-the other counts hastened to-reach
τὴν βασιλεύουσαν. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς τὰς αὐτοῦ μηχανὰς
the reigning(-city) the and emperor the his devices
γινώσκων καὶ τὸ ὕπουλον καὶ ἐνεδρευτικὸν αὐτοῦ ἦθος
knowing and the treacherous and ambush-laying his character

ἐκ μακροῦ ἐπιστάμενος ἔσπευσε πρὸ τοῦ καὶ τοὺς
from long knowing hastened before the also the
ἄλλους καταλαβεῖν κομήτας ὁμιλῆσαί τε καὶ ἀκοῦσαι
other to-arrive counts to-converse both and to-hear
τῶν παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ λεγομένων καὶ πεῖσαι πρὸ τῆς
the(-things) by him said and to-persuade before the
ἐκείνων ἀφίξεως διαπερᾶσαι, ἵνα μὴ ἑνωθεὶς μετ᾽ αὐτῶν
their arrival to-cross that not having-united with them
καταλαμβανόντων ἤδη καὶ τὰς ἐκείνων διαστρέψειε
arriving already also the their he-might-pervert
γνώμας. εἰσελθόντι δὲ ἱλαρὸν εὐθὺς ἐνατενίσας τὰ
minds him-having-entered and cheerfully at-once having-gazed the(-things)
κατὰ τὴν ὁδοιπορίαν ἐπυνθάνετο καὶ ὅπου τοὺς κομήτας
concerning the journey he-asked and where the counts
κατέλιπε. τοῦ δὲ ἅπαντα διασαφήσαντος αὐτῷ, ὡς εἶχε
he-had-left he and all having-made-clear to-him as he-was
γνώμης, ἀστεϊζόμενος ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ τῶν κατὰ τὸ
of-mind joking the emperor also the(-things) at —
Δυρράχιον καὶ τὴν Λάρισσαν τετολμημένων παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ
Dyrrachion and — Larissa dared by him
ἀναμιμνήσκει τηνικαῦτα καὶ τῆς ἔχθρας ἐκείνης. ὁ δὲ
reminds then also of-the enmity that he and
πρὸς αὐτὸν ἔλεγεν ὡς “ἔγωγε κἂν ἐχθρὸς κἂν πολέμιος
to him said that I-for-my-part even-if enemy even-if foe
τότ᾽ ἦν, ἀλλὰ νῦν αὐτόμολος ἥκω φίλος τῆς σῆς
then was but now a-deserter I-come friend of-the your
βασιλείας”. ὁ δὲ αὐτοκράτωρ διὰ πολλῶν μετελθὼν
majesty the and autocrat through many having-pursued
αὐτὸν καὶ ἀκροθιγῶς πως ἀποπειράσας τὸν αὐτοῦ
him and lightly somehow having-tested the his
λογισμόν, ἐπεὶ διέγνω κατανεύσοντα τοῦτον ὅρκια πιστὰ
reasoning since he-discerned going-to-assent him oaths trusty

δοῦναι πρὸς αὐτὸν ἔφη "τὰ νῦν μὲν κεκοπιακότα σε
to-give to him he-said for-the now indeed having-toiled you
ἀπὸ τῆς ὁδοιπορίας χρὴ ἀπελθόντα διαναπαύσασθαι,
from the journey it-is-needful having-gone to-rest
ἐς νέωτα δὲ περὶ ὧν βουλόμεθα ὁμιλήσομεν". ἀπελθόντι
for tomorrow and about what we-wish we-shall-converse having-gone
οὖν εἰς τὸ Κοσμίδιον, οὗπερ τὰ τῆς κατοικίας
then to — Kosmidion where the(-things) of-the lodging
αὐτῷ προηυτρέπιστο, τράπεζα τούτῳ παρατίθεται δαψιλὴς
for-him had-been-prepared a-table for-him is-set abundant
παντοίων ὄψων καὶ ἐδεσμάτων μεστή. εἶτα καὶ ὠμὰ
of-every-kind dishes and foods full then also raw
κρέα χερσαίων τε καὶ πτηνῶν ζώων προσενεγκόντες οἱ
meats of-land both and winged animals having-brought the
ὀψοποιοὶ ἔφασαν "ἡμῖν μὲν τὰ ὄψα, ὡς ὁρᾷς, ηὐτρέπισται
cooks said by-us indeed the dishes as you-see have-been-prepared
κατὰ τὸ σύνηθες· εἰ δὲ μὴ ἀρεστά σοι ταῦτα, ἰδοὺ
according-to the custom if and not pleasing to-you these see
καὶ ὠμὰ καὶ κατασκευασθήτωσαν καθά γε βούλει".
also raw and let-them-be-prepared as at-least you-wish
οὕτω γὰρ παρὰ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος κατασκευάσαι τε καὶ
thus for by the autocrat to-prepare both and
εἰπεῖν ἐντεταλμένον αὐτοῖς ἦν. καὶ γὰρ ὁποῖος ἐκεῖνος
to-say having-been-enjoined on-them it-was and for such that-man
δεινὸς ἤθους καταστοχάσασθαι ἀνδρός, δεινὸς εἰς καρδίαν
skilled of-character to-guess of-a-man skilled into heart
βάψαι καὶ λογισμοὺς θηρᾶσαι ἀνθρώπου, τὸ τοῦ ἀνδρὸς
to-dip and reasonings to-hunt of-a-man the of-the man
ἐπιστάμενος δύσνουν καὶ κακόηθες ἐστοχάσατο τοῦ ὄντος.
knowing malevolence and malignity guessed the truth
ἵν' οὖν μὴ ὑποψίαν τινὰ κατ' αὐτοῦ σχοίη, καὶ τὰ ὠμὰ
that then not suspicion some against him he-might-have also the raw

κρέα ἐν ταὐτῷ προσενεχθῆναι αὐτῷ προσέταξε διαλύων
meats at the-same-time to-be-brought to-him he-ordered dissolving
τάχα τὴν ὑποψίαν. οὐκ ἠστόχει δὲ τοῦ σκοποῦ. ὁ γὰρ
perhaps the suspicion not he-missed and the aim the for
δεινὸς Βαϊμοῦντος τῶν μὲν ὄψων οὐ μόνον ἀπογεύσασθαι
skilled Bohemond of-the indeed dishes not only to-taste
ὅλως, ἀλλ' οὐδ' ἄκροις δακτύλοις προσψαῦσαι ἠνέσχετο,
at-all but not-even with-tips of-fingers to-touch endured
ἀλλ' ἀπώσατό τ' εὐθὺς καὶ μηδενί τι τῆς ὑποδραμούσης
but pushed-away both at-once and to-no-one anything of-the having-crept-on
αὐτῷ ὑπονοίας ἐμφήνας τοῖς παρεστῶσι πάντα διένειμε,
him suspicion having-shown to-those standing-by all distributed
τῷ μὲν φαινομένῳ φιλοφρονεῖσθαι τούτους ὑποκρινόμενος,
in-the indeed seeming to-treat-kindly them pretending
τῇ δ' ἀληθείᾳ, εἴ τις καλῶς σκοποίη, θανάτου κρατῆρα
in-the but truth if someone well should-consider of-death a-bowl
κεράσας αὐτοῖς. οὐδὲ τὸν δόλον ἐπέκρυπτε· τοσοῦτον
having-mixed for-them not-even the deceit he-hid so
καταφρονητικῶς περὶ τοὺς ὑπ' αὐτὸν διέκειτο. τὰ μέντοι
contemptuously about those under him he-was-disposed the however
ὠμὰ κρέατα κατὰ τὸ ἔθος τῆς ἐνεγκαμένης τοῖς ἰδίοις
raw meats according-to the custom of-the land-that-bore-him to-the own
ὀψοποιοῖς κατασκευάσαι ἐπέταττε. τῇ μετ' αὐτὴν δὲ
cooks to-prepare he-ordered on-the after it and
τοὺς τὰ ὄψα ἐκεῖνα ἐδηδοκότας ἐπυνθάνετο, ὅπως αὐτοὺς
those the dishes those having-eaten he-asked how them
διέθεντο. τῶν δὲ "καὶ λίαν καλῶς" εἰρηκότων καὶ ὡς
they-disposed they and also very well having-said and that
μηδὲ τῆς τυχούσης αἰσθέσθαι βλάβης, ἀποκαλύψας αὐτοῖς
not-even the chance to-have-felt harm having-revealed to-them
τὸ ἀπόρρητον ἔφη ὡς "ἔγωγε μεμνημένος τῶν μετ'
the secret he-said that I-for-my-part mindful of-the with

αὐτοῦ πολέμων καὶ τῆς μάχης ἐκείνης ἐδεδίειν, μὴ τὸν ἐμὸν
him wars and of-the battle that feared lest the my
ἴσως ἐξαρτύσῃ θάνατον, θανάσιμόν τι φάρμακον τοῖς
perhaps he-should-contrive death deadly some drug into-the
ὄψοις ἐπεμβαλών". τοιαῦτα μὲν τὰ τοῦ Βαϊμούντου·
dishes having-thrown-in such indeed the(-ways) — of-Bohemond
ἐγὼ δ' οὔποτε πονηρὸν ἐθεασάμην μὴ τοῦ ὀρθῶς
I and never wicked saw not from-the rightly
τι ποιεῖν πόρρω που ἐν πᾶσι λόγοις καὶ πρακτέοις
anything to-do far somewhere in all words and deeds
θέοντα· ὁπηνίκα γάρ τις τῆς μεσότητος ἐκσταίη,
running when for someone from-the mean should-stand-away
πρὸς ὁπότερον ἂν τῶν ἄκρων νεύσειε, πόρρωθεν τῆς
to whichever — of-the extremes he-should-incline far-off from-the
ἀρετῆς ἕστηκε. μεταπεμψάμενος οὖν τὸν Βαϊμοῦντον ὁ
virtue stands having-summoned then — Bohemond the
βασιλεὺς τὸν συνήθη τοῖς Λατίνοις καὶ ἐξ αὐτοῦ ἐζήτει
emperor the customary for-the Latins also from him sought
ὅρκον. ὁ δὲ τὰ ἑαυτοῦ ἐπιστάμενος καὶ ὅτι οὔτε ἐκ
oath he and the(-things) of-himself knowing and that neither from
προγόνων περιφανῶν ἐγεγόνει οὔτε χρημάτων εὐπορίαν
ancestors illustrious he-had-been-born nor of-money abundance
εἶχε καὶ διὰ τοῦτο οὐδὲ δυνάμεις πολλάς, ἀλλὰ
he-had and because-of this not-even forces many but
μετρίους πάνυ τοὺς συνεπομένους αὐτῷ Κελτούς, καὶ
moderate very the following him Celts and
ἄλλως δὲ φύσει ἐπίορκος ὤν, μάλα προθύμως τῷ τοῦ
otherwise too by-nature perjured being very eagerly to-the of-the
αὐτοκράτορος ὑπεῖξε θελήματι. κᾆθ' οὕτως ὁ βασιλεὺς
autocrat yielded will and-then thus the emperor
περὶ τὰ βασίλεια οἰκίσκον τινὰ ἀφορίσας εἰς τοὔδαφος
about the palace small-room a-certain having-set-apart on the-floor

κατέστρωσε παντοῖον εἶδος χρημάτων, *** καὶ ἀμφίων
spread every-kind sort of-money (lacuna) and garments
χαράγματός τε χρυσίου καὶ ἀργύρου καὶ τῆς κατωτέρω
of-coin both of-gold and of-silver and of-the lower
ὕλης τοσοῦτον πληρώσας τὸ οἴκημα, ὡς μηδὲ βαδίζειν
material so-much having-filled the room that not-even to-walk
δύνασθαί τινα τῷ πλήθει τούτων συμποδιζόμενον· τῷ
to-be-able anyone by-the multitude of-these hindered to-the(-one)
δὲ μέλλοντι ὑποδεῖξαι ταῦτα τῷ Βαϊμούντῳ ἐπέταττεν
and going to-show these(-things) — to-Bohemond he-ordered
ἀθρόον τὰς πύλας ἀναπετάσαι. ὁ δὲ ἐπὶ τῇ τούτων
suddenly the doors to-throw-open he and at the of-these
θέᾳ ἐκπλαγείς φησιν "εἰ τοσαῦτά μοι προσῆν χρήματα,
sight astounded says if so-much to-me belonged money
πολλῶν ἂν χωρῶν κύριος πάλαι ἐγεγόνειν αὐτός".
of-many — lands lord long-ago I-would-have-become himself
καὶ ὃς "ταῦτά σοι τὴν σήμερον ἀποχαρίζεται ἅπαντα
and he these(-things) to-you the today makes-a-gift-of all
ὁ βασιλεύς". ὁ δὲ περιχαρῶς ταῦτα δεξάμενος καὶ
the emperor he and joyfully these(-things) having-received and
εὐχαριστήσας ἀπῄει ἀναπαυθησόμενος οὗ κατέλυσεν.
having-thanked went-off going-to-rest where he-lodged
ἀποκομισθέντων δὲ τούτων αὐτῷ, μεταβαλὼν ὁ πρὶν
having-been-brought and these to-him having-changed the(-one) before
τεθαυμακὼς ἔφη "οὐδέποτε τοιαύτην ἀτιμίαν ἔσεσθαί
having-wondered said never such dishonor would-be
μοι ἀπὸ τοῦ βασιλέως ἤλπισα· λαβόντες οὖν ταῦτα
to-me from the emperor I-expected having-taken then these(-things)
ἀπαγάγετε τῷ πέμψαντι". ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς τὸ φύσει
carry-back to-the(-one) having-sent the and emperor the by-nature
παλίμβουλον τῶν Λατίνων γινώσκων τὸν δημώδη λόγον
changeable of-the Latins knowing the popular saying

ἀντέφησε "κακὸν πρᾶγμα πρὸς τὸν ἴδιον ἐπανερχέσθω
replied evil thing to the own let-it-return
αὐθέντην". τοῦτο ὁ Βαϊμοῦντος ἀκούσας καὶ τοὺς
master this — Bohemond having-heard and those
ἀποκομίσαντας ἐπιμελῶς ἀναζητοῦντας αὖθις αὐτὰ ὁρῶν
having-carried-back carefully searching again them seeing
μεταβαλὼν ὁ πρὶν ἀποπεμπόμενος ταῦτα καὶ
having-changed the(-one) before sending-away these(-things) and
ἀχθόμενος ἐπὶ τούτοις ἱλαρὸν βλέμμα τοῖς ἀποκομισταῖς
being-vexed at these-things cheerful look to-the carriers
ἐδείκνυ καθάπερ τις πολύπους μετασχηματιζόμενος ἐν
showed as-if some octopus changing-shape in
βραχεῖ. φύσει μὲν γὰρ ἦν ὁ ἀνὴρ πονηρὸς καὶ ὀξὺς
short by-nature indeed for was the man wicked and sharp
πρὸς τὰ συμπίπτοντα, πονηρίᾳ καὶ ἀνδρείᾳ τοσοῦτον
at the(-things) befalling in-wickedness and courage so-much
ὑπερέχων ἁπάντων τῶν τότε διερχομένων Λατίνων, ὁπόσον
surpassing all the then passing-through Latins as-much-as
δυνάμεσί τε καὶ χρήμασιν ἥττητο· ἀλλὰ καὶ ὡς πάντων
in-forces both and money he-was-inferior but even so all
ἐκράτει κακεντρεχείας περιουσίᾳ, τὸ δὲ παλίμβουλον
he-surpassed in-abundance of-malice the and changeability
ὡς φυσικόν τι τῶν Λατίνων παρακολούθημα παρείπετο
as natural some of-the Latins consequence followed
καὶ αὐτῷ. τὰ γοῦν χρήματα ὁ ἀπωθούμενος
also him the at-any-rate money the(-one) pushing-away
περιχαρῶς τηνικαῦτα ἐλάμβανε. δύσνους γὰρ ὢν τὴν
joyfully then took ill-disposed for being in-the
γνώμην, ἐπεὶ μηδὲ χώραν ὅλως κεκτημένος τῆς
mind since not-even land at-all having-acquired from-the
ἐνεγκαμένης ἐξῄει τῷ μὲν φαινομένῳ χάριν τῆς
land-that-bore-him he-went-out in-the indeed seeming for-the-sake of-the

τοῦ ἁγίου τάφου προσκυνήσεως, τῇ δ' ἀληθείᾳ ἀρχὴν
of-the holy tomb veneration in-the but truth rule
ἑαυτῷ περιποιήσασθαι προμηθευόμενος καὶ μᾶλλον, εἰ
for-himself to-secure providing and rather if
γένοιτό οἱ, καὶ αὐτῆς τῆς βασιλείας Ῥωμαίων
it-might-be-granted to-him also itself the empire of-Romans
ἐπιδράξασθαι χρωμένῳ ταῖς τοῦ πατρὸς ὑποθημοσύναις
to-lay-hold-of using the of-the father counsels
καὶ πάντα κάλων τὸ τοῦ λόγου κινοῦντι, πολλῶν ἐδεῖτο
and every rope the of-the saying moving many he-needed
χρημάτων. ὁ δὲ αὐτοκράτωρ τὸ δύσνουν καὶ κακόηθες
money the and autocrat the malevolence and malignity
αὐτοῦ ἐπιστάμενος ἔσπευδε τὰ συναιρόμενα πρὸς
his knowing hastened the(-things) contributing to
τοὺς ὑποτυφομένους αὐτῷ λογισμοὺς εὐφυῶς περιαιρεῖν.
the smoldering in-him reasonings cleverly to-remove
διὸ καὶ τὸ δομεστικάτον αἰτούμενος τῆς ἀνατολῆς οὐκ
wherefore also the domestic's-office asking of-the east not
ἔτυχε τῆς αἰτήσεως πρὸς Κρῆτα κρητίζων. δεδιὼς γὰρ
obtained the request toward a-Cretan playing-the-Cretan fearing for
ὁ βασιλεύς, μὴ ἐξουσίας δραξάμενος καὶ δι' αὐτῆς
the emperor lest authority having-grasped and through it
δουλαγωγήσας τοὺς κόμητας ἅπαντας ῥᾳδίως περιάγοι
having-enslaved the counts all easily he-might-lead
τοῦ λοιποῦ, ὅπη βουλητὸν αὐτῷ ἐστι, μὴ θέλων τε
for-the rest wherever wished for-him is not wishing and
τὸν Βαϊμοῦντον ὑπονοῆσαι ὅλως, ὅτι ἤδη πεφώραται,
— Bohemond to-suspect at-all that already he-is-detected
ἐλπίσι χρησταῖς αὐτὸν ὑποσαίνων ἔφη "τούτου μὲν
with-hopes good him fawning-upon said of-this indeed
καιρὸς οὔπω πάρεστι, διὰ δὲ τῆς σῆς ἐνεργείας καὶ
time not-yet is-present through and the your energy and

ὑπολήψεως, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ πίστεως μετ᾽ οὐ πολὺ καὶ
reputation but indeed also faith after not long also
τοῦτο γενήσεται". ὁμιλήσας τοίνυν αὐτοῖς καὶ παντοίαις
this will-happen having-conversed therefore with-them and with-every-kind
δωρεαῖς καὶ τιμαῖς φιλοφρονησάμενος τῇ μετ᾽ αὐτὴν
gifts and honors having-treated-kindly on-the after it
αὐτὸς ἐπὶ τοῦ βασιλικοῦ καθῆστο θρόνου· μεταπεμψάμενος
he on the imperial sat throne having-summoned
δὲ αὐτόν τε τὸν Βαϊμοῦντον καὶ τοὺς κόμητας ἅπαντας
and himself both — Bohemond and the counts all
περὶ τῶν κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν αὐτοῖς συμβησομένων ὡμίλει
about the(-things) on the road to-them going-to-befall conversed
βουλευόμενος τὰ συμφέροντα, ἀναδιδάσκων ἅμα καὶ
counseling the advantageous-things teaching at-the-same-time also
αἷς εἰώθασιν οἱ Τοῦρκοι χρήσασθαι μεθοδείαις ἐν ταῖς
with-which are-wont the Turks to-use stratagems in the
μάχαις καὶ ὑποτιθέμενος, ὅπως τε παρατάττεσθαι χρὴ
battles and suggesting how both to-array-oneself it-is-necessary
καὶ λόχους καθιστᾶν καὶ μὴ ἐπὶ πολὺ διώκειν, ὁπηνίκα
and ambushes to-set and not for long to-pursue when
τούτοις οἱ Τοῦρκοι τὰ νῶτα διδόασι. καὶ οὕτως διά τε
to-them the Turks the backs give and thus through both
χρημάτων διά τε λόγων καταμαλάξας αὐτῶν τὸ ἄγριον
money through both words having-softened their the wildness
καὶ τὰ συνοίσοντα ὑποθέμενος τὴν διαπεραίωσιν
and the(-things) going-to-help having-suggested the crossing
προὐτρέψατο. τὸν δέ γε Ἰσαγγέλην ἠγάπα διαφερόντως
he-urged — and at-least Saint-Gilles he-loved exceedingly
διά τε τὸ περιὸν αὐτῷ τοῦ φρονήματος καὶ τῆς
because-of both the superiority in-him of-the spirit and of-the
ὑπολήψεως τὸ ἀνόθευτον καὶ τὸ τοῦ βίου καθαρόν,
reputation the genuineness and the of-the life purity

γινώσκων ἅμα καὶ ὁπόσον αὐτῷ τῆς ἀληθείας
knowing at-the-same-time also how-much to-him of-the truth
μέλει μηδὲν ταύτης μηδέποτε προτιμωμένῳ· τοσοῦτον γὰρ
is-a-care nothing over-it ever preferring so-much for
ἁπάντων τῶν Λατίνων ἐν πᾶσι διέφερεν, ὅσον ἀστέρων
of-all the Latins in all he-differed as-much-as from-stars
ἥλιος. διά τοι τοῦτο παρακατέσχεν αὐτὸν τέως
the-sun because-of surely this he-detained him for-the-time
μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ. ἁπάντων οὖν συνταξαμένων τῷ αὐτοκράτορι
with himself all then having-taken-leave of-the autocrat
καὶ διὰ τοῦ τῆς Προποντίδος πορθμοῦ τὸ Δαμάλιον
and through the of-the Propontis strait — Damalion
καταλαβόντων ἀνεθεὶς τῆς ἐξ αὐτῶν ὀχλήσεως συχνάκις
having-reached released the from them annoyance frequently
τὸν Ἰσαγγέλην μετεπέμπετο, ἀναδιδάσκων ἅμα
— Saint-Gilles he-summoned teaching at-the-same-time
καθαρώτερον τὰ κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν συμβήσεσθαι μέλλοντα
more-clearly the(-things) on the road to-befall being-about
τοῖς Λατίνοις, παρεγύμνου δὲ καὶ ἣν περὶ τῆς τῶν
to-the Latins he-laid-bare and also which about the of-the
Φράγγων γνώμης εἶχεν ὑπόληψιν. ταῦτα πολλάκις
Franks mind he-had opinion these(-things) often
ἀποστοματίσας τῷ Ἰσαγγέλῃ καὶ τὰς τῆς ψυχῆς οἷον
having-recited — to-Saint-Gilles and the of-the soul as-it-were
ὑπανοίξας αὐτῷ πύλας καὶ πάντα διατρανώσας ἐπέσκηψεν
having-opened to-him gates and all having-made-clear enjoined
ἀεὶ πρὸς τὴν τοῦ Βαϊμούντου ἐγρηγορέναι κακίαν,
always against the — of-Bohemond to-be-awake wickedness
ἵνα βουλόμενον παρασπονδῆσαι ἀπείργῃ τοῦτον τοῦ
that wishing to-break-the-treaty he-might-restrain him from-the
ἐγχειρήματος καὶ διὰ πάσης μεθόδου διαλύῃ τὰς
undertaking and through every method might-dissolve the

ἐκείνου μηχανάς. ὁ δὲ πρὸς τὸν αὐτοκράτορά φησιν
of-that-one devices he and to the autocrat says
"ἐκ προγόνων καθάπερ τινὰ κλῆρον τὴν ἐπιορκίαν καὶ
from ancestors as-if some inheritance the perjury and
τὸν δόλον ὁ Βαϊμοῦντος κεκτημένος, θαῦμα μέγιστον, εἰ
the deceit — Bohemond having-acquired a-wonder very-great if
τὰ ὀμωμοσμένα διατηρήσειεν· ἔγωγε δ' ὅμως ὡς
the(-things) sworn he-should-keep I-for-my-part and nevertheless as
ἐνὸν σπεύσω τὸ προσταχθὲν ἀεὶ ἀποπληροῦν".
being-possible will-hasten the(-thing) ordered always to-fulfill
καὶ συνταξάμενος τῷ αὐτοκράτορι ἄπεισιν ἑνωθησόμενος
and having-taken-leave of-the autocrat goes-away going-to-be-united
τῷ παντὶ στρατεύματι τῶν Κελτῶν. ὁ μέντοι αὐτοκράτωρ
to-the whole army of-the Celts the however autocrat
ἤθελε μὲν μετὰ τῶν Κελτῶν κατὰ τῶν βαρβάρων
wished indeed with the Celts against the barbarians
ἀπιέναι, ἐδεδίει δὲ τὸ αὐτῶν ἀναρίθμητον πλῆθος. δεῖν
to-go feared but the their countless multitude to-be-needful
οὖν ἐλογίσατο τὸν Πελεκάνον καταλαβεῖν, ἵν' ἐγγύθεν
then he-reckoned — Pelekanos to-reach that near
Νικαίας ἐνδιατρίβων μανθάνοι μὲν τὰ τοῖς Κελτοῖς
Nicaea staying he-might-learn indeed the(-things) to-the Celts
συμβαίνοντα, ἅμα δὲ καὶ τὰς τῶν Τούρκων ἔξωθεν
happening at-the-same-time and also the of-the Turks outside
ἐφόδους καὶ τὴν τῶν ἐντὸς Νικαίας κατάστασιν. ἐν
attacks and the of-those inside Nicaea condition in
δεινῷ γὰρ ἐποιεῖτο, εἰ μή τι στρατηγικὸν ἐν τῷ μεταξὺ
danger for he-held-it if not some stroke-of-generalship in the meantime
καὶ αὐτὸς κατορθώσοι, καὶ διεσκοπεῖτο, ἵνα εἰ ἐπιτήδεια
also he should-achieve and he-considered that if suitable
τὰ πράγματα εὑρήσει, αὐτὸς τὴν Νίκαιαν ἕλῃ καὶ
the affairs he-will-find he — Nicaea should-take and

μὴ παρὰ τῶν Κελτῶν αὐτὴν σχοίη κατὰ τὰ
not from the Celts it should-have according-to the(-things)
παρ᾽ ἐκείνων ὀμωμοσμένα. εἶχε δὲ τὴν βουλὴν ταύτην
by them sworn he-had and the plan this
ὑποβρύχιον καὶ πᾶν ὅπερ ἂν ᾠκονόμει καὶ τὴν αἰτίαν
under-water and every-thing which — he-arranged and the cause
δι᾽ ἣν γίνεται αὐτὸς καὶ μόνος ἠπίστατο μόνῳ τῷ
because-of which it-happens he and alone knew alone —
Βουτουμίτῃ τοῦτο ἐμπεπιστευκὼς καὶ τοῦτον ἀποστείλας
to-Boutoumites this having-entrusted and him having-sent
ἐφ᾽ ᾧ ὑποποιεῖσθαι τοὺς ἐντὸς Νικαίας βαρβάρους διὰ
for which to-win-over the inside Nicaea barbarians through
παντοίων ὑποσχέσεων καὶ ἀπαθείας τελείας, ἐν μέρει
every-kind promises and immunity complete in part
δὲ καὶ ἀπειλούμενος τόσα καὶ τόσα πείσεσθαι
and also threatening such-and-such and such-and-such to-suffer
καὶ παρανάλωμα ξίφους γενέσθαι, εἰ παρὰ τῶν Κελτῶν
and a-casualty of-the-sword to-become if by the Celts
ἁλῷεν, καὶ πάλαι τὸν Βουτουμίτην γινώσκων
they-should-be-captured and long-ago — Boutoumites knowing
εὐνούστατον καὶ περὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα δραστήριον. ταῦτα
most-loyal and about the such-things energetic these(-things)
μὲν οὖν ἐξ ἀρχῆς τοῦτον παρηκολουθήκει τὸν τρόπον.
indeed then from beginning in-this had-followed the way